



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Educ T 918.36.120

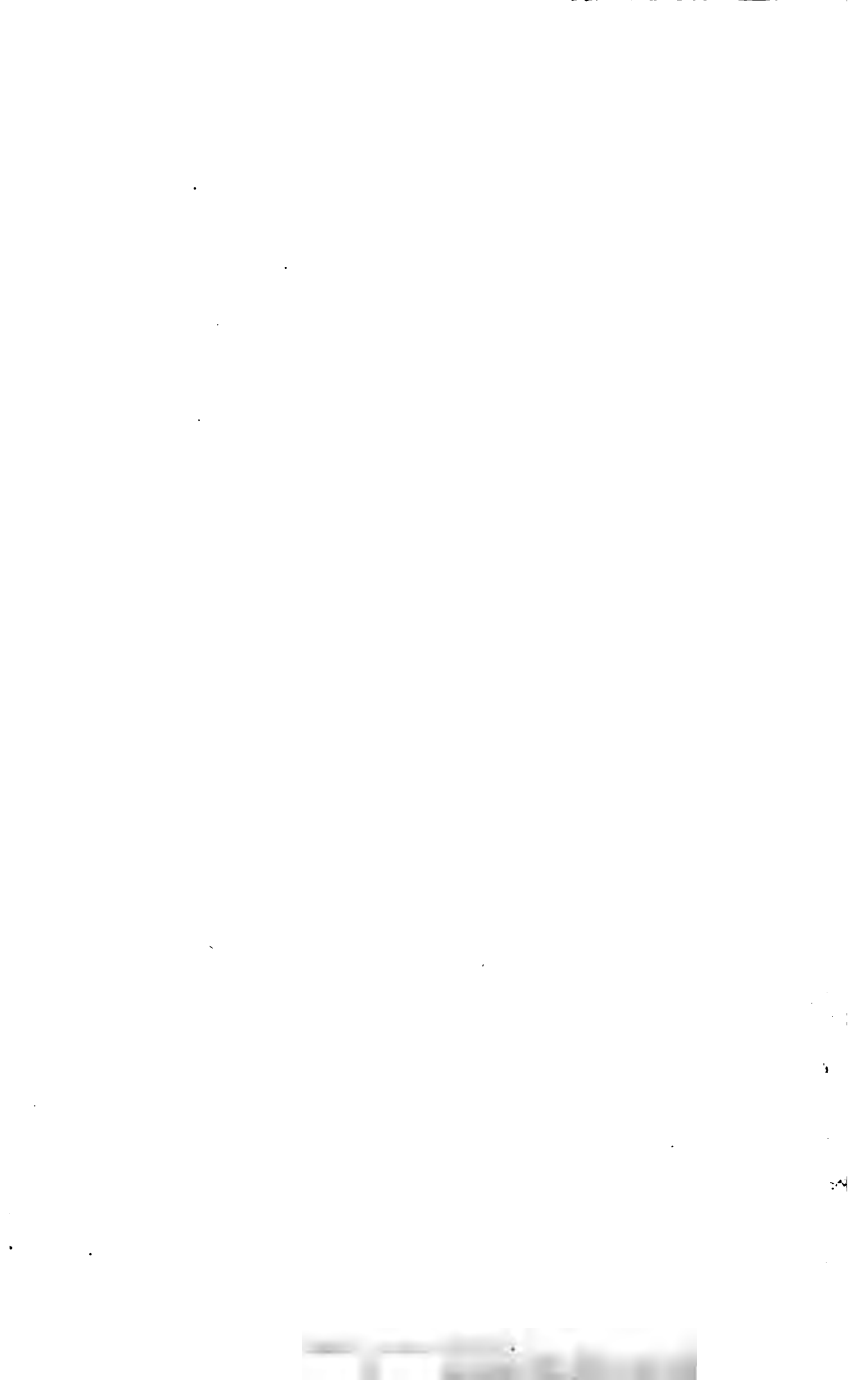
Harvard College
Library



By Exchange



3 2044 097 067 375





h 47.8 18

ADAM'S

LATIN GRAMMAR:

WITH NUMEROUS

ADDITIONS AND IMPROVEMENTS,

DESIGNED TO AID

THE MORE ADVANCED STUDENT BY FULLER ELUCIDATIONS

OF THE

LATIN CLASSICS.

BY C. D. CLEVELAND, A. M.

LATE PROFESSOR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF THE CITY OF NEW-YORK.

PHILADELPHIA: WILLIAM MARSHALL & CO.

HARTFORD: D. BURGESS & CO.

1836.

✓
Edw T 918.36.120

U. S. DISTRICT COURT
EASTERN DISTRICT OF PENNSYLVANIA
CLERK'S OFFICE

Feb. 27, 1933

Entered according to the act of Congress, in the year 1836, by W. MARSHALL
& Co. in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the Eastern District of Penn-
sylvania.

WILLIAM STAVELY, PRINTER,
No. 12 Pear street.

PREFACE.

A PREFACE is not necessary to set forth the merits of Adam's Latin Grammar. Such as it is, it is known to almost every scholar in our country, from that critical inspection which is the result of constant use. Such an extended circulation would argue, what is believed to be the fact, that, as a manual, it is the best accessible to the English student. But good as it is, all acknowledge that it might be better. Whether the present editor has made it so, the public will of course decide. It only remains to state some of the most important alterations and additions that have been made in the present edition.

1. The lists of *regular* NOUNS of the first, and second, and fourth declensions, and of *regular* ADJECTIVES of the first and second declension, have been thrown out altogether, *as entirely useless*, and the space which they would have occupied has been filled with other lists presenting some *peculiarities*. See lists 1, 2, 3 and 4 on pages 19 and 20 : the lists of Irregular Nouns on pages 48, 49, 50, and 51 : the lists of Defective Nouns, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 and 10, on pages 60, 61, and 62, which have been much enlarged ; and lists 11, 12, 13, 14, on pages 63 and 64, which are entirely new ; and the list of Irregular and Unusual Comparisons, on page 81.

2. The remarks on Gender, on page 17, have been remodelled ; and those on the Cases, (page 21) are entirely new. See also the end of Exc. 3, on page 23—Exc. 5, on page 26—the declension of Deus, in full, on page 27—and three of the paragraphs on page 54.—A Synopsis of the Five Declensions has been given on page 55 ; and the lists 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 of Nouns

Defective in Cases on pages 58, 59 and 60, have been entirely re-written, and much enlarged. The remarks on Proper Names, on page 66, are also new. These are mentioned merely as specimens of the minor additions that have been made throughout the work, in which, wherever the case has admitted of it, classical authority has always been adduced.

3. In ADJECTIVES, the Exceptions in the formation of the Ablative singular, on page 72, will be found, on a comparison with the common editions of Adam's, to be much enlarged. On page 76, there are some alterations, and Obs. 5 and the two next paragraphs are new.

4. In the PRONOUNS, Observations 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 and 21, on pages 87 and 88, are entirely new.

5. But it is in the VERBS that the greatest additions and alterations, and, as the Editor hopes, improvements, have been made. It is well known to every classical scholar, that the Supine of the Latin Verb is rarely found in the classics, but that the Perfect Participle of most verbs is in use. It is, therefore, obviously proper that Latin verbs should be conjugated with the Perfect Participle, rather than with the Supine. Dr. Adam, on the contrary, in conjugating the Latin verb, gives the Supine almost uniformly, without any classical authority to support such a practice. For example, on page 121, of the Boston edition, *Creo* is conjugated with the Supine, and then follows a long list of about four hundred verbs of the first conjugation "thus conjugated," whereas not one in ten is "thus conjugated." In this edition of Adam's, however, the verbs of all the conjugations are inserted, *and conjugated with the Perfect Participle*, if it be used; if not, the verb has an asterisk (*) prefixed to it, and one of the Future Participles is inserted. The Futures RUS and DUS, when found, are indicated by the letters R and D, and the Supines UM and U, by M and U. In the notes will be found such parts of the verbs as seldom occur in the Latin authors, with the classical authorities for each. These are inserted on the autho-

riety of Dr. Hickie, one of the learned editors of Valpey's edition of the *Variorum* classics, who undertook the laborious task of going through the whole range of Latin writers, for the express purpose of ascertaining what parts of the verbs have classical authority for their support.

In consequence of these additions, the verbs occupy seventy-two pages instead of thirty-two, as in the common editions of Adam's Grammar. But it is believed that the space could not be better filled. Not only will it afford the advanced scholar great satisfaction to be able to ascertain readily, whether any part of a verb which he may wish to employ, has been used by the best Roman writers, but it is highly important that the scholar in the Grammar school should *begin* right, and not in after years be obliged to do, what all know is so hard to be done—unlearn what has been learned amiss.

6. The Article on DEFECTIVE VERBS, on pages 185, 186, 187, and 188, is nearly entirely new, and classical authority is adduced for all the parts of each verb. The two lists of Redundant Verbs, on pages 190 and 191, are also very much enlarged. The same may be said of "Remarks on the Verb," pages 193, 194 and 195.

7. It will be seen that the PREPOSITIONS are entirely remodelled, and that considerable attention has been bestowed upon them. The original import of each is endeavoured to be given and illustrated, and the secondary meanings traced to the primary. Examples from the classics have been adduced in support of all the definitions.

8. To the PREPOSITIONS in COMPOSITION four pages have been devoted, instead of a third of a page, as in the common edition of Adam's. See pages 210, 211, 212 and 213.

9. The Remarks on the SIGNIFICATION of WORDS, pages 215, 216, 217, 218 and 219, at the end of the Etymolo-

gical part, it is hoped will be of assistance to the student, by giving him some well defined principles that will enable him to translate the classics with greater accuracy.

10. To the SYNTAX many additions have been made. The articles marked with an asterisk (*) are entirely new, and comprise about twenty-five pages. As specimens of the additions, reference may be made to Adjectives that govern the Genitive (73)—the observations on the Dative (81) and (82)—Verbs governing the Dative that are variously construed (130)—Verbs that differ in signification according to the cases with which they are used (131)—the turning of the Active into the Passive Verb (187) and (188)—and Rules for the construction of the Relative, when it should be followed by the Subjunctive, and when by the Indicative (342) (343) (344) (345) (346). See also articles (51) (100) (134) (185) (271) (272) &c. At the same time that so much new matter has been introduced, all the Rules and Observations of Adam's have been carefully preserved, in their order, and with the same numbers, *so that those books, which refer to the Syntax of the common editions, can be used with this, with equal facility.* Heretofore, however, particular reference has been often difficult, from the extent of some of the Rules: in this edition that difficulty has been entirely obviated *by numbering EVERY ARTICLE in the Syntax.* This, it is believed, will be considered an improvement of some value, especially as it will enable Instructors and Editors of School Classics to make the most minute references, with the greatest facility; and scholars to turn to these references with the greatest readiness.

11. Some parts of the PROSODY have been entirely rewritten, and much enlarged. See, particularly, the different Kinds of Verse, on pages 320, 321, 322 and 323, and the various Combinations of the different Metres used by Horace, on pages 329, 330, and 331. As in Syntax, all the articles marked with an asterisk, (*) are new. The Remarks in the Appendix upon

Roman Weights, Measures, and Method of computing by Sesterces, are taken from Gould's edition of Adam, to whom the cause of classical learning in our country is much indebted for his beautiful and correct editions of the School-classics.

The additions above specified, amount to nearly one hundred pages; yet the size of the Grammar has been increased but about forty pages above the common editions. This has been effected by using in many of the least important parts a size smaller type, and by rejecting altogether some things that in a Grammar are of little or no utility: such as the long lists of *regular* nouns and adjectives, and the "Signification of Verbs," which is found in the "Appendix" of the old editions. The latter occupied twenty pages, without being of any practical use; for when the scholar wishes to know the various significations of a verb, he always has recourse to his dictionary.

That the above mentioned alterations and additions, the result of much labour, may be found to be improvements; that they may enhance the value of an already useful book; and that they may aid the cause of sound learning, by presenting to the student of the higher classics, a manual to which he may turn for the solution of his difficulties, and not turn in vain, is the sincere desire of

THE EDITOR.

PHILADELPHIA, Feb. 1, 1836.

The following works, besides the Classics, have been freely consulted in the preparation of the work.

Scheller's Latin Grammar,	2 vols. 8vo.
Port Royal do.	2 vols. 8vo.
Grant's do.	1 vol. 8vo.
Hickie's do.	1 vol. 12mo.
Zumpt's do.	1 vol. 8vo.
Crombie's Gymnasium,	2 vols. 8vo.
Carey's Latin Prosody,	1 vol. 12mo.
Butler's Praxis on the Latin Prepositions,	1 vol. 8vo.



CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE
PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN	11	III. Verb	88
PART I.		Voice	89
ORTHOGRAPHY, <i>which treats of</i>		Mode	90
Letters	13	Tense	90
Diphthongs	14	Number and Person	91
Syllables	14	Conjugation of Verbs	92
PART II.		First Conjugation	97
ETYMOLOGY, <i>which treats of</i>		Second Conjugation	100
Words	15	Third Conjugation	104
Division of Words, or Parts of		Fourth Conjugation	111
Speech	16	Dependent and Common Verbs	115
I. Noun or Substantive	16	Formation of Tenses	117
Latin Nouns	17	Signification of Tenses	119
Genders	17	Verbs of the First Conjugation	123
Number	20	Second	136
Case	20	Third	145
Declension of Nouns	21	Fourth	170
First Declension	22	Irregular Verbs	176
Second Declension	24	Neuter Passive	185
Third Declension	28	Defective	185
Fourth Declension	52	Impersonal	188
Fifth Declension	53	Redundant Verbs	190
Irregular Nouns	55	Frequentative	192
Heterogeneous	55	Inceptive	193
Defective in Cases	58	Desiderative	193
Defective in Number	60	Remarks on the Verb	193
Redundant	65	IV. Participles	195
Division of Nouns according		Gerunds	197
to their Signification and		Supines	197
Derivation	66	V. Adverbs	198
Adjective	68	VI. Prepositions	202
First and Second Declension	69	Prepositions in Composition	210
Third Declension	70	VII. Interjections	213
Rules for the formation of the		VIII. Conjunctions	214
Ablative	72	Signification of Words	215
Nominal Adjectives	74	PART III.	
Comparison of Adjectives	77	SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION	220
Irregular Comparison	81	Division of Sentences into Simple	
II. Pronoun	81	and Compound	221
1. Simple Pronouns	82	I. Simple Sentences	221
2. Compound Pronouns	85	Concord, or Agreement of	
3. Reciprocals	87	Words	221

	PAGE
Government of Words in Simple Sentences	226
I. Government of Substantives	226
II. Government of Adjectives	230
III. Government of Verbs	238
1. Verbs governing one case	238
2. Verbs governing two cases	250
Construction of Passive Verbs	255
Impersonal Verbs	257
Construction of the Infinitive	259
Construction of Participles, &c.	260
Gerunds	261
Supines	264
Construction of Adverbs	265
Prepositions	268
Interjections	270
Construction of Circumstances	270
Compound Sentences	275
Construction of Relatives	276
Construction of Conjunctions	280
Construction of Comparatives	284
Ablative Absolute	285
APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.	
II. Figures of Syntax	288
Ellipsis	288
Pleonasm	289
Enallage	289
Hyperbaton	290
III. Analysis and Translation	291
IV. Different kinds of Style	294
V. Figures of Rhetoric	295
1. Figures of Words, or Tropes	295
2. Repetition of Words	299
3. Figures of Thought	300

PART IV.

	PAGE
PROSODY, which treats of the Quantity of Syllables, of Accent, and Verse	303
Quantity of Syllables	304
1. Quantity of First and Middle Syllables	305
2. Quantity of Final Syllables	311
Quantity of Derivatives	314
Quantity of Compounds	315
Verse	316
Different Kinds of Feet	316
Different Kinds of Verse	317
Cæsura	318
Iambic Measure	320
Choriambic	321
Ionic	323
Figures in Scanning	324
Figures of Diction	326
Different Kinds of Poems	327
Combination of Verses in Poems	327
Different Metres used by Horace, and their Combinations	329
Index to the Odes of Horace	332

APPENDIX.

Punctuation, Capitals, &c.	333
Abbreviations, &c.	334
Division of the Roman Months	334
Roman Coins	336
Measures of Length	337
Measures of Capacity	337
Dry Measure	338
Additional Remarks on Roman Money,	338

THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

THE following rules for the Pronunciation of Latin, are such as prevail in the English Universities, and in the principal Colleges in the United States. They are in accordance with the standard laid down by Walker, (which it is desirable should be adopted wherever the English language is spoken,) that the Latin should be accented and pronounced by us, according to the prevailing analogies of our own language, without regard to the prosodial accent and quantity of the ancients.

RULES FOR THE ACCENT.

1. Monosyllables are of course accented.
2. Dyssyllables have always the accent on the first syllables, as *návis*, *béllum*.
3. In Polysyllables the accent is regulated by the quantity of the penult: if the penult be long it is accented, as, *amábam*, *docébam*, *amícus*, *honóris*, *secúrus*: if the penult be short, or common, the accent is thrown back in the antepenult; as, *hóminis*, *légere*, *mulieris*, *ténèbris*.

RULES FOR THE SOUND OF THE VOWEL.

4. Every vowel has either the long or the short sound which it has in English, excepting that *a* in the end of a word of more than one syllable is sounded broad; as, *fama*, *agrícòla*, where the final *a* is sounded like *ah* in Sarah.
5. The Diphthongs *æ* and *œ*, when they end an accented syllable, are pronounced like the long English *e*; as, *Cæsar*, *Œta*; but when they are followed by a consonant in the same syllable, like short *e*; as, *Cæsàris*, *Œdípus*.
6. The Diphthongs *ai*, *ei*, and *ui*, are read as separate syllables in prose; as, *a-io*, *cu-i*, *tu-i*, *de-inde*, *Thesè-us*; excepting *ui*, with *g* or *q* preceding; as *quis*, *sanguis*.

7. In **MONOSYLLABLES** when the vowel is the final letter, it has the long sound; as, *da, me, si, do, tu*: otherwise it has the short sound; as, *jam, et, in, non, nunc*.
8. Custom, in disregard of analogy, has given to all terminations in *es*, and to plural cases in *os*, the long sound; as, *es, amāres, pes, res, nos, hos, popūlos*.
9. In **DYSSYLLABLES** the vowel of the first syllable, when it comes before another vowel, or a single consonant, has the long sound; as, *Cato, rei, ibi, honos, cui*; but when it comes before two consonants or a double consonant, it has the short sound; as, *tandem, bellum, ille, longus, buxus, Pæstum*.
10. In **POLYSYLLABLES**, when the Penult is accented, its vowel, before another vowel, or single consonant, has the long sound; as, *orātor, speciēi, amicus, multōrum, secūrus*: but before two consonants or a double consonant, the short sound; as, *amantur, docentur, extinguo, respondens, Tibullus*.
11. If the Antepenult be accented, its vowel has the short sound; as, *trādita, exércitus, sidēra, sermōnibus, tantūmodo*. To this rule the following are the exceptions:
12. Exc. 1. When *u* comes before a single consonant, and when an accented vowel comes before another vowel, they have the long sound; as, *dūbie; júdices, oclānus, muliēres, procubuerant*.
13. Exc. 2. When the penultimate vowel is *e* or *i* before another vowel, the antepenultimate vowel, EXCEPT *i*, has the long sound; as *grátia, aggrédior, inópia, mülíer, perfídie, Scípío*.
14. Exc. 3. An accented vowel before a mute and a liquid, has usually the long sound; as, *sácrā pátria*.

SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

15. C. and G. are hard before *a, o*, and *u*, and soft before *e, i*, and *y*; as,

<i>carpo</i>	like	card,	<i>cera</i>	like	cent,
<i>colo</i>	"	colt,	<i>cibus,</i>	"	circle,
<i>culmen</i>	"	cucumber	<i>cycnus</i>	"	cycle,
<i>gaza</i>	"	gave,	<i>gelídus</i>	"	gelid,
<i>gorgon</i>	"	gone,	<i>gigas,</i>	"	giant,
<i>gustus</i>	"	gust,	<i>gyrus,</i>	"	gypsey.

16. *Ch* has the sound of *k*; as, *charta*, like *ch* in *character*.

THE
RUDIMENTS
OF
LATIN GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; words consist of one or more syllables; syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of Grammar.

LETTERS.

A letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar, which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.*

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels; *a, e, i, o, u, y*. All the rest are consonants.

A vowel makes a full sound by itself; as *a, e*.

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel; as, *b, d*.

* In English there is one letter more, viz. W.

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound*; and the sounds formed by the concurrence of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice; as, *p* in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p, b; t, d; c, k, q, and g*; but *b, d, and g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*; because their sounds may be continued, whereas the sound of *p, t, and k*, cannot be prolonged.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are *l, m, n, r, s, f*. The first four of these are called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r*; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable; as, *bla, stra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe, de, &c.*; but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as, *el, em, &c.*

The double consonants are, *x, z*, and, according to some grammarians, *j*. *X* is made up of *cs, ks, or gs*.

In Latin, *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong consists of two vowels forming one syllable, and pronounced by one impulse of the voice.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au, eu, ei*; as in *aurum, Eurus, omneis*. To these some, not improperly, add other three; namely, *ai*, as in *Maia*; *oi*, as in *Troia*; and *ui*, as in *Harpua*, or in *cui*, and *huic*, pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two; *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ*; as, *aetas*, or *ætas*, *oe*, or *æ*; as, *poena*, or *pæna*; in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately; thus, *aetas, poena*.

SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters, pronounced by one impulse of the voice; as, *a, ad, hanc*.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word, as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*; as in *lingua*, *qui*, *suadeo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Dissyllables*; and of more than two, *Polysyllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Polysyllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *ab-utor*, *in-ops*, *propter-ea*, *et-ënim*, *vel-ut*, &c.

Observe, a long syllable is marked with a horizontal line, [—]; as in *amāre*; or with a circumflex accent, [^]; as in *amāris*. A short syllable is marked with a curved line, [∪]; as in *omnibūs*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables and to verse will be treated of hereafter.

WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds, significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words is called *Etymology* or *Analogy*.*

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species*, or sort.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pious*, pious; *ëgo*, I; *döceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word and some syllable added; as, *impius*, impious; *dödöceo*, I unteach; *ëgömet*, I myself.

* All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus in the following sentence, "The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home," the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the*, *in*, and *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other ; as *pius*, pious ; *disco*, I learn ; *dōceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word ; as, *pietas*, piety ; *doctrina*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words are called *Parts of Speech*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight, viz :

1. *Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle* ; declined.
2. *Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, and Conjunction* ; undeclined.*

NOUN.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.†

SUBSTANTIVE.

A Substantive, or noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing ; as, *boy, school, book*.

Substantives are of two sorts ; *proper* and *common* names.

Proper names are the names appropriated to individuals ; as the names of persons and places ; such are *Cæsar, Rome*.

Common names stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts ; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them ; as, *animal, man, beast, fish, fowl, &c.*

Every particular being should have its own proper name ; but this is

* Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined*, which receive different changes on their last syllables, or their *terminations*.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words, which admit of different terminations, were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

† The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun* : it is only a word *added* to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality ; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude; men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "He is *an* Alexander;" or, "*the* Alexander of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns*; as, *hardness, goodness, whiteness, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders, Numbers, and Cases*.

GENDERS.

There are three genders; *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

Gender is the distinction of sex. In the nature of things, therefore, there are but two genders, the Masculine and Feminine. But in Latin, Gender is not only a *natural* distinction, but also a *grammatical distribution* of nouns into *sorts* or *kinds*, with respect to the terminations of adjectives with which they are construed. *Liber*, 'a book,' is masculine, because it is joined with that termination of adjectives which is applied only to males. *Ratio*, 'reason,' is feminine, because it is joined with that termination of adjectives which is applied only to females. *Opus*, 'a work,' is neuter, because it is joined with that termination of adjectives which cannot be applied either to males or females. *Neuter* is a pure Latin word, signifying 'neither:' when a noun, therefore, is said to be of the *neuter* gender, it means simply that it is 'neither' masculine nor feminine.

Grammarians distinguish the genders by the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hec*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

Nouns which are used to signify either the male or the female are said to be of the *common* gender; that is, are either masculine or feminine, according to the sense. Such nouns as are not found uniformly of the same grammatical gender, but sometimes of one gender and sometimes of another, are said to be of the *doubtful* gender.

The *common* gender differs from the *doubtful* in this, that, as the signification of the noun includes the two sexes, it is always put in the

masculine when applied to a male, and in the feminine when applied to a female ; as, *hic conjux*, a husband ; *hæc conjux*, a wife ; and is confined to the masculine and feminine gender. Whereas a noun of the doubtful gender, being so only by usage, and not in sense, may be either masculine or feminine, as, *hic finis*, or *hæc finis* : feminine or neuter, as, *hæc Præneste*, or *hoc Præneste* : or may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter, as, *penus*, *pecus*, and others.

General Rules concerning Gender.

1. Names of males are masculine ; as *Hômêrus*, Homer ; *pâter*, a father ; *poëta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine ; as, *Hêlêna*, Helen ; *mûlier*, a woman ; *uxor*, a wife ; *mâter*, a mother ; *sôrör*, a sister ; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender ; that is, *with reference to the sex*, either masculine or feminine ; as, *hic bos*, an ox ; *hæc bos*, a cow ; *hic pârens*, a father, *hæc pârens*, a mother.

4. Nouns which are sometimes found in one gender and sometimes in another, without reference to the sense, are of the doubtful gender ; as, *dies*, a day, either masculine or feminine ; *vulgus*, the rabble, either masculine or neuter.

OBSERVATIONS.

Obs. 1. *The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.*

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus *passer*, a sparrow, either male or female, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine ; so *âquila*, an eagle, either male or female, is feminine, because nouns in *a* of the first declension are feminine. These are called *epicene*, or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *fæmina* ; as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow ; *fæmina passer*, a female sparrow.

Obs. 2. *A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.*

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine ; because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine ; as, *hic Aprilis*, April ; *hic Aquilo*, the north wind ; *hic Africus*, the south west wind ; *hic Tibêris*, the river Tiber ; *hic Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination ; as, *hæc Matrôna*, the river Marne in France ; *hæc Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily ; *hoc Sôracte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships are feminine, because *terra* or *rêgio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nâvis*, are feminine ; as, *hæc Egyptus*, Egypt ; *Sâmos*, an island of that name ; *Cörinthus*, the

city of Corinth; *pōmus*, an apple-tree; *Centsurus*, the name of a ship. Thus also the names of poems, *hæc Ilias*, -*ados*, and *Odyssæa*, the two poems of Homer; *hæc Æneis*, -*idos*, a poem of Virgil; *hæc Eunūchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, *hic Pontus*, a country of that name; *hic Sulmo*, -*ōnis*; *Pesstnus*, -*untis*; *Hydrus*, -*untis*, names of towns; *hæc Persia*, -*idis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthāgo*, -*inis*, the city Carthage; *hoc Albion*, Britain; *hoc Cære*, *Reāte*, *Præneste*, *Tibur*, *Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Gelidd Præneste*. Juvenal. iii. 190; *Alta Ilion*. Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *oleaster*, *olestri*, a wild olive-tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cýttisus*, a kind of shrub; *rūbus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree; *lōtus*, the lote-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two, however, are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree; *ligustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sūber*, -*ēris*, the cork tree; *siler*, -*ēris*, the osier; *rōbur*, -*ōris*, oak of the hardest kind; *ācer*, -*ēris*, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *ar-bustum*, *quercētum*, *escūletum*, *sālictum*, *frūticētum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c., grow; also the names of fruits and timber; as, *pōmum* or *mālum*, an apple; *pīrum*, a pear; *ēbēnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

1. The following nouns are Masculine and Feminine, both in sense and grammatical construction :

Adolescens, a young man *Dux*, a leader.

or woman. *Exul*, an exile.

Affinis, a relation by marriage. *Hospes*, a host, a guest.

Antistes, a chief priest. *Hostis*, an enemy.

Auctor, an author. *Infans*, an infant.

Augur, an augur. *Interpres*, an interpreter.

Bos, an ox, or cow. *Judex*, a judge.

Canis, a dog, or bitch. *Juvenis*, a youth.

Civis, a citizen. *Miles*, a soldier.

Comes, a companion. *Municeps*, a burgess.

Conjux, a husband, or wife. *Nemo*, nobody.

Consors, a consort. *Par*, a mate, husband, or

Conviva, a guest. wife. *Parens*, a parent.

Custos, a keeper.

Patruelis, a cousin-german by the father's side.

Præs, a surety.

Præsul, a priest of Mars.

Princeps, a prince.

Sacerdos, a priest, or priest-

ess.

Satelles, a life-guard.

Sus, a swine.

Testis, a witness.

Vates, a prophet, or pro-

phetess.

Verna, a slave.

Vindex, an avenger.

2. The following are Masculine or Feminine in sense, but Masculine only in grammatical construction :

<i>Artifex</i> , an artist.	<i>Fur</i> , a thief.	<i>Obses</i> , a hostage.
<i>Auspex</i> , a soothsayer.	<i>Hæres</i> , an heir, an heiress.	<i>Opifex</i> , a workman.
<i>Cocles</i> , a person having but one eye.	<i>Homo</i> , a man or woman.	<i>Pedes</i> , a footman.
<i>Eques</i> , a horseman	<i>Index</i> , an informer.	<i>Pugil</i> , a boxer.
<i>Exlex</i> , an outlaw.	<i>Latro</i> , a robber.	<i>Senex</i> , an old person.
	<i>Libèri</i> , children.	

3. The following, though Masculine or Feminine in sense, are Feminine only in grammatical construction :

<i>Copias</i> , forces, troops.	<i>Opærae</i> , labourers.	<i>Vigiliae</i> , watchmen.
<i>Custodiae</i> , guards.	<i>Proles</i> , an offspring.	
<i>Excubiae</i> , sentinels.	<i>Soboles</i> , an offspring.	

4. Some nouns signifying Persons are Neuter with respect to their termination.

<i>Acroāma</i> , a jester.	<i>Mancipium</i> , a slave.
<i>Auxilia</i> , auxiliary troops.	<i>Servitium</i> , a slave.

NUMBER.

Number is the distinction of objects, whether as one, or more than one.

There are two numbers, the Singular which denotes one, as *homo*, 'a man;' or the aggregate of many taken collectively, as, *multitudo*, 'a multitude;' and the Plural, which denotes more than one, as *homines*, 'men.'

Some Latin nouns of the Plural number signify but one, as, *Athenae*, 'Athens;' others signify one or more, as, *nuptiæ*, 'a marriage,' or 'marriages.'

CASES.

Various methods are used in different languages to express the different connexions or relations of one thing to another. In English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive; in Latin by Declension or by different Cases, that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, 'a king;' *regis*, 'of a king.'

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called from *cado*, 'to fall,' because they fall, as it were, from the nominative, which is therefore named *casus rectus*, 'the straight case,' and the other cases, *casus obliqui*, 'the oblique cases.'

There are six cases, the Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Vocative, and the Ablative.

The Nominative simply expresses the name of a person or thing, and marks the subject of discourse, as *Alexander interfecit* 'Alexander slew.'

The Genitive generally expresses the relation of possession or property, and in English it has the sign *of* before it, or 's (s with an apostrophe) added to it, as *Amor Dei*, 'the love of God,' or 'God's love,' *Domus Cæsaris*, 'the house of Cæsar,' or 'Cæsar's house.'

The Dative is used to mark the object to which any thing is referred, whether it be acquisition or loss, and is generally translated with the signs *to* and *for*, though sometimes its true force can only be rendered by, *from* and *by*: as, *Hoc mihi datur*, 'this is given *to* me;' *Hoc mihi seritur* 'this is sown *for* me;' *Hoc mihi adimitur*, 'this is taken away *from* me.' *Nec cernitur ulli*, 'nor is he perceived *by* any one.'

The Accusative indicates the object to which the action of the verb passes; as, *Alexander interfecit Clitum*, 'Alexander slew *Clitus*.'

The Vocative points out the object called upon or addressed, with or without the sign *O*, as *O felix frater*, 'o happy brother,' or 'happy brother.'

The Ablative, (compounded of the preposition *ab*, 'from,' and *latum*, the supine of *fero*, 'to take,') often implies 'a taking away.' It also denotes concomitancy or accompaniment; as, *Ingressus est cum gladio*, 'he entered with a sword,' i. e. having at that time a sword along with him. When the preposition *cum*, 'with,' is not expressed, the Ablative may be considered as the *cause*, *manner*, or *instrument*, as, *Interfecit eum gladio*, 'he killed him with a sword;' that is, a sword was the *instrument* with which his death was effected. In English, the Ablative has before it the signs *with*, *from*, *for*, *by*, *in*, *through*.

DECLENSION.

Declension is the regular distribution of nouns according to their terminations, so that they may be distinguished from one another.

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called the *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth* declensions.

The different declensions are distinguished from

one another by the termination of the Genitive singular.

The Genitive of the	<i>First</i>	ends in	<i>æ</i> .
	<i>Second</i>	in	<i>i</i> .
	<i>Third</i>	in	<i>is</i> .
	<i>Fourth</i>	in	<i>ūs</i> .
	<i>Fifth</i>	in	<i>ei</i> .

GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative in both numbers; and in the Plural, these three cases end *always* in *a*.

The Nominative and Vocative* singular *generally*, and the Nominative and Vocative plural *always* in all Declensions end alike.

The Dative and Ablative plural end *always* alike in all declensions.

The Accusative plural of the first, third, fourth and fifth Declensions is formed from the Accusative singular by changing *m* into *s*.

The Ablative singular of the first, third, fourth, and fifth Declensions is formed from the Accusative singular, by dropping *m*.

The Genitive plural is formed from the Ablative singular by adding *rum* in the first, second, and fifth Declensions, and *um* in the fourth.

Proper names, for the most part, want the Plural.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender: (*the rest are Greek.*)

TERMINATIONS.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	} <i>a</i> .	Nom.	} <i>æ</i> .
Voc.		Voc.	
Gen.	} <i>æ</i> .	Gen.	<i>arum</i> .
Dat.		Acc.	<i>as</i> .
Acc. <i>am</i> .		Dat.	} <i>is</i> .
Abl. <i>â</i> .		Abl.	

*Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomas*, *Thoma*; *Anchises*, *Anchise*; *Pâris*, *Pari*; *Panthus*, *Panthu*; *Pallas*, *-antis*, *Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension, oftener retain the *s*; as *ô Achilles*, rarely *-e*; *O Socrâtes*, seldom *-e*; and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *O Thais*, *Mysis*, *Pallas*, *-âdis*, the goddess Minerva, &c.

Penna, a pen. fem.

Singular.

Plural.

N. penna,	a pen ;	N. pennæ,	pens ;
G. pennæ,	of a pen ;	G. pennârum,	of pens ;
D. pennæ,	to a pen ;	D. pennis,	to pens ;
A. pennam,	a pen ;	A. pennas,	pens ;
V. penna,	O pen ;	V. pennæ,	O pens ;
A. pennâ,	with a pen.	A. pennis,	with pens.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine. *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea ; *cômêta*, a comet ; *planêta*, a planet ; and sometimes, *talpa*, a mole ; and *dâma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter. *Pandectæ*, ' pandects,' is rather masc. than fem.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *âi* ; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulâi* : and sometimes likewise in *as*, which form the compounds of *fâmilia* usually retain ; as, *mâter-fâmiliâs*, the mistress of a family ; genit. *matris-fâmiliâs* ; nom. plur. *matres-fumiliâs*, or *matres-familiârûm*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns, have more frequently *âbus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us*, of the second declension :

<i>Ânîma</i> , the soul, the life.	<i>Fîlia</i> , & <i>Nâta</i> , a daughter.
<i>Dea</i> , a goddess.	<i>Liberta</i> , a freed woman.
<i>Equa</i> , a mare.	<i>Mûla</i> , a she-mule.
<i>Famûla</i> , a female servant.	

Thus *deâbus*, *filiâbus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

But when they are construed with *Duâbus* or *Ambâbus*, or the distinction is clear from the context, the termination is in *is* only : thus Cicero has *duâbus anîmis* : but Livy xxiv. 26 has *duâbus filiâbus*.

GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es*, are masculine ; nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna* ; only they have *am*, or *an* in the accusative ; as, *Ænêas*, Æneas, the name of a man ; gen. *Ænêæ*, dat. *-æ*, acc. *-am*, or *-an*, voc. *-a*, abl. *â*. So *Bôreas*, *-æ*, the north wind ; *tiâras*, *-æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry ; as *Ossa*, acc. *-am* or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

Nom.	Anchises,	Penelöpe,	Thyestes,	Epitöme,
Gen.	Anchisæ,	Penelöpes,	Thyestæ,	Epitömes,
Dat.	Anchisæ,	Penelöpæ,	Thyestæ,	Epitömae,
Acc.	Anchisen,	Penelöpen,	Thyesten,	Epitömen,
Voc.	Anchise, or a,	Penelöpe,	Thyesta,	Epitöme,
Abl.	Anchise, or a.	Penelöpe.	Thyeste.	Epitöme.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.*

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrida*, for *Atrides*; *Persa*, for *Perses*, a Persian; *geometra*, for *-tres*, a geometrician; *Circa*, for *Circe*; *epitöma*, for *-me*, an abridgement; *grammätica*, for *-ce*, grammar; *rhêtörica*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*. (*os* and *on* are Greek terminations.)

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>er</i> , <i>ir</i> , <i>ur</i> , <i>us</i> , <i>um</i> ; <i>os</i> , <i>on</i> .	Nom. } <i>i</i> or <i>a</i> .
Gen. <i>i</i> .	Voc. }
Dat. } <i>o</i> .	Gen. <i>orum</i> .
Abl. }	Dat. } <i>is</i> .
Acc. <i>um</i> , or like the nom.	Abl. }
Voc. <i>e</i> , or like the nom.	Acc. <i>os</i> , or <i>a</i> .

Gēner, a son-in-law, masc.

Singular.

Nom. gēner,		a son-in-law,
Gen. genēri,	of	a son-in-law,
Dat. genēro,	to, or for	a son-in-law,
Acc. genērum,		a son-in-law,
Voc. genēr,	O	son-in-law,
Abl. genēro, with, from, or by		a son-in-law.

* The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*. We sometimes find the genit. plural contracted; as, *Cælicolūm*, for *Cælicolārum*; *Ænēddūm*, for *Ænēdūm*.

Plural.		
Nom. genēri,		sons-in-law,
Gen. generōrum,	of	sons-in-law,
Dat. genēris,	to, or for	sons-in-law,
Acc. genēros,		sons-in-law,
Voc. genēri,	O	sons-in-law,
Abl. genēris,	with, from, or by	sons-in-law.

After the same manner decline, *sōcer*, -ēri, a father-in-law; *puer*, -ēri, a boy: So *furfur*, a villain; *Luctifer*, the morning star; *adulter*, an adulterer; *armiger*, an armour-bearer; *presbyter*, an elder; *Mulciber*, a name of the god Vulcan; *vesper*, the evening; and *iber*, -ēri, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the gen. long, and its compound *Celtiber*, -ēri: Also, *vir*, *viri*, a man, the only noun in *ir*; and its compounds, *lōvir*, a brother-in-law; *semivir*, *duumvir*, *triumvir*, &c. And likewise *satur*, -ūri, full, (of old, *saturus*), an adjective.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive; as,

Ager, a field, masc.			
Singular.		Plural.	
N. āger,	a field,	N. agri,	fields,
G. agri,	of a field,	G. agrōrum,	of fields,
D. agro,	to a field,	D. agris,	to fields,
A. agrum,	a field,	A. agros,	fields,
V. ager,	O field,	V. agri,	O fields,
A. agro,	with a field.	A. agris.	with fields.

In like manner decline,

Aper, a wild boar.	Cāper, a he-goat.	Fāber, a workman.
Arbiter, & -tra, an arbitrator	Cōlūber, & -bra, a serpent.	Māgister, a master.
or judge.		Mīnister, a servant.
Auster, the south wind.	Culter, the coulter of a plough, a knife.	Onāger, a wild ass.
Cancer, a crab fish.		Scalper, a lancet.

Also, *liber*, the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri*; but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the god of wine, have *libēri*. So likewise proper names, *Alexander*, *Evander*, *Periander*, *Mēnander*, *Teucer*, *Mēleāger*, &c. gen. *Alexandri*, *Evandri*, &c.

Dōmīnus, a lord, masc.			
<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. dōmīnus,	a lord,	N. dōmīni,	lords,
G. dōmīni,	of a lord,	G. dōmīnōrum,	of lords,
D. dōmīno,	to a lord,	D. dōmīnis,	to lords,
A. dōmīnum,	a lord,	A. dōmīnos,	lords,
V. dōmīne,	O lord,	V. dōmīni,	O lords,
A. dōmīno,	with a lord.	A. dōmīnis,	with lords.

Regnum, a kingdom, neut.

Singular.

Plural.

N. regnum,	a kingdom,	N. regna,	kingdoms,
G. regni,	of a kingdom,	G. regnōrum,	of kingdoms,
D. regnō,	to a kingdom,	D. regnis,	to kingdoms,
A. regnum,	a kingdom,	A. regna,	kingdoms,
V. regnum,	O kingdom,	V. regna,	O kingdoms,
A. regno,	with a kingdom.	A. regnis,	with kingdoms.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine; *hūmus*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve; *miltus*, vermillion; also *Domus*, 'a house,' partly of the fourth Declension.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os*;

Abyssus, a bottomless pit,	ner of speech.	Pēriōdus, a period.
Antidōtū, a preservative against poison.	Diāmetros, the diameter of a circle.	Pērīmetros, the circumference.
Arctos, the Bear, a constel- lation near the north pole.	Diphthongus, a diphthong.	Phārus, a watch-tower.
Carbāsus, a sail.	Erēmus, a desert.	Plinthus, the foot of a pillar.
Diālectus, a dialect or man-	Lecythus, a vial.	Synōdus, an assembly.
	Mēthōdus, a method.	

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine, (See observations on Gender, page 18;) as,

Amēthystus, an amethyst.	Tōpazius, a topaz.	Byssus, fine flax or linen.
Chrysolīthus, a chrysolite.		Costus, costmary.
Chrysōphrāsus, a kind of topaz.	Biblus, { an Egyptian reed,	Crōcus, saffron.
ChrySTALLUS, crystal.	Pāpȳrus, { of which paper was made.	Hyssōpus, hyssop.
Leucōchrysus, a jacinth.		Nardus, spikenard.
Sapphirus, a sapphire.		

Other names of jewels are generally masculine; as, *bēryllus*, the beryl; *carbunculus*, a carbuncle; *pyrōpus*, a ruby; *smāragdus*, an emerald: And also names of plants; as, *aspārāgus*, asparagus or sparrowgrass; *ellebōrus*, ellebore; *raphānus*, radish or colewort; *intȳtus*, endive or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow are either masculine or feminine:

Atōmus, an atom.	Barbītus, a harp.	Grossus, a green fig.
Balānus, the fruit of the palm tree, ointment.	Cāmēlus, a camel.	Pēnus, a store-house.
	Cōlus, a distaff.	Phāsēlus, a little ship.

Exc. 3. *Virus*, poison; *pēlāgus*, the sea; are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

Exc. 5. *Sexus*, *i*, a sex, of the Second Declension, is neut.; but *Sexus*, *ūs*, of the Fourth Declension, is masc.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as, *Hōrātius*, *Hōrāti*; *Virgilius*, *Virgīli*; *Georgius*,

Georgi, names of men: *Lārius*, *Lāri*; *Mincius*, *Minci*; names of lakes. *Filius*, a son, also has *fili*; *gēnius*, one's guardian angel, *geni*; and *deus*, a god, has *deus* in the voc. and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, than *dēi* and *dēis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, has *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e* for *i*, as, *tabellarius*, *tabellarie*, a letter-carrier; *pius*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Dēlius*, *Dēlie*; *Tīrynthius*, *Tīrynthie*; and these possessives, *Laērtius*, *Laērtie*; *Saturnus*, *Saturnie*; &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us* like the nominative; as, *fluvius Latinus*, for *fluvie*, *Latine*. Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely; thus, *Audi tu, pōpulus*, for *pōpule*. Liv. i. 24.

The poets also change nouns in *er* into *us*; as *Evander*, or *Euandrus*, vocative, *Evander* or *Evandrē*. So *Meander*, *Leander*, *Tymber*, *Teucer*, &c.; and so anciently *puer* in the vocative had *puēre*, from *puērus*.

Note. When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets for the sake of quantity; as, *tugūrī*, for *tugurii*; *ingēnī*, for *ingenii*, &c.

The Genitive plural *ōrum* in many words, especially those which denote money, weight and measure, is often contracted into *ēm*, as *Sestertium*, *nummum*, *modium*, *talentum*, for *Sestertiōrum*, *nummorum*, &c. So also, *Deum*, *liberum*, *fabrum*, *duumvīrum*, *oppidum*, *exilium*, *prodigium*, *factum*; and in poetry, *Teucrum*, *Gratum*, *Argivum*, *Danaum*, *Pelasgum*, &c., for *Teucrorum*, &c.

Deus, 'God,' masc. is thus declined.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>Deus</i> ,	N. <i>Dei</i> , <i>Dii</i> , or <i>Dī</i> , <i>the Gods</i> ,
G. <i>Dei</i> ,	G. <i>Deōrum</i> , or <i>Deūm</i> , <i>of the Gods</i> ,
D. <i>Deo</i> , <i>to, or for God</i> ,	D. <i>Deis</i> , <i>Diis</i> , or <i>Dis</i> , <i>to the Gods</i> ,
A. <i>Deum</i> ,	A. <i>Deos</i> , <i>the Gods</i> ,
V. <i>Deus</i> ,	V. <i>Dei</i> , <i>Dii</i> , or <i>Dī</i> , <i>O the Gods</i> ,
A. <i>Deo</i> , <i>from, or by God</i> .	A. <i>Deis</i> , <i>Diis</i> , or <i>Dis</i> , <i>from or by the Gods</i> .

GREEK NOUNS.

Os and *on* are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *Ilion*, the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins; *Alphēus*, *Ilum*, which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *eos* or *ēus* are sometimes contracted in the Genitive; as *Orphēus*, gen. *Orphēi*, *Orphēi*, or *Orphēi*. So *Thēsēus*, *Promethēus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the genitive singular in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, genitive *Androgeo*, or *-ēi*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atho*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both of which are also found in the third declension; thus, nominative *Androgeo*, genitive *Androgeōnis*. So *Atho*, or *Athon*, *-ōnis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the genitive in *u*; as *Mēnandru*, *Apollodōru*, for *Mēnandri*, *Apollodōri*. Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the accusative in *um* or *on*; as, *Delus*, or *Delos*, accusative *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the genitive plural in *ōn*; as, *Georgica*, genitive plural *Georgicōn*, books which treat of husbandry, as, Virgil's *Georgicks*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thirteen, *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i, o, y, c, d, l, t, x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*, with the second; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A, i, and y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>a, e, i, &c.</i>	Nom. }
Gen. <i>is.</i>	Acc. } <i>es, a, or ia.</i>
Dat. <i>i.</i>	Voc. }
Acc. <i>em</i> , or like the nom.	Gen. } <i>um, or ium.</i>
Voc. like the nom.	Dat. }
Abl. <i>e, or i.</i>	Abl. } <i>ibus,</i>

Sermo, a speech, masc.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>sermo</i> , <i>a speech,</i>	N. <i>sermōnes</i> , <i>speeches,</i>
G. <i>sermōnis</i> , <i>of a speech,</i>	G. <i>sermōnum</i> , <i>of speeches,</i>
D. <i>sermōni</i> , <i>to a speech,</i>	D. <i>sermonibus</i> , <i>to speeches,</i>
A. <i>sermōnem</i> , <i>a speech,</i>	A. <i>sermōnes</i> , <i>speeches,</i>
V. <i>sermo</i> , <i>O speech,</i>	V. <i>sermōnes</i> , <i>O speeches,</i>
A. <i>sermōne</i> , <i>with a speech.</i>	A. <i>sermonibus</i> , <i>with speeches.</i>

*Rûpes, a rock, fem.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. rûpes,	<i>a rock,</i>	N. rûpes,	<i>rock</i>
G. rupis,	<i>of a rock,</i>	G. rupium,	<i>of rocks,</i>
D. rupi,	<i>to a rock,</i>	D. rupibus,	<i>to rocks.</i>
A. rupem,	<i>a rock,</i>	A. rupes,	<i>rocks,</i>
V. rupes,	<i>O rock,</i>	V. rupes,	<i>O rocks,</i>
A. rupe,	<i>with a rock.</i>	A. rupibus,	<i>with rocks.</i>

*Lâpis, a stone, masc.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. lâpis,	<i>a stone,</i>	N. lâpides,	<i>stones,</i>
G. lapidis,	<i>of a stone.</i>	G. lapidum,	<i>of stones,</i>
D. lapidi,	<i>to a stone,</i>	D. lapidibus,	<i>to stones,</i>
A. lapidem,	<i>a stone,</i>	A. lapides,	<i>stones,</i>
V. lapis,	<i>O stone,</i>	V. lapides,	<i>O stones,</i>
A. lapide,	<i>with a stone.</i>	A. lapidibus,	<i>with stones.</i>

*Câput, a head, neut.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. câput,	<i>a head,</i>	N. câpita,	<i>heads,</i>
G. capitis,	<i>of a head,</i>	G. capitum,	<i>of heads,</i>
D. capiti,	<i>to a head,</i>	D. capitibus,	<i>to heads,</i>
A. caput,	<i>a head,</i>	A. câpita,	<i>heads,</i>
V. caput,	<i>O head,</i>	V. câpita,	<i>O heads,</i>
A. capite,	<i>with a head.</i>	A. capitibus,	<i>with heads.</i>

*Sedîle, a seat, neut.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. sêdile,	<i>a seat,</i>	N. sedilia,	<i>seats,</i>
G. sedilis,	<i>of a seat,</i>	G. sedilium,	<i>of seats,</i>
D. sedili,	<i>to a seat,</i>	D. sedilibus,	<i>to seats,</i>
A. sedile,	<i>a seat,</i>	A. sedilia,	<i>seats,</i>
V. sedile,	<i>O seat,</i>	V. sedilia,	<i>O seats,</i>
A. sedili,	<i>with a seat.</i>	A. sedilibus,	<i>with seats.</i>

*Iter, a journey, neut.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. iter,	<i>a journey,</i>	N. itinëra,	<i>journeys,</i>
G. itinëris,	<i>of a journey,</i>	G. itinërum,	<i>of journeys,</i>
D. itinëri,	<i>to a journey,</i>	D. itinëribus,	<i>to journeys,</i>
A. iter,	<i>a journey,</i>	A. itinëra,	<i>journeys,</i>
V. iter,	<i>O journey,</i>	V. itinëra,	<i>O journeys,</i>
A. itinëre,	<i>with a journey.</i>	A. itinëribus,	<i>with journeys.</i>

Opus, *a work* neut.*Singular.**Plural.*

N. ōpūs,	<i>a work,</i>	N. ōpēra,	<i>works,</i>
G. opēris,	<i>of a work,</i>	G. opērum,	<i>of works,</i>
D. opēri,	<i>to a work,</i>	D. opērībus,	<i>to works,</i>
A. opus,	<i>a work,</i>	A. opēra,	<i>works,</i>
V. opus,	<i>O work,</i>	V. opēra,	<i>O works,</i>
A. opēre,	<i>with a work.</i>	A. opērībus,	<i>with works.</i>

Pārens, *a parent*, common gender.*Singular.**Plural.*

N. pārens,	<i>a parent,</i>	N. pārentes,	<i>parents,</i>
G. parentis,	<i>of a parent,</i>	G. parentū,*	<i>of parents,</i>
D. parenti,	<i>to a parent,</i>	D. parentībus,	<i>to parents,</i>
A. parentem,	<i>a parent,</i>	A. parentes,	<i>parents,</i>
V. parens,	<i>O parent,</i>	V. parentes,	<i>O parents,</i>
A. parente,	<i>with a parent.</i>	A. parentībus,	<i>with parents.</i>

OF THE GENDER AND GENITIVE OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A, E, I, and Y.

1. Nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, and *y*, are neuter.Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ātis*; as, *diadēma*, *diademātis*, a crown.Dogma, *an opinion*, neut.*Singular.**Plural.*

N. dogma,
G. dogmātis,
D. dogmāti,
A. dogma,
V. dogma,
A. dogmāte.

N. dogmāta,
G. dogmātum,
D. dogmātībus,
A. dogmāta,
V. dogmāta,
A. dogmātībus.

Ænigma, *a riddle*,Apōphthegma, *a short,*
*pithy saying.*Arōma, *sweet spices.*Axiōma, *a plain truth.*Diplōma, *a charter.*Epigramma, *an inscription.*Nūmisma, *a coin.*Phasma, *an apparition.*Poēma, *a poem,*Schēma, *a scheme, or*
*figure.*Sōphisma, *a deceitful ar-**gument.*Stemma, *a pedigree.*Stigma, *a mark or brand,*
*a disgrace.*Strātāgēma, *an artful con-*
*trivance.*Thēma, *a theme, a sub-*
*ject to write or speak on.*Tōreuma, *a carved ves-*
*sel.** Nouns in *ns* and *as* from their genitive plural in *ium* and *ūm*, but oftener admit a syncope of the *i*.

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rîte, retis, a net. So,*

Ancile, <i>a shield.</i>	Crināle, <i>a pin for the hair.</i>	Ovile, <i>a sheep fold.</i>
Aplustre, <i>the flag of a ship.</i>	Cūbile, <i>a couch.</i>	Præsepe, <i>a stall; a bee-hive.</i>
Campestre, <i>a pair of drawers.</i>	Equile, <i>a stable for horses.</i>	Sēcāle, <i>rye.</i>
Cochleāre, <i>a spoon.</i>	Lāqueāre, <i>a ceiled roof.</i>	Suile, <i>a sow-cote.</i>
Conclāve, <i>a room.</i>	Mantile, <i>a towel.</i>	Tibiāle, <i>a stocking.</i>
	Mōnile, <i>a necklace.</i>	
	Nāvāle, <i>a dock or place for shipping.</i>	

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as *gummi, gum; zingibēri, ginger*; but some Greek nouns add *itis*; as, *hydromēti, hydromelitis, water and honey sodden together, mead.*

Nouns in *y* add *os*; as *mōly, molyos, an herb; mīsy, -yos, vitriol.*

O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis*; as,

Sermo, sermōnis, speech; draco, dracōnis, a dragon. So,

Agāso, <i>a horse-keeper.</i>	Equiso, <i>a groom or ostler.</i>	Prædo, <i>a robber.</i>
Aquilo, <i>the north wind.</i>	Erro, <i>a wanderer.</i>	Pulmo, <i>the lungs.</i>
Arrhābo, <i>an earnest-penny, a pledge.</i>	Fullo, <i>a fuller of cloth.</i>	Pūcio, <i>a little child.</i>
Bālatro, <i>a pitiful fellow.</i>	Helluo, <i>a glutton.</i>	Salmo, <i>a salmon.</i>
Bambālio, <i>a stutterer.</i>	Histrio, <i>a player.</i>	Sannio, <i>a buffoon.</i>
Bāro, <i>a blockhead.</i>	Latro, <i>a robber.</i>	Sāpo, <i>soap.</i>
Būbo, <i>an owl.</i>	Lēno, <i>a pimp.</i>	Sīpho, <i>a pipe or tube.</i>
Būfo, <i>a toad.</i>	Lūdīo, & -ius, <i>a player.</i>	Spādo, <i>an eunuch.</i>
Cālo, <i>a soldier's slave.</i>	Lurco, <i>a glutton.</i>	Stōlo, <i>a shoot or scion.</i>
Cāpo, <i>a capon.</i>	Mango, <i>a slave-merchant.</i>	Strābo, <i>a goggle-eyed person.</i>
Carbo, <i>a coal.</i>	Mirmillo, <i>a fencer.</i>	Tēmo, <i>the pole or draught-son.</i>
Caupo, <i>an inn-keeper.</i>	Mōrio, <i>a fool.</i>	Tiro, <i>a raw soldier.</i>
Cerdo, <i>a cobbler, or one who follows a mean trade.</i>	Mucro, <i>the point of a weapon.</i>	Umbo, <i>the boss of a shield.</i>
Cinifo, <i>a frizzler of hair.</i>	Mūlio, <i>a muleteer.</i>	Upilio, <i>a shepherd.</i>
Crabro, <i>a wasp or hornet.</i>	Nēbūlo, <i>a knave.</i>	Vōlo, <i>a volunteer.</i>
Cūrio, <i>the chief of a ward or curia.</i>	Pāvo, <i>a peacock.</i>	
	Pēro, <i>a kind of shoe.</i>	
	Præco, <i>a common crier.</i>	

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as, *rātio, ratiōnis, reason. As,*

Oratio, 'a speech,' fem.

Singular.		Plural.
N. oratio,	}	N. oratiōnes,
G. oratiōnis,		G. oratiōnum,
D. oratiōni,		D. oratiōnibus,
A. oratiōnem,		A. oratiōnes,
V. oratio,		V. oratiōnes,
A. oratiōne.		A. oratiōnibus.

Captio, a quirk.	Pensio, a payment.	Sanctio, a confirmation.
Cautio, caution, care.	Perduellio, treason.	Sectio, the confiscation
Concio, an assembly, a speech.	Portio, a part.	or forfeiture of one's goods.
Cessio, a yielding.	Pōtio, drink.	Sēditio, a mutiny.
Dictio, a word.	Prōdītio, treachery.	Sissio, a sitting.
Dēdītio, a surrender.	Proscriptio, a proscription, ordering citizens to be slain, and confiscating their effects.	Statio, a station.
Lectio, a lesson.	Quaestio, an inquiry.	Suspicio, mistrust.
Lēgio, a legion, a body of men.	Rēbellio, rebellion.	Tīllatio, a tickling.
Mentio, mention.	Rēgio, a country.	Translatio, a transferring.
Nōtio, a notion or idea.	Rēlatio, a telling.	Usūcāpio, the enjoyment of a thing by prescription.
Opinio, an opinion.	Rēligio, religion.	Vacatio, freedom from labour, &c.
Optio, a choice.	Rēmissio, a slackening.	Visio, an apparition.
Oratio, a speech.		

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine ; as,

Curculio, the throat-pipe, the weasand.	Scipio, a staff.	Unio, a pearl.
Pāplio, a butterfly.	Scorpio, a scorpion.	Vespertilio, a bat.
Pūgio, a dagger.	Septentrio, the north.	Ternio, the number three.
Pūcio, a little child.	Stellio, a lizard.	Quāternio, ——— four.
	Tītio, a firebrand.	Sēnio, ——— six.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, are feminine, and have the genitive in *inis* ; as *arundo*, *arundinis*, a reed ; *imāgo*, *imaginis*, an image.

Singular.

N. *arundo*,
G. *arundinis*,
D. *arundini*,
A. *arundinem*,
V. *arundo*,
A. *arundine*.

Arundo, a reed, fem.

Plural.

N. *arundines*,
G. *arundinum*,
D. *arundinibus*,
A. *arundines*,
V. *arundines*,
A. *arundinibus*.

So,

Ærugo, rust (of brass.)	Hirundo, a swallow.	Sartago, a frying pan.
Cāligo, darkness.	Intercāpēdo, a space between.	Scātūrigo, a spring.
Cartilāgo, a gristle.	Lānugo, down.	Testūdo, a tortoise.
Crēpido, a creek, bank.	Lentigo, a pimple.	Torpēdo, a numbness.
Farrāgo, a mixture.	Origo, an origin.	Uligo, the natural moisture of the earth.
Ferrūgo, rust (of iron.)	Porrigo, scurf, or scales in the head ; dandruff.	Vālētūdo, health.
Formido, fear.	Prōpāgo, a lineage.	Vertigo, a dizziness.
Fūligo, soot.	Rūbigo, rust, mildew.	Virgo, a virgin.
Grando, hail.		Vōrāgo, a gulf.
Hīrūdo, a horse-leech.		

But the following are masculine :

Cardo, -inis, a hinge.	Margo, -inis, the brink of a river ; also feminine.
Cūdo, -ōnis, a leather cap.	Ordo, -inis, order.
Harpāgo, -ōnis, a drag.	Tendo, -inis, a tendon.
Lāgo, -ōnis, a spade.	Udo, -ōnis, a linen or woollen sock.

Cūpido, desire, is often masc. with the poets; but in prose always fem.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *nis* :

Apollo, -*nis*, the god *Apollo*.
Hōmo, -*nis*, a man or woman.

Nēmo, -*nis*, m. or f. no body.
Turbo, -*nis*, m. a whirlwind.

Cāro flesh, fem. has *carnis*. *Anio*, masc. the name of a river, *Aniēnis*. *Nerio*, *Neriēnis*, the wife of the god Mars; from the obsolete nominatives *Anien*, *Nerien*. *Turbo*, the name of a man, has *ōnis*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *ūs* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as *Dido*, the name of a woman; genit. *Didūs*; dat. *Didō*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis*: so *ēcho*, -*ūs*, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo*, -*ūs*, the name of a ship; *kālo*, -*ōnis*, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

Dido, *Dido*, the name of a woman, fem.

Sing.

Nom. *Dido*,
Gen. *Didōnis* or *Didūs*,
Dat. *Didōni* or *Didō*,
Acc. *Didōnem* or *Didō*,
Voc. *Dido*,
Abl. *Didōne* or *Didō*.

C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

Animāl, *animālis*, a living creature; *tōral*, -*ālis*, a bed-cover; *hālec*, *halēcis*, a kind of pickle. So,

Cervical, a bolster.
Cūbital, a cushion.

Mīnerval, entry-money.
Mīnūtal, minced meat.

Pūteal, a well-cover.
Vectīgal, a tax.

Except, *Consul*, -*ūlis*, m. a consul.
Fel, *fellis*, n. gall.
Lac, *lactis*, n. milk.
Mel, *mellis*, n. honey.

Mūgil, *īlis*, m. a mullet-fish.
Sal, *sālis*, m. or n. salt.
Sāles, -*ium*, pl. m. witty sayings.
Sol, *sōlis*, m. the sun.

D is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *Dāvid*, *Davidis*.

N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

Cānon, -ōnis, <i>a rule.</i>	Lien, -ēnis, <i>the mill.</i>	Ren, rēnis, <i>the reins.</i>
Dæmon, -ōnis, <i>a spirit.</i>	Pæan, ānis, <i>a song.</i>	Splen, -ēnis, <i>the spleen.</i>
Delphin, -īnis, <i>a dolphin.</i>	Phýsiognōmon, -ōnis, <i>one who guesses at the dis-</i>	Sýren, -ēnis, <i>f. a Syren.</i>
Gnōmon, -ōnis, <i>the cock of a dial.</i>	<i>positions of men from the face.</i>	Titan, -ānis, <i>the sun.</i>
Hýmen, -ēnis, <i>the god of marriage.</i>		

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men*, are neuter, and make their genitive in *inis* ; as, *flumen, fluminis*, a river. So,

Abdōmen, <i>the paunch.</i>	Discrīmen, <i>a difference.</i>	Omen, <i>a presage.</i>
Acūmen, <i>sharpness.</i>	Exāmen, <i>a swarm of bees.</i>	Pūtāmen, <i>a nut-shell.</i>
Agmen, <i>an army on march.</i>	Fōrāmen, <i>a hole.</i>	Sagmen, <i>vervain, an herb.</i>
Alūmen, <i>alum.</i>	Germen, <i>a sprout.</i>	Sēmen, <i>a seed.</i>
Blūtūmen, <i>a kind of clay.</i>	Grāmen, <i>grass.</i>	Spēcīmen, <i>a proof.</i>
Cācūmen, <i>the top.</i>	Lēgūmen, <i>all kinds of pulse.</i>	Stāmen, <i>the warp.</i>
Carmen, <i>a song, a poem.</i>	Lūmen, <i>light.</i>	Subtēmen, <i>the woof.</i>
Cognōmen, <i>a sir-name.</i>	Nōmen, <i>a name:</i>	Tegmen, <i>a covering.</i>
Cōlūmen, <i>a support.</i>	Nūmen, <i>the Deity.</i>	Vīmen, <i>a twig.</i>
Crimen, <i>a crime.</i>		Vōlūmen, <i>a folding.</i>

The following nouns are likewise neuter ;

Glūten, -īnis, <i>glue.</i>	Inguen, -īnis, <i>the groin.</i>
Unguen, -īnis, <i>ointment.</i>	Pollen, -īnis, <i>fine flour.</i>

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *inis* ; *pecten*, a comb ; *tūbicen*, a trumpeter ; *tūbicen*, a piper ; and *oscen*, or *oscēnis*, sc. *avis*, f. a bird which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine ; *Sindon*, -ōnis, fine linen ; *ūādon*, -ōnis, a nightingale ; *halcyon*, -ōnis, a bird called the king's fisher ; *icon*, -ōnis, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis* ; as, *Laōmēdon*, -ontis, a king of Troy. So *Achēron*, *chamæleon*, *Phaëthon*, *Chāron*, &c.

AR and UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive ; as,

Calcar, *a spur*, neut.

Singular.		Plural.
Nom. calcar,		Nom. calcāria,
Gen. calcāris,		Gen. calcārium,
Dat. calcāri,		Dat. calcaribus,
Acc. calcar,		Acc. calcāria,
Voc. calcar,		Voc. calcāria,
Abl. calcāri.*		Abl. calcaribus.

* See Exc. in Abl. Sing. page 45. Neuter nouns in *ur* have the Abl. Sing. in *e*, and the Nom. Plur. in *a*.

So,

Gutter, -ūris, *the throat*.
 Jubar, -āris, *a sun-beam*.
 Lăcunar, -āris, *a ceiling*.
 Murmur, -ūris, *a noise*.

Nectar, -āris, *drink of the gods*.
 Pulvinar, -āris, *a pillow*.
 Sulphur, -ūris, *sulphur*.

Except,

Ebur, -ōris, *n. ivory*.
 Far, farris, *n. corn*.
 Femur, -ōris, *n. the thigh*.
 Furfur, -ūris, *m. bran*.
 Fur, furis, *m. a thief*.
 Hepar, -ātis, or ātos, *n. the liver*.

Jecur, -ōris, or jecinōris, *n. the liver*.
 Rōbur, -ōris, *n. strength*.
 Sălar, -āris, *m. a trout*.
 Turtur, -ūris, *m. a turtle-dove*.
 Vultur, -ūris, *m. a vulture*.

ER and OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is* ; as,

Anser, anseris, a goose or gander ; agger, -ēris, a rampart ; aer, -ēris, the air ; carcer, -ēris, a prison ; asser, -ēris, and asses, -is, a plank ; dolor, -ōris, pain ; color, -ōris, a colour. So,

Actor, a doer, a pleader.	Odor, and -os, a smell.	Splendor, brightness.
Crēditor, he that trusts or lends.	Olor, a swan,	Sponsor, a surety.
Cruor, gore.	Pador, filth.	Squālor, filthiness.
Dēbitor, a debtor.	Pastor, a shepherd.	Stūpor, dulness.
Fætor, an ill smell.	Prætor, a commander.	Sūtor, a sewer.
Honor, honour.	Pūdor, shame.	Tēpor, warmth.
Lector, a reader.	Rūbor, blushing.	Terror, dread.
Lictor, an officer among the Romans, who attended the magistrates.	Rūmor, a report.	Tīmor, fear.
Livor, paleness, malice.	Sāpor, a taste.	Tonsor, a barber.
Nidor, a strong smell.	Sartor, a cobbler or tailor.	Tūtor, a guardian.
	Sātor, a sower, a father.	Vāpor, a vapour.
	Sōpor, sleep.	Vēnātor, a hunter.

Rhētor, a rhetorician, has *rhetōris* ; castor, a beaver, -ōris.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter :

Acer, -ēris, *a maple tree*.
 Ador, -ōris, *fine wheat*.
 Œquor, -ōris, *a plain, the sea*.
 Cādāver, -ēris, *a dead carcass*.
 Cīcer, -ēris, *vetches*.
 Cor, cordis, *the heart*.
 Iter, itinēris, *a journey*.

Marmor, -ōris, *marble*.
 Pāpāver, -ēris, *poppy*.
 Piper, -ēris, *pepper*.
 Spinther, -ēris, *a clasp*.
 Tūber, -ēris, *a swelling*.
 Uber, -ēris, *a pap, or fatness*.
 Ver, vēris, *the spring*.

Arbor, -ōris, a tree, is fem. Tuber, -ēris, the fruit of the tuber-tree, is masc. but when put for the tree, is fem.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris*, in the genitive ; as, hic imber, imbris, a shower. So Insūber, Octōber, &c.

Nouns in *ter* have *tris*; as, *venter*, *ventris*, the belly; *pāter*, *patris*, a father: *frāter*, *-tris*, a brother; *accipiter*, *-tris*, a hawk; but *crāter*, a cup, has *crātēris*; *sōter*, *-ēris*, a saviour; *lāter*, a tile, *latēris*; *Jūpiter*, the chief of the Heathen gods, has *Jovis*; *linter*, *-tris*, a little boat, is masc. or femin.

A S.

7. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis*; as,

Ætas, an age, fem.

Singular.

Nom. *ætās*,
Gen. *ætātis*,
Dat. *ætāti*,
Acc. *ætātem*,
Voc. *ætās*,
Abl. *ætāte*.

Plural.

Nom. *ætātes*,
Gen. *ætātūm*,*
Dat. *ætatibus*,
Acc. *ætātes*,
Voc. *ætātes*,
Abl. *ætatibus*.

So,

Æstas, the summer.
Piētas, piety.
Pōestas, power.
Prōbītas, probity.
Sātiētas, a glut or disgust.

Sīmultas, a feud, a grudge.
Tempestatas, a time, a tempest.
Ubertas, fertility.

Vērītas, truth.
Volūntas, will.
Vōluptas, pleasure.
Anas, a duck, has *anātis*.

Exc. 1. *As*, *assis*, m. a piece of money, or any thing which may be divided into twelve parts. *Mas*, *māris*, m. a male. *Vas*, *vādīs*, m. a surety. *Vas*, *vāsis*, n. a vessel.

Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, fem.; *as*, *sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *semis*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *dodrans*, 9; *dextans*, or *dēcunx*, 10; *deunx*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine, some feminine, some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. as, *gīgas*, *gīgantis*, a giant; *ādāmas*, *-antis*, an adamant; *ēlēphas*, *-antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *adis*, or *ados*; as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampados*, a lamp; *drōmas*, *-adis*, f. a dromedary; likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcadis*, or *-ados*. Those that are neuter have *ātis*; as, *būcēras*, *-ātis*, an herb; *artocreas*, *-ātis*, a pie.

E S.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is*; as,

* See note, page 30.

rūpes, rupis, a rock; *nūbes, nubis*, a cloud. So,

<i>Ædes</i> , or <i>-is</i> , a temple; plur. a house.	<i>Lues</i> , a plague.	<i>Sēpes</i> , a hedge.
<i>Cautēs</i> , a rugged rock.	<i>Mōles</i> , a heap.	<i>Sōbōles</i> , an offspring.
<i>Clādes</i> , an overthrow, de- struction.	<i>Nātes</i> , the buttock.	<i>Strāges</i> , a slaughter.
<i>Crātes</i> , a hurdle.	<i>Pālumbes</i> , m. or f. a pi- geon.	<i>Strues</i> , a heap.
<i>Fāmes</i> , hunger.	<i>Prōles</i> , an offspring.	<i>Sūdes</i> , a stake.
<i>Fīdes</i> , a fiddle.	<i>Pūbos</i> , youth.	<i>Tābes</i> , a consumption.
		<i>Vulpes</i> , a fox.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive:

<i>Ales</i> , -ītis, a bird.	<i>Palmes</i> , -ītis, a vine-branch.
<i>Ames</i> , -ītis, a fowler's staff.	<i>Pāries</i> , -ētis, a wall.
<i>Aries</i> , -ētis, a ram.	<i>Pes</i> , pēdis, the foot.
<i>Bes</i> , bessis, two-thirds of a pound.	<i>Pēdes</i> , -ītis, a footman.
<i>Cespes</i> , -ītis, a turf.	<i>Poples</i> , -ītis, the ham of the leg.
<i>Eques</i> , -ītis, a horseman.	<i>Prases</i> , -īdis, a president.
<i>Fōmes</i> , -ītis, fuel.	<i>Sātelles</i> , -ītis, a life-guard.
<i>Gurges</i> , -ītis, a whirlpool.	<i>Sūpes</i> , -ītis, the stock of a tree.
<i>Hāres</i> , -ēdis, an heir.	<i>Termes</i> , -ītis, an olive bough.
<i>Indīges</i> , -ētis, a man deified.	<i>Trāmes</i> , -ītis, a path.
<i>Interpres</i> , -ētis, an interpreter.	<i>Vēles</i> , -ītis, a light-armed soldier.
<i>Līmes</i> , -ītis, a limit or bound.	<i>Vātes</i> , vatis, a prophet.
<i>Miles</i> , -ītis, a soldier.	<i>Verres</i> , verri, a boar-pig.
<i>Obses</i> , -īdis, a hostage.	

But *ales*, *miles*, *hāres*, *interpres*, *obses*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive:

<i>Abies</i> , -ētis, a fir-tree.	<i>Rēquies</i> , -ētis; or <i>requiēi</i> , (of the fifth declension) rest.
<i>Cēres</i> , -ēris, the goddess of corn.	<i>Sēges</i> , -ētis, growing corn.
<i>Merces</i> , -ēdis, a reward, hire.	<i>Tēges</i> , -ētis, a mat or coverlet.
<i>Merges</i> , -ītis, a handful of corn.	<i>Tūdes</i> , -is, or -ītis, a hammer.
<i>Quies</i> , -ētis, rest.	

To these add the following adjectives:

<i>Ales</i> , -ītis, swift.	<i>Præpes</i> , -ētis, swift-winged.
<i>Bīpes</i> , -ēdis, two-footed.	<i>Rēses</i> , -īdis, idle.
<i>Quadrūpes</i> , -ēdis, four-footed.	<i>Sospes</i> , -ītis, safe.
<i>Dēses</i> , -īdis, slothful.	<i>Sūperstes</i> , -ītis, surviving.
<i>Dives</i> , -ītis, rich.	<i>Tēres</i> , -ētis, round and long, smooth.
<i>Hēbes</i> , -ētis, dull.	<i>Lōcuples</i> , -ētis, rich.
<i>Perpes</i> , -ētis, perpetual.	<i>Mansues</i> , -ētis, gentle.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as *hic acināces*, -is, a Persian sword, a scimitar: but some are neuter; as, *hoc cācōathes*, an evil custom; *hippōmānes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pā-nāces*, the herb all-heal; *nēpenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllable *Cres*, a Cretan, have -ētis in the genitive; as, *hic magnes*, *magnētis*, a load-stone; *tīpes*, -ētis, tapestry; *lēbes*, -ētis, a cauldron. The rest follow the

general rule. Some proper nouns have either *-ētis*, or *is*; as, *Dāres*, *Darētis*, or *Daris*; which is also sometimes of the first declension. *Achilles* has *Achillis*; or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achillēi*, or *Achillei*, of the second declension, from *Achillēus*. So *Ulysses*, *Pēricles*, *Verres*, *Aristōtēles*, &c.

IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as,

auris, *auris*, the ear; *avis*, *avis*, a bird. So,

<i>Apis</i> , a bee.	<i>Messis</i> , a harvest or crop.	<i>Rātis</i> , a raft.
<i>Bilis</i> , the gall, anger.	<i>Nāris</i> , the nostril.	<i>Rūdis</i> , a rod.
<i>Classis</i> , a fleet.	<i>Neptis</i> , a niece.	<i>Vallis</i> , a valley.
<i>Fēlis</i> , a cat.	<i>Ovis</i> , a sheep.	<i>Vestis</i> , a garment.
<i>Fōris</i> , a door; oftener plur.	<i>Pellis</i> , a skin.	<i>Vitis</i> , a vine.
<i>fores</i> , -ium.	<i>Pestis</i> , a plague.	

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

<i>Axis</i> , <i>axis</i> , an axle-tree.	<i>Fascis</i> , a bundle.	<i>Patruielis</i> , a cousin-german.
<i>Aquālis</i> , a water-pot, an ewer.	<i>Fēciālis</i> , a herald.	<i>Piscis</i> , a fish.
<i>Callis</i> , a beaten road.	<i>Follis</i> , a pair of bellows.	<i>Postis</i> , a post.
<i>Caulis</i> , the stock of an herb.	<i>Fustis</i> , a staff.	<i>Sōdālis</i> , a companion.
<i>Collis</i> , a hill.	<i>Mensis</i> , a month.	<i>Torris</i> , a fire-brand.
<i>Cenchris</i> , a kind of serpent.	<i>Mūgīlis</i> , or -il, a mullet-fish.	<i>Unguis</i> , the nail.
<i>Ensis</i> , a sword.	<i>Orbis</i> , a circle, the world.	<i>Vectis</i> , a lever.
		<i>Vermis</i> , a worm.

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as *pānis*, bread; *crīnis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *idis*; as *týrannis*, *týrannidis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

<i>Cīnis</i> , -ēris, ashes.	<i>Pūbis</i> , or <i>pūbes</i> , -is, or oftener, -ēris, marriageable.
<i>Cūcūmis</i> , -is, or -ēris, a cucumber.	<i>Pulvis</i> , -ēris, dust.
<i>Dis</i> , <i>dītis</i> , the god of riches; or rich, an adj.	<i>Quiris</i> , -ītis, a Roman.
<i>Glis</i> , <i>gliris</i> , a dormouse, a rat.	<i>Samnis</i> , -ītis, a Samnite.
<i>Impūbis</i> , or <i>impūbes</i> , -is, or -ēris, not marriageable.	<i>Sanguis</i> , -īnis, blood.
<i>Lāpis</i> , -īdis, a stone.	<i>Sēmis</i> , -issis, the half of any thing.
	<i>Vōmis</i> , or -er, -ēris, a ploughshare.

Pulvis, and *cinis*, are sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Pubis* and *impūbis* are properly adjectives; thus, *Puberibuscaulem foliis*, a stock with downy leaves. *Virg. Æn. xii. 413. Impūbe corpus*, the body of a boy not having yet got the down (*pubes*, -is, f.) of youth. *Horat. Epod. 5. 13. Exsanguis*, bloodless, an adjective, has *exsanguis* in the genitive.

Exc. 3. The following are either masculine or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Amnis, a river.

Anguis, a snake.

Cānālis, a conduit-pipe.

Corbis, a basket.

Finis, the end; fines, the boundaries of a field, or territories, is always masc.

Scrōbis, or scrobs, a ditch.

Torquis, a chain.

Exc. 4. These feminines have *idis*: Cassis, *-idis*, a helmet; *cuspis*, *-idis*, the point of a spear; *capis*, *-idis*, a kind of cup; *prōmulsis*, *-idis*, a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis*, strife, *f.* has *litis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: some have *eos* or *ios*; as *hærēsis*, *-eos*, or *-ios*, or *-is*, a heresy; so, *bāsis*, *f.* the foot of a pillar; *phrasis*, a phrase; *phth-isis*, a consumption; *poēsis*, poetry; *metrōpōlis*, a chief city, &c. Some have *idis* or *idos*; as, *Pāris*, *-idis*, or *-idos*, the name of a man; *aspis*, *-idis*, *f.* an asp; *ēphēmēris*, *-idis*, *f.* a day-book; *iris*, *-idis*, *f.* the rainbow; *pyxis*, *-idis*, *f.* a box. So *Ægis*, the shield of Pallas; *canthāris*, a sort of fly; *pērisclēis*, a garter; *proboscis*, an elephant's trunk; *pyrāmis*, a pyramid; and *tigris*, a tiger, *-idis*, seldom *tigris*: all fem. Part have *idis*, as, *Psophis*, *-idis*, the name of a city: others have *inis*; as, *Eleusis*, *-inis*, the name of a city; and some have *entis*; as, *Stmois*, *Simoēntis*, the name of a river. *Chāris*, one of the Graces, has *Charitis*.

OS.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis*; as,

nēpos, *-ōtis*, a grandchild; *sacerdos*, *-ōtis*, a priest, also fem.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

Arbos, or -or, *-ōris*, a tree.

Cos, cōtis, a whetstone.

Dos, dōtis, a dowry.

Eos, eōis, the morning.

Glos, glōris, the husband's sister, or brother's wife.

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive:

Flos, flōris, a flower.

Hōnos, or -or, *-ōris*, honour.

Lābos, or -or, *-ōris*, labour.

Lēpos, or -or, *-ōris*, wit.

Mos, mōris, a custom.

Ros, rōris, dew.

Custos, *-ōdis*, a keeper, also fem.

Hēros, herōis, a hero.

Mīnos, *-ōis*, a king of Crete.

Tros, Trōis, a Trojan.

Bos, bōvis, *m.* or *f.* an ox or cow.

Exc. 3. *Os*, *ossis*, a bone; and *ōs*, *ōris*, the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ōis*; as, *heros*, *-ōis*, a hero, or great man; *So Mīnos*, a king of Crete; *Tros*, a Trojan; *thos*, a kind of wolf.

US.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *oris*; as,

pectus, pectoris, the breast; *tempus, temporis*, time. So,

Corpus, a body.

Dēcus, honour.

Dēdēcus, disgrace.

Fācīnus, a great action.

Fēnus, usury.

Fīgus, cold.

Littus, a shore.

Nēmus, a grove.

Pēcus, cattle.

Pēnus, provisions.

Pignus, a pledge.

Stercus, dung.

Tergus, a hide.

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *oris*:

Acus, chaff.

Fūnus, a funeral.

Fēdus, a covenant.

Gēnus, a kind, or kindred.

Glōmus, a clew.

Lātus, the side.

Mūnus, a gift or office.

Olus, pot-herbs.

Onus, a burden.

Opus, a work.

Pondus, a weight.

Rūdus, rubbish.

Scēlus, a crime.

Sīdus, a star.

Vellus, a fleece of wool.

Viscus, an entrail.

Ulcus, a bile.

Vulnus, a wound.

Thus *acris, funēris*, &c. *Glōmus*, a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has *glomi*, of the second declension. *Vēnus*, the goddess of love, and *vētus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *oris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously:

Incus, -ūdis, an anvil.

Pālus, -ūdis, a pool, or morass.

Pēcus, -ūdis, a sheep.

Subscus, -ūdis, a dove-tail.

Tellus, -ūris, the earth, or goddess of the earth.

Jūventus, -ūtis, youth.

Sālus, -ūtis, safety.

Sēnectus, -ūtis, old age.

Servītus, -ūtis, slavery.

Virtus, -ūtis, virtue.

Intercus, -ūtis, an hydropsy.

Intercus is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris*, in the genitive; as,

Crus, crūris, the leg.

Jus, jūris, law or right; also broth.

Pus, pūris, the corrupt matter of any sore.

Rus, rūris, the country.

Thus, thūris, frankincense.

So Mus, mūris, masc. a mouse.

Līgus, or *-ur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris*; *lēpus*, masc. a hare, *lepōris*; *sus*, masc. or fem. a swine, *suis*; *grus*, masc. or fem. a crane, *gruis*.

Œdīpus, the name of a man, has *Œdipōdis*; sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *Œdīpi*. The compounds of *pus* have *ōdis*; as, *tripus*, masc. a tripod, *tripōdis*; but *lāgōpus*, *-ōdis*, a kind of bird, or, the herb hare's foot, is fem. Names of cities have *untis*; as, *Trapēzus*, *Trapēzuntis*; *Opus*, *Opuntis*; *Hierlchus*, *-untis*, *Jericho*.

YS.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive they have sometimes *ýis*, or *yos*; as,

Hæc chelys, chelyis, or *-yos*, a harp; *Cápys, Capyis*, or *-yos*, the name of a man; sometimes they have *ýdis*, or *ýdos*; as, *hæc chlámýs, chlámýdis*, or *chlámýdos*, a soldier's cloak; and sometimes *ýnis* or *ýnos*; as, *Tráchys, Trachýnis*, or *Trachýnos*, the name of a town.

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs*, and *aus*, are,

Æs, æris, n. *brass* or *money*.
Fraus, fraudis, f. *fraud*.

Laus, laudis, f. *praise*.
Præs, prædis, m. or f. *a surety*.

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and have the genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus, Orpheos*; *Tereus, Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables: thus, *Orphëus*, genit. *Orphëi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphei*, and that into *Orphêi*.

S with a consonant before it.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as,

Trabs, trabis, a beam; *scobs, scobis*, saw-dust; *hiems, hiemis*, winter; *gens, gentis*, a nation; *stips, stipis*, alms; *pars, partis*, a part; *sors, sortis*, a lot; *mors, tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

Chálbys, -ýbis, *steel*.

Dens, -tis, *a tooth*.

Fons, -tis, *a well*.

Gryps, grýphis, *a griffin*.

Hydrops, -ôpis, *the dropsy*.

Mërops, -ôpis, *a woodpecker*.

Mons, -tis, *a mountain*.

Pons, -tis, *a bridge*.

Seps, sêpis, *a kind of serpent*; but

Seps, sêpis, *a hedge*, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masculine, or feminine:

Adeps, adýpis, *fatness*.

Rúdens, -tis, *a cable*.

Scrobs, scrôbis, *a ditch*.

Serpens, -tis, *a serpent*.

Stirps, stirpis, *the root of a tree*.

Stirps, *an offspring*, always fem.

Anýmans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, *hæc forceps, forcipis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps, -ipis*, a prince or princess; *particeps, -cipis*, a partaker; so likewise *caelebs, celibis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *ciput* have *cipitis*; as, *præceps, præcipitis*, headlong; *anceps, ancipitis*, doubtful; *biceps, -cipitis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucupis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

Frons, frondis, the leaf of a tree.
Glans, glandis, an acorn.

Juglans, -dis, a walnut.
Lens, lendis, a nut.

So *libripens, libripendis*, m. a weigher; *nefrens, -dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as *concor, concordis*, agreeing; *discor, discors*, disagreeing; *vecor, mad, &c.* But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going, and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*; thus, *iens, euntis*; *quiens, queuntis*; *rédiens, redeuntis*; *nequiens, nequeuntis*: but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tiryas*, a city in Greece, the birth place of Hercules, has *Tirythis*.

T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *căput, capitis*, the head, neuter. In like manner its compounds, *sinciput, sincipitis*, the forehead; and *occiput, -itis*, the hind-head.

X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as, *lux, lucis*, light.

Vox, the voice, fem.

Singular.
Nom. vox,
Gen. vōcis,
Dat. vōci,
Acc. vōcem,
Voc. vox,
Abl. vōce.

Plural.
Nom. vōces,
Gen. vōcum,
Dat. vōcibus,
Acc. vōces,
Voc. voces,
Abl. vōcibus.

So,

Appendix, -icis, an addition; dim. -icula.
Cēlox, -ōcis, a pinnace.
Cervix, -icis, the neck.
Cicātrix, -icis, a scar.
Cornix, -icis, a crow.
Cōturnix, -icis, a quail.
Coxendix, -icis, the hip.

Crux, crūcis, a cross.
Fæx, -cis, dregs.
Falx, -cis, a scythe.
Fax, -ācis, a torch.
Filix, -icis, a fern.
Lanx, -cis, a plate.
Lōdix, -icis, a sheet.
Mēretrix, -icis, a courtesan.

Merx, -cis, merchandise.
Nutrix, -icis, a nurse.
Nux, nūcis, a nut.
Pax, -ācis, peace.
Pix, pīcis, pitch.
Rādix, -icis, a root.
Sālix, -icis, a willow.
Vibix, or -ex, -icis the mark of a wound.

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thōrax*, -ācis, a breast-plate; *Cōrax*, -ācis, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *icis*; as, *pollex*, -icis, m. the thumb. So the following nouns, also masculine:

Apex, the tuft or tassel on the top of a priest's cap, the cap itself, or the top of any thing.	Cimex, a bug.	Pūdex, the breech.
Artifex, an artist.	Cōdex, a book.	Pontifex, a chief priest.
Carnifex, an executioner.	Cūlex, a gnat, a midge.	Pūlex, a flea.
Caudex, the trunk of a tree.	Frūtex, a shrub.	Rāmex, a rupture.
	Index, an informer.	Sōrex, a rat.
	Lātex, any liquor.	Vertex, the crown of the head.
	Mūrex, a shell fish, purple.	Vortex, a whirlpool.

Vervex, a weather sheep, has *vervēcis*; *fānisex*, a mower of hay, *fānicēcis*; *rēsex*, m. -ēcis, a vine branch cut off.

To these masculines add,

Cālix, -icis, a cup.	Oryx, -ygis, a wild goat.
Cālyx, -ygis, the bud of a flower.	Phœnix, -icis, a bird so called.
Coccyx, -ygis, or ycis, a cuckoo.	Trādux, -ūcis, a graff or offset of a vine; also fem.
Fornix, -icis, a vault.	

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine:

Fornax, -ācis, a furnace.	Smīlax, -ācis, the herb rope-weed.
Pānax, -ācis, the herb all-heal.	Carex, -icis, a sedge.
Climax, -ācis, a ladder.	Sūpellex, supellectilis, household furniture.
Forfex, -icis, a pair of scissors.	
Hālex, -ēcis, a herring.	

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

Calx, -cis, the heel, or the end of any thing, the goal; but calx, lime, is always fem.	Līmax, -ācis, a snail.
Cortex, -icis, the bark of a tree.	Obex, -icis, a bolt or bar.
Hystrix, -icis, a porcupine.	Perdix, -icis, a partridge.
Imbrex, -icis, a gutter or roof tile.	Pūmex, -icis, a pumice stone.
Lynx, -cis, an ounce, a beast of very quick sight.	Rūmex, -icis, sorrel, an herb.
	Sandix, -icis, a purple colour.
	Sīlex, -icis, a flint.
	Vārix, -icis, a swollen vein.

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive:

Aquīlex, -ēgis, a well-maker.	Phālanx, -angis, f. a phalanx.
Conjūnx, or -ux, ūgis, a husband or wife.	Rēmex, -ygis, a rower.
Frux (not used), frūgis, f. corn.	Rex, rēgis, a king.
Grexx, grēgis, m. or f. a flock.	Nix, nīvis, f. snow.
Lex, lēgis, f. a law.	Nox, noctis, f. night.
	Sēnex, sēnis, & -icis, (an adj.) old.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and manner of declension, are as various as Latin nouns; thus, *bombyx*, *bombycis*, a silk-worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *ōnyx*,

masc. or fem. *onýchis*, a precious stone; and so *sardōnyx*; *lārynx*, *laryngis*, fem. the top of the windpipe; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*, a Phrygian; *sphinx*, *-ngis*, a fabulous hag; *strix*, *-igis*, f. a screech-owl; *Styx*, *-ygis*, f. a river in hell; *Hýlax*, *-ctis*, the name of a dog; *Bíbrax*, *Bibractis*, the name of a town, &c.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

The dative singular anciently ended also in *e*; as, *Esuriēte leōni ex ore exculpere pradam*, 'To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion. Lucil. *Hæret pede pes*, Foot sticks to foot. Virg. *Æn.* x. 361. for *esuriēti* and *pedi*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im*.

Amussis, f. a mason's rule.
Būris, f. the beam of a plough.
Cannābis, f. hemp.
Cūcūmis, m. a cucumber.
Gummis, f. gum.
Mēphitis, f. a damp or strong smell.

Rāvis, f. hoarseness.
Sīnāpis, f. mustard.
Sītis, f. thirst.
Tussis, f. a cough.
Vis, f. strength.

To these add proper names, 1. of cities and other places; as, *Hispānis*, Seville, a city in Spain; *Syrtis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Lybia;—2. of rivers; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome; *Bætis*, the Guadalquiver, in Spain; so, *Albis*, *Arāris*, *Athēsis*, *Liris*, &c.—3. of gods; as, *Anūbis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Serāpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in*; thus, *Syrtim* or *Syrtin*, *Tibērim*, or *-in*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im*; as,

Aquālis, m. a water-pot.
Clāvis, f. a key.
Cūtis, f. the skin.
Febris, f. a fever.
Nāvis, f. a ship.

Pelvis, f. a basin.
Puppis, f. the stern of a ship.
Restis, f. a rope.

Sēcūris, f. an axe.
Sēmentis, f. a sowing.
Strīgīlis, f. a horse-comb.
Turris, f. a tower.

Thus *navem* or *navim*; *puppem*, or *puppim*, &c. The ancients said, *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *pestim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns form their accusative variously:

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*; as, *lampas*, *lampādis*, or *lampādos*, *lampādem* or *lampāda*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tros*, *Trois*, *Troem* or *Troa*, a *Tro-*

jan; *heros*, a hero; *Minos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a*; *Pan*, the god of shepherds; *ather*, the sky; *delphin*, a dolphin; thus, *Pana, æthæra, delphina*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*, never *ida*; as, *Pāris, Partidis* or *Paridos*, *Parim*, or *Parin*, sometimes *Pāridem*, never *Parida*.—So, *Daphnis*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *ida*, but rarely *im* or *in*; as, *Elis, Elidis* or *Elidos*, *Elidem* or *Elida*; seldom *Elim* or *Elin*; a city in Greece. In like manner feminines in *ys*, *ȳdos*, have *ȳdem* or *ȳda*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accusative; as, *chlām̄ys, ȳdem* or *ȳda*, not *chlām̄yn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accusative, by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as *metamorphōsis, -eos* or *-ios, metamorphōsim* or *-in*, a change. *Tēthys, -yos* or *-yis, Tēthym* or *-yn*; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Thēseus, Thesea*; *Tydeus, Tydea*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

Many Greek nouns, particularly proper names, drop *s* of the nominative to form the vocative; as *Daphnis, Daphni*; *Paris, Pari*; *Tēthys, Tēthy*; *Metampus, Melampus*; *Orpheus, Orpheu*; *Chelys, Chely*; *Pōsis, Pōsi*. Nouns in *as, antis*, make the vocative in *a* or in *an*; as, *Pallas, Palla* or *Pallan*; *Calchas, Calcha* or *Calchan*: some in *es* make it in *es* or *e*; as, *Socrātes, Chremes, Hercūles, Achilles, &c.*

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e, al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *sedile, sediti*; *animal, animāli*; *calcar, calcari*. Except proper names; as, *Præneste, abl. Præneste*, the name of a town; and the following neuters in *ar*:

Far, farre, corn.
Hēpar, āte, the liver.
Jūbar, -āre, a sun beam.

Nectar, āre, drink of the gods.
Par, pāre, a match, a pair.
Sal, sāle, or -i, m. or n. salt.

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis, vim, vi*; but *cannābis, Bētis*, and *Tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris, turre*, or *turri*; but *restis*, a rope, and *cūtis*, the skin, have *e* only.*

* Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *finis, supellex, vectis, pugil*, a champion; *mūgil* or *mugilis*; so *rus, oc-ciput*: Also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as, *habitat Carthagine* or *Carthagini*, he lives at Carthage. So, *civis, classis, sora, imber, anguis, avis, postis, fustis, amnis*, and *ignis*; but these have oftener *e*. *Canālis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *æstati, cani, lupidi, ovis*; &c.

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjective; as, *bipennis*, -i, a halbert; *mōlāris*, -i, a mill-stone; *quadrirēmīs*, -i, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprilis*, -i; *Dēcember*, -bri, &c. But *rūdīs*, f. a rod given to gladiators when discharged; *jūvēnis*, a young man, have *e* only; and likewise nouns ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *ns*; as,

Adōlescens, a young man. *Princeps*, a prince.
Infans, an infant. *Sēnex*, an old man.

Torrens, a brook.
Vigil, a watchman.

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye*, or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermōnes*, *rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*; as, *puppēs*, *puppeis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; as, *capita*, *itinēra*: but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *sedilia*, *calcāria*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or either *e* or *i*, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e* only, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*; *caput*, *capite*, *capitum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas*, a male, *māre*, *marium*; *vas*, a surety, *vadium*: but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas*, a state or city, *civitātum*, and sometimes *civitatium*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as, *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium*; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um*; *parens*, *vātes*, *volūcris*, *pānis*, *jūvēnis*, *opes*, *forceps*, and *cānis*. Horace, however, has *parentium*. Od. iii. 4, 23.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the genitive plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

Arx, *arcis*, f. a castle.
Caro, *carnis*, f. flesh.
Cohors, -tis, f. a company.
Cor, *cordis*, n. the heart.
Cos, *cōtis*, f. a hone or whetstone.
Dos, *dōtis*, f. a dowry.
Faux, *faucis*, f. the jaws.
Glis, *gliris*, m. a rat.
Lar, *lāris*, m. a household god.

Linter, -tris, m. or f. a little boat.
Lis, *litis*, f. strife.
Mus, *mūris*, m. a mouse.
Nix, *nīvis*, f. snow.
Nox, *noctis*, f. the night.
Os, *ossis*, n. a bone.
Quīris, -tis, a Roman.
Samnis, -tis, m. or f. a Samnite.
Uter, *utris*, m. a bottle.

Thus *Samnitium*, *lintrium*, *litium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*: *as*, *septunz*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *bes*, eight ounces, *bessium*.

Bos, an ox or cow, has *boum*; and in the dative, *bōbus*, or *būbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; *as*, *Macedo*, a Macedonian; *Arabe*, an Arabian; *Æthiops*, an Ethiopian; *monoceros*, an unicorn; *lynx*, a beast so called; *Thraz*, a Thracian; *Macedōnum*, *Arabum*, *Æthiōpum*, *monocerōtum*, *lynxum*, *Thrācum*. But those which have *a* or *sis* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *on*; *as*, *Epigramma*, *epigrammātum*, or *epigrammāton*, an epigram; *metamorphosis*, *-ium*, or *edn*.

Obs. 1. Nouns, which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus, *mānes*, m. souls departed, *manium*; *cæltēs*, m. inhabitants of heaven, *cæltum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* or *manes*, and *cæles*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; *as*, *Saturnālia*, the feasts of Saturn, *Saturnaliūm* and *Saturnaliōrum*. So, *Bacchanalia*, *Compitalia*, *Terminalia*, &c.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *im*; *as*, *nocentim* for *nocentium*: and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; *as*, *cælituum*, for *cælitum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncōpe*; and the latter by *Epenthesis*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tibus*; *as*, *poēma*, a poem, *poemātis*, rather than *poematibus*, from the old nominative *poemātum*, of the second declension.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or, when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; *as*, *Troāsi* or *Troāsin*, for *Troādibus*, from *Troas*, *Troādis* or *Troādos*, a Trojan woman.

Exc. 3. *Bos*, an ox, has *bōbus* or *bubus*; *Sus*, a swine, *suius*, *sūbus*, or *sibus*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; *as*, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *partes*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as*; *as*, *lampas*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda*; *lampādes* or *lampādas*. So *Tros*, *Troas*; *heros*, *herōas*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiōpas*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

Lampas, a lamp, f. *lampādis*, or *-ados*, *-ādi*, *-ādem*, or *-āda*, *-as*, *-āde*. Plur. *-ādes*, *-ādum*, *-ādibus*, *-ādes*, or *-ādas*, *-ādes*, *-ādibus*.

Troas, f. *Troādis*, or *-dos*, *-di*, *-dem*, or *-da*, *-as*, *-de*. Plur. *Troādes*, *-dum*, *-dibus* or *-si* or *-sin*, *-des*, or *-das*, *-des*, *-dibus*.

Tros, m. *Trois*, *Troi*, *Troem* or *-a*, *Tros*, *Troe*, &c.

Phyllis, f. *Phyllidis* or *-dos*, *-di*, *-dem* or *-da*, *-i* or *-is*, *-de*.

Pāris, m. *Pārīdis* or *-dos*, *-di*, *-dem* or *Parim* or *-in*, *-i*, *-de*.

Chlāmys, f. *chlāmēdis* or *-ydos*, *-ydi*, *-ydem* or *-yda*, *-ys*, *-yde*, &c.

Cāpys, m. *Capūis* or *-yos*, *-yi*, *-ym*, or *-yn*, *-y*, *-ye* or *-y*.

Mētāmorphōsis, f. *-is* or *-ios*, or *-eos*, *-i*, *-im* or *-in*, *-i*, *-i*, &c.

An alphabetical list of most of the irregular Nouns, both substantive and adjective, of the Third Declension.

* Those thus marked, have *e* only in the ablative, and *um* in the genitive plural.

† Those having *i* or *e* and *i* in the ablative, and *um* in the genitive plural, are thus marked.

‡ Such substantives have *i*, because they are formed from adjectives, having *i* only in the ablative. Though used as substantives, they are in reality adjectives, the substantive with which they agree being understood.

§ Substantives, thus marked, take either termination indifferently: those not marked take, in general, the first termination mentioned.

|| *Carthāgo* and such nouns have *e* or *i* when at a place is signified, that is, when the question is made by *ubi* 'where?' The names of Gods, rivers, &c., in *is*, take, in general, *im* or *in* in the accusative, *i* or sometimes *e* in the ablative.

A	Acc. Sing.	Abl. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
Adolescens,	- - - -	- - - -	tium, rather tum.
Amnis, - -	- - - -	e or i raro.	
Amussis, - -	im, - - -	i.	
Anguis, - -	- - - -	e or i.	
Aprilis, - -	em, - - -	i.	
Aqualis, § - -	im, or em, - -	i or e.	
Araris, - -	im, - - -	e.	
As and compounds,	- - - -	- - - -	ium.
Avis, - -	- - - -	e or i.	
<i>Adjectives.</i>			
Alis, † - -	- - - -	e or i.	itum.
Anceps, † - -	- - - -	e or i.	itum, (ia, nom.)
Artifex, † - -	- - - -	e or i.	um.
B.			
Boetes, || - -	im or in, - -	i or e.	
Bilbilis, - -	im, - - -	i.	
Bipennis, † - -	- - - -	i.	
Bos, - -	- - - -	- - - -	boum, (bobus, dat.)
Buris, - -	im, - - -	i.	
C.			
Canalis, - -	em, - - -	i.	
Cannabis, - -	im, - - -	i or e.	
Carthago, || - -	- - - -	i or e.	
Caro, - -	- - - -	- - - -	nium.
Centussis, - -	im, - - -	- - - -	
Civis, - -	- - - -	e of i.	
Classis, - -	- - - -	e or i.	
Cohors, - -	- - - -	- - - -	tium.
Clavis, § - -	im, em, - -	i or e.	
Cor, - -	- - - -	- - - -	dium.
Cos, - -	- - - -	- - - -	tium.

	Acc. Sing.	Abl. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
Collis, . . .	.	e or i.	
Cucumis, . . .	im, . . .	i.	
Cutis, . . .	im . . .	i or e.	
<i>Adjectives.</i>			
Capio, <i>compounds</i>			
<i>of in -ceps,</i>	. . . . .	e or i.	um.
Caput, <i>compounds</i>			
<i>of in -ceps,</i>	. . . . .	e or i,	um.
Celer, † . . .	. . . . .	i, . . .	um.
Coelebs, * . .	. . . . .	e, . . .	um.
Compar, † . .	. . . . .	e, or i,	um.
Compos, * . .	. . . . .	ote, . . .	um.
Concolor, * . .	. . . . .	e, . . .	um.
Color, <i>comp. of,</i> *	. . . . .	e, . . .	um.
Corpus, <i>comp. of in</i>			
<i>-or, *</i>	e, . . .	um.
Consorts, † . .	. . . . .	e or i,	um.
Concors, . . .	. . . . .	i or e rarely,	ium.
<i>D.</i>			
Decussis, . . .	im.		
Dos, . . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	tium.
<i>Adjectives.</i>			
Degener, † . .	. . . . .	e or i,	um.
Dispar, † . .	. . . . .	e or i,	um.
Dives, * . . .	. . . . .	e, sometimes i,	um.
<i>F.</i>			
Familiaris, † .	. . . . .	i or e.	
Faux, . . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	cium.
Febris, § . . .	im, em,	i, e.	
Finis, . . . . .	. . . . .	i, e.	
Fornax, . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	cium.
Fustis, . . . .	. . . . .	e, i.	
Facio, <i>comp. of in</i>			
<i>-lex,</i>	. . . . .	e or i,	um.
<i>G.</i>			
Gausape (<i>perhaps</i>			
<i>indecl.')</i>	. . . . .	e.	
Glis, . . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	rium.
Gummi,	im, . . .	i.	
Genus, <i>comp. of in</i>			
<i>-er,</i>	. . . . .	. . . . .	um.
<i>H.</i>			
Hæresis, . . .	im, in,	i.	
Hospes, <i>adj. *</i>	ite, . . .	um.
<i>I.</i>			
Ignis, . . . . .	. . . . .	e or i.	
Imber, . . . . .	. . . . .	e or i.	
Infans, . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	tium.
Jus, . . . . .	. . . . .	jure, . . .	um, ium <i>seldom.</i>
Juvenis, . . .	. . . . .	e, . . .	um.
<i>Adjectives.</i>			
Impos, * . . .	. . . . .	ote, . . .	um.
Impar, † . . .	. . . . .	e or i,	um.
Impubes, * . .	. . . . .	ere, . . .	um.
inops, † . . .	. . . . .	e or i,	um.

L.	Acc. Sing.	Abl. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
Labes, - - -	- - -	e or i.	- - -
Lar, - - -	- - -	- - -	ium.
Lens, § - - -	tim, tem, - - -	ti, te.	- - -
Linter, - - -	- - -	- - -	ium.
Lis, - - -	- - -	- - -	tium.
Locuples, <i>adj.</i>	- - -	e or i,	um, ium <i>seldom</i> .
M.			
Mephitis, - - -	im, - - -	i.	- - -
Messis, - - -	- - -	e or i.	- - -
Molaris, † - - -	- - -	i.	- - -
Mons, - - -	- - -	e or i.	- - -
Mugil, - - -	- - -	e or i,	um.
Mus, - - -	- - -	- - -	rium. ¹
Memo, <i>adj.</i> † (<i>olim</i>	- - -	- - -	- - -
Memoris,) - - -	- - -	i,	um.
N.			
Natalis, † - - -	- - -	i or e.	- - -
Navis, § - - -	im, em, - - -	i or e.	- - -
Nix, - - -	- - -	- - -	nivium.
November, (<i>and</i>	- - -	- - -	- - -
such,) - - -	em, - - -	i.	- - -
O.			
Occiput, § - - -	- - -	i or e.	- - -
October, - - -	em, - - -	i.	- - -
Orbis, - - -	- - -	e or i.	- - -
Os, ossis, - - -	- - -	- - -	ossium.
Ovis, - - -	em, im,	e or i.	- - -
P.			
Pelvis, § - - -	im, em,	i or e.	- - -
Par, <i>m. & f.</i> - - -	- - -	e,	ium.
Par, <i>n.</i> - - -	- - -	i,	ium.
Palus, - - -	- - -	- - -	adium.
Paras, - - -	- - -	e or i.	- - -
Postis, - - -	- - -	e or i.	- - -
Pugil, § - - -	- - -	i or e.	- - -
Puppis, § - - -	im, em,	i or e.	- - -
<i>Adjectives.</i>			
Par, † - - -	- - -	i,	ium.
Particeps, † - - -	- - -	e or i,	um.
Pauper, * - - -	- - -	ere,	um.
Pes, <i>comp. of</i> * - - -	- - -	e,	um.
Princeps, † - - -	- - -	e or i,	um.
Præceps, * - - -	- - -	i, e,	tum (<i>ia, nom.</i>)
Plus, - - -	- - -	ri, re,	rium.
Pubes, * - - -	- - -	ere,	um.
Q.			
Quintilis (<i>and such</i>),	em, - - -	i.	- - -
Quiris, - - -	- - -	- - -	itium, itum.
R.			
Ratis, - - -	em, im, - - -	e, i.	- - -
Ravis, - - -	im, - - -	i.	- - -
Restis, - - -	im, em, - - -	e.	- - -
Rivalis, † - - -	- - -	i or e.	- - -

¹ Semel apud Ciceronem *murum*.

	Acc. Sing.	Abl. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
Rus, §	- - - - -	i or e.	
Rudis, S.	- - - - -	e.	
Sal,	- - - - -	e or i.	
Samnis,	- - - - -	- - - - -	tium
Securis,	im, em,	e.	
Seges,	- - - - -	e or i.	
Sementis, §	im, em,	i or e.	
Senex,	- - - - -	e,	um.
Sentis,	em, im,	e or i.	
Septunx,	- - - - -	- - - - -	cium.
Serapis, ||	im,	i.	
Sextans,	- - - - -	- - - - -	tium.
Sextilis,	em,	i.	
Sinapis,	im,	i, e raro.	
Sitis,	im,	i.	
Sodalis, †	- - - - -	i or e.	
Sordes,	- - - - -	e or i.	
Sors,	- - - - -	e or i.	
Strigilis,	em, im <i>seldom</i> ,	e.	
Supellex, §	- - - - -	i or e.	
<i>Adjectives.</i>			
Senex, *	- - - - -	e,	um.
Sospes, *	- - - - -	ite,	um.
Superstes, *	- - - - -	ite,	um.
Supplex, †	- - - - -	ici, or e,	um.
T.			
Tibris, ||	im, in,	i, e, ide.	
Tigris, ||	im, in,	i, e.	
Tridens, §	- - - - -	i or e.	
Turris, §	im, em,	i or e.	
Tussis,	im, em,	i or e.	
<i>Adjectives.</i>			
Tricorpor, *	- - - - -	e,	um.
Tricuspis, *	- - - - -	e,	um.
Tripes, *	- - - - -	e,	um.
U, V.			
Vectis,	- - - - -	e or i.	
Venter,	- - - - -	- - - - -	ium.
Vigil, §	- - - - -	e or i,	um.
Vis, <i>pl.</i> vires,	vim,	vi,	rium.
Unguis,	- - - - -	e or i.	
Volucris, †	- - - - -	i or e,	um.
Uter,	- - - - -	- - - - -	ium.
<i>Adjectives.</i>			
Uber, †	- - - - -	e or i,	um.
Vetus, *	- - - - -	i, e <i>seldom</i> ,	um.
Viail, †	- - - - -	i, e,	um, ium <i>seldom</i> .
Volucris, †	- - - - -	i,	um, ium <i>seldom</i> .

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

TERMINATIONS.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	} <i>us, or u,</i>	Nom.	} <i>us, or us,</i>
Voc.		Acc.	
Gen.	<i>ûs,</i>	Voc.	} <i>uum,</i>
Dat.	<i>ui,</i>	Gen.	
Acc.	<i>um,</i>	Dat.	} <i>ibus.</i>
Abl.	<i>u</i>	Abl.	

Fructus, fruit, masc.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. fructus,	<i>fruit,</i>	N. fructus,	<i>fruits,</i>
G. fructûs,	<i>of fruit,</i>	G. fructuum,	<i>of fruits,</i>
D. fructui,	<i>to fruit,</i>	D. fructûbus,	<i>to fruits,</i>
A. fructum,	<i>fruit,</i>	A. fructus,	<i>fruits,</i>
V. fructus,	<i>O fruit,</i>	V. fructus,	<i>O fruits,</i>
A. fructu,	<i>with fruit.</i>	A. fructûbus,	<i>with fruits.</i>

Cornu, a horn, neut.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. cornu,	<i>a horn,</i>	N. cornua,	<i>horns,</i>
G. cornu,	<i>of a horn,</i>	G. cornuum,	<i>of horns,</i>
D. cornu,	<i>to a horn,</i>	D. cornûbus,	<i>to horns,</i>
A. cornu,	<i>a horn,</i>	A. cornua,	<i>horns,</i>
V. cornu,	<i>O horn,</i>	V. cornua,	<i>O horns,</i>
A. cornu,	<i>with a horn.</i>	A. cornûbus,	<i>with horns.</i>

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine :

Acus, a needle.	Idus, uum, the ides of a month.	Porticus, a gallery.
Anus, an old woman.	Mânus, the hand.	Spēcus, a den.
Dômus, a house.	Pênus, a store-house.	Tribus, a tribe.
Fîcus, a fig.		

Penus and *specus* are sometimes masculine. *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus*; *unimānus*, having one hand; *centimānus*, &c. adj. *Quercus*, an oak, has *quercōrum*, and *-uum*, in the gen. pl. *Versus* has *versi*, *versorum*, *versis*, as well as its regular cases. *Senātus* has also *-ātī*, in the gen.

Domus is but partly of the second declension; thus,

Dōmus, a house, fem.

Singular.

N. domus,	a house,
G. domūs, or mī,	of a house,
D. domui, or -mo,	to a house,
A. domum,	a house,
V. domus,	O house,
A. domo,	with a house.

Plural.

N. domus,	houses,
G. domōrum, or -uum,	of houses,
D. domībus,	to houses,
A. domos, or -us,	houses,
V. domus,	O houses,
A. domībus,	with houses.

Note. *Domūs*, in the genitive, signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, or of home; as, *meminēris domi*. Terent. Eun. iv. 7. 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have *ūsus*, in the dative and ablative plural.

<i>Acus</i> , a needle.	<i>Lācus</i> , a lake.	<i>Spēcus</i> , a den.
<i>Arcus</i> , a bow.	<i>Partus</i> , a birth.	<i>Trībus</i> , a tribe.
<i>Artus</i> , a joint.	<i>Portus</i> , a harbour.	<i>Vēru</i> , a spit.
<i>Genu</i> , the knee.		

Portus, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise *ūsus*; as, *portūbus* or *portūbus*.

Exc. 3. *Jesus*, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.*

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender.

* Nouns of the fourth declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; thus, *fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructus*, *fructue*; *fructues*, *fructuum*, *fructuibus*, *fructues*, *fructuibus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*; as, *Ejus anuis causā*, for *anūs*. Terent. Heaut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u*; as, *Residētre impētū*, for *impetui*. Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Esse usū sibi*, for *usui*. Ib. xiii. 71. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currūm*, for *curruum*.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. } es,	Nom. } es,
Voc. } ei,	Voc. } es,
Gen. } ei,	Gen. } ērum,
Dat. } em,	Dat. } ēbus.
Acc. } e,	Abl. }

Res, a thing, fem.

Singular.

N. res,	a thing,
G. rēi,	of a thing,
D. rēi,	to a thing,
A. rem,	a thing,
V. res,	O thing,
A. re,	with a thing.

Plural.

N. res,	things,
G. rērum,	of things,
D. rēbus,	to things,
A. res,	things,
V. res,	O things,
A. rēbus,	with things.

In like manner decline,

Acies, the edge of a thing.	Inglūvies, gluttony.	Sānies, gore.
or an army in order of battle.	Mācies, leanness.	Scābies, the scab, or itch.
Cāries, rottenness.	Māteries, matter.	Sēries, an order, or row.
Cēsāries, the hair.	Pernīcies, destruction.	Spēcies, an appearance.
Fācies, the face.	Prōlūvies, a looseness.	Sūperfīcies, the surface.
Glācies, ice.	Rābies, madness.	Tempēries, temperateness.

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *meridies*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative singular, in *e*; as, *fide*, for *fidēi*. Ov. M. 3. 341.

Gen. *Diē*, Virg. G. i. 208. Sallust, Jug. 52, 106. *Acīē*, Sallust. Dat. *Diē* Plaut. *Fāciē*, Gell. *Fidē*, Sallust, Jug. Hor. i. Sat. 3. 95. We find such Genitives also as, *Acii*, *Pernīcii*, *Fidī*, &c. A few have their Genitive from the Third, as *Rēquīs*, *ēi*, or *ētis*, rest. *Plēbēs*, the common people, makes *plēbis*, *plēbēi*, or *plēbi*; *Fāmēs*, hunger, *fāmīs*, or *fāmēi*.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many, the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three; *fides*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four; *ābies*, a fir-tree; *āries*, a ram; *pāries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension. *Requies* is of the third and fifth declension.

Of the fifty-seven nouns of this declension, only two, *Rēs*, and *Diēs*, are complete in the plural. The following plurals occur: Nom. or Accus. *Acies*, *Facies*, *Eluvies*, *Prōgeniēs*, *Scābies*, *Spēcies*, *Spēs*, *Sūperfīcies*.—Gen. *Fāciērum*, *Spēcīērum*, *Spērūm*, *Māteriūm*, *Luxūriūm*.—Dat. or Abl. *Spēsūbus*, *Sūperfīciēbus*. *Spēcīērum* et *Spēcīēbus* nolim dicere, ne si Latine quidem dici possit.—*Cicero*.

SYNOPSIS OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

[Greek words and neuters are omitted. The nominative singular also does not appear in its various forms.]

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
<i>Sing.</i>					
Nom.	<i>æ,</i>	<i>i,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>ûs,</i>	<i>ei.</i>
Gen.	<i>æ,</i>	<i>o,</i>	<i>i,</i>	<i>ui,</i>	<i>ei</i>
Dat.	<i>am,</i>	<i>um,</i>	<i>em,</i>	<i>um,</i>	<i>em.</i>
Acc.	as Nom.	as Nom.	as Nom.	as Nom.	as Nom.
Voc.	<i>â,</i>	<i>o,</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>u,</i>	<i>e.</i>
Abl.					
<i>Plural.</i>					
Nom.	<i>æ,</i>	<i>i,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>us,</i>	<i>es.</i>
Gen.	<i>ærum,</i>	<i>orum,</i>	<i>um,</i>	<i>um,</i>	<i>orum.</i>
Dat.	<i>is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>	<i>ibus.</i>
Acc.	<i>as,</i>	<i>os,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>us,</i>	<i>es.</i>
Voc.	<i>æ,</i>	<i>i,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>us,</i>	<i>es.</i>
Abl.	<i>is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>	<i>ibus.</i>

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable either in gender, or declension, or in both.

Heterogeneous Nouns.

Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes:

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

Avernus, a lake in Campania, *hell.*
Dindŷmus, a hill in Phrygia.
Ismārus, a hill in Thrace.
Massŷcus, a hill in Campania, famous
for excellent wines.

Mænālus, a hill in Arcadia.
Pangæus, a promontory in Thrace.
Tænārus, a promontory in Laconia.
Tartārus, *hell.*
Taŷgētus, a hill in Laconia.

Thus, *Averna*, *Avernōrum*; *Dindŷma*, *-ōrum*, &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *juga*, or *cacumina*, or the like, in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter.*

Jocus, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*. When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in a discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

Carbāsus, a sail, pl. *carbāsa*; *Pergāmus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergāma*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural.*

Cælum, pl. *cæli*, heaven; *Elÿsium*, pl. *Elysii*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter.*

Rastrum, a rake, pl. *rastri* and *rastra*; *frænum*, a bridle, pl. *fræni* and *fræna*.

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural.*

Dêlicium, a delight, pl. *deliciæ*; *êpulum*, a banquet, pl. *êpula*; *balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ* and *balnea*.

Heteroclites.

Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*; as, *vas*, *vâsis*, a vessel, pl. *vâsa*, *vasorum*; *jûgêrum*, *jûgêri*, an acre, pl. *jûgêra*, *jûgêrum*, *jûgeribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jûgêris*, and *jûgêre*, in the singular, from the obsolete *jûgus*, or *jûger*.

In double nouns, both nouns are declined when combined in the nominative case; as,

Respublica, a commonwealth, fem.

Singular.

N. *respublica*,
G. *reipublicæ*,
D. *reipublicæ*,
A. *reipublicam*,
V. *respublica*,
A. *reipublicâ*.

Plural.

N. *respublicæ*,
G. *rerumpublicârū*,
D. *rebuspublicis*,
A. *respublicas*,
V. *respublicæ*,
A. *rebuspublicis*.

Jusjurandum, an oath, neut.

Singular.

N. *jusjurandum*,
G. *jurisjurandi*,
D. *jurijurando*,
A. *jusjurandum*,
V. *jusjurandum*,
A. *jurejurando*.

Plural.

N. *jurajuranda*,
G. *jurumjurandorum*,*
D. *juribusjurandis*,
A. *jurajuranda*,
V. *jurajuranda*,
A. *juribusjurandis*.

* The Gen. Dat. and Abl. plural are not used.

If a nominative is combined with some other case, then the nominative only is declined ; as,

Paterfamilias, a master of a family, masc.

N. paterfamilias,
G. patrisfamilias,
D. patrifamilias,
A. patremfamilias,
V. paterfamilias,
A. patrefamilias,

Some nouns are both of the second and third declension ; as,

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Orpheus,	{ ei,	| eo,	| { eum,	| —	| eo; 2d Declen.
	{ eos,	| ei,	| { or eon,	| eu,	| —; 3d Declen.
			ea,		

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Œdipus,	{ i,	| o,	| um,	| —	| o; 2d Declen.
	{ ōdis,	| ōdi,	| ōdem,	| u,	| ōde; 3d Declen.

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Achillens,	{ ei,	| eo,	| —	| eu,	| eo; 2d Declen.
Achilles,	{ lis, or	{ li,	{ lem,	{ les,	le; 3d Declen.
	{ lēos,		{ or len,	{ or le,	

Some nouns are of peculiar declension.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Juppiter,	N. vis,	N. vires,
G. Jovis,	G. vis,	G. virium,
D. Jovi,	D. —	D. viribus,
A. Jovem,	A. vim,	A. vires,
V. Juppiter,	V. vis,	V. vires,
A. Jove.	A. vi.	A. viribus.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. bos,	N. boves,
G. bovis,	G. boum,
D. bovi,	D. bobus, or bubus,
A. bovem,	A. boves,
V. bos,	V. boves,
A. bove.	A. bobus, or bubus.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

I. Some are altogether indeclinable, and are therefore called *Aptōta*, or *Aptotes*.*

Nouns in *u* are indeclinable in the singular number, but regular in the plural, as, *cornu*, a horn, plural, *cornua*, *cornuum*, &c.

Most nouns in *i* are indeclinable in both numbers; as *gummi*, 'gum;' *sināpi*, 'mustard.'

Foreign or barbarous words, that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin; as, *Job*, *Jerusalem*, *Abraham*, *Adam*.

Any words put for nouns, as *velle tuum*, 'thy will;' *Istud cras*, 'that to-morrow;' *O magnum Græcōrum*, 'the 'Omega,' or large O of the Greeks.'

Cardinal numbers from *Quatuor* to *Centum*: also *tot*, *quot*, and their plurals. *Mille*, the adjective, is a plural aptote of all genders. *Mille*, the substantive, is an aptote in the singular, but regular in the plural; as, *millia*, *millium*, &c.

Cepe, 'an onion;' *mane*, 'the morning;' *gausāpe*, 'a rough coat;' all of them neuter.

Nequam and *frugi* are aptotes in both numbers: so, *pondo*, 'a pound,' is used in the plural; *Duo pondo*, 'two pounds.'

Praesto and *salis* are generally considered adverbs.

II. Some are used only in the one case, and are therefore called *Monoptōta*.

Nominatives singular. *Inquires*, 'want of rest;' *potis*, neuter *pote*, 'able;' *exspes*, 'hopeless.'

Genitives. *Dicis* and *nauci*. *Dicis gratiā* 'for form's sake:' *res nauci*, 'a thing of no value.' Yet abl. *nauco* occurs in Naev. ap. Fest.

Datives. *Despicatui*, 'contempt;' *Ludificatui*, 'mockery.'

Accusatives. *Amissum*, 'a loss;' *decemplīcem*, 'ten-fold;' *trīlīcem*, 'trebly-tissued;' *procērem*, 'a peer.'

Ablatives. *Noctu*, 'in the night time;' *interdiu*, 'in the day time;' *natu*, 'by birth;' *injussu*, 'without command;' *missu*, 'by despatch;' *promptu*, 'in readiness;' *ergō*, 'for the sake of;' *Ambāge*, 'with a winding story;' *casae*, 'with a net;' *compēde*, 'with a fetter;' *fauce*, 'in the throat;' are all regular in the plural except *ambāge*, which wants the genitive; as, *ambāges*, *ambagibus*; *compedes*, *compedium*, *compēdibus*.

Accusatives plural. *Inficias*, 'a denial;' as, *ire inficias*, 'to deny;' *incīlas* or *incīla*, 'extremities,' 'nonplus;' as, *ad incīlas redactus*, 'reduced to one's wit's end.'

Ablative. *Ingratīis*, 'in spite of one,' 'against one's will.'

* From *α* priv. "not," and *πρὸς*, 'a case,' because they have no case.

III. Some are used only in two cases, and therefore are called *Diptōta*.

Nom. and Acc. *Necesse* or *necessum*, 'necessity'; *volūpe* or *volup*, 'pleasure'; *instar*, 'likeness'; *astu*, 'a city'; *dica*, *dicam*, 'an action at law'; *hir*, 'the palm of the hand.'

Nom. and Abl. *Astus*, *astu*, 'craft'; *vesper*, *vespere*, or *vesperi*, 'the evening'; *siremps*, *sirempae*, 'the same,' 'all alike.'

Gen. and Abl. *Impētis*, m. *impēte*, 'force'; *verbēris*, n. *verbere*, 'a stripe'; *spontis*, *sponte*, 'of one's own accord'; *jugēris*, *jugēre*, 'an acre'; but *jugēris*, and *verbēris* are both entire in the plural.

Dat. and Abl. *Hortatui* and *hortatu*, 'exhortation'; *Irrisui*, *irrisu*, 'derision'; *obtentui*, *obtentu*, 'a covering,' 'a pretext.'

Acc. and Abl. *veprem* and *vepre*, 'a briar.'

Nom. and Acc. plur. *Suppetiæ*, *suppetias*, 'help,' 'supplies,' *inferiæ*, *inferias*, 'sacrifices to the dead.'

Gen. and Abl. plur. *Repetundārum*, *repetundis*, 'extortion.'

IV. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *Triptōta*.

Nom. Gen. and Abl. *Tubum*, i, o, 'gore.'

Nom. Acc. and Voc. *Fas*, 'right'; *nefas*, 'wrong'; *nihil* or *nīl*, 'nothing'; *ēpos*, 'an heroic poem'; *melos*, 'a song'; *hippomānes*, 'a kind of poison which grows on the forehead of a foal'; *cacoethēs*, 'an evil custom'; and other Greek neuters in *es*.

Nom. Gen. and Acc. *Tantundem*, *tantidem*, *tantundem*, 'even as much.'

Nom. Acc. and Abl. *Algus*, um, u, 'cold'; *Inquies*, *ilem*, *ile* adj. 'restless'; *Ober*, *icem*, *ice*, 'a bolt'; *Satias*, *ātem*, *āte*, *satiety*; *Situs*, um, u, 'situation.'

Gen. Acc. and Abl. *Femīnis*, i, e, 'the thigh,' plural *femīna* in nom. acc. and voc. *Opis*, em, e, 'help,' plur. *opes*, *opium*, &c., and generally signifies 'wealth,' or 'power.' *Sordis*, em, e, 'filth,' plur. *sordes*, ium, *ibus*.

Dat. Acc. and Abl. *Preci*, em, e, 'prayer'; plur. *preces*. um, *itus*, &c. *Derisui*, um, u, 'ridicule'; *Nuptui*, um, u, 'marriage.'

Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plural, the neuters *Cete*, 'whales,' *Tempe*, 'a beautiful vale in Thessaly,' *mele*, 'songs.'

V. The following nouns want the Nominative, and of consequence the Vocative, and are therefore called *Tetraptōta*.

Vicis, f. 'of the place,' or 'stead of another'; *Pecūdis*, f. 'of a beast'; *Ditiōnis*, f. 'of power, dominion'; of these *pecūdis* has the plural entire; *ditiōnis* wants it altogether; *vicis* is not used in the genitive plural. To these add *Nex*, 'slaughter'; *Daps*, 'a dish of meat'; and *Fruz*, 'corn'; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire. *Fortis*, *fortis*, *fortem*, *forte*, 'chance,' 'fortune,' is not used in the dative. [*Forti Fortunæ* occurs in Arnob. lib. vii. and on some ancient coins and monuments.]

VI. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *Pentaptōta*.

Thus, *Fax, fax, fel, glos, labes, lux, os* ('the mouth') *pax, piz, proles, pus, ros, soboles*, and *sol* want the genitive plural. *Chaos* 'a confused mass,' wants the gen. singular, and the plural entirely; dat. sing. *chao*. *Vis*, 'strength,' seldom has the dative singular, but plural complete. *Nemo*, 'no body,' wants the vocative singular, and has no plural. Such words as *qualis, quantus, quotus*, have no vocative.

DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

I. PROPER NAMES OF PERSONS strictly want the plural.

II. PROPER NAMES OF PLACES are used in the singular or plural only; as,

Italia, 'Italy;' *Athēnae*, 'Athens.'

III. Most names of VIRTUES, VICES, HERBS, METALS, MINERALS, LIQUIDS, CORN, most ABSTRACT NOUNS, &c., want the plural; as,

Justitia, 'justice;' *Inertia*, 'sloth;' *Apium*, 'parsley;' *Argentum*, 'silver;' *Aurum*, 'gold;' *Lac*, 'milk;' *Triticum*, 'wheat;' *Hordeum*, 'barley;' *Avēna*, 'oats;' *Juventus*, 'youth;' *Pueritia*, 'childhood;' &c.

IV. Masculines wanting the Plural.

Aër, aëris, the air.

Æther, -ëris, the sky.

Cestus, -i, the girdle of *Venus*.

Fŕmus, -i, dung.

Hespërus, -i, the evening star.

Limus, -i, slime.

Mëridies, -iëi, mid-day.

Mundus, -i, a woman's ornaments.

Muscus, -i, moss.

Nëmo, -inīs, c. g. no body.

Pënus, -i, or *-ūs*, d. g. all manner of provisions.

Pontus, -i, the sea.

Pulvis, -ëris, dust.

Sabulo, -önis, gravel.

Sanguis, -inīs, blood.

Söpor, -öris, sleep.

Veternus, -i, lethargy.

Viscus, -i, bird-lime.

V. Feminines wanting the Plural.

Argilla, -æ, potter's earth.

Fäma, -æ, fame.

Hūmus, -i, the ground.

Lues, -is, a plague.

Plebs, plëbis, the common people.

Pūbes, -is, the youth.

Quies, -ëtis, rest.

Sälus, -ütis, safety.

Sītis, -is, thirst.

Süpellex, -cylis, household furniture.

Tābes, -is, a consumption.

Tellus, -üris, the earth.

Vespëra, -æ, the evening.

VI. Neuters wanting the Plural.

Album, i, <i>an album.</i>	Nectar, āris, <i>nectar.</i>
Bīlaustum, i, <i>the flower of a pomegranate tree.</i>	Nīhil, nīl, nīhsum, i, <i>nothing.</i>
Bārāthrum, i, <i>a gulf.</i>	Nītrum, i, <i>nitre.</i>
Cœnum, i, <i>mud.</i>	Onāsum, i, <i>fat tripe.</i>
Crœcum, i, <i>saffron.</i>	Opium, i, <i>opium.</i>
Dīlucūlum, i, <i>the dawn.</i>	Pelāgus, i, <i>the sea.</i>
Ebur, ōris, <i>ivory.</i>	Pēnum, i, <i>or</i>
Fel, fellis, <i>gall.</i>	Pēnus, ōris, <i>provisions.</i>
Gēlu, inv. <i>frost.</i>	Pīper, ēris, <i>pepper.</i>
Glastum, i, <i>wood.</i>	Prōlūbium, i, <i>a desire.</i>
{ Glātēn, īnis, <i>or</i>	Sābūlum, i, <i>sand.</i>
{ Glūtīnum, i, <i>glue.</i>	Sāl, sālis, (neut.) <i>salt.</i>
Gypsum, i, <i>white plaster.</i>	Sālum, i, <i>the sea.</i>
Hēper, ātis, <i>the liver.</i>	Sēnium, i, <i>old age.</i>
Hīlum -i, <i>the black speck of a bean.</i>	Sīnāpi, inv. <i>mustard.</i>
Jūbar, āris, <i>a sun-beam.</i>	Tābum, i, <i>gore.</i>
Jusitium, i, <i>a law vacation.</i>	Vēr, vēris, <i>spring.</i>
Lardum, i, <i>bacon.</i>	Vēternum, i, <i>lethargy.</i>
Lētum, i, <i>death.</i>	Vīrus, i, <i>poison.</i>
Lūtum, i, <i>clay.</i>	Viscum, i, <i>birdlime.</i>
Mācellum, i, <i>the shambles.</i>	Vitrum, i, <i>wood.</i>
Mānē, <i>the morning.</i>	Zingībēr, ēris, <i>ginger.</i>

VII. Names of Games, Feasts, Books, &c. wanting the Singular.

Apollināres, ium, <i>games in honour of Apollo.</i>	Olympia, <i>the Olympic games.</i>
Bacchānālia, ium, or ōrum, <i>the feasts of Bacchus.</i>	Orgia, <i>rites of Bacchus.</i>
Bucōlyca, ōrum, or ōn, <i>a book of pastoral.</i>	Pālilia, <i>a feast in honour of Pales.</i>
Chāristia, ōrum, <i>love-feasts.</i>	Pārentālia, <i>solemnities at the funeral of a parent.</i>
Diōnysia, <i>the feast of Bacchus.</i>	Pythia, <i>games in honour of Apollo.</i>
Georgica, ōrum, or ōn, <i>a work on husbandry.</i>	Quinquātrūs, num, and
Hierosolyma, ōrum, <i>Jerusalem.</i>	Quinquātria, ōrum, & ium, <i>feasts in honour of Minerva.</i>
Lātinae, <i>feasts of Jupiter Latialis.</i>	Suōvētaurilia, ium, <i>a sacrifice of a swine, sheep, and ox.</i>
	Syracusæ, ārum, <i>Syracuse.</i>

VIII. Masculines wanting the Singular.

Antes, -ium, <i>fore ranks.</i>	Fasces, -ium, <i>a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.</i>
Cancelli, <i>lattices or windows, made with cross-bars, like a net; a rail or balustrade round any place; bounds or limits.</i>	Fasti, -ōrum, or fastus, -um, <i>calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.</i>
Cāni, <i>grey hairs.</i>	Fines, -ium, <i>the borders of a county, or a country.</i>
Casses, -ium, <i>a hunter's net.</i>	Fōri, <i>the gangways of a ship; seats in the circus; or the cells of a bee-hive.</i>
Cēlēres, -um, <i>the light-horse.</i>	Furfures, -um, <i>scales in the head.</i>
Codīcilli, <i>writings.</i>	
Druīdes, -um, <i>the Druids, priests of the ancient Britains and Gauls.</i>	

<i>Infēri, the gods below.</i>	<i>Minūres, -um, successors.</i>
<i>Laurices, young rabbits.</i>	<i>Natāles, -ium, parentage.</i>
<i>Lēmures, -um, hobgoblins, or spirits in the dark.</i>	<i>Pandectæ, pandects.</i>
<i>Libēri, children.</i>	<i>Postēri, posterity.</i>
<i>Luceres, -um, a third part of the early Romans.</i>	<i>Prōcēres, -um, the nobles.</i>
<i>Majōres, -um, ancestors.</i>	<i>Pūgillāres, -ium, writing-tables.</i>
<i>Mānes, -ium, spirits of the dead.</i>	<i>Sentes, -im, thorns.</i>
	<i>Sūpēri, -ūm, & -ōrum, the gods above.</i>

IX. Feminines wanting the Singular.

<i>Alpes, -ium, the Alps.</i>	<i>Fēriæ, holydays.</i>	<i>Nuptiæ, a marriage.</i>
<i>Angustiæ, difficulties.</i>	<i>Fraces, -um, the lees of oil.</i>	<i>Officiæ, cheats.</i>
<i>Antia, a fore lock.</i>	<i>Gades, -ium, Cadiz.</i>	<i>Opēre, workmen.</i>
<i>Apinæ, gewgaws.</i>	<i>Gerræ, trifles.</i>	<i>Parietinæ, old walls.</i>
<i>Argutiæ, quirks, witticisms.</i>	<i>Grates, -ium, thanks.</i>	<i>Partes, -ium, a party.</i>
<i>Bigæ, a chariot drawn by two horses.</i>	<i>Hyades, -um, the seven stars.</i>	<i>Phalæra, trappings.</i>
<i>Trigæ, —by three.</i>	<i>Induciæ, a truce.</i>	<i>Plagæ, nets.</i>
<i>Quadrigæ, —by four.</i>	<i>Induviæ, clothes to put on.</i>	<i>Pleiades, -um, the seven stars.</i>
<i>Braccæ, breeches.</i>	<i>Ineptiæ, silly stories.</i>	<i>Præstigæ, enchantments.</i>
<i>Branchiæ, the gills of a fish.</i>	<i>Inferiæ, sacrifices to the Infernals.</i>	<i>Primitiæ, first fruits.</i>
<i>Charites, -um, the three graces.</i>	<i>Insidiæ, snares.</i>	<i>Quisquiliæ, sweepings.</i>
<i>Citellæ, panners.</i>	<i>Kalendæ, Nōnæ, Idus, -uum, names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.</i>	<i>Rēliquiæ, a remainder.</i>
<i>Cūnæ, a cradle.</i>	<i>Lāpideinæ, stone quarries.</i>	<i>Sālina, salt-pits.</i>
<i>Dēclinæ, tilles.</i>	<i>Litræ, an epistle.</i>	<i>Scālæ, a ladder.</i>
<i>Dira, imprecations, the furries.</i>	<i>Lactes, -ium, small em-trails.</i>	<i>Scātēbræ, a spring.</i>
<i>Divitiæ, riches.</i>	<i>Mānubiæ, spoils taken in war.</i>	<i>Scōpæ, a besom, a broom.</i>
<i>Dryades, -um, the nymphs of the woods.</i>	<i>Mina, threats.</i>	<i>Tēnebræ, darkness.</i>
<i>Excubiæ, watches.</i>	<i>Minutiæ, little niceties.</i>	<i>Thermæ, hot baths.</i>
<i>Exequiæ, funerals.</i>	<i>Nūgæ, trifles.</i>	<i>Thermopylæ, straits of mount Eta.</i>
<i>Exuvie, spoils.</i>	<i>Nundinæ, a market.</i>	<i>Tricæ, toys.</i>
<i>Faciōtiæ, pleasant sayings.</i>		<i>Valvæ, folding doors.</i>
<i>Facultates, -um, & -ium, one's goods and chattels.</i>		<i>Vergiliæ, the seven stars.</i>
		<i>Vindiciæ, a claim of liberty, a defence.</i>

X. Neuters wanting the Singular.

<i>Acta, public acts, or records.</i>	<i>Crēpandia, children's baubles.</i>
<i>Adversaria, a memorandum book.</i>	<i>Cūnābula, a cradle, an origin.</i>
<i>Æstiva, sc. castra, summer quarters.</i>	<i>Dictēria, scoffs, witticisms.</i>
<i>Arma, arms.</i>	<i>Exa, the entrails.</i>
<i>Bellaria, -ōrum, sweetmeats.</i>	<i>Februa, -ōrum, purifying sacrifices.</i>
<i>Bona, goods.</i>	<i>Flabra, blasts of wind.</i>
<i>Brēvia, -ium, shelves.</i>	<i>Fōria, muck.</i>
<i>Castra, a camp.</i>	<i>Frāga, strawberries.</i>
<i>Chāristia, -ōrum, a peace feast.</i>	<i>Hiberna, sc. castra, winter quarters.</i>
<i>Cybāria, victuals.</i>	<i>Ilia, -ium, the entrails.</i>
<i>Cōmilia, an assembly of the people to make laws, elect magistrates, or hold trials.</i>	<i>Incūnābula, a cradle.</i>
	<i>Insecta, insects.</i>
	<i>Iusta, funeral rites.</i>

Lamenta, lamentations.	Praëbia, an amulet.
Lantia provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.	Præcordia, the bowels.
Lustra, dens of wild beasts.	Principia, the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.
Mægālia, -ium, cottages.	Pýthia, games in honour of Apollo.
Mœnia, -ium, & -iōrum, the walls of a city.	Rostra, a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.
Multicia, garments finely wrought.	Scrūta, old clothes.
Mūnia, -iōrum, offices.	Sponsalia, -ium, espousals.
Orgia, the sacred rites of Bacchus.	Strātia sc. castra, a standing camp.
Ovilia, -ium, an inclosure where the people went to give their votes.	Suōvētaurilia, -ium, a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.
Pālæaria, -ium, the dew-lap of a beast.	Tālaria, -ium, winged shoes.
Pārāpherna, all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.	Tesque, rough places.
Pārentālia, -ium, solemnities at the funeral of parents.	Transtra, the seats where the rowers sit in ships.
Philtra, love potions.	Utenilia, -ium, utensils.

XI. The following Plurals are sometimes found in the Singular.

Annāles, ium, annals.	Gēnæ, the cheeks.	Phālēræ, trappings.
Antæ, door-posts.	Hābēnæ, reins.	Plērique, many.
Argūtæ, witricisms.	Hyādēs, um, the Pleiads.	Prōcēres, um, nobles.
Artus, num, the joints.	Ineptiæ, silly wit.	Pūgillāria, ium, or
Bigæ, a chariot drawn by two horses.	Lātēbræ, lurking places.	Pūgillāres, ium, a notebook.
Castēs, ium, a hunter's net.	Libēri, children.	Quādrigæ, a chariot drawn by four horses.
Cœlitēs, um, and num, the gods.	Mājōres, um, ancestors.	Quiritēs, um, and ium, citizens of Rome.
Cyclādēs, um, the Cycladian islands.	Mānēs, ium, the shades.	Rēliquiæ, a remainder.
Dēcimæ, tilhes.	Māpalia, huts.	Sātēbræ, rugged places.
Diræ, the Furies.	Mīnūtæ, little niceties.	Scālæ, a ladder.
Dryādēs, um, the Dryads.	Naiādēs, um, fountain nymphs.	Sentēs, ium, thorns.
Epulæ, a banquet.	Nārēs, ium, the nostrils.	Singūli, one by one.
Eumēnidēs, um, the Furies.	Nātes, ium, the buttocks.	Spōliæ, spoils.
Facētia, pleasant sayings.	Oblivia, forgetfulness.	Supēri, the gods above.
Fidēs, ium, a stringed instrument.	Officiæ, cheats.	Transtra, seats for the rowers in a ship.
Frāga, orum, strawberries.	Optimātes, um, nobles.	Utenilia, ium, utensils.
Gēmīni, twins.	Pālæaria, ium, the dew-lap of a beast.	Vēprēs, um, brambles.
	Pascua, pastures.	
	Pēnātēs, ium, household gods.	

XII. The following Singulars are sometimes found in the Plural.

Acōnītum, wolfsbane.	Avōna, oats.	Contāgium, a contagion.
Aēr, ēris, the air.	Balsāmum, balsam.	Crōcus, saffron.
Æs, æris, brass, money.	Cālō, ōris, heat.	Cruor, ōris, blood.
Ævum, an age.	Cārō, carnis, flesh.	Cūtis, the skin.
Allium, garlic.	Cēra, wax.	Ebur, ōris, ivory.
Amīcītia, friendship.	Cicūta, hemlock.	Electrum, amber.

Fār, <i>sarris</i> , corn.	Marmor, ōris, <i>marble</i> .	Rūbor, ōris, <i>redness</i> .
Fervor, ōris, <i>heat</i> .	Mēl, mellis, <i>honey</i> .	Sāl, sālis, (<i>masc.</i>) <i>salt</i> .
Fūror, ōris, <i>madness</i> .	Munditia, <i>neatness</i> .	Sōpor, ōris, <i>sleep</i> .
Fūmus, <i>smoke</i> .	Nēquitia, <i>wickedness</i> .	Spuma, <i>foam</i> .
Glōria, <i>glory</i> .	Nex, nēcis, <i>cruel death</i> .	Sulfur, ūris, <i>sulphur</i> .
Hordeum, <i>barley</i> .	Oblivio, ōnis, <i>forgetfulness</i> .	Tēpor, ōris, <i>heat</i> .
Ira, <i>anger</i> .	Pālea, <i>chaff</i> .	Terror, ōris, <i>terror</i> .
Jūs, jūris, <i>justice, law</i> .	Pax, pācia, <i>peace</i> .	Thymum, <i>thyme</i> .
Lætitia, <i>joy</i> .	Pix, pīcis, <i>pitch</i> .	Tribulus, <i>a thistle</i> .
Languor, ōris, <i>saintness</i> .	Pulvis, ōris, <i>dust</i> .	Triastia, <i>sadness</i> .
Lātex, ūis, <i>liquor, water</i> .	Purpura, <i>purple</i> .	Verbena, <i>vervain</i> .
Lignum, <i>wood, a log</i> .	Quies, ōtis, <i>rest</i> .	Vigor, ōris, <i>strength</i> .
Liquor, ōris, <i>liquor</i> .	Rōs, rōris, <i>dew</i> .	Vinum, <i>wine</i> .
Lux, lūcia, <i>light</i> .		

XIII. The following differ somewhat in meaning with respect to the number in which they are used.

Ædes, <i>is, a temple</i> .	Fāla, <i>a trick</i> .	Opis, <i>gen. help</i> .
Ædes, ium, <i>a house</i> .	Fāle, <i>scaffolding</i> .	Opes, um, <i>power, wealth</i> .
Auxilium, <i>aid</i> .	Fastus, ūis, <i>pride</i> .	Opēra, <i>labour</i> .
Auxilia, <i>auxiliary troops</i> .	Fastus, uum, <i>and</i> .	Opēre, <i>workmen</i> .
Bōnum, <i>a good thing</i> .	Fasti, ōrum, <i>a calendar</i> .	Plāga, <i>a climate</i> .
Bōna, <i>property</i> .	Finis, <i>an end</i> .	Plāgæ, <i>nets, toils</i> .
Carcer, <i>a prison</i> .	Finēs, <i>boundaries</i> .	Principium, <i>a beginning</i> .
Carcēres, <i>a gaol</i> .	Fortūna, <i>fortune</i> .	Principia, <i>the general's situation in a camp</i> .
Castrum, <i>a castle</i> .	Fortūne, <i>luck, wealth</i> .	Rostrum, <i>a beak</i> .
Castra, <i>a camp</i> .	Furfur, <i>bran</i> .	Rostra, <i>the elevated place at Rome from which orators spoke</i> .
Cōmītium, <i>a part of the Roman forum</i> .	Furfures, <i>dandruff</i> .	Rūs, <i>the country</i> .
Cōmītia, <i>an assembly for election</i> .	Litēra, <i>a letter of the alphabet</i> .	Rūra, <i>fields</i> .
Cūpēdia, <i>z. delicacy</i> .	Litēre, <i>an epistle</i> .	Sāl, <i>salt</i> .
Cūpēdiæ, ārum, <i>and</i> .	Lustrum, <i>a space of five years</i> .	Sāles, <i>witticisms</i> .
Cūpēdia, ōrum, <i>dainties</i> .	Lustra, <i>dens of wild beasts</i> .	Tōrus, <i>a bed, a tuft, a cord</i> .
Cōpia, <i>plenty</i> .	Mūs, <i>custom</i> .	Tōri, <i>brawney muscles</i> .
Cōpis, <i>forces</i> .	Mōres, <i>manners</i> .	
Fācultas, <i>ability</i> .		
Fāciltātes, <i>wealth</i> .		

XIV. Plurals sometimes used for the Singular.

Alta, <i>the sea</i> .	Corpōra, <i>a body</i> .	Jējūnia, <i>fasting</i> .
Animi, <i>courage</i> .	Crēpuscula, <i>twilight</i> .	Ignes, <i>love</i> .
Auræ, <i>the air</i> .	Currus, <i>a chariot</i> .	Inguina, <i>the groin</i> .
Cārīne, <i>a keel</i> .	Exilia, <i>banishment</i> .	Jūbæ, <i>a mane</i> .
Cervicæ, <i>the neck</i> .	Frīgōra, <i>cold</i> .	Limīna, <i>a threshold</i> .
Colla, <i>the neck</i> .	Gaudia, <i>joy</i> .	Littōra, <i>a shore</i> .
Cōmæ, <i>the hair</i> .	Grāmīna, <i>grass</i> .	Menæ, <i>a service or course of dishes</i> .
Connūbia, <i>marriage</i> .	Guttūra, <i>the throat</i> .	Nenīæ, <i>a funeral dirge</i> .
Corda, <i>the heart</i> .	Hymēnæi, <i>marriage</i> .	

Nūmina, <i>the divinity.</i>	Pectōra, <i>the breast.</i>	Tempōra, <i>time.</i>
Odia, <i>hatred.</i>	Rictūs, <i>the jaws.</i>	Thālami, <i>marriage, or marriage-bed.</i>
Ora, <i>the mouth, the countenance.</i>	Rōbōra, <i>oak, strength.</i>	Tōri, <i>a bed, a couch.</i>
Oræ, <i>confines.</i>	Silentia, <i>silence.</i>	Via, <i>a journey.</i>
Ortus, <i>a rising, the east.</i>	Sinūs, <i>the breast of a Roman garment.</i>	Vultūs, <i>the countenance.</i>
Otia, <i>ease, leisure.</i>	Tædæ, <i>a torch.</i>	Thūra, <i>frankincense.</i>

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbos*, and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri* and *laurūs*, a laurel tree; *sēquester*, -tri, or -tris, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *mātēria*, -æ or *matereis*, -iē, matter; *plebs*, -is, the common people, or *plebes*, -is, -ēi, or contracted, *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tōnitrus*, -ūs, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *pēnus*, -i, and -ūs, m. or f. or *penus*, -ēris, neut. all kind of provisions. 7. In termination, gender and declension; as, *æther*, -ēris, masc. and *æthra*, -æ, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, -is or -idis, a tiger; to which may be added nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidēna*, -æ; or *Fidēnæ*, -ārum, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, -æ; and *mendum*, -i, a fault; *cassis*, -idis; and *cassida*, -æ, a helmet. So,

Acīnus, & -um, a grape-stone.	Essēda, & -um, a chariot.
Alvear, & -e, & -ium, a bee-hive.	Eventus, & -um, an event.
Amārācus, & -um, sweet marjorum.	Fulgetra, & -um, lightning.
Ancile, & -ium, an oval shield.	Gālērus, & -um, a hat.
Angiportus, -ūs, & -i & -um, a narrow lane.	Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -ēris or -ēri, a bunch, a swelling.
Aphractus, & -um, an open ship.	Glūtīnum, & -en, glue.
Aplustre, & -um, the flag, colours.	Hebdōmes, & -āda, a week.
Bācūlus, & -um, a staff.	Intrita, & -um, fine mortar, minced meat.
Baltus, & -um, a bell.	Librārium, & -a, a book-case.
Bātilus, & -um, a fire-shovel.	Mācēria, & -es, iēi, a wall.
Cāpūlus, & -um, a hill.	Milliāre, & -ium, a mile.
Capus, & -o, a capon.	Mōnītum, & -us, -ūs, an admonition.
Cōpa, & -e, indecl. an onion.	Muria, & -es, -iēi, brine or pickle.
Clypeus, & -um, a shield.	Nāsus, & -um, the nose.
Collūvies, & -io, filth, dirt.	Obsīdio, & -um, a siege.
Compāges, & -go, a joining.	Œstrus, & -um, a gad-bee.
Conger, & -grus, a large eel.	Œstrea, & -um, an oyster.
Crōcus, & -um, saffron.	Peplus, & -um, a veil, a robe.
Cūbītus, & -um, a cubit.	Pietrina, & -um, a bake-house.
Ditāvium, & -es, a deluge.	Prætextus, -ūs, & -um, a pretext.
Elēphantus, & Elēphas, -antis, an elephant.	Rāpa, & -um, a turnip.
Elēgus, & -ēia, an elegy.	Rūma, & -men, the cud.
	Runcus, & -um, a brush.

Sēps, & sēpes, f. a hedge.

Segmen, & -mentum, a piece or paring.

Sibilus, & -um, a hissing.

Sīnus, & -um, a milk-pail.

Spurcītia, & -es, nastiness.

Strāmen, & -tum, straw.

Suffimen, & -tum, a perfume.

Tignus, & -um, a plank.

Tōral, & -āle, a bed-covering.

Torcūlar, & -āre, a wine press.

Viscus, & -um, bird-lime.

Vēternus, & -um, a lethargy.

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant; thus, *vāsa -ōrum*, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas*; but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular and retained the plural; and so of others.

DIVISION OF NOUNS ACCORDING TO THEIR SIGNIFICATION AND DERIVATION.

I. The name of a particular person or thing individually is called a *proper* name; as,

All christian and surnames of men, as, *Paulus*, *Cicero*, Charles, Frederic, &c.; the names of cities, mountains, and rivers; as, London, Andes, Missouri. But a name which belongs to several things of one kind is called a *common* name; as, *homo*, 'a man;' *rex*, 'a king;' *fluvius*, 'a river.'

The Roman names of men generally consisted of three parts, as *Marcus*, *Tullius*, *Cicero*: 1. *Marcus*, the *prænomen*, which answered to the English christian name. 2. *Tullius*, the *nomen*, distinguishing the *gens* which included many families. 3. *Cicero*, the *cognomen*, which denoted the *familia*. Sometimes the family was subdivided, and distinguished by a fourth name called the *agnomen*; thus, *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africānus*, *Lucius Cornelius Scipio Asiaticus*. If *Cicero* had had only one daughter, she would have been called *Tullia*; if two, *Tullia major* and *minor*; if more, *Tullia prima*, *secunda*, &c. If a person was adopted by another, he took his name with an *agnomen*, formed from his original *nomen*; thus *Octavius*, when adopted by *Caius Julius Cæsar*, took the name of *Caius Julius Cæsar Octaviānus*. Freed-men took the *prænomen* and *nomen* of their masters, with a new *cognomen*. Sometimes the order of the names was changed; and under the Emperors the *prænomen* was put last; thus, *L. Annæus Seneca* and *L. Annæus Mela* were two brothers.

II. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *collective* noun; as, *pōpūlus*, a people, *exercitus*, an army.

III. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *patronymic* noun; as,

Priamides, the son of Priamus; *Ætias*, the daughter of *Ætes*; *Nērīne*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æacides*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of *Æacus*; *Rōmūlides*, the Romans, from their first king Romulus.

Patronymic names of men end in *des*; of women, in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as, *Priamides*, *-dæ*, &c.; pl. *-dæ*, *dārum*, &c.; *Nērīne*, *-es*; *Tyndāris*, *-īdis* or *-īdos*; *Æētias*, *-ādīs*, &c.

IV. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *patrial* or *gentile* noun; as,

Tros, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas*, *-adis*, a woman born at Troy. *Sicūlus*, *-i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicēlis*, *-idis*, a Sicilian woman; so, *Mācēdo*, *-ōnis*, *Arpinas*, *-atis*, a man born in Macedonia, at Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood; as, *Rōmānus*, *Athēniensis*, &c.

V. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *abstract*; as,

Iustitia, justice; *bēnitas*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetness; from *iustus*, just; *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet.

The adjectives from which these abstracts come are called CONCRETES; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

VI. A substantive derived from another sub-

stantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *diminutive*; as,

Libellus, a little book; *chartula*, a little paper; *opusculum*, a little work; *corculum*, a little heart; *reticulum*, a small net; *scabellum*, a small form; *lapillus*, a little stone; *culellus*, a little knife; *pagella*, a little page: from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*, *cor*, *rete*, *scannum*. *lapis*, *culler*, *pagina*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive; as, from *puer*, *puerulus*, *puellus*, *puellulus*; from *cista*, *cistula*, *cistelli*, *cistellula*; from *homo*, *homuncio*, *homunculus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, *lun*, and are generally of the same gender with their primitives.

When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an *AMPLIFICATION*, and ends in *o*; as, *capito*, *-onis*, having a large head: so, *naso*, *labeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

VI. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *verbal noun*; as,

amor, love; *doctrina*, learning; from *amo*, and *doceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ura*; as, *lectio*, a lesson; *amator*, a lover; *luctus*, grief; *creatura*, a creature.

ADJECTIVE.

An Adjective is a word *added* to a substantive, to express its quality; as, *durus*, *hard*; *mollis*, *soft*.*

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.†

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

* We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

† An adjective properly has neither genders, numbers, nor cases; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension ; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension :

Acer, <i>sharp.</i>	Căler, <i>swift.</i>	Pedester, <i>on foot.</i>
Alăcer, <i>cheerful.</i>	Equester, <i>belonging to a horse.</i>	Sălăuber, <i>wholesome.</i>
Campester, <i>belonging to a plain.</i>	Păluster, <i>marshy.</i>	Sylvester, <i>woody.</i>
Călăber, <i>famous.</i>		Vălăcer, <i>swift.</i>

Rule for the Gender of Adjectives.

In adjectives of three terminations, the first is masc., the second fem., and the third neut. In those of two terminations, the first is masc. and fem., and the second neut. Adjectives of one termination are of all genders.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Bonus, masc. bona, fem. bonum, neut. *good.*

Singular.

N. bôn-us,	-a,	-um,
G. bôn-i,	-æ,	-i,
D. bôn-o,	-æ,	-o,
A. bôn-um,	-am,	-um,
V. bôn-e,	-a,	-um,
A. bôn-o,	-â,	-o.

Plural.

N. bôn-i,	-æ,	-a,
G. bon-orum,	-ârum,	-orum,
D. bon-is,	-is,	-is,
A. bon-os,	-as,	-a,
V. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
A. bon-is,	-is,	-is.

Tēner, tenēra, tenērum, *tender.*

Singular.

N. tēn-er,	-ēra,	-ērum,
G. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēri,
D. ten-ēro,	-ēræ,	-ēro,
A. ten-ērum,	-ēram,	-ērum,
V. ten-er,	-ēra,	-ērum,
A. ten-ēro,	-ērâ,	-ēro.

Plural.

N. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēra,
G. ten-erōrum,	-erârum,	-erōrum,
D. ten-ēris,	-ēris,	-ēris,
A. ten-ēros,	-ēras,	-ēra,
V. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēra,
A. ten-ēris,	-ēris,	-ēris.

In like manner decline,

Asper, <i>rough.</i>	Gibber, <i>crook-backed.</i>	Miser, <i>wretched.</i>
Căter, (<i>hardly used</i>) <i>the rest.</i>	Lăcer, <i>torn.</i>	Prosper, <i>prosperous.</i>
	Lăber, <i>free.</i>	

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *lāniger*, bearing wool; *ōpifer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise, *sātūr*, *sātūra*, *sātūrum*, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, *āter*, *atra*, *atrum*, black; gen. *atri*, *atræ*, *atri*; dat. *atro*, *atræ*, *atro*, &c. So,

<i>Eger</i> , sick.	<i>Mācer</i> , lean.	<i>Sācer</i> , sacred.
<i>Crēber</i> , frequent.	<i>Nīger</i> , black.	<i>Scāber</i> , rough.
<i>Glāber</i> , smooth.	<i>Pīger</i> , slow.	<i>Tēter</i> , ugly.
<i>Intēger</i> , entire.	<i>Pulcher</i> , fair.	<i>Vāfer</i> , crafty.
<i>Lūdīcer</i> , ludicrous.	<i>Rūber</i> , red.	

Dexter, right, has *-ira*, *-trum*, or *-tēra*, *-tērum*.

Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all the genders; in the other cases, like *bonus* and *tener*.

Unus, -a, -um; gen. unius, dat. uni, one.	Alter, alterius, one of two, the other.
Alius, -ius, one of many, another.	Uter, utrius, either, whether of the two.
Nullus, nullius, none.	Neuter, -trius, neither.
Solus, -ius, alone.	Uterque, utriusque, both.
Tōtus, -ius whole.*	Uterlibet, utriuslibet. } which of the two you please.
Ullus, ius, any.	Utervis, -triusvis, }

Alterūter, the one or the other, *alterutrus*, *alterutri*, and sometimes *alterius utrius alteri utri*, &c.

These adjectives, except *tōtus*, are called *partitives*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*.

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum sedile*, a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say, *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vīr*, or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *femīna*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Fēlix, masc. fem. and neut.; happy.

Singular.			Plural.		
N. <i>fēlix</i> ,	<i>fēlix</i> ,	<i>fēlix</i> ,	N. <i>felices</i> ,	<i>felices</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,
G. <i>felicia</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,	G. <i>feliciūm</i> ,	<i>feliciūm</i> ,	<i>feliciūm</i> ,
D. <i>felici</i> ,	<i>felici</i> ,	<i>felici</i> ,	D. <i>feliciūbus</i> ,	<i>feliciūbus</i> ,	<i>feliciūbus</i> ,
A. <i>feliceūm</i> ,	<i>feliceūm</i> ,	<i>fēlix</i> ,	A. <i>felices</i> ,	<i>felices</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,
V. <i>fēlix</i> ,	<i>fēlix</i> ,	<i>fēlix</i> ,	V. <i>felices</i> ,	<i>felices</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,
A. <i>felice</i> , or <i>felici</i> ,	} in all the genders.		A. <i>feliciūbus</i> ,	<i>feliciūbus</i> ,	<i>feliciūbus</i> .

* *Tōtus*, so great, is regularly declined.

Prūdēns, m. f. and n. *prudent*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. prud-ens,	-ens,	-ens,	N. prūdēt-es,	-es,	-ia,
G. prud-entis,	-entis,	-entis,	G. prudēt-ium,	-ium,	-ium,
D. prud-enti,	-enti	-enti,	D. prudēt-ibus,	-ibus,	-ibus,
A. prud-entem,	-entem,	-ens,	A. prudēt-es,	-es,	-ia,
V. prud-ens,	-ens,	-ens,	V. prudēt-es,	-es,	-is,
A. prudente, or prudenti,	} <i>in all the gen- ders.</i>		A. prudēt-ibus,	-ibus,	-ibus.

In like manner decline,

Amens, -tis, <i>mad</i> .	Fallax, <i>deceitful</i> .	Rēcens, <i>fresh</i> .
Atrox, -ūcis, <i>cruel</i> .	Fērax, <i>fertile</i> .	Rēpens, <i>sudden</i> .
Audax, -ācis, & -ens, -tis, <i>bold</i> .	Fērox, <i>fierce</i> .	Sāgax, -ācis, <i>sagacious</i> .
Bīlix, -īcis, <i>woven with a double thread</i> .	Frēquens, <i>frequent</i> .	Sālar, -ācis, <i>lustful</i> .
Cāpax, <i>capacious</i> .	Ingens, <i>huge</i> .	Sāpiens, <i>wise</i> .
Cīcur, -ūris, <i>tame</i> .	Iners, -tis, <i>sluggish</i> .	Sōlers, <i>shrewd</i> .
Clēmens, -tis, <i>merciful</i> .	Insons, <i>guiltless</i> .	Sons, <i>guilty</i> .
Contūmax, <i>stubborn</i> .	Mendax, <i>lying</i> .	Tēnax, <i>tenacious</i> .
Dēmens, <i>mad</i> .	Mordax, <i>biting, satirical</i> .	Trux, -ūcis, <i>cruel</i> .
Edax, <i>gluttonous</i> .	Pernix, -icis, <i>swift</i> .	Uber, -ēris, <i>fertile</i> .
Effīcax, <i>effectual</i> .	Pervīcax, <i>wilful</i> .	Vehēmens, <i>vehement</i> .
Elēgans, <i>handsome</i> .	Pētūlans, <i>froward, saucy</i> .	Vēlox, -ūcis, <i>swift</i> .
	Prægnans, <i>with child</i> .	Vōrax, <i>devouring</i> .

Mitis, masc. and fem.; mite, neut.; *meek*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. mitis,	mitis,	mīte,	N. mites,	mites,	mitia,
G. mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	G. mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
D. miti,	miti,	miti,	D. mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
A. mitem,	mitem,	mīte,	A. mites,	mites,	mitia,
V. mitis,	mitis,	mīte,	V. mites,	mites,	mitia,
A. miti,	miti,	miti.	A. mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

Acer or acris, masc. acris, fem. æve, neut. *sharp*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. ā-cer or acris,	acris,	acre,	N. a-cres,	a-cres,	a-cria,
G. a-cris,	a-cris,	a-cris,	G. a-crium,	a-crium,	a-crium,
D. a-cri,	a-cri,	a-cri,	D. a-cribus,	a-cribus,	a-cribus,
A. a-crem,	a-crem,	a-cre,	A. a-cres,	a-cres,	a-cria,
V. a-cer or acris,	a-cris,	a-cre,	V. a-cres,	a-cres,	a-cria,
A. a-cri,	a-cri,	a-cri	A. a-cribus,	a-cribus,	a-cribus.

In like manner *ālācer*, or *alacris*, *cēler* or *celēris*, and the other adjectives included in the exception on page 69; which form exceptions also to the rule for the gender of adjectives on that page, having in the nom. and voc. sing. two terminations for the masculine.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular: but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia*: except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following have *e* in the Ablative singular, and *um* in the Gen. plur. They are scarcely ever used in the Neuter singular, and never in the Neuter plural. *Ales*, *itis*, 'winged,' 'swift'; *Bipes*, *edis*, 'two-footed'; *Cælebs*, *idis*, 'unmarried'; *Compos*, *ötis*, 'having obtained one's desire'; *Discolor*, *öris*, 'of various colours'; *Hospes*, *itis*, 'hospitable'; *Impos*, *ötis*, 'without power'; *Impubes*, *ëris*, 'under age'; *Juvenis*, *is*, 'young'; *Pauper*, *ëris*, 'poor'; *Puber* or *Pubes*, *ëris*, 'full grown'; *Redux*, *ücis*, 'returning'; *Senex*, *senis*, 'old'; *Sospes*, *itis*, 'safe'; *Superstes*, *itis*, 'surviving'; *Tricuspis*, *idis*, 'three-forked'; (*tricus-pide telo*, Ovid); *Tripes*, *edis*, 'three-footed'; *Vigil* *itis*, 'watchful.' Also compounds in *CEPS*, *FEX*, *CORPOR*, and *GENE*; as, *Bicorpor*, *öris*, 'two-bodied'; *Tricorpor*, *öris*, 'three-bodied'; though *Artifex*, *icis*, 'artificial'; *Degener*, *ëris*, 'degenerate'; *Particeps*, *ëpis*, 'partaking of'; *Princeps*, *ëpis*, 'chief'; have also *i* in the Abl.

Exc. 2. The following have *e* or *i* in the Abl. sing. and *um* in the Gen. plur. *Dives*, *itis*, 'rich'; *Inops*, *öpis*, 'needy'; *Quadruplex*, *icis*, 'four-fold.'

Exc. 3. *Concors*, *dis*, 'agreeing'; *Consors*, *tis*, 'sharing'; *Exsors*, *tis*, 'given by choice'; *Supplex*, *icis*, 'suppliant'; have *e* or *i* in the Abl. and *ia*, *ium*, in the Nom. and Gen. pl. *Locuples*, *ëtis*, 'wealthy,' has *e* or *i*, and *ia*, *ium* or *um*. *Sons*, *tis*, 'guilty,' and *Insons*, *tis*, 'guiltless,' have *e* or *i*, and Gen. plur. *ium*, or *um*. *Memor*, *öris*, 'mindful,' has *i* and *um*. *Uber*, *ëris*, 'fruitful,' *i*, *a*, and *um*. *Vetus*, *ëris*, 'old,' has *i* or *e*, and *a*, and *um*. *Par*, *päris*, 'equal,' has only *i* in the Abl. sing. and in plur. *ia*, *ium*; but its compounds have *e* or *i*.

Exc. 4. The following have the Abl. in *e* or *i*, and want the Neut. plur. *Concolor*, *öris*, 'of the same colour'; *Versicolor*, *öris*, 'parti-coloured'; *Deses*, *idis*, 'slothful'; *Hebes*, *ëtis*, 'blunt,' 'dull'; *Perpes*, *ëtis*, 'perpetual'; *Præpes*, *ëtis*, 'swift'; *Reses*, *idis*, 'idle'; *Teres*, *ëtis*, 'round.' Of these *Præpes* only is found in the Gen. plur.

Exc. 5. *Exspes*, 'hopeless,' and *Potis*, *is*, *e*, 'able,' are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has sometimes *potis* in the neut.

The Neuter *Plus*, 'more,' is thus declined:

Singular.	Plural.	
N. Plus,	N. Plures,	-a or ia,
G. Pluris,	G. Plur-ium,	-ium,
D. _____	D. Pluribus,	-ibus,
A. Plus,	A. Plur-es,	-a or ia,
V. _____	V. _____	_____
A. Plure or i.	A. Pluribus,	-ibus.

REMARKS.

1. Comparatives and adjectives in *us*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberio regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as, *victrici ferro*, not *victrice*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as *victor*, victorious for the masc. *victrix*, for the fem. *Victrix*, in the plural has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *victrices*, *victricia*; so, *ultor*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is also neuter in the singular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frænum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jugum*, *limus*, *somnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declivis*, *-e*, and *declivus*, *-a*, *-um*, steep; *imbécillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half asleep; *exanimis*, and *exanimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say, *magnanimus*, *flexanimus*, *effrænus*, *levisomnus*; not *magnanims*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pusillanims*, *injūgis*, *illimis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *pusillanimus*, &c. So, *semianims*, *inermis*, *sublimis*, *activis*, *declivis*, *proclivis*; rarely *semanimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *denominatives*;

as, *cordatus*, *mōratus*, *coelestis*, *adāmantinus*, *corpōreus*, *agrestis*, *æstivus*, &c.; from *cor*, *mos*, *cælum*, *adāmas*, &c.

Those which diminish the signification of their primitives, are called *diminutives*; as, *misellus*, *parvulus*, *dūriuscūlus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing, are called *amplificatives*, and end in *osus*, or *entus*; as, *vinōsus*, *vinolentus*, much given to wine; *opērōsus*, laborious; *plumbōsus*, full of lead; *nōdōsus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpulentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *auritus*, having long or large ears; *nasūlus*, having a large nose; *litratus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive, or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *possessive adjective*; as,

Scoticus, *pāternus*, *herilis*, *aliēnus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another; from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbals*; as,

amabilis, amiable: *capaz*, capable; *docilis*, teachable; from *amo*, *capio*, *doceo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acūtus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent.

Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *serpens*, *advocatus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legatus*; *sponsa*, *nata*, *serta*, sc. *corôna*, a garland; *prætexta*, sc. *vestis*; *debitum*, *decretum*, *præceptum*, *satum*, *lectum*, *votum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs are called *adverbials*;

as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crastinus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*, &c. There are also adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra*; *anticus*, from *ante*; *posticus*, from *post*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.

1. The Cardinal or *Principal* numbers are :

Unus,	<i>one.</i>	1.	I.
Duo,	<i>two.</i>	2.	II.
Tres,	<i>three.</i>	3.	III.
Quatuor,	<i>four.</i>	4.	IV.
Quinque,	<i>five.</i>	5.	V.
Sex,	<i>six.</i>	6.	VI.
Septem,	<i>seven.</i>	7.	VII.
Octo,	<i>eight.</i>	8.	VIII.
Novem,	<i>nine.</i>	9.	IX.
Decem,	<i>ten.</i>	10.	X.
Undecim,	<i>eleven.</i>	11.	XI.
Duodecim,	<i>twelve.</i>	12.	XII.
Tredecim,	<i>thirteen.</i>	13.	XIII.
Quatuordecim,	<i>fourteen.</i>	14.	XIV.
Quindécim,	<i>fifteen.</i>	15.	XV.
Sextdecim,	<i>sixteen.</i>	16.	XVI.
Septendécim,	<i>seventeen.</i>	17.	XVII.
Octodécim,	<i>eighteen.</i>	18.	XVIII.
Novendécim,	<i>nineteen.</i>	19.	XIX.
Viginti,	<i>twenty.</i>	20.	XX.
Viginti unus, or }	<i>twenty-one.</i>	21.	XXI.
Unus et viginti, }			
Viginti duo, or }	<i>twenty-two.</i>	22.	XXII.
Duo et viginti, }			
Triginta,	<i>thirty.</i>	30.	XXX.
Quadráginta,	<i>forty.</i>	40.	XL.
Quinquaginta,	<i>fifty.</i>	50.	L.
Sexaginta,	<i>sixty.</i>	60.	LX.
Septuaginta,	<i>seventy.</i>	70.	LXX.
Octoginta,	<i>eighty.</i>	80.	LXXX.
Nonaginta,	<i>ninety.</i>	90.	XC.

Centum,	<i>a hundred.</i>	100.	C.
Ducenti, -æ, -a,	<i>two hundred.</i>	200.	CC.
Trecenti, -æ, -a,	<i>three hundred.</i>	300.	CCC.
Quadringenti,	<i>four hundred.</i>	400.	CCCC.
Quingenti,	<i>five hundred.</i>	500.	D.
Sexcenti,	<i>six hundred.</i>	600.	DC.
Septingenti,	<i>seven hundred.</i>	700.	DCC.
Octingenti,	<i>eight hundred.</i>	800.	DCCC.
Nongenti,	<i>nine hundred.</i>	900.	DCCCC.
Mille,	<i>a thousand.</i>	1,000.	M.
Duo millia, or	<i>two thousand.</i>	2,000.	MM.
Bis mille,			
Decem millia, or			
Decies mille,			
Viginti millia, or	<i>ten thousand.</i>	10,000.	XM.
Vicies mille,			
	<i>twenty thousand.</i>	20,000.	XXM.

A thousand was originally marked thus, *oio*, which in latter times was contracted into *m*. Five hundred was marked thus, *io*, or, by contraction, *v*.

The annexing of *o*. to *io*. makes its value ten times greater; thus, *ioo*. marks five thousand, and *iooo*. fifty thousand.

The prefixing of *c*. together with the annexing of *o*. to the number *cio*. makes its value ten times greater; thus, *oioioo*. denotes ten thousand; and *oioioooo*. a hundred thousand. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, *oioioooo*. *oioioooo*. signified two hundred thousand, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters; thus, *iii*. denotes three thousand; *X*. ten thousand.

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

Unus is not used in the plural, except when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *in unis ædibus*, in one house. Terent. Eun. ii. 3. 75. *Unæ, nuptiæ*. Id. Andr. iv. 1. 51. *In una mania convenère*. Sallust. Cat. 6. or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. Cic. Flacc. 29.

Duo and *tres* are thus declined :

<i>Plural.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. duo,	duæ,	duo,	N. tres,	tres,	tria,
G. duorum,	duarum,	duorum,	G. trium,	trium,	trium,
D. duobus,	duabus,	duobus,	D. tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
A. duos or duo,	duas,	duo,	A. tres,	tres,	tria,
V. duo,	duæ,	duo,	V. tres,	tres,	tria,
A. duobus,	duabus,	duobus.	A. tribus,	tribus,	tri'

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the cardinal numbers from *quatuor*, to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, *-tæ*, *-ta*; *ducentorum*, *-târûm*, *-tôrûm*, &c.

Mille, the substantive, makes Nom. and Acc. *mille*, Abl. *milli*; as, *mille hominûm*, 'a thousand men;' *milli hominûm*, 'with a thousand men.' In the plural it is perfect. *Duo millia hominûm*, 'two thousand men;' *Trium millium hominûm*, *Tribus millibus hominûm*, &c.

Mille, the adjective is plural only, and indeclinable; as, *milli homines*, 'a thousand men;' *mille hominibus*, 'with a thousand men.' To express more than one thousand, it has the numeral adverbs joined with it; as, *Bis mille homines*, 'two thousand men;' *Ter mille homines*, &c.

2. The Ordinal numbers, are, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second, &c.; declined like *bonus*.

3. The Distributive are, *singuli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, or by twos, &c.; declined like the plural of *bonus*.

4. The Multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, or two-fold; *triplex*, triple, or three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex*, *-icis*, &c.

5. The Cardinal and Distributive numbers may be thus distinguished; the Cardinal expresses a number absolutely, as, *one*, *two*, &c.; the Distributive are those which distribute the same number to every single person; as, *Dedit nobis DECEM libros*, 'he gave us *together* ten books;' *dedit nobis DENOS libros*, 'he gave us *each* ten books.'

But poets, and sometimes prose writers, use the Distributive for the Cardinal numbers, particularly with substantives which are plural only; as, *binæ nuptiæ*, 'two weddings;' *binæ literæ*, 'two epistles;' not *duæ*, for *duæ literæ* would mean two letters of the alphabet.

The Multiplicative numbers are also sometimes used for the Cardinal by the poets; as, *Duplices tendens ad sidëra palmas*, instead of *duas palmas*.

The interrogative words to which these numerals answer, are *quot*, *quôtus*, *quôtëni*, *quôties*, and *quôtuplex*.

Quot, how many? is indeclinable: So *tot*, so many; *tôtidem*, just so many; *quotquot quotcunque*, how many soever; *aliquot*, some.

The following Table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives,

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
<i>Primus, -a, -um.</i>	<i>Singŭli, -e, -a.</i>	<i>Semel, once.</i>
<i>Sĕcundus.</i>	<i>Bini.</i>	<i>Bis, twice.</i>
<i>Tertius.</i>	<i>Terni.</i>	<i>Ter, thrice.</i>
<i>Quartus.</i>	<i>Quaterni.</i>	<i>Quāter, four times.</i>
<i>Quintus.</i>	<i>Quini.</i>	<i>Quinquies, &c.</i>
<i>Sextus.</i>	<i>Sĕni.</i>	<i>Sexies.</i>
<i>Septimus.</i>	<i>Septĕni.</i>	<i>Septies.</i>
<i>Octāvus.</i>	<i>Octōni.</i>	<i>Octies.</i>
<i>Nonus.</i>	<i>Nōvĕni.</i>	<i>Nōvies.</i>
<i>Dĕcimus.</i>	<i>Dĕni.</i>	<i>Dĕcies.</i>
<i>Undĕcimus.</i>	<i>Undĕni.</i>	<i>Undecies.</i>
<i>Duodĕcimus.</i>	<i>Duodĕni.</i>	<i>Duodecies.</i>
<i>Dĕcimus tertius.</i>	<i>Trĕdĕni, terni deni.</i>	<i>Tridecies.</i>
<i>Dĕcimus quartus.</i>	<i>Quaterni deni.</i>	<i>Quatuordecies.</i>
<i>Dĕcimus quintus.</i>	<i>Quindĕni.</i>	<i>Quindecies.</i>
<i>Dĕcimus sextus.</i>	<i>Seni deni.</i>	<i>Sextdecies.</i>
<i>Dĕcimus septimus.</i>	<i>Septĕni deni.</i>	<i>Decies ac septies.</i>
<i>Dĕcimus octāvus.</i>	<i>Octōni deni.</i>	<i>Decies ac octies.</i>
<i>Dĕcimus nonus.</i>	<i>Nōvĕni deni.</i>	<i>Decies et novies.</i>
<i>Vigĕsimus, vicesĭmus.</i>	<i>Vicĕni.</i>	<i>Vicies.</i>
<i>Vigĕsimus primus.</i>	<i>Vicĕni singŭli.</i>	<i>Vicies semel.</i>
<i>Trigĕsimus, tricesĭmus.</i>	<i>Tricĕni.</i>	<i>Tricies.</i>
<i>Quadragesĭmus.</i>	<i>Quadrāgĕni.</i>	<i>Quadrāgies.</i>
<i>Quinquagesĭmus.</i>	<i>Quinquagĕni.</i>	<i>Quinquāgies.</i>
<i>Sexagesĭmus.</i>	<i>Sexāgĕni.</i>	<i>Sexāgies.</i>
<i>Septuagesĭmus.</i>	<i>Septuāgĕni.</i>	<i>Septuāgies.</i>
<i>Octogesĭmus.</i>	<i>Octogĕni.</i>	<i>Octōgies.</i>
<i>Nonagesĭmus.</i>	<i>Nonagĕni.</i>	<i>Nonāgies.</i>
<i>Centesĭmus.</i>	<i>Centĕni.</i>	<i>Centies.</i>
<i>Dŭcentesĭmus.</i>	<i>Dŭcĕni.</i>	<i>Dŭcenties.</i>
<i>Trĕcentesĭmus.</i>	<i>Trĕcentĕni.</i>	<i>Trĕcenties.</i>
<i>Quadrīngentesĭmus.</i>	<i>Quāter centĕni.</i>	<i>Quadrīngenties.</i>
<i>Quīngentesĭmus.</i>	<i>Quīquies centĕni.</i>	<i>Quīngenties.</i>
<i>Sexcentesĭmus.</i>	<i>Sexies centĕni.</i>	<i>Sexcenties.</i>
<i>Septīngentesĭmus.</i>	<i>Septies centĕni.</i>	<i>Septīngenties.</i>
<i>Octīngentesĭmus.</i>	<i>Octies centĕni.</i>	<i>Octīngenties.</i>
<i>Nongentesĭmus.</i>	<i>Novies centĕni.</i>	<i>Nōningenties.</i>
<i>Millesĭmus.</i>	<i>Millĕni.</i>	<i>Millies.</i>
<i>Bis millesĭmus.</i>	<i>Bis millĕni.</i>	<i>Bis millies.</i>

To the numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c.; as, *bīpartitus, tripartitus, &c.*; *duplus, triplus, &c.*; *bimulus, trimulus, &c.*; *biennis, triennis, &c.*; *bimestris, trimestris, &c.*; *bīlĭbris, trilĭbris, &c.*; *bīnārius, ternārius, &c.*; which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as, *versus sĕnārius*, a verse of six feet; *dĕnārius nummus*, a coin of ten asses; *octogenārius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centenārius*, a flock of an hundred, &c.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees: as, *durus*, hard; *durior*, harder; *durissĭmus*, hardest.

Those adjectives only are compared whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality; as *durus*, hard; and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as, *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *durior*, harder; *sapientior*, wiser.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *durissimus*, hardest; *sapientissimus*, wisest.

FORMATION OF THE DEGREES.

COMPARATIVE.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive which ends in *i*, by adding the syllable *or* for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter; as,

Nom. *altus, alta, altum*,
Gen. *alti*:

then adding *or* and *us*, we have *altior, altior, altius*.

In adjectives of the third declension, the Dative is of course the first case that ends in *i*, as, Nom. *mitis*, Gen. *mitis*, Dat. *miti*; then by adding *or* and *us*, we have *mitior, mitior, mitius*.

Mitior, meeker, is thus declined.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Mitior,</i>	<i>mitior,</i>	<i>mitius,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Mitiōris,</i>	<i>mitiōris,</i>	<i>mitiōris,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Mitiōri,</i>	<i>mitiōri,</i>	<i>mitiōri,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Mitiōrem,</i>	<i>mitiōrem,</i>	<i>mitius,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Mitior,</i>	<i>mitior,</i>	<i>mitius,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Mitiōre, or</i> <i>Mitiōri,</i>	} <i>in all the genders.</i>	

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
<i>Gen.</i>	Mitiōrum,	mitiōrum,	mitiōrum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Mitiōribus,	mitiōribus	mitiōribus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra.
<i>Voc.</i>	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
<i>Abl.</i>	Mitiōribus,	mitiōribus,	mitiōribus.

SUPERLATIVE.

The Superlative degree is formed from the same case by adding *ssimus* ; as, *Nom. altus*, *Gen. alti*, Superlative *altissimus*. So, *mitis*, *Gen. mitis*, *Dat. miti*, Superlative *mitissimus*.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed from the nominative by adding *rimus* ; as, *pauper*, 'poor'; *pauperrimus*, 'poorest.'

The Comparative is always of the Third declension, the Superlative of the First and Second.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

1. Bōnus,	mēlior,	optīmus,	<i>good</i> ,	<i>better</i> ,	<i>best</i> .
Mālus,	pejor,	pessīmus,	<i>bad</i> ,	<i>worse</i> ,	<i>worst</i> .
Magnus,	major,	maxīmus,	<i>great</i> ,	<i>greater</i> ,	<i>greatest</i> .
Parvus,	mīnor,	mīnīmus,	<i>small</i> ,	<i>less</i> ,	<i>least</i> .
Multus,	—	plūrīmus,	<i>much</i> ,	<i>more</i> ,	<i>most</i> .

Fem. Multa, plurīma; *neut.* multam, plus, plurīmum; *plur.* multi, plures, plurīmi; multæ, plures, plurīmæ, &c.

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse; in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maxīmus*, for *magnissīmus*; *worse* for *worrest*.

2. These five have their superlative in *līmus*:

Fācīlis, faciliior, facillīmus, <i>easy</i> .	Imbēcillīs, imbecillior, imbecillīmus,
Grācīlis, graciliior, gracillīmus, <i>lean</i> .	<i>weak</i> .
Hūmīlis, humiliior, humillīmus, <i>low</i> .	Sīmīlis, similiior, simillīmus, <i>like</i> .

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently:

Cyter, citerior, citīmus, <i>near</i> , &c.	Mātūrus, -ior, maturrīmus, or maturissīmus, <i>ripe</i> .
Dexter, dexterior, dextīmus, <i>right</i> .	Postērus, posterior, postrēmus, <i>behind</i> .
Sinister, sinisterior, sinistīmus, <i>left</i> .	Sūpērus, -rior, suprēmus or summus, <i>high</i> .
Exter, -erior, extīmus or extrēmus, <i>outward</i> .	Vētus, vēterior, vēterrīmus, <i>old</i> .
Infērus, -ior, infīmus or imus, <i>below</i> .	
Intērus, interior, intīmus, <i>inward</i> .	

4. Compounds in *dicus*, *loquus*, *ficus*, and *völus*, have *entior*, and *entissimus*; as, *mälëdicus*, railing; *mälëdicentior*, *maledicentissimus*: So, *magnilöquus*, one that boasteth; *bënëficus*, beneficent; *mälëvölus*, malevolent; *mirificus*, wonderful; *-entior*, *-entissimus*, or, *mirificissimus*. *Nëquam*, indeclinable, worthless, vicious, has *nëquior*, *nequissimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased, yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive :

Dëtërior, worse, *dettërrimus*.
Ociör, swifter, *ocissimus*.
Prior, former, *primus*.

Pröpiör, nearer, *proximus*, nearest
 or next.
Ultërior, farther, *ultimüs*.

2. The following want the comparative :

Inclëtus, *inclytissimus*, renowned.
Mëritus, *meritissimus*, deserving.
Növus, *novissimus*, new.

Nüpërus, *nuperrimus*, late.
Par, *pärißimus*, equal.
Säcer, *sacerrimus*, sacred.

3. The following want the superlative :

Adölëscens, *adolescëntior*, young.
Diütërnus, *diuturnior*, lasting.
Ingens, *ingëntior*, huge.
Jüvënis, junior, young.
Opimus, *opimior*, rich.

Prönus, *pronior*, inclined downwards.
Sätür, *sätürior*, full.
Sënex, senior, old.

To supply the superlative of *jüvënis*, or *adölëscens*, we say *minimüs natu*, the youngest; and of *sënex*, *maximüs natu*, the oldest.

These also want the Superlative: Adjectives in *älis*, *ilis*, and *ölis*, and many in *änuß*, *ivis*, and *inquus*; as *capitälis*, 'capital'; *regälis*, 'royal'; *civilis*, 'civil'; *juvenilis*, 'youthful'; *tolerabilis*, 'tolerable'; *arcänus*, 'secret'; *declivis*, 'bending downwards'; *proclivis*, 'down-hill'; *longinquus*, 'far off'; *propinquus*, 'near,' &c. Some are found only in the Positive; the compounds of *Gero* and *Fero*, participles in *rus* and *duß*, and adjectives in *bundus*, *imus*, *inus*, *ivus*, *orus*. Also, *almus*, 'cherishing'; *calvus*, 'bald'; *claudus*, 'lame'; *delirus*, 'out of the furrow'; 'doting'; *dubius*, 'doubtful'; *egënuß*, 'indigent'; *magnanimus*, 'courageous'; *memor*, 'mindful'; *mirus*, 'wonderful'; *rudis*, 'new,' 'rude'; *salvus*, 'safe'; *vacuus*, 'empty'; *vulgäris*, 'common,' &c. But many of these admit of *Magis*, *Minus*, *Maximë*, *Minimë*, &c.

Antërior, former; *sëquior*, worse; *sätior*, better, are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all; such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versicōlor*, of divers colours; *pestifer*, poisonous; also, adjectives in *us* pure, in *ivus*, *ivus*, *orus*, or *ivus*, and diminutives; as, *dūbius*, 'doubtful,' *vācūus*, empty; *fūgīvius*, that flieth away; *mātūlinus*, early; *cānōrus*, shrill; *lēgīvius*, lawful; *tēnellus*, somewhat tender; *majuscūlus*, &c.; together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox-ōcis*, soon or early ripe; *mīrus*, *ēgēnus*, *lācer*, *mēmōr*, *sospes*, &c.

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maxime* for the superlative; thus, *egēnus*, needy, *magis egēnus*, more needy; *valde* or *maxime egēnus*, very, or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

IRREGULAR AND UNUSUAL COMPARISONS.

Apricus, sunny.	Anterior, former, Cæs.	Apricissimus, Colum.
Bellus, fine.	Apricior, Plin.	Bellissimus, Cic.
Celer, swift.	Bellior, Varr.	Celerissimus, passim.
	Celerior, passim.	Celerissimus, Enn. & Cn. Manl.
Communis, common.	Communior, Suet.	Communissimus, Suet.
Consultus, skilled.	[Consultior, Tertul.]	Consultissimus, Cic.
Crispus, curled.	Crispior, Plin.	Crispissimus, Colum.
Diversus, different.	Diversior, Gel. Lucr.	Diversissimus, Liv. Tacit.
Dives, rich.	Divitior, Ovid. Cic. }	Divitissimus, Cic.
Falsus, false.	Ditior, Hor. }	Ditissimus, Virg.
Fidus, faithful.	Falsius, Petron.	Falsissimus, Colum.
Imbecillus, weak.	Fidior, Liv.	Fidissimus, Cic. Ovid.
	Imbecillior, Cic.	Imbecillissimus, Senec.
		Cels.
Jējunus, fasting.	Jējunior, Cic.	
Inīnītus, indefinite.	Inīnitior, Cic.	
Invictus, unconquered.	[Invictior, S. August.]	Invictissimus, Cic. et al.
Invisus, hated.	Invisior, Mart.	Invisissimus, Plin. Senec.
Invitus, reluctant.	Invitior, Plaut.	Invitissimus, Cic.
Licēns, extravagant.	Licentior, Cic.	
Mellitus, honeyed.		Mellitissimus, Apul.
Nēquam, wicked.	Nēquior, Cic.	Nēquissimus, Cic.
Persuasus, persuaded.		Persuasissimus, Cic.
Pōtia, or Pōte, able.	Pōtior, passim.	Pōtissimus, passim,
	Sātius, better, passim.	
	Sēquior, worse, Liv.	
Sylvester, or }		
Sylvestris, woody. }	Sylvestrior, Plin.	
Sūpīnus, lying on the back.	Sūpīnior, Mart.	

PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a noun*.*

* Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou*, for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen ; *ego, tu, sui ; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui ; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester ; nostras, vestras, and cujas.*

Three of them are substantives, *ego, tu, sui* ; the other fifteen are adjectives.

Ego, I.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. ego,	I,	N. nos,	we,
G. mei,	of me,	G. nostrum, or nostri,	of us,
D. mihi,	to me,	D. vobis,	to us,
A. me,	me,	A. nos,	us,
V. _____		V. _____	
A. me,	with me.	A. nobis,	with us.

Tu, thou.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. tu,	thou,	N. vos,	ye or you,
G. tui,	of thee,	G. vestrum, or vestri,	of ye ,
D. tibi,	to thee,	D. vobis,	to you,
A. te,	thee,	A. vos,	you,
V. tu,	O thou,	V. vos,	O ye or you,
A. te,	with thee. } or you.	A. vobis,	with you.

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. _____		N. _____	
G. sui,	of himself, of herself, of itself.	G. sui,	of themselves.
D. sibi,	to himself, to herself, &c.	D. sibi,	to themselves,
A. se,	himself, &c.	A. se,	themselves,
V. _____		V. _____	
A. se,	with himself, &c.	A. se,	with themselves.

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person ; thus, we cannot say, *O ego, O I ; O nos, O we.*

Obs. 2. *Mihi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mi*.

do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word ; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country, we say, When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country.*

Oss. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrūrum* and *nostrōrum*; of *tu*, *vestrōrum* and *vestrūrum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrūm* and *vestrūm*.

We commonly use *nostrūm* and *vestrūm* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns *he*, *she*, *it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, or *is*; as,

Ille, for the masc. *illa*, for the fem. *illud* for the neuter, that: or *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it or that: thus,

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. ille,	illa,	illud,	N. illi,	illæ,	illa,
G. illius,	illius,	illius,	G. illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
D. illi,	illi,	illi,	D. illis,	illis,	illis,
A. illum,	illam,	illud,	A. illos,	illas,	illa,
V. ille,	illa,	illud,	V. illi,	illæ,	illa,
A. illo,	illā,	illo.	A. illis,	illis,	illis.

Ipsē, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, are declined like *ille*; only *ipse*, has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.

Ipsē, is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as *ego ipse*, I myself.

Hic, *hæc*, *hoc*, *this*.

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	N. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	G. horum,	harum,	horum,
D. huic,	huic,	huic,	D. his,	his,	his,
A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	A. hos,	has,	hæc,
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	V. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
A. hoc,	hac,	hoc.	A. his,	his,	his.

Is, *ea*, *id*; *he*, *she*, *it*; or *that*.

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. is,	ea,	id,	N. ii,	eæ,	ea,
G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	G. eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
D. ei,	ei,	ei,	D. iis or eis,	iis, or eis,	iis or eis,
A. eum,	eam,	id,	A. eos,	eas,	ea,
V. ———	———	———	V. ———	———	———
A. eo,	eā	eo.	A. iis or eis,	iis or eis,	iis or eis,

Quis, quæ, quod or *quid*? which, what? Or *quis*? who? or what man? *quæ*? who? or what woman? *quod* or *quid*? what? which thing? or what thing? thus,

Singular.			Plural.		
N. quis,	quæ,	quod or quid,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D.	queis, or quibus,	
A. quem,	quam,	quod or quid,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. _____			V. _____		
A. quo,	quâ,	quo.	A.	queis, or quibus.	

Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that; Or *vir qui*, the man *who* or *that*; *fœmina quæ*, the woman *who* or *that*; *negotium quod*, the thing *which* or *that*: genit. *vir cujus*, the man *whose* or *of whom*; *mulier cujus*, the woman *whose* or *of whom*; *negotium cujus*, the thing *of which*, seldom *whose*, &c. thus,

Singular.			Plural.		
N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cujus,	D.	queis, or quibus,	
A. quem,	quam,	quod,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. _____			V. _____		
A. quo,	quâ,	quo.	A.	queis, or quibus.	

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own; are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um; and *noster*, our; *vester*, your; like *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the first and second declension; *noster*, -tra, -trum.

Nostras, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what or which country; are declined like *felix*, of the third declension: gen. *nostrâtis*, dat. *nostrâti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things which cannot be addressed or called upon, want the vocative.

Meus has *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the voc. sing. masc.

The relative *qui* has frequently *quî* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is sometimes used for *quis*: and instead of *cujus*, the gen. of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus*, -a, -um.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their significations, are divided into the following classes:

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present : *Ego, tu, hic, iste, and sometimes ille, is, ipse.*
2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before : *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, qui.*
3. *Possessives*, which signify possession : *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester.*
4. *Patrials or Gentiles*, which signify one's country : *nostras, vestras, cujas.*
5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question : *quis? cujus?* When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.
6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind : *sui and suus.*

COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously :

1. With other pronouns ; as, *isthic, isthac, isthoc, isthuc, or istuc.* Acc. *Isthunc, isthanc, isthoc, or isthuc.* Abl. *Isthoc, isthac, isthoc.* Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *isthac, of iste and hic.* So *illic, of ille and hic.*
2. With some other parts of speech ; as, *hujusmodi, cujusmodi, &c. mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quocum, or quicum, and quibuscum : eorum, eorum ; eccos, eccas, and sometimes ecca in the nom. sing. of ecce and is.* So *illum, of ecce and ille.*
3. With some syllable added ; as, *tute, of tu and te, used only in the nom. egomet, tūlmet, suimet, through all the cases, thus, meimet, tuimet, &c. of ego, tu, sui, and mei.* Instead of *tumet* in the nom. we say, *tūlmet : Hiccine, haccine, &c. in all the cases that end in c ; of hic and cine : Meapte, tuapte, suapte, nostrapte, vestrapte, in the ablat. fem. and sometimes meapte, tuapte, &c. of meus, &c. and pte : hiccce, haccce, hoccce ; hujusce, hisce, hoace ; of hic and ce : whence hujuscemodi, ejuscemodi, cujuscemodi.* So, *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined :

Singular.

N. idem,	eādem,	idem,
G.	ejusdem,	
D.	eidem,	
A. eundem,	eandem,	idem,
V. idem,	eādem,	idem,
A. eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.

Plural.

N. iidem,	eādem,	eādem,
G. eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem,
D.	eisdem, or iisdem,	
A. eosdem,	easdem,	eādem,
V. iidem,	eādem,	eādem,
A.	eisdem, or iisdem.	

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

Quis in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded ; but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are *quisnam*, who? *quispiam*, *quisquam*, any one; *quisque*, every one; *quisquis*, whosoever; which are thus declined:

Nom.				Gen.	Dat.
Quisnam,	quisnam,	quodnam	or quidnam	ejusnam;	eiusnam;
Quispiam,	quispiam,	quodpiam	or quidpiam;	ejuspiam;	eiuspiam;
Quisquam,	quisquam,	quodquam	or quidquam;	ejusquam;	eiusquam;
Quisque,	quisque,	quodque	or quidque;	ejusque;	eiusque;
Quisquis,	quisquis,	quodquis	or quidquis;	ejusquis;	eiusquis.

And so in the other cases according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the fem. at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*; accusative *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nom. sing. fem.; and in the nominative and accusative plural neuter, as, *aliquis*, some; *ecquis*, who? of *et* and *quis*; also, *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately; thus, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined:

Nom.				Gen.	Dat.
Aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquod	or aliquid;	alicujus;	alicui;
Ecquis,	ecqua or ecque,	ecquod	or ecquid;	eccujus;	eccui;
Si quis,	si qua,	si quod	or si quid;	si cujus;	si cui;
Ne quis,	ne qua,	ne quod	or ne quid;	ne ejus;	ne cui;
Num quis,	num qua,	num quod	or num quid;	num ejus;	num cui.

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *ecquisnam*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *unuscujusque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet* *quisvis*, any one, whom you please; which are thus declined:

Nom.				Gen.	Dat.
Quicunque,	quiscunque,	quodcunque;		cujuscunque;	cuiunque;
Quidam,	quidam,	quoddam or quiddam;		cujusdam;	cuidam;
Quilibet,	quemlibet,	quodlibet or quidlibet;		cujuslibet;	cuiilibet;
Quivis,	quemvis,	quodvis or quidvis;		cujusvis;	cuivis.

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *quis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds, in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the genitive plural, *n* being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c., are used when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c., for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason, they are by some reckoned substantives.

Obs. 5. *Aliquis* and *Quidam* may be thus distinguished; the former denotes a person or thing indeterminately; the latter, determinately.

Obs. 6. *Uter* refers to two, and is therefore joined to comparatives.

Obs. 7. *Quis* may refer to many, and is therefore joined to superlatives.

Obs. 8. *Hic* and *Ille* are often found to refer to two words going before them. *Hic* usually to the latter; *Ille* to the former.

Obs. 9. As demonstratives, *Hic* refers to the person nearest to me; *Iste* to the person nearest to you; *Ille* to any intermediate person.

Obs. 10. *Ille* denotes honour: *Iste*, contempt: as, *Ille vir*; *iste homo*.

Obs. 11. *Tuus* is used when we speak to one; as, *Sumus, Coriolane, in tuis castris captiva an mater?* *Vester*, when we speak to more than one; as, *Cives, miseremini cæli vestri*.

Obs. 12. *Alter* is in general applied to one of two; *Alius* to one of many.

Obs. 13. *Quivis*, 'any whom you please;' *Quisquam*, 'any one;' and *Ullus*, 'any,' are thus used: *Quivis* affirms; as, *Quidvis mihi sat est*, 'any thing pleases me.' *Ullus* never affirms, but asks or denies, as also *Quisquam*. Thus, *Nec ulla res ex omnibus me angit*, 'nor does any of all these things distress me;' *Nec quisquam eorum te novit*, 'nor does any one of them know you.' In an interrogative sentence, as, *An quisquam dubitavit?* 'will any one doubt?' *Ullus* is used in the same way.

Obs. 14. *Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, the genitives of the primitives, are generally used when *passion* or the *being acted upon*, is denoted: thus, *amor mei*, means 'the love wherewith I am loved.'

Obs. 15. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, the possessives, denote action or the possession of a thing; as, *amor meus*, is 'the love which I possess and exert towards somebody else.'

RECIPROCALE.

Obs. 16. *Sui* and *suis* are called Reciprocale, because they always refer to some preceding person or thing, generally the principal noun in the sentence; thus, *Cæsar Ariovisto dixit, non sese (Cæsarem) Gallis, sed Gallis sibi (Cæsari) bellum intulisse*, 'Cæsar told Ariovistus that he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him'; in which *sese* and *sibi* refer to Cæsar, the principal noun.

Obs. 17. The Reciprocale may likewise be applied to the word which follows the verb, provided that it is capable of being turned into the nominative without altering the sense; thus, *Trahit sua quemque voluptas*, (Virg.) 'his own pleasure allures each;' in which *sua* refers to *quemque*, the object of the verb, because it may become the subject, as in the equivalent expression, *Quisque trahitur a voluptate sua*, 'each one is allured by his own pleasures.'

Obs. 18. *Suis* is sometimes used in the sense of *unicuique proprius*, 'peculiar;' as, *Sabæi sua thura mittunt*, 'the country of the Sabæi produces frankincense peculiar to itself.' It sometimes indicates 'fitness,' or 'congruity;' as, *Sunt et sua dona parenti*, (Virg.) 'there are likewise for my father fit, appropriate, or suitable presents.'

Obs. 19. *Suis* is often used without the substantive being mentioned; as, *suis cuique tribuito*, 'give every man his own;' (*negotium*, 'thing,' being understood.) *Sui responderunt*, 'his soldiers,' or 'countrymen answered;' (*cives* or *militēs* being understood.)

Obs. 20. The reciprocals alone are used with *cuiusque*, and they are generally placed before it; as, *Pro se quisque acriter intendat animum*, Liv. 'let each one for himself give his most critical attention;' *Sua cuiusque animantis natura est*, Cic. 'every animal has its own peculiar nature.'

Obs. 21. *Sibi*, and sometimes *tibi*, *mihi*, &c., are used for the sake of elegance, when not indispensably necessary; as, *Expedi mihi hoc negotium*, Ter. 'despatch this business for me.'

VERB.*

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.*

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition, as in a state of motion or rest; &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon; as, *amare*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent by

* It is called a *Verb* or *Word* by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all; thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation, or assertion, is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall*, *I walk*, *walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk*, *a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, *-ōris*, love, a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

The verb is also called *Transitive* when the action *passes over* to the object, or has an effect on some other thing; as *scribo lītēras*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passes not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambulo*, I walk; *curro*, I run; which are likewise called *Neuter* verbs. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as *sistere*, to stop; *incipere*, to begin; *durare*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being* are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse* or *existere*, to be, or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine*; as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amātu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.

The modes are four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

The numbers are two; *Singular* and *Plural*.

The persons are three; *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

VOICES.

Voice expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting or being acted upon. When the action is con-

fined to the agent or nominative, as, *cado*, 'I fall;' or when it is exerted by the nominative upon an external object, as, *amo virum*, 'I love the man,' the Active voice is used; but when the action is exerted by an external object upon the nominative, the Passive voice is employed, as, *vir amatur*, 'the man is loved.'

As an Active verb denotes that the nominative to it, is doing something, and a Passive verb, that something is done to it, or in the language of grammarians, that it is suffering; hence, to distinguish whether an English verb is to be rendered in Latin by the Active or Passive voice, nothing more is necessary than to consider whether the nominative be doing or suffering; as, 'John is building,' *Joannes ædificat*: 'The wall is building,' *murus ædificatur*. The English is the same in both examples; but in one, John is active, in the other the wall is passive.

MODES.

Modes or *moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb:

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amābo*, I shall or will love; or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *si me obsecret*, *redibo*, if he entreat me, I will return. *Ter.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amāre*, to love.

TENSES.

Tenses, or Times, express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

The general divisions of time are into *present*, *past*, and *future*; but grammarians make five tenses, namely: the Present, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect, and the Future.

PRESENT.

1. The Present tense denotes that an action is going on; as, *ædificat*, 'he builds.' Historians and poets sometimes describe past actions in this tense, in order to give animation to their discourse, by bringing them, as it were, under immediate observation. Thus, Livy, *Ad equites dictator ADVOLAT obtestans ut ex equis DESCENDANT*, 'the dictator flies forward to the cavalry, beseeching them to dismount from their horses.'

2. Any general custom, if still existing, may be expressed in this tense; thus, *Apud Parthos signum datur tympano, et non tubâ*, Justin. 'Among the Parthians the signal is given by the drum, and not by the trumpet.'

3. In Latin, as in English, this tense may express futurity; as, *qudm mox navigo Ephesum*, Plaut. 'as soon as I sail,' or 'shall sail to Ephesus.'

PRÆTER-IMPERFECT.

1. The Præter-imperfect expresses an action as passing sometime ago, but not yet finished; as, *œdificābat*, 'he was building.'

2. It likewise denotes what is usual or customary; as, *aiebat*, 'he was wont to say.'

PRÆTER-PERFECT.

1. When we mean to say that an action *has taken* place, without particular reference to the present, or *has taken* place within some period of time not yet fully past, we use the Præter-perfect tense, as, *amavi*, 'I loved,' or 'have loved.'

2. It is sometimes used instead of the Pluperfect indicative; *Quæ postquam evolvit, cæcoque exēmit acervo*, Ovid, 'which after he sorted (had sorted) and took (had taken) from the confused mass.'

3. It is poetically used instead of the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive; as, *nec veni nisi fata*, Virg. 'neither would I have come unless the fates,' &c., for *venissem*.

PRÆTER-PLUPERFECT.

When we mean to say that an action was completed before some other past action took place, we use the Præter-pluperfect tense, as *hostes superavērat*, 'he had conquered the enemy' before the succours arrived.

FUTURE.

Future time is expressed two different ways. When we mean to express that an action will be going on, some time hence, but not finished, we use the Future indicative; as, *Cenābo*, 'I shall sup;' but when we mean to say that an action will be finished before another action, also future, takes place, we use the Future subjunctive; as, *Cum cœnavero, profiscar*, 'when I have supped,' or 'shall have supped, I will go.'

NUMBER AND PERSON.

1. *Number* marks how many we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer. As one or more persons may speak, be spoken to, or spoken of, there are *two* numbers; the Singular, which speaks of one, and the Plural, which speaks of more than one.

2. Person shows to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, the person spoken to, or to some other person or thing. There are three persons in each number: in the Singular, *Ego*, 'I,' is of the first; *Tu*, 'thou,' is of the second; and *Ille*, 'he,' or *Illæ*, 'she,' is of the third person: in the Plural, *Nos*, 'we,' is of the first; *Vos*, 'ye' or 'you,' is of the second; *Illi*, (masc.) 'they,' or *Illæ*, (fem.) 'they,' is of the third person; and to each of these the verb has appropriate variations in its terminations.

Qui takes the person of the antecedent.

Ipsæ may be joined to any person, according to the sense.

THE DIFFERENT CONJUGATIONS.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or, as it were, *yoked together*, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

Conjugation is the regular distribution of the various parts of verbs, according to the different voices, modes, tenses, numbers and persons.

There are four conjugations of verbs in Latin, distinguished by the vowel preceding *re* of the infinitive mode.

The first conjugation makes *āre* long; as *Amāre*.

The second conjugation makes *ēre* long; as, *Docēre*.

The third conjugation makes *ĕre* short; as, *Leġere*.

The fourth conjugation makes *īre* long; as, *Audire*.

Except *dāre*, to give, which has *ā* short, and also its compounds; thus, *Circumdāre*, to surround; *circumdāmus*, *-dātis*, *-dābam*, *-dābo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses:

ACTIVE VOICE, Indicative Mode. Present Tense.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Persons.			Persons.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Conjugation.	1. -o,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
	2. -eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
	3. -o,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.
	4. -io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat ;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
4.	-iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat ;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

Future.

1.	-ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit ;	-ābīmus,	-ābītis,	-ābunt.
2.	-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit ;	-ēbīmus,	-ēbītis,	-ēbunt.
3.	-am,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4.	-iam,	-ies,	-iet ;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1.	-em,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2.	-eam,	-eas,	-eat ;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3.	-am,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4.	-iam,	-ias,	-iat ;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

Imperfect.

1.	-ārem,	-āres,	-āret ;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
2.	-ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret ;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
3.	-ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret ;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
4.	-īrem,	-īres,	-īret ;	-irēmus,	-irētis,	-irent.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-a or āto,	-āto ;	-āte or ātōte,	-anto.
2.	-e or ēto,	-ēto ;	-ēte or ētōte,	-ento.
3.	-e or ūto,	-ūto ;	-ūte or ūtōte,	-unto.
4.	-i or īto,	-īto ;	-īte or ītōte,	-iunto.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

1.	-or,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur ;	-āmur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
2.	-eor,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
3.	-or,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ūtur ;	-īmur,	-īmīni,	-untur.
4.	-ior,	-iris or -ire,	-ītur ;	-imur,	-imīni,	-iuntur.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābar,	-ābāris or -ābāre,	-ābātur ;	-ābāmur,	-ābāmīni,	-ābantur.
2.	-ēbar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur ;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbantur.
3.	-ēbar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur ;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbantur.
4.	-iēbar,	-iēbāris, or iēbāre,	-iēbātur ;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāmīni,	-iēbantur.

Future.

1. -ābor,	-ābēris or -ābēre,	-ābŷtur;	-ābŷmur,	-ābŷmīni,	-ābuntur.
2. -ēbor,	-ēbēris or -ēbēre,	-ēbŷtur;	-ēbŷmur,	-ēbŷmīni,	-ēbuntur.
3. -ar,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
4. -iar,	-iāris or -iāre,	-iētur;	-iēmur,	-iēmīni,	-ientur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -er,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
2. -ear,	-eāris or -eāre,	-eātur;	-eāmur,	-eāmīni,	-eantur.
3. -ar,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
4. -iar,	-iāris or -iāre,	-iātur;	-iāmur,	-iāmīni,	-iantur.

Imperfect.

1. -ārer,	-ārēris or -ārēre,	-ārētur;	-ārēmur,	-ārēmīni,	-ārentur.
2. -ērer,	-ērēris or -ērēre,	-ērētur;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmīni,	-ērentur.
3. -ērer,	-ērēris or -ērēre,	-ērētur;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmīni,	-ērentur.
4. -īrer,	-irēris or -irēre,	-irētur;	-irēmur,	-irēmīni,	-irentur.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-āre or -ātor,	-ātor;	-āmīni,	-antor.
2.	-ēre or -ētor,	-ētor;	-ēmīni,	-entor.
3.	-ēre or -itor,	-itor;	-imīni,	-untor.
4.	-īre or -itor,	-itor;	-imīni,	-iuntor.

Observe. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plur. of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iēam*; *iēbat* and *iēat*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Singular.			Plural.		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Perf. -i,	-isti	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	-erunt or -ere
Plu. -ēram,	-ēras,	-erat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perf. -ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-ērīmus,	-ērītis,	-ērint.
Plu. -iēsem,	-iēset,	-iēset;	-iēsemus,	-iēsetis,	-iēsent.
Fut. -ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-ērīmus,	-ērītis,	-ērint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated :

Pres. Indic. Pres. Infin. Perf. Indic.

Sum, esse, fui. To be.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Singular.

Plural.

1. <i>Sum, I am.</i>	<i>Sūmus, We are.</i>
2. <i>Es, Thou art, or you are.</i>	<i>Estis, Ye or you are.</i>
3. <i>Est. He is.</i>	<i>Sunt, They are.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

1. <i>Eram, I was.</i>	<i>Erāmus, We were.</i>
2. <i>Eras, Thou wast, or you were.</i>	<i>Erātis, Ye or you were.</i>
3. <i>Erat, He was.</i>	<i>Erant, They were.</i>

PERFECT. *Have been or was.*

1. <i>Fui, I have been.</i>	<i>Fuīmus, We have been.</i>
2. <i>Fuisti, Thou hast been.</i>	<i>Fuistis, Ye have been.</i>
3. <i>Fuit, He has been.</i>	<i>Fuerunt, or -ere, They have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

1. <i>Fuēram, I had been.</i>	<i>Fuerāmus, We had been.</i>
2. <i>Fuēras, Thou hadst been.</i>	<i>Fuerātis, Ye had been.</i>
3. <i>Fuērat, He had been.</i>	<i>Fuerant, They had been.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.**

1. <i>Ero, I shall be.</i>	<i>Erīmus, We shall be.</i>
2. <i>Eris, Thou wilt be.</i>	<i>Erītis, Ye will be.</i>
3. <i>Erit, He will be.</i>	<i>Erunt, They will be.</i>

**Shall* and *will* are always employed to express future time.

Will, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretells: *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretells; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question; thus, "I *shall* go," "you *will* go," express event only; but "*will* you go?" imports intention; and "*shall* I go?" refers to the will of another.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Sim, <i>I may be.</i> | Sīmus, <i>We may be.</i> |
| 2. Sis, <i>Thou mayest be.</i> | Sīs, <i>Ye may be.</i> |
| 3. Sit, <i>He may be.</i> | Sint, <i>They may be.</i> |

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Essem, <i>I might be.</i> | Essemus, <i>We might be.</i> |
| 2. Eses, <i>Thou mightest be.</i> | Essētis, <i>Ye might be.</i> |
| 3. Eset, <i>He might be.</i> | Essent, <i>They might be.</i> |

PERFECT. *may have.*

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuërim, <i>I may have been.</i> | Fuerimus, <i>We may have been.</i> |
| 2. Fuëris, <i>Thou mayest have been.</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye may have been.</i> |
| 3. Fuërit, <i>He may have been.</i> | Fuerint, <i>They may have been.</i> |

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Fuissēm, <i>I might have been.</i> | Fuissēmus, <i>We might have been.</i> |
| 2. Fuisses, <i>Thou mightest have been.</i> | Fuissētis, <i>Ye might have been.</i> |
| 3. Fuisset, <i>He might have been.</i> | Fuissent, <i>They might have been.</i> |

FUTURE. *shall have.*

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuëro, <i>I shall have been.</i> | Fuerimus, <i>We shall have been.</i> |
| 2. Fuëris, <i>Thou will have been.</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye will have been.</i> |
| 3. Fuërit, <i>He will have been.</i> | Fuerint, <i>They will have been.</i> |

IMPERATIVE MODE.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 2. Es or esto, <i>Be thou.</i> | Eate or Estōte, <i>Be ye, or be you.</i> |
| 3. Esto, <i>Let him be.</i> | Sunto, <i>Let them be.</i> |

INFINITIVE MODE.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| PRES. Esse, | To be. |
| PERF. Fuisse, | To have been. |
| FUT. Esse futūrus, -a, -um, | To be about to be. |
| Fuisse futūrus, -a, -um, | To have been about to be. |

PARTICIPLE.

- FUTURE. Futūrus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood ; because the several persons are distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner, however, at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb ; thus, *ego sum*, I am, *tu es*, thou art, or you are ; *ille est*, he is ; *nos sumus*, we are ; &c. So *ego amo*, I love ; *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love ; *ille amat*, he loveth or loves ; *nos amamus*, we love, &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse ; as, *tu es*, thou art, or *much oftener*, you are ; *tu eras*, thou wast, or you were ; *tu sis*, thou mayest be, or you may be ; &c. So, *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love ; *tu amabas*, thou lovedest, or you loved ; &c.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum, To love.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *love, do love, or am loving.*

<i>S. Am-o, I love.</i>	<i>P. Am-āmus, We love.</i>
<i>Am-as, Thou lovest.</i>	<i>Am-ātis, Ye or you love.</i>
<i>Am-at, He loves.</i>	<i>Am-ant, They love.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>S. Am-ābam, I was loving.</i>	<i>P. Am-abāmus, We were loving.</i>
<i>Am-ābas, Thou wast loving.</i>	<i>Am-abātis, Ye or you were loving.</i>
<i>Am-ābat, He was loving.</i>	<i>Am-ābant, They were loving.</i>

PERFECT. *have.*

<i>S. Am-āvi, I have loved.</i>	<i>P. Am-avimus, We have loved.</i>
<i>Am-avisti, Thou hast loved.</i>	<i>Am-avistis, Ye or you have loved.</i>
<i>Am-āvit, He has loved.</i>	<i>Am-avērunt, or } They have loved.</i> <i>-avēre,</i>

PLUSPERFECT. *had.*

<i>S. Am-avēram, I had loved.</i>	<i>P. Am-averāmus, We had loved.</i>
<i>Am-avēras, Thou hadst loved.</i>	<i>Am-averātis, Ye or you had loved.</i>
<i>Am-avērat, He had loved.</i>	<i>Am-avērant, They had loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

<i>S. Am-ābo, I shall love.</i>	<i>P. Am-abimus, We shall love.</i>
<i>Am-ābis, Thou wilt love.</i>	<i>Am-abitis, Ye or you will love.</i>
<i>Am-ābit, He will love.</i>	<i>Am-ābunt, They will love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

<i>S. Am-em, I may love.</i>	<i>P. Am-ēmus, We may love.</i>
<i>Am-es, Thou mayest love.</i>	<i>Am-ētis, Ye or you may love.</i>
<i>Am-et, He may love.</i>	<i>Am-ent, They may love.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>S. Am-ārem, I might love.</i>	<i>P. Am-arēmus, We might love.</i>
<i>Am-āres, Thou mightest love.</i>	<i>Am-arētis, Ye or you might love.</i>
<i>Am-āret, He might love.</i>	<i>Am-arēnt, They might love.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>S.</i> Am-avērim, <i>I may have loved.</i>	<i>P.</i> Am-averimus, <i>We may have loved.</i>
Am-avēris, <i>Thou mayest have loved.</i>	Am-averitis, { <i>Ye or you may have</i>
Am-avērit, <i>He may have loved.</i>	Am-avērint, { <i>loved.</i>
	Am-avērint, <i>They may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might have.*

<i>S.</i> Am-avissem, <i>I might have loved.</i>	<i>P.</i> Am-avissemus, <i>We might have loved.</i>
Am-avissem, { <i>Thou mightest have</i>	Am-avissetis, { <i>Ye or you might have</i>
Am-avisset, { <i>loved.</i>	Am-avisset, { <i>loved.</i>
Am-avisset, <i>He might have loved.</i>	Am-avisset, <i>They might have loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>S.</i> Am-avēro <i>I shall have loved.</i>	<i>P.</i> Am-averimus, <i>We shall have loved.</i>
Am-avēris, <i>Thou wilt have loved.</i>	Am-averitis, { <i>Ye or you will have</i>
Am-avērit, <i>He will have loved.</i>	Am-avērint, { <i>loved.</i>
	Am-avērint, <i>They will have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-a or am-āto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love.</i>
3. Am-āto,	<i>Let him love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-āte, or am-atōte,	<i>Love ye, or do ye love.</i>
3. Am-anto,*	<i>Let them love.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>PRES.</i> Am-āre,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>PERF.</i> Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Esse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to love.</i>
Fuisse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>PRES.</i> Am-ans,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Am-aturus, -a, -um,	<i>About to love.</i>

GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i> Am-andum,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Am-andi,	<i>Of loving.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Am-ando,	<i>To loving.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Am-andum,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>Ab.</i> Am-ando,	<i>With loving.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i> Am-ātum,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Latter.</i> Am-ām,	<i>To love, or to be loved.</i>

* The form of the present subjunctive is often used for the imperative in the first and third person; *as*, *amēmus*, let us love: *ament*, let them love.

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infín.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Amor,	amāri,	amātus, <i>To be loved.</i>

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>S.</i> Am-or,	<i>I am loved.</i>	<i>P.</i> Am-āmur,	<i>We are loved.</i>
Am-āris or -āre,	<i>Thou art loved.</i>	Am-amīni,	<i>Ye or you are loved.</i>
Am-ātur,	<i>He is loved.</i>	Am-antur,	<i>They are loved.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>S.</i> Am-ābar,	<i>I was loved.</i>	<i>P.</i> Am-abāmur,	<i>We were loved.</i>
Am-abāris, or	<i>Thou wast loved.</i>	Am-abamīni,	<i>Ye or you were loved.</i>
-abāre,		Am-abantur,	<i>They were loved.</i>
Am-abātur,	<i>He was loved.</i>		

PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus sum or fui,	<i>I have been loved.</i>
Amātus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been loved.</i>
Amātus est or fuit,	<i>He has been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti sumus or fuimus,	<i>We have been loved.</i>
Amāti estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been loved.</i>
Amāti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>They have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus eram or fuēram,	<i>I had been loved.</i>
Amātus eras or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been loved.</i>
Amātus erat or fuērat,	<i>He had been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti erāmus or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been loved.</i>
Amāti erātis or fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been loved.</i>
Amāti erant or fuerant,	<i>They had been loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

<i>S.</i> Am-ābor,	<i>I shall be loved.</i>	<i>P.</i> Am-abīmur,	<i>We shall be loved.</i>
Am-abēris or	<i>Thou wilt be loved.</i>	Am-abimīni,	<i>Ye or you will be loved.</i>
-abēre,		Am-abuntur,	<i>They may be loved.</i>
Am-abītur,	<i>He will be loved.</i>		

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may, or can be.*

<i>S.</i> Am-er,	<i>I may be loved.</i>	<i>P.</i> Am-ēmur,	<i>We may be loved.</i>
Am-ēris or ēre,	<i>Thou mayest be loved.</i>	Am-emīni,	<i>Ye or you may be loved.</i>
Am-etur,	<i>He may be loved.</i>	Am-entur,	<i>They may be loved.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>S.</i> Am-ārer,	<i>I might be loved.</i>	<i>P.</i> Am-arēmur,	<i>We might be loved.</i>
Am-arēris or	<i>Thou mightest be loved.</i>	Am-areimīni,	<i>Ye or you might be loved.</i>
-arēre,		Am-arentur,	
Am-arētur,	<i>He might be loved.</i>		

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus sim or fuërim,	<i>I may have been loved.</i>
Amātus sis or fuëris,	<i>Thou mayest have been loved.</i>
Amātus sit or fuërit,	<i>He may have been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been loved.</i>
Amāti sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been loved.</i>
Amāti sint or fuërint,	<i>They may have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus essem or fuisset,	<i>I might have been loved.</i>
Amātus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been loved.</i>
Amātus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti essemus or fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been loved.</i>
Amāti essētis or fuissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have been loved.</i>
Amāti essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus fuëro,	<i>I shall have been loved.</i>
Amātus fuëris,	<i>Thou wilt have been loved.</i>
Amātus fuërit,	<i>He will have been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been loved.</i>
Amāti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been loved.</i>
Amāti, fuërint,	<i>They will have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-āre, or am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved.</i>
3. Am-ātor,	<i>Let him be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-amīni,	<i>Be ye loved.</i>
3. Am-antor,	<i>Let them be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>PRES.</i> Am-āri,	<i>To be loved.</i>
<i>PERF.</i> Esse or fuisse amātus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been loved.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Amātum iri.	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>PERF.</i> Am-ātus, -a, -um,	<i>Loved.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Am-andus, -a, -um,	<i>To be loved.</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Docēo,	docēre.	docui,	doctum, To teach.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *teach, do teach, or am teaching.*

<i>S.</i> Doc-ĕo, <i>I teach.</i>	<i>P.</i> Doc-ĕmus, <i>We teach.</i>
Doc-es, <i>Thou teachest, or you teach.</i>	Doc-ĕtis, <i>Ye or you teach.</i>
Doc-et, <i>He teaches.</i>	Doc-ent, <i>They teach.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>S.</i> Doc-ĕbam, <i>I was teaching.</i>	<i>P.</i> Doc-ebāmus, <i>We were teaching.</i>
Doc-ēbas, <i>Thou wast teaching.</i>	Doc-ebātis, <i>Ye or you were teaching.</i>
Doc-ēbat, <i>He was teaching.</i>	Doc-ēbant, <i>They were teaching.</i>

PERFECT. *have.*

<i>S.</i> Doc-ui, <i>I have taught.</i>	<i>P.</i> Doc-uīmus, <i>We have taught.</i>
Doc-uisti, <i>Thou hast taught.</i>	Doc-uistis, <i>Ye or you have taught.</i>
Doc-uit, <i>He has taught.</i>	Doc-uērunt, or -uēre, <i>They have taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>S.</i> Doc-uēram, <i>I had taught.</i>	<i>P.</i> Doc-uerāmus, <i>We had taught.</i>
Doc-uēras, <i>Thou hadst taught.</i>	Doc-uerātis, <i>Ye or you had taught.</i>
Doc-uērat, <i>He had taught.</i>	Doc-uērant, <i>They had taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

<i>S.</i> Doc-ĕbo, <i>I shall teach.</i>	<i>P.</i> Doc-ebīmus, <i>We shall teach.</i>
Doc-ĕbis, <i>Thou wilt teach.</i>	Doc-ebītis, <i>Ye or you will teach.</i>
Doc-ĕbit, <i>He will teach.</i>	Doc-ĕbunt, <i>They will teach.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

<i>S.</i> Doc-eam, <i>I may teach.</i>	<i>P.</i> Doc-eāmus, <i>We may teach.</i>
Doc-eas, <i>Thou mayest teach.</i>	Doc-eātis, <i>Ye or you may teach.</i>
Doc-eat, <i>He may teach.</i>	Doc-eant, <i>They may teach.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>S.</i> Doc-ĕrem, <i>I might teach.</i>	<i>P.</i> Doc-erēmus, <i>We might teach.</i>
Doc-ĕres, <i>Thou mightest teach.</i>	Doc-erētis, <i>Ye or you might teach.</i>
Doc-ĕret, <i>He might teach.</i>	Doc-erent, <i>They might teach.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-uērim,	<i>I may have taught.</i>
Doc-uēris,	<i>Thou mayest have taught.</i>
Doc-uērit,	<i>He may have taught.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-uērīmus,	<i>We may have taught.</i>
Doc-uērītis,	<i>Ye or you may have taught.</i>
Doc-uērint,	<i>They may have taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-uissē,	<i>I might have taught.</i>
Doc-uisses,	<i>Thou mightest have taught.</i>
Doc-uisset,	<i>He might have taught.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-uissēmus,	<i>We might have taught.</i>
Doc-uissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have taught.</i>
Doc-uissent,	<i>They might have taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-uēro,	<i>I shall have taught.</i>
Doc-uēris,	<i>Thou wilt have taught.</i>
Doc-uērit,	<i>He will have taught.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-uērīmus,	<i>We shall have taught.</i>
Doc-uērītis,	<i>Ye or you will have taught.</i>
Doc-uērint,	<i>They will have taught.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Doc-e or doc-ēto,	<i>Teach thou.</i>
3. Doc-ēto,	<i>Let him teach.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Doc-ēte or doc-etōte,	<i>Teach ye or you.</i>
3. Doc-ento,	<i>Let them teach.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ēre,	<i>To teach.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Doc-uisse,	<i>To have taught.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Esse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to teach.</i>
Fuisse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to teach.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ens,	<i>Teaching.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to teach.</i>

GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i> Doc-endum,	<i>Teaching.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Doc-endi,	<i>Of teaching.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Doc-endo,	<i>To teaching.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Doc-endum,	<i>Teaching.</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Doc-endo,	<i>With teaching.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i> Doc-tum,	<i>To teach.</i>
<i>Latter.</i> Doc-tu,	<i>To teach, or to be taught.</i>

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Dōcēor,	dōcēri,	doctus, <i>To be taught.</i>

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

S. Doc-ëor,	<i>I am taught.</i>	P. Doc-ëmur,	<i>We are taught.</i>
Doc-ëris or	} <i>Thou art taught.</i>	Doc-ëmīni,	<i>Ye or you are taught.</i>
doc-ëre,		Doc-entur,	<i>They are taught.</i>
Doc-ëtur,	<i>He is taught.</i>		

IMPERFECT. *was.*

S. Doc-ëbar,	<i>I was taught.</i>	P. Doc-ebāmur,	<i>We were taught.</i>
Doc-ebāris, or	} <i>Thou wast taught.</i>	Doc-ebamīni,	<i>Ye or you were taught.</i>
doc-ebāre,		Doc-ebantur,	<i>They were taught.</i>
Doc-ebātur,	<i>He was taught.</i>		

PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.*

Sing. Doctus sum or fui,	<i>I have been taught.</i>
Doctus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been taught.</i>
Doctus est or fuit,	<i>He has been taught.</i>
Plur. Docti sumus or fuimus,	<i>We have been taught.</i>
Docti estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been taught.</i>
Docti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>They have been taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Sing. Doctus eram or fuëram,	<i>I had been taught.</i>
Doctus eras or fuëras,	<i>Thou hadst been taught.</i>
Doctus erat or fuërat,	<i>He had been taught.</i>
Plur. Docti erāmus or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been taught.</i>
Docti'erātis or fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been taught.</i>
Docti'erant or fuërant,	<i>They had been taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

S. Doc-ëbor,	<i>I shall be taught.</i>	P. Doc-ebīmur,	<i>We shall be taught.</i>
Doc-ebëris or	} <i>Thou wilt be taught.</i>	Doc-ebimīni,	} <i>Ye or you will be taught.</i>
-ebëre,		Doc-ebuntur,	
Doc-ebītur,	<i>He will be taught.</i>		<i>They will be taught.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may, or can be.*

S. Doc-ear,	<i>I may be taught.</i>	P. Doc-eāmur,	<i>We may be taught.</i>
Doc-eāris or	} <i>Thou mayest be taught.</i>	Doc-eamīni,	} <i>Ye or you may be taught.</i>
-eāre,		Doc-eantur,	
Doc-eātur,	<i>He may be taught.</i>		

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

S. Doc-ërer,	<i>I might be taught.</i>	P. Doc-erāmur,	<i>We might be taught.</i>
Doc-erëris or	} <i>Thou mightest be taught.</i>	Doc-eremīni,	} <i>Ye or you might be taught.</i>
-erëre,		Doc-erentur,	
Doc-erëtur,	<i>He might be taught.</i>		

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doctus sim or fuërim,	<i>I may have been taught.</i>
Doctus sis or fuëris,	<i>Thou mayest have been taught.</i>
Doctus sit or fuërit,	<i>He may have been taught.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Docti simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been taught.</i>
Docti sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been taught.</i>
Docti sint or fuërint,	<i>They may have been taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doctus essem or fuisset,	<i>I might have been taught.</i>
Doctus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been taught.</i>
Doctus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been taught.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Docti essemus or fuissetus,	<i>We might have been taught.</i>
Docti essetis or fuissetis,	<i>Ye or you might have been taught.</i>
Docti essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doctus fuëro,	<i>I shall have been taught.</i>
Doctus fuëris,	<i>Thou wilt have been taught.</i>
Doctus fuërit,	<i>He will have been taught.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Docti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been taught.</i>
Docti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been taught.</i>
Docti fuërint,	<i>They will have been taught.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Doc-ëre or doc-ëtor,	<i>Be thou taught.</i>
3. Doc-ëtor,	<i>Let him be taught.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Doc-emini,	<i>Be ye taught.</i>
3. Doc-entor,	<i>Let them be taught.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ëri,	<i>To be taught.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Esse or fuisse doctus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been taught.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Doctum iri,	<i>To be about to be taught.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i> Doc-tus, -a, -um,	<i>Taught.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Doc-endus, -a, -um,	<i>To be taught.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Lëgo,	lëgëre,	lëgi,	lectum, <i>To read.</i>

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *read, do read, or am reading.*

<i>S.</i> Leg-o,	<i>I read.</i>	<i>P.</i> Leg-imus,	<i>We read.</i>
Leg-is,	<i>Thou readest.</i>	Leg-itis,	<i>Ye or you read.</i>
Leg-it,	<i>He reads.</i>	Leg-unt,	<i>They read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

S. Leg-ēbam,	<i>I was reading.</i>	P. Leg-ebāmus,	<i>We were reading.</i>
Leg-ēbas,	<i>Thou wast reading.</i>	Leg-ebātis,	<i>Ye or you were read-</i>
Leg-ēbat,	<i>He was reading.</i>	Leg-ēbant,	<i>ing. They were reading.</i>

PERFECT. *have.*

S. Lēg-i,	<i>I have read.</i>	P. Leg-īmus,	<i>We have read.</i>
Leg-isti,	<i>Thou hast read.</i>	Leg-istis,	<i>Ye or you have read.</i>
Lēg-it,	<i>He has read.</i>	Leg-ērunt or -ēre,	<i>They have read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

S. Leg-ēram,	<i>I had read.</i>	P. Leg-erāmus,	<i>We had read.</i>
Leg-ēras,	<i>Thou hadst read.</i>	Leg-erātis,	<i>Ye or you had read.</i>
Leg-ērat,	<i>He had read.</i>	Leg-erant,	<i>They had read.</i>

FUTURE. *shall, or will.*

S. Leg-am,	<i>I shall read.</i>	P. Leg-ēmus,	<i>We shall read.</i>
Leg-es,	<i>Thou wilt read.</i>	Leg-ētis,	<i>Ye or you will read.</i>
Leg-et,	<i>He will read.</i>	Leg-ent,	<i>They will read.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may, or can.*

S. Leg-am,	<i>I may read.</i>	P. Leg-āmus,	<i>We may read.</i>
Leg-as,	<i>Thou mayest read.</i>	Leg-ātis,	<i>Ye or you may read.</i>
Leg-at,	<i>He may read.</i>	Leg-ant,	<i>They may read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

S. Leg-ērem,	<i>I might read.</i>	P. Leg-erēmus,	<i>We might read.</i>
Leg-ēres,	<i>Thou mightest read.</i>	Leg-erētis,	<i>Ye or you might read.</i>
Leg-ēret,	<i>He might read.</i>	Leg-erant,	<i>They might read.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

S. Leg-erim	<i>I may have read.</i>	P. Leg-erīmus,	<i>We may have read.</i>
Leg-eris,	<i>Thou mayest have read.</i>	Leg-erītis,	<i>Ye or you may have</i>
Leg-erit,	<i>He may have read.</i>	Leg-erint,	<i>read. They may have read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have.*

S. Leg-issēm,	<i>I might have read.</i>	P. Leg-issēmus,	<i>We might have read.</i>
Leg-isses,	<i>Thou mightest have read.</i>	Leg-issētis,	<i>Ye or you might have</i>
Leg-isset,	<i>He might have read.</i>	Leg-issent,	<i>read. They might have read.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

S. Leg-ēro,	<i>I shall have read.</i>	P. Leg-erīmus,	<i>We shall have read.</i>
Leg-eris,	<i>Thou wilt have read.</i>	Leg-erītis,	<i>Ye or you will have</i>
Leg-erit,	<i>He will have read.</i>	Leg-erint,	<i>read. They will have read.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i>	2. Läg-e or leg-ÿto,	<i>Read thou.</i>
	3. Leg-ÿto,	<i>Let him read.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	2. Leg-ÿte or leg-itöte,	<i>Read ye or you.</i>
	3. Leg-unto,	<i>Let them read.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>PRES.</i>	Leg-öre,	<i>To read.</i>
<i>PERF.</i>	Läg-isse,	<i>To have read.</i>
<i>FUT.</i>	Esse lectürus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to read.</i>
	Fuisse lectürus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to read.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>PRES.</i>	Leg-ens,	<i>Reading.</i>
<i>FUT.</i>	Lec-türus, -a, -um,	<i>About to read.</i>

GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Leg-endum,	<i>Reading.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Leg-endi,	<i>Of reading.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Leg-endo,	<i>To reading.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Leg-endum,	<i>Reading.</i>
<i>Abt.</i>	Leg-endo,	<i>With reading.</i>

SUPINES,

<i>Former.</i>	Lec-tum,	<i>To read.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Lectu,	<i>To read, or to be read.</i>

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Lägor,	lägi,	lectus, <i>To be read.</i>

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE, *am.*

<i>S.</i>	Leg-or,	<i>I am read.</i>	<i>P.</i>	Leg-ÿmur,	<i>We are read.</i>
	Leg-ëris or	<i>Thou art read.</i>		Leg-imîni,	<i>Ye or you are read.</i>
	-ëre,			Leg-untur,	<i>They are read.</i>
	Leg-ÿtur,	<i>He is read.</i>			

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>S.</i>	Leg-äbar,	<i>I was read.</i>	<i>P.</i>	Leg-ebämur,	<i>We were read.</i>
	Leg-ebäris or	<i>Thou wast read.</i>		Leg-ebamîni,	<i>Ye or you were read.</i>
	-ebäre,			Leg-ebantur,	<i>They were read.</i>
	Leg-ebätur,	<i>He was read.</i>			

PERFECT. *have been, was or am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Lectus sum or fui,</i>	<i>I have been read.</i>
	<i>Lectus es or fuisti,</i>	<i>Thou hast been read.</i>
	<i>Lectus est or fuit,</i>	<i>He has been read.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Lecti sumus or fuimus,</i>	<i>We have been read.</i>
	<i>Lecti estis or fuistis,</i>	<i>Ye or you have been read.</i>
	<i>Lecti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,</i>	<i>They have been read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Lectus eram or fuēram,</i>	<i>I had been read.</i>
	<i>Lectus eras or fuēras,</i>	<i>Thou hadst been read.</i>
	<i>Lectus erat or fuērat,</i>	<i>He had been read.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Lecti erāmus or fuerāmus,</i>	<i>We had been read.</i>
	<i>Lecti erātis or fuerātis,</i>	<i>Ye or you had been read.</i>
	<i>Lecti erant or fuērant,</i>	<i>They had been read.</i>

FUTURE. *shall, or will be.*

<i>S. Leg-ar,</i>	<i>I shall be read.</i>	<i>P. Leg-ēmur,</i>	<i>We shall be read.</i>
<i>Leg-ēris or</i>	<i>} Thou wilt be read.</i>	<i>Leg-amīni,</i>	<i>Ye or you will be read.</i>
<i>-ere,</i>		<i>Leg-entur,</i>	<i>They will be read.</i>
<i>Leg-ētur,</i>	<i>He will be read.</i>		

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can be.*

<i>S. Leg-ar,</i>	<i>I may be read.</i>	<i>P. Leg-āmur,</i>	<i>We may be read.</i>
<i>Leg-āris, or</i>	<i>} Thou mayest be read.</i>	<i>Leg-amīni,</i>	<i>Ye or you may be read.</i>
<i>-āre,</i>		<i>Leg-antur,</i>	<i>They may be read.</i>
<i>Leg-ātur,</i>	<i>He may be read.</i>		

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>S. Leg-ērer,</i>	<i>I might be read.</i>	<i>P. Leg-erēmur,</i>	<i>We might be read.</i>
<i>Leg-erēris or</i>	<i>} Thou mightest be read.</i>	<i>Leg-eremīni,</i>	<i>Ye or you might be read.</i>
<i>-erere,</i>		<i>Leg-erentur,</i>	<i>They might be read.</i>
<i>Leg-erētur,</i>	<i>He might be read.</i>		

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Lectus sim or fuērim,</i>	<i>I may have been read.</i>
	<i>Lectus sis or fuēris,</i>	<i>Thou mayest have been read.</i>
	<i>Lectus sit or fuērit,</i>	<i>He may have been read.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Lecti simus or fuerimus,</i>	<i>We may have been read.</i>
	<i>Lecti sitis or fueritis,</i>	<i>Ye or you may have been read.</i>
	<i>Lecti sint or fuērint,</i>	<i>They may have been read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Lectus essem or fuissem,</i>	<i>I might have been read.</i>
	<i>Lectus esses or fuisses,</i>	<i>Thou mightest have been read.</i>
	<i>Lectus esset or fuisset,</i>	<i>He might have been read.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Lecti essemus or fuissemus,</i>	<i>We might have been read.</i>
	<i>Lecti essetis or fuissetis,</i>	<i>Ye or you might have been read.</i>
	<i>Lecti essent or fuissent,</i>	<i>They might have been read.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Sing.	Lectus fuëro,	<i>I shall have been read.</i>
	Lectus fuëris,	<i>Thou wilt have been read.</i>
	Lectus fuërit,	<i>He will have been read.</i>
Plur.	Lecti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been read.</i>
	Lecti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been read.</i>
	Lecti fuërint,	<i>They will have been read.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Leg-ëre or -itor,	<i>Be thou read.</i>
	3. Leg-itor,	<i>Let him be read.</i>
Plur.	2. Leg-imini,	<i>Be ye read.</i>
	3. Leg-untor,	<i>Let them be read.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES.	Leg-i,	<i>To be read.</i>
PERF.	Esse or fuisse lectus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been read.</i>
FUT.	Lectum iri,	<i>To be about to be read.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	Lec-tus, -a, -um,	<i>Read.</i>
FUT.	Leg-endus, -a, -um,	<i>To be read.</i>

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Capïo,	capëre,	cëpi,	captum, <i>To take.</i>

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Capio,	Capïmus,
Capis,	Capitis,
Capit,	Capiunt.

IMPERFECT.

Capiebam,	Capiebämus,
Capiebas,	Capiebätis,
Capiebat,	Capiebant.

PERFECT.

Cepi,	Cepïmus,
Cepisti,	Cepistis,
Cepit,	Cepërunt, or cepëre.

PLUPERFECT.

Cepëram,	Cepërämus,
Cepëras,	Cepërätis,
Cepërat,	Cepërant.

FUTURE.

Capiam,
Capias,
Capiet,

Capiēmus,
Capiētis,
Capiēt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Capiam,
Capias,
Capiat,

Capiāmus,
Capiātis,
Capiant.

IMPERFECT.

Capērem,
Capēres,
Capēret,

Caperēmus,
Caperētis,
Capērent.

PERFECT.

Cepērim,
Cepēris,
Cepērit,

Ceperīmus,
Ceperītis,
Cepērint.

PLUPERFECT.

Cepissem,
Cepisses,
Cepisset,

Cepissēmus,
Cepissētis,
Cepissent.

FUTURE.

Cepēro,
Cepēris,
Cepērit,

Ceperīmus,
Ceperītis,
Cepērint.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2. Cape or capīto,
3. Capīto.

2. Capīte or capītōte,
3. Capiunto.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Capēre,
PERF. Cepisse.

FUT. Esse captūrus, -a, -um,
Fuisse captūrus, -a, -um.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Capiens.

FUTURE. Captūrus.

GERUNDS.

Nom. Capiendum,
Gen. Capiendi,
Dat. Capiendo,

Acc. Capiendum,
Ab. Capiendo.

SUPINES.

Former. Captum.

Latter. Captu.

THIRD CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infm.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
Capior,	Capi,	Captus,	<i>To be taken.</i>

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Capior,	Capimur,
Capēris or capēre,	Capimīni,
Capiūtur.	Capiuntur.

IMPERFECT.

Capiēbar,	Capiebāmur,
Capiebāris, or -bāre,	Capiebamīni,
Capiebātur.	Capiebantur.

PERFECT.

Captus sum or fui,	Capti sumus or fuīmus,
Captus es or fuisti,	Capti estis or fuistis,
Captus est or fuit.	Capti sunt or fuērunt or fuere.

PLUPERFECT.

Captus eram or fuēram,	Capti erāmus or fuerāmus,
Captus eras or fuēras,	Capti erātis or fuerātis;
Captus erat or fuērat.	Capti erant or fuērant.

FUTURE.

Capiar,	Capiēmur,
Capiēris or capiēre,	Capiemīni,
Capiētur.	Capientur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Capiar,	Capiāmur,
Capiāris or capiāre,	Capiamīni,
Capiātur.	Capiantur.

IMPERFECT.

Capērer,	Caperēmur,
Caperēris or -erēre,	Caperemīni,
Caperētur.	Caperentur.

PERFECT.

Captus sim or fuērim,	Capti simus or fuerīmus,
Captus sis or fuēris,	Capti sitis or fuerītis,
Captus sit or fuērit.	Capti sint or fuērint.

PLUPERFECT.

Captus essem *or* fuisset,
 Captus esses *or* fuisses,
 Captus esset *or* fuisset.

Capti essemus *or* fuissetus,
 Capti essetis *or* fuissetis,
 Capti essent *or* fuissent.

FUTURE.

Captus fuëro,
 Captus fuëris,
 Captus fuërit.

Capti fuerimus,
 Capti fueritis
 Capti fuërint.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2. Capere *or* capitor,
 3. Capitor.

2. Capimini,
 3. Capiuntor.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Capi.

FUT. Captum iri.

PERF. Esse *or* fuisse captus -a, -um,

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Captus, -a, -um.

FUT. Capiendus, -a, -um.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.

Pres. Inf.

Perf. Indic.

Supine.

Audïo,

audire,

audïvi,

auditum, *To hear.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *hear, do hear, or am hearing.*

S. Aud-io, *I hear,*
 Aud-is, *Thou hearest.*
 Aud-it, *He hears.*

P. Aud-ïmus, *We hear.*
 Aud-itis, *Ye or you hear.*
 Aud-iunt, *They hear.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

S. Aud-iëbam, *I was hearing.*
 Aud-iëbas, *Thou wast hearing.*
 Aud-iëbat, *He was hearing.*

P. Aud-iëbamus, *We were hearing.*
 Aud-iëbātis, *Ye or you were hearing.*
 Aud-iëbant, *They were hearing.*

PERFECT. *have.*

S. Aud-ïvi, *I have heard.*
 Aud-ivisti, *Thou hast heard.*
 Aud-ïvit, *He has heard.*

P. Aud-ivimus, *We have heard.*
 Aud-ivistis, *Ye or you have heard.*
 Aud-ivērunt,
 or -ivēre, } They have heard.

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

S. Aud-ivērum, <i>I had heard.</i>	P. Aud-iverāmus, <i>We had heard.</i>
Aud-ivēras, <i>Thou hadst heard.</i>	Aud-iverātis, <i>Ye or you had heard.</i>
Aud-ivērat, <i>He had heard.</i>	Aud-ivērāt, <i>They had heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

S. Aud-iam, <i>I shall hear.</i>	P. Aud-iēmus, <i>We shall hear.</i>
Aud-ies, <i>Thou wilt hear.</i>	Aud-iētis, <i>Ye or you will hear.</i>
Aud-iet, <i>He will hear.</i>	Aud-ient, <i>They will hear.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

S. Aud-iam, <i>I may hear.</i>	P. Aud-iāmus, <i>We may hear.</i>
Aud-ias, <i>Thou mayest hear.</i>	Aud-iātis, <i>Ye or you may hear.</i>
Aud-iat, <i>He may hear.</i>	Aud-iant, <i>They may hear.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

S. Aud-irem, <i>I might hear.</i>	P. Aud-irēmus, <i>We might hear.</i>
Aud-ires, <i>Thou mightest hear.</i>	Aud-irētis, <i>Ye or you might hear.</i>
Aud-iret, <i>He might hear.</i>	Aud-irent, <i>They might hear.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

Sing. Aud-ivērim,	<i>I may have heard.</i>
Aud-ivēris,	<i>Thou mayest have heard.</i>
Aud-ivērit,	<i>He may have heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iverimus,	<i>We may have heard.</i>
Aud-iveritis,	<i>Ye or you may have heard.</i>
Aud-iverint,	<i>They may have heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have.*

Sing. Aud-ivissem,	<i>I might have heard.</i>
Aud-ivisses,	<i>Thou mightest have heard.</i>
Aud-ivisset,	<i>He might have heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-ivissēmus,	<i>We might have heard.</i>
Aud-ivissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have heard.</i>
Aud-ivissent,	<i>They might have heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

Sing. Aud-ivēro,	<i>I shall have heard.</i>
Aud-ivēris,	<i>Thou wilt have heard.</i>
Aud-ivērit,	<i>He will have heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iverimus,	<i>We shall have heard.</i>
Aud-iveritis,	<i>Ye or you will have heard.</i>
Aud-iverint,	<i>They will have heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. 2. Aud-i or -ito,	<i>Hear thou.</i>
3. Aud-ito,	<i>Let him hear.</i>
Plur. 2. Aud-ite or -itite,	<i>Hear ye or you.</i>
3. Aud-into,	<i>Let them hear.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres. Aud-ire,	<i>To hear.</i>
Perf. Aud-ivisse,	<i>To have heard.</i>
Fut. Esse auditūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to hear.</i>
Fuisse auditūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to hear.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Aud-iens,	<i>Hearing.</i>
Fut. Aud-itūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to hear.</i>

GERUNDS.

Nom. Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing.</i>
Gen. Aud-iendi,	<i>Of hearing.</i>
Dat. Aud-iendo,	<i>To hearing.</i>
Acc. Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing.</i>
Ab. Aud-iendo,	<i>With hearing.</i>

SUPINES.

Former. Aud-itum,	<i>To hear.</i>
Latter. Aud-itu,	<i>To hear, or to be heard.</i>

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Part.	
Audior,	audīri,	audītus,	<i>To be heard.</i>

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

S. Aud-iōr,	<i>I am heard.</i>	P. Aud-īmur,	<i>We are heard.</i>
Aud-īris, or īre,	<i>Thou art heard.</i>	Aud-īmīni,	<i>Ye or you are heard.</i>
Aud-ītur,	<i>He is heard.</i>	Aud-iuntur,	<i>They are heard.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

S. Aud-iebar,	<i>I was heard.</i>	P. Aud-iebāmur,	<i>We were heard.</i>
Aud-iebāris or } -iebāre,	<i>Thou wast heard.</i>	Aud-iebamīni,	<i>Ye or you were heard.</i>
Aud-iebātur,	<i>He was heard.</i>	Aud-iebantur,	<i>They were heard.</i>

PERFECT. *have been.*

Sing. Audītus sum or fui,	<i>I have been heard.</i>
Audītus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been heard.</i>
Audītus est, or fuit,	<i>He has been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīti sumus or fuīmus,	<i>We have been heard.</i>
Audīti estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been heard.</i>
Audīti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>They have been heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Audītus eram or fuēram,</i>	<i>I had been heard.</i>
	<i>Audītus eras or fuēras,</i>	<i>Thou hadst been heard.</i>
	<i>Audītus erat or fuērat,</i>	<i>He had been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Audīti erāmus or fuerāmus,</i>	<i>We had been heard.</i>
	<i>Audīti erātis or fuerātis,</i>	<i>Ye or you had been heard.</i>
	<i>Audīti erant or fuērant,</i>	<i>They had been heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

<i>S.</i>	<i>Aud-iar,</i>	<i>I shall be heard.</i>	<i>P.</i>	<i>Aud-iāmur,</i>	<i>We shall be heard.</i>
	<i>Aud-iēris or</i>	<i>} Thou wilt be heard.</i>		<i>Aud-iemini,</i>	<i>Ye or you will be heard.</i>
	<i>-iēre,</i>			<i>Aud-ientur,</i>	<i>They will be heard.</i>
	<i>Aud-iētur,</i>	<i>He will be heard.</i>			

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may, or can be.*

<i>S.</i>	<i>Aud-iar</i>	<i>I may be heard.</i>	<i>P.</i>	<i>Aud-iāmur,</i>	<i>We may be heard.</i>
	<i>Aud-iāris, or</i>	<i>} Thou mayest be heard.</i>		<i>Aud-iamini,</i>	<i>Ye or you may be heard.</i>
	<i>-iāre,</i>			<i>Aud-iantur,</i>	<i>They may be heard.</i>
	<i>Aud-iātur,</i>	<i>He may be heard.</i>			

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>S.</i>	<i>Aud-īrer,</i>	<i>I might be heard.</i>	<i>P.</i>	<i>Aud-irēmur,</i>	<i>We might be heard.</i>
	<i>Aud-irēris or</i>	<i>} Thou mightest be heard.</i>		<i>Aud-iremīni,</i>	<i>Ye or you might be heard.</i>
	<i>-rēre,</i>			<i>Aud-irantur,</i>	<i>They might be heard.</i>
	<i>Aud-irētur,</i>	<i>He might be heard.</i>			

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Audītus sim or fuērim,</i>	<i>I may have been heard.</i>
	<i>Audītus sis or fuēris,</i>	<i>Thou mayest have been heard.</i>
	<i>Audītus sit or fuērit,</i>	<i>He may have been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Audīti simus or fuerimus,</i>	<i>We may have been heard.</i>
	<i>Audīti sitis or fueritis,</i>	<i>Ye or you may have been heard.</i>
	<i>Audīti sint or fuērint,</i>	<i>They may have been heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Audītus essem or fuissem,</i>	<i>I might have been heard.</i>
	<i>Audītus esses or fuisses,</i>	<i>Thou mightest have been heard.</i>
	<i>Audītus esset or fuisset,</i>	<i>He might have been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Audīti essemus or fuissemus,</i>	<i>We might have been heard.</i>
	<i>Audīti essetis or fuissetis,</i>	<i>Ye or you might have been heard.</i>
	<i>Audīti essent or fuissent,</i>	<i>They might have been heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Audītus fuēro,</i>	<i>I shall have been heard.</i>
	<i>Audītus fuēris,</i>	<i>Thou wilt have been heard.</i>
	<i>Audītus fuērit,</i>	<i>He will have been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Audīti fuerimus,</i>	<i>We shall have been heard.</i>
	<i>Audīti fueritis,</i>	<i>Ye or you will have been heard.</i>
	<i>Audīti fuērint,</i>	<i>They will have been heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. 2. Aud-ire or -itor,	<i>Be thou heard.</i>
3. Aud-itor,	<i>Let him be heard.</i>
Plur. 2. Aud-imini,	<i>Be ye heard.</i>
3. Aud-iuntor,	<i>Let them be heard.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Aud-iri,	<i>To be heard.</i>
PERF. Esse or fuisse auditus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been heard.</i>
FUT. Auditum iri,	<i>To be about to be heard.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Aud-itus,	<i>Heard.</i>
FUT. Aud-iendus,	<i>To be heard.</i>

DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *Lōquor*, I speak; *mōrior*, I die.

A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *crīmīnor*, I accuse, or I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have *laid aside* the passive sense.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lētor*, *lētāri*, *lētātus*, to rejoice; *vēreor*, *vērēri*, *verītus*, to fear; *fungor*, *fungi*, *functus*, to discharge an office; *pōtior*, *pōtiri*, *pōtītus*, to enjoy, to be master of.

Conjugation of the deponent verb *Mīror*, 'I admire.' *Mīror*, *mirāris* or *āre*, *mirāri*, *mirātus*.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRES. <i>Mīror</i> , I admire; <i>mirāris</i> or <i>āre</i> , thou admirest, &c.
IMP. <i>Mirābar</i> , - <i>abāris</i> or - <i>ābare</i> , &c., I admired, &c.
PERF. <i>Mirātus sum</i> , or <i>fui</i> ; <i>mirātus es</i> or <i>fuiſti</i> , &c., I have, &c.
PLUP. <i>Mirātus eram</i> , or <i>fueram</i> , &c., I had admired, &c.
FUT. <i>Mirābor</i> ; <i>mirabēris</i> , or <i>mirabēre</i> , &c., I shall admire, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

- PRES. Mirer ; mirēris or ēre, &c., *I may admire, &c.*
 IMP. Mirārer ; arēris or arēre, &c., *I might admire, &c.*
 PERF. Mirātus sim, or fuērim, &c., *I may have admired, &c.*
 PLUP. Mirātus essem, or fuissem, &c., *I might have admired, &c.*
 FUT. Mirātus ero, or fuēro, &c., *I shall have admired, &c.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

- PRES. Mirāre or mirātor, &c., *admire thou, or do thou admire, &c.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

- PRES. Mirāri, *to admire.*
 PERF. Mirātus esse or fuisse, *to have admired.*
 FUT. Mirāturus esse, *to be about to admire.*
 Mirātum iri, *to be about to be admired.*
 Mirāturus fuisse, *to have been about to admire.*
 Mirandus fuisse, *to have been about to be admired.*

PARTICIPLES.

- PRES. Mirans, *admiring.*
 PERF. Mirātus, *having admired.*
 FUT. in rus. Mirāturus, *about to admire.*
 dus. Mirandus, *to be admired.*

GERUNDS.

Mirandum, di, do, and dum.

SUPINES.

Mirātum, mirātu.

FORMATION OF VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *O* of the present, *I* of the perfect indicative, *RE* of the infinitive, and *UM* of the supine.* A verb is commonly said to be conjugated when only these parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the Present indicative is called the *Theme*, or the *Root* of the verb; because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

All the letters which come before *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ēre*, or *-īre*, of the infinitive, are called *radical* letters, because they always remain the same. By putting these before the *terminations*, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

-
- * 1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
 2. From *i* ; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *sse*, and *ssem*.
 3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.
 4. All other parts from *re* do come.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

The *Imperfect indicative* is formed from the *present*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābam*; as, *am-o*, *am-ābam*:—in the second conjugation, by changing *o* into *bam*; as, *doce-o*, *docē-bam*:—in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ēbam*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-ēbam*; *audi-o*, *audi-ēbam*.

The *Pluperfect indicative* is formed from the *perfect* in all the conjugations by changing *i* into *eram*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-eram*; *docu-i*, *docu-eram*; *leg-i*, *leg-eram*; *audiv-i*, *audiv-eram*.

The *Future indicative* is formed from the *present*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābo*; as, *am-o*, *am-ābo*; in the second conjugation by changing *o* into *bo*; as, *doce-o*, *docē-bo*; in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-am*; *audi-o*, *audi-am*.

Subjunctive Mode.

The *Present subjunctive* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *em*; as, *am-o*, *am-em*; in the second, third, and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am*; as, *doce-o*, *doce-am*; *leg-o*, *leg-am*; *audi-o*, *audi-am*.

The *Imperfect subjunctive* is formed, in all the conjugations, from the present infinitive, by adding *m*; as, *amāre*, *amārem*; *docere*, *docērem*; *legere*, *legērem*; *audire*, *audīrem*.

The *Perfect subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *erim*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-erim*; *docu-i*, *docu-erim*; *leg-i*, *leg-erim*; *audiv-i*, *audiv-erim*.

The *Pluperfect subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *issem*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-issem*; *docu-i*, *docu-issem*; *leg-i*, *leg-issem*; *audiv-i*, *audiv-issem*.

The *Future subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *ero*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-ero*; *docu-i*, *docu-ero*; *leg-i*, *leg-ero*; *audiv-i*, *audiv-ero*.

Imperative Mode.

The *Present imperative* is formed from the present infinitive, by taking away *re*; as, *amāre*, *ama*; *docere*, *doce*; *legere*, *lege*; *audire*, *audi*.

Infinitive Mode.

The *Present infinitive* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *are*; as, *am-o*, *am-are*; in

the second and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *re*; as, *doce-o*, *docē-re*; *audi-o*, *audī-re*; in the third conjugation, by changing *o* or *io* into *ēre*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-ēre*; *cap-io*, *cap-ēre*.

The *Perfect infinitive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *isse*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-isse*; *docu-i*, *docu-isse*; *leg-i*, *leg-isse*; *audiv-i*, *audiv-isse*.

The *Future infinitive* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus*, and adding *esse*, or *fuisse*; as, *amātu-m*, *amatū-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse*; *doctu-m*, *doctū-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse*; *lectu-m*, *lectū-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse*; *auditū-m*, *auditū-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse*.

Participles.

The *Present Participle* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ans*; as, *am-o*, *am-ans*; in the second conjugation, by changing *o* into *ns*; as, *doce-o*, *doce-ns*; in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ens*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-ens*; *audi-o*, *audi-ens*.

The *Future Participle* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus*; as, *amātu-m*, *amatū-rus*; *doctu-m*, *doctū-rus*; *lectu-m*, *lectū-rus*; *auditū-m*, *auditū-rus*.

Gerunds.

The *Gerunds* are formed from the present participle, by changing *s* into *dum*, *di*, and *do*; as,

<i>aman-s</i> ;	<i>aman-dum</i> ,	<i>aman-di</i> ,	<i>aman-do</i> ;
<i>docen-s</i> ;	<i>docen-dum</i> ,	<i>docen-di</i> ,	<i>docen-do</i> ;
<i>legen-s</i> ;	<i>legen-dum</i> ,	<i>legen-di</i> ,	<i>legen-do</i> ;
<i>audien-s</i> ;	<i>audien-dum</i> ,	<i>audien-di</i> ,	<i>audien-do</i> .

FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative and Subjunctive Modes.

The *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future Indicative*; and the *Present*, and *Imperfect Subjunctive*, are formed from the corresponding tenses in the active voice.

From those tenses in the active voice which end in *o*, the same tenses in the passive are formed by adding *r*; but from those which, in the active voice, end in *m*, the same tenses of the passive are formed by changing *m* into *r*.

	First Conjugation.		Second Conjugation.		Third Conjugation.	
	Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	amo,	amor.	doceo,	doceor.	lego,	legor.
<i>Imp. Indic.</i>	amābam,	amābar.	docēbam,	docēbar.	legēbam,	legēbar.
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	amābo,	amābor.	docēbo,	docēbor.	legam,	legar.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	amem,	amer.	doceam,	docear.	legam,	legar.
<i>Imp. Subj.</i>	amārem,	amārer.	docērem,	docērer.	legērem,	legērer.

The other five tenses, namely, the *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Indicative*; and the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future Subjunctive*, are composed of the perfect participle, declined with the tenses of the verb *Sum*.

Imperative Mode.

The *Imperative Passive* is the same as the *Infinitive Active*.

Infinitive Mode.

The *Present* tense of the *Infinitive* mode is formed from the *Infinitive Active*, by changing *e*, in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, into *i*; as, *amār-e*, *amār-i*; *docēr-e*, *docēr-i*; *audīr-e*, *audīr-i*; and in the third conjugation, by changing *ēre* into *i*; as, *leg-ēre*, *leg-i*.

The *Future Infinitive* is composed of the former supine, and *iri*, (which is the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, to go,) as, *amātum iri*; *doctum iri*; *lectum iri*.

Participles.

The *Perfect Participle* is formed from the former supine, by changing *m* into *s*; as, *amātu-m*, *amātu-s*; *doctu-m*, *doctu-s*; *lectu-m*, *lectu-s*; *auditu-m*, *auditu-s*.

The *Future Participle* is formed from the present active participle, by changing *s* into *dus*; as, *amans*, *amandus*; *docens*, *docendus*; *legens*, *legendus*; *audiens*, *audiendus*.

SIGNIFICATION OF THE TENSES IN THE VARIOUS MODES.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive, signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, or am loving; *amābam*, I loved, did love, or was loving, &c.

Amāvi, I loved, did love, or have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus:

Indicative Mode.

Perfect. *Amātus sum*, I am, or have been loved, or oftener, I was loved.
Amātus fui, I have been loved, or I was loved.

Pluperfect. *Amātus eram*, I was, or had been loved.
Amātus fuīram, I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perfect. *Amātus sim*, I may be, or may have been loved.
Amātus fuērim, I may have been loved.

Pluperfect. *Amātus essem*, I might, could, would, or should be, or have been loved.
Amātus fuissem, I might, could, would, or should have been loved; or I had been loved.

Future. *Amātus fuero*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus:

Amāturus sum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love. We chiefly use this form, when some purpose or intention is signified.

Amātus ero, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amātus amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amātus est*, he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amāta est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amātum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amāti sunt*, they were loved, when applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amābam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amāvi*; so *amor*, and *amātus sum*, I am loved; *amābar* and *amātus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amātus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connexion with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense is apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligant, qualis, sit*, As if they understood, what kind of person he is. Cic. *In factus jurasse pides*, You would think, &c. Or. *Elloquar an sileam?* Shall I speak out or be silent? *Nec vos arguerim, Teucris*, for *arguam*, Virg. *Siquid te fugeret, ego perirem*, for *peribo*. Ter. *Hunc ego si potui tantum sperare dolorem; Et perferre, soror, patro*: for *potuissem* and *possem*. Virg. *Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Prædiceres mihi*, You should have told me beforehand. Ter. *At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, Ought to have stood to your word. Virg. *Citius, crediderim*, I should sooner believe. Juv. *Hauseret ensis*, The sword would have been destroyed. Virg. *Fuerint irati*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that. Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Animus meminisse horret, luctusque refugit*, for *refugit*. Virg. *Fuerat melius for fuisset*. Id. *Invidia dilapsa erat*, for *fuisset*. Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *venisti*. Plaut. *Quam mox navigo Ephesum*, for *navigabo*. Id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*. Ter. for *esses* and *sentires*. Cato *affirmat, se vivo, illum non triumphare*, for *triumphaturum esse*. Cic. *Persuadet Castico, ut occuparet*, for *occupet*.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet*, or *fecerit*, unless he do this. Ter.

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do; *valēbis meque amabis*, farewell, and love me. Cic.

The present and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb before each of them; thus:

Dicit me scribere; he says that I write, do write, or am writing.
Dixit me scribere; he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.
Dicit me scripsisse; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.
Dixit me scripsisse; he said that I had written.
Dicit me scripturum esse; he says that I will write.
Dixit me scripturum esse; he said that we would write.
Dicit nos scripturos fuisse; he says that we would have written.
Dixit litteras scribi; he says that letters are written, writing, or in writing.
Dixit litteras scribi; he said that letters were writing, or written.
Dicit litteras scriptas esse; he says that letters are, or were written.
Dixit litteras scriptas fuisse; he says that letters have been written.
Dixit litteras scriptas fuisse; he said that letters had been written.
Dicit litteras scriptum iri; he says that letters will be written.
Dixit litteras scriptum iri; he said that letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri*, is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a periphrasis, or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore or futurum esse ut scribant*,—*ut litteræ scribantur*; I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore or futurum esse ut scriberent*,—*ut litteræ scriberentur*; I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse ut litteræ scriberentur*; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed :

Scribendum est mihi, puëro, nobis, &c., littëras ; I, the boy, we, &c., must write letters.

Scribendum fuit mihi, puëro, nobis, &c., I must have written, &c.

Scribendum erit mihi ; I shall be obliged to write.

Scio scribendum esse mihi littëras ; I know that I must write letters.

— *scribendum fuisse mihi* ; — that I must have written.

Dixit scribendum fore mihi ; he said that I should be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *äus* :

Littëræ sunt scribendæ mihi, puëro, hominibus, &c., or *a me, puëro, &c.*, letters are to be, or must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So, *littëræ scribendæ erant, fuërunt, erunt, &c.* *Si littëræ scribendæ sint, essent, forent, &c.* *Scio littëras scribendas esse* ; I know that letters are to be, or must be written. *Scivi littëras scribendas fuisse* ; I knew that letters ought to have been, or must have been written.

FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner ; as,

Vöco, vöcävi, vöcätum, to call ; so, *revöco, revöcävi, revöcätum*, to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable ; as, *pello, pëpüli*, to beat ; *repello, rëpüli*, never *repëpüli*, to beat back. But the compounds of *do*, *sto*, *disco*, and *posco*, follow the general rule ; thus, *ëdisco, ëdidici*, to get by heart ; *dëposco, dëpöposci*, to demand : so, *præcurro, præcûcurri* ; *rëpungo, rëpüpügi*.

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine or perfect participle ; as, *facio, fëci, factum*, to make ; *perficio, perfëci, perfectum*, to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go* ; also the compounds of *habeo*, *pläceo*, *säpio*, *sälio*, and *stätuo*, observe the general rule.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

I. Verbs of the First Conjugation have *āre* in the infinitive, *āvī* in the Perfect, and *ātus* in the Perfect Participle passive; as,

Amo,¹ *amāre*, *amāvī*, *amātus*, R. D. *love*.

Verbs marked thus * have no Perfect Participle passive, and those thus marked † have no Perfect active. The Futures *rus* and *dus* are expressed by R. and D.; and the Supines *um* and *u*. by M. and U.; those verbs, therefore, which have not one or more of these letters prefixed to them, are deficient in those parts respectively which those letters signify.

**Abundo*,² R.
Accūso,³ R. D. M.
Adumbro,⁴
Ædifico,⁵ R. D.
Æquo,⁶ R. D.
Æstimo,⁷ R. D.
 **Ambulo*,⁸ D. M.

overflow. *Amplio*,⁹ D.
accuse. **Angario*,¹⁰
delineate. *Appello*,¹¹ D.
build. *Apto*,¹² D.
level. *Aro*,¹³ R. D.
value. **Ascio*,¹⁴
walk. **Ausculto*,¹⁵

enlarge.
press for public service.
call.
fit.
plough.
chip with an axe.
listen.

In the following Notes are contained such Participles in *Rus* and *Dus*, and Supines of the verbs, as are found in the classics now extant; together with the less frequent and irregular formations.

¹ *Amatūrus*, Gell. 1. 3. 4. *Amandus*, Ovid. *Amasse*, Gell. *Amasso*, Plaut.—
² *Abundatūrus*, Tertull.—³ *Accusatūrum*, Terent. *Accusatūrus*, Liv. *Accusandus*, Cic.—
⁴ The Participles in *ns*, *rus* and *dus*, do not occur.—⁵ *Ædificatūrus*, Cic. Verr. *Ædificandus*, Cic. Fam.—⁶ *Æquatūrus*, Claud. *Æquandus*, Ovid.—⁷ *Æstimatūrus*, Quintil. *Æstimandus*, Gell.—⁸ *Ambulātum*, Plaut. *Obambulātum*, Plaut. *Deambulātum*, Terent. *Ambulandus*, Cels. *Ambulatur*, imper. Varr.—⁹ *Amplandus*, Cels.—¹⁰ *Angario* has no participles.—¹¹ *Appellandus*, Cic. *Appellassis* for *appellavēris*, Terent.—¹² *Apandus*, Claud.—¹³ The Participle *Arans* occurs only in Cic. de Senect. c. 16. *Aratūrus*, Tibull. *Arandus*, Virg.—¹⁴ Of this verb *Asciētē* only is found, Vitruv. vii. 2.—¹⁵ None of the Participles are to be found. *Auscultabitur*, imper. Plaut.

*Autūmo, ¹	suppose.	Considēro, ²⁰ R. D.	consider.
†Basio, ² D.	kiss.	Crema, ²¹ D.	burn.
*Bello, ³ R. M.	wage war.	Creo, ²² R. D.	create.
Beo, ⁴	bless.	Crucio, ²³ D.	tortment.
*Boo, ⁵	bellow.	Culpo, ²⁴ R. D.	blame.
Brevio, ⁶	shorten.	Cuneo, ²⁵ D.	wedge.
Cæco, ⁷	blind.	Curo, ²⁶ R. D.	care.
Cælo, ⁷	carve.	Damno, ²⁷ R. D. M.	condemn.
Calceo, ⁸ D.	shoe.	Decōro, ²⁸ D.	adorn.
*Calcitro, ⁷	kick.	Decurio, ²⁹	divide into companies.
Canto, ⁹ M.	sing.	*Delineo, ³⁰	delineate.
Capto, ¹⁰ D. M.	seize.	Desidēro, ³¹ R. D.	desire.
Carmīno, ¹¹	card wool.	Destīno, ³² D.	tie, design.
Castigo, ¹² D. M.	chastise.	Dico, ³³ R. D. M.	dedicate.
†*Catomidio,	flag on the shoulders.	Dicto, ³⁴	dictate.
Celēbro, ¹³ D.	make famous.	Dolo, ³⁵	hew, cut.
Celo, ¹⁴ D.	conceal.	Dono, ³⁶ R. D.	bestow.
Centurio, ¹⁵	divide into centuries.	Duplico, ³⁷ R. D.	double.
Certo, ¹⁶ D. R.	strive.	Duro, ³⁸ R.	harden.
Cogito, ¹⁷	think.	Effigio, ³⁹	portray.
Compāro, ¹⁸ D.	compare.	†Emacio, ⁴⁰	emaciate.
Concilio, ¹⁹ R. D.	reconcile.	†Enucleo, ⁴¹ D.	explain.

¹ None of the Participles exist: *autumantur*, pass. Plaut.—² *Basiāvi* seems not to exist: *Basiātus*, Mart. xii. 59. *Basiandus*, Mart. i. 95.—³ *Bellātum*, Nep. *Debellātum*, Liv. *Bellatūrus*, Claud. *Bellantur*, 'they fight,' Virg. *Æn.* xi. 660.—⁴ *Beāsti* Ter. Andr. *Beātus*, said to be the Perfect Participle of *Beo*, is used as an adjective.—⁵ *Bount*, as if from *Boo*, *bois*, Pacuv. *Bovantes*, as if from *Bovo*.—⁶ *Breviāvit*, Quint. xii. 10. *Breviātus*, Sidon.—⁷ The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *us*, of *Cæco*, *Cælo*, and *Calcitro*, do not occur in the classics. *Calassius* for *Calavēris*, Festus.—⁸ *Calceandus*, Phædr.—⁹ *Cantātum*, Terent.—¹⁰ *Captātum*, Plaut. *Captandus*, Plaut.—¹¹ The Participles *ns*, *rus*, and *us* are not to be found. *Carminātus*, Plin. N. H. ix. 38.—¹² *Castigātum*, Plaut. *Castigandus*, Liv. xxxix. 25.—¹³ *Celebrandus*, Catul.—¹⁴ *Celandus*, Just.—¹⁵ *Centuriāvit*, Val. Max. *Centuriātus*, Liv.—¹⁶ *Certātus*, Cæs. *Certandus*, Liv. *Certātus*, 'contended for,' Sil. *Multum certāto*, 'after much contention,' Tacit. Ann. like *audīto*, 'it being heard'; *comperito*, 'it being discovered.' *Certūtur*, impers. Pacuv.—¹⁷ *Cogitātus*, Hirt.—¹⁸ *Comparandus*, Terent. *Comparassit* for *Comparavērit*, Plaut.—¹⁹ *Conciliātus*, Cæsar. *Conciliandus*, Ovid.—²⁰ *Considerātus*, Curt. *Considerandus*, Apul. Flor. *Consideravisse* pro *considerasse*, Quint.—²¹ *Concrematūrus*, Liv. *Cremandus*, Ovid.—²² *Creatūrus*, Liv. *Creandus*, Gell. The Participle in *ns* does not occur.—²³ *Cruciandus*, Ovid.—²⁴ *Culpatūrus*, Apul. *Culpandus*, Apul.—²⁵ *Cuneandus*, Plin.—²⁶ *Curatūrus*, Plaut. *Curandus*, Cels. *Curassus*, for *curavēris*, Plaut.—²⁷ *Damnātum*, Quint. *Damnātus*, Ovid. *Damnandus*, Ovid.—²⁸ *Decorandus*, Cic.—²⁹ *Decuriasse*, Cic. pro Planc. *Decuriātus*, Liv.—³⁰ The simple *Lineo*, 'I draw lines,' has no Perfect now extant. *Lineātus* is found in Plaut. *Delineavit*, Plin. It has no participles.—³¹ *Desiderātus*, Plin. *Desiderandus*, Cic.—³² *Destinandus*, Vitruv. ³³ *Dicātum*, Liv. i. 7. *Dicatūrus*, Plin. *Dicandus*, Plin.—³⁴ *Dictātus*, Juv. vi. 390.—³⁵ The Participles in *ns*, *rus* and *us*, do not occur. *Dolavit*, Cic. *Dolatus*, Juv. xii. 57. *Dolere*, 3d Conjugation, Lucr.; hence, *dolitus*, Varr.—³⁶ *Donatūrus*, Apul. Met. *Donandus*, Hor.—³⁷ *Duplicatūrus*, Cic. Att. v. 18. *Duplicandus*, Liv. xxvii. 11.—³⁸ *Duratūrus*, Lucan.—³⁹ *Effigiātus*, Apul.—⁴⁰ *Emaciātus*, Colum.—⁴¹ The perfect of this verb cannot be found. *Enucleātus*, Cic. pro Planc. *Enucleandus*, Cic.

<i>Equito</i> , ¹	<i>ride.</i>	† <i>Furio</i> , ²¹	<i>madden.</i>
<i>Erro</i> , ²	<i>wander.</i>	† <i>Galeo</i> , ²²	<i>put on a helmet.</i>
<i>Existimo</i> , ³ R. D. U.	<i>think.</i>	<i>Gesto</i> , ²³ D.	<i>bear.</i>
<i>Exploŕo</i> , ⁴ D. M.	<i>search.</i>	† <i>Glacio</i> ,	<i>to congeal.</i>
† <i>Exsuo</i> , ⁵	<i>squeeze out blood.</i>	<i>Gravo</i> , ²⁴ D.	<i>to weigh down.</i>
<i>Exŭlo</i> , ⁶ R. M.	<i>be banished.</i>	<i>Guŕsto</i> , ²⁵ D.	<i>to taste.</i>
<i>Fabrŭco</i> , ⁶ D.	<i>frame.</i>	<i>Habŭto</i> , ²⁶ D. M.	<i>to dwell.</i>
† <i>Fascio</i> , ⁷	<i>swathe.</i>	† <i>Halo</i> ,	<i>breath.</i>
<i>Fatigo</i> , ⁸ R. D.	<i>weary.</i>	* <i>Hio</i> , ²⁷ D.	<i>to gape.</i>
<i>Festino</i> , ⁹ R.	<i>hasten.</i>	<i>Humo</i> , ²⁸ R. D.	<i>to bury.</i>
<i>Firmo</i> , ¹⁰ R. D.	<i>strengthen.</i>	<i>Hyemo</i> , ²⁹ M.	<i>winter.</i>
<i>Flagŭto</i> , ¹¹ D. M.	<i>demand.</i>	<i>Ignoro</i> , ³⁰ R. D.	<i>be ignorant.</i>
* <i>Flagro</i> , ¹² R.	<i>be on fire.</i>	<i>Impetro</i> , ³¹ R. D.	<i>command.</i>
<i>Flo</i> , ¹³ D.	<i>blow.</i>	<i>Impetro</i> , ³² R. D.	<i>obtain by request.</i>
<i>Formo</i> , ¹⁴ R. D.	<i>form, frame.</i>	<i>Inchoo</i> , ³³ R.	<i>begin.</i>
† <i>Foro</i> , ¹⁵ D.	<i>bore.</i>	<i>Indāgo</i> , ³⁴ R. D.	<i>trace out.</i>
<i>Frano</i> , ¹⁶	<i>bridle.</i>	<i>Indŭco</i> , ³⁵ R. D. M.	<i>show.</i>
<i>Fraudo</i> , ¹⁷ D.	<i>defraud.</i>	† <i>Inebrio</i> , ³⁶	<i>inebriate.</i>
† <i>Frio</i> , ¹⁸	<i>crumble.</i>	<i>Initio</i> , ³⁷	<i>initiate.</i>
<i>Fugo</i> , ¹⁹ R. D.	<i>put to flight.</i>	<i>Inquŭno</i> ,	<i>pollute.</i>
<i>Fundo</i> , ²⁰ R.	<i>found.</i>	<i>Instauro</i> , ³⁸ D.	<i>renew.</i>

¹ *Equitatus*, 'ridden over'; Claud. *Equitata cohors*, 'infantry intermixed with cavalry'; Inscript. ap. Murat.—² *Erratus*, 'wandered over'; Virg. *Æn.* iii. 690. *Erratur*, impera. Virg. *G.* iii. 249. *Errato mihi*, for *cum erravero*, Cic.—³ *Existimatus*, Liv. *Existimaturus*, Cic. *Existimandus*, Val. Max.—⁴ *Exploratum* and *Explorandus*, Liv.—⁵ *Exulatum*, Liv. *Exulaturus*, Justin.—⁶ *Fabricor*, deponent, Cic. Off. i. 41. *Fabricandus*, Sil.—⁷ *Fasciatus*, Mart.—⁸ *Fatigandus*, Cic. Off. iii. 18. ⁹ *Festinaturus*, Plin. *Festinarentur*, Tacit. Hist. iii. 37. *Festinatur*, Tacit. Germ. c. 20.—¹⁰ *Firmaturus*, Justin. *Firmandus*, Colum.—¹¹ *Flagitatus*, Tacit. *Flagitatum*, Cic. *Flagitandus*, Justin.—¹² *Flagraturus*, Cic. *Deflagratus*, Cic. Cat. iv. 6.—¹³ *Flatus*, 'blown'; *Flatus*, 'cast', 'coined'; Gell. *Flandus*, Cic. *Conflandus*, ibid.—¹⁴ *Formaturus*, Justin. *Formandus*, Stat. Syl.—¹⁵ The Participles *ns* and *rus* are not in use. *Foratus*, Vitruv. *Forandus*, Cels.—¹⁶ The Participles *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, do not occur. *Frænatus*, Hirt. ¹⁷ The Participles *ns* and *rus* are not in use. *Frausus*, 'having committed a fraud'; Plaut. *Asin.* *Fraudandus*, Quint. Curt. *Fraudassis* for *Fraudaveris*, Plaut.—¹⁸ *Friatus*, Lucr. ¹⁹ *Fugaturus*, Ovid. *Fugandus*, ibid.—²⁰ The Participles *ns* and *rus* do not occur.—²¹ *Furiatus*, Virg. *Æn.* ii. 407.—²² *Galeatus*, Juv.—²³ *Gestandus*, Stat.—²⁴ *Gravatus*, 'weighed down', 'overpowered'; Liv. xxv. 24. *Gravatus*, 'indignant', 'weary of bearing', 'disdaining to carry'; as if from a deponent *Gravari*, Hor. iv. Od. ii. 27. *Gravandus*, Propert.—²⁵ The Participle *Guŕstans* occurs only in Petron. c. 33. and Gallus i. 98. The Participle in *rus* is not in use. *Guŕstandus*, Cels.—²⁶ *Habitatum*, Plaut. *Habitandus*, Ovid. ²⁷ *Hianus*, Pers.—²⁸ The Participle *ns* is not to be found in the classics. *Humaturus*, Sueton. *Humanus*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 161.—²⁹ *Hyematum*, Nepos.—³⁰ *Ignoratus*, 'not known'; Cic. *Ignoratus*, 'undiscovered'; Salust.—³¹ *Imperaturus*, Cæsar.—³² The Participle in *ns* seems not to exist. *Impetraturus*, Liv. *Impetrandus*, Val. Max. *Impetrassere* for *imperaturum esse*, Plaut.—³³ *Inchoaturus*, Curt. *Ad inchoandam rem*, Liv. ³⁴ *Indagatur*, depon. The Participle in *ns* does not occur. *Indagaturus*, Apul. *Indagandus*, Gell.—³⁵ *Indicatum*, Liv. *Indicaturus*, ibid. *Indicasso* for *indicavero*, Plaut. ³⁶ *Inebriatus* Plin.—³⁷ *Initiari*, depon. 'to begin'. *Initiatus*, Cic. *Tusc.* *Initiantes* for *qui initiantur*, Vitruv. No other participle.—³⁸ *Instaurandus*, Gell.

Intro, ¹ R. D.	enter.	Loco, ²² R. D.	place, let.
Invito, ² D.	invite.	Lustro, ²³ D.	survey.
Irrito, ³ D.	provoke.	Luxurio,	be wanton, abound.
Itro, ⁴ D. U.	do again.	Macto, ²⁴ D.	slay.
Jacto, ⁵ R. D.	throw, boast.	Maculo,	stain.
Judico, ⁶ R. D.	judge.	Mando, ²⁵ R. D.	command.
Jugo, ⁷ D.	couple.	Manduco, ²⁶	chew.
Jugulo, ⁸ D. M.	butcher.	*Mano,	flow.
Juro, ⁹ D.	swear.	Maturo, ²⁷ D.	ripen, hasten.
Laboro, ¹⁰ R. D.	labour.	Memoro, ²⁸ D. U.	tell.
Lacero, ¹¹ D.	tear.	*Meo, ²⁹	go, pass.
*Lacto,	suckle, wheedle.	*Meridio, ³⁰ M.	sleep at noon.
Lanio, ¹² D.	butcher.	*Migro, ³¹ R. U.	depart.
Lequeo, ¹³	ensnare.	*Milito, ³² R. M.	serve in war.
Latro, ¹⁴	bark.	†Minio, ³³ D.	paint red.
Laudo, ¹⁵ R. D.	praise.	Ministro, ³⁴	serve.
Lexo, ¹⁶ D.	loose.	Mitigo, ³⁵ D.	pacify.
Lego, ¹⁷	depute, bequeath.	Monstro, ³⁶ R.	show.
Levo, ¹⁸ R. D.	lighten.	Muto, ³⁷ R. D.	change.
Libero, ¹⁹ R. D.	free.	Narro, ³⁸ R. D.	tell.
Ligo,	bind.	Nato, ³⁹ R. M.	swim.
Liquo, ²⁰ D.	melt.	*Nauseo, ⁴⁰	loathe.
Lito, ²¹	appease by sacrifice.		

¹ *Inretur*, pass. Tacit. *Intrāri*, ibid. *Intrāri*, imper. Cæs. *Intratūrus* and *Intrandus*, Liv.—² *Invitandus*, Suet. *Invitassitis* for *invitaveritis*.—³ *Irritandus*, Liv. *Irritassis* for *irritaveris*, Plaut.—⁴ *Itro*, Plaut. *Iterandus*, Colum.—⁵ *Jactatūrus*, Cic. *Jactandus*, Ovid.—⁶ *Judicatūrus*, Cæs. *Judicandus*, Cic. *Judicassit* for *judicaverit*, Cic. de Leg. iii. 3.—⁷ *Jugandus*, Hor.—⁸ *Jugulātum*, Cic. *Jugulandus*, Val. Max.—⁹ *Jurātus*, 'sworn'; passim. *Jurātus*, 'sworn by'; Ovid. *Jurātus*, 'having sworn'; Cic.—¹⁰ *Laborātus*, 'wrought with labour'; Virg. *Æn.* i. 643. *Laborātus*, 'calamitous'; Val. Flac. *Laborandus*, Plin. *Laborātur*, imper. Cæs.—¹¹ *Lacerandus*, Lucan.—¹² *Laniātus*, Met. *Laniandus*, Liv.—¹³ *Laqueāre*, Manil. *Laqueans*, ibid. *Laqueāvit*, Luctat. No other parts of this verb are to be found. *Illequeo* is more usual, though its Perfect is not found. *Illequeātus*, Cic.—¹⁴ *Latrātus*, 'barked at.' *Latrētur*, Impera.—¹⁵ *Laudatūrus*, Nep. *Laudandus*, Tibull.—¹⁶ *Laxandus*, Plin.—¹⁷ The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, do not occur. *Legātus*, 'left by will.' *Legātus*, used substantively, 'a person sent,' 'an ambassador'; passim.—¹⁸ *Levatūrus*, Curt. *Levandus*, Virg. Georg. *Levasso* for *Levavero*, Enn.—¹⁹ *Liberatūrus*, Liv. *Liberandus*, Cic. *Liberasso* for *Liberavero*, Plaut.—²⁰ *Liquandus*, Cels. The Participles *ns* and *rus* do not occur.—²¹ *Litātus*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 50. *Litandum*, 'sacrifice must be made'; ibid. *Æn.* v. 118.—²² *Locatūrus*, Liv. *Locandus*, Ovid. *Locassim* for *Locaverim*, Cic. de Leg.—²³ *Lustrandus*, Virg. *Æn.*—²⁴ *Mactandus*, Ovid.—²⁵ *Mandatūrus*, Cic.—²⁶ *Manducatur*, depon. Pompon.—²⁷ *Maturandus*, Cæs.—²⁸ *Memorātus*, Sall. Cat. c. 7. *Memorandus*, Virg.—²⁹ *Meāris*, Hor. i. Od. 4, 17. *Meavisse*, Tacit. *Means*, Lucan. No other Participles occur.—³⁰ *Meridiāri*, depon. Cels. The Perfect is not in use. *Meridiātum*, Catull.—³¹ *Migrātus*, Liv. *Migratūrus*, Suet. *Migrantur*, pass. Sil. *Migrātur*, imper. Cic. *Migratum est*, imper. Liv. i. 11.—³² *Militātum*, Terent. *Miliatūrus*, Liv. *Militabitur*, 'shall be served'; Plaut.—³³ The Perfect does not occur. *Miniātus*, Cic. *Miniandus*, Plin.—³⁴ *Vasa ministrandis cibis*, Tacit.—³⁵ *Mitigandus*, Liv.—³⁶ *Monstratūrus*, Curt.—³⁷ *Mutan-dus*, Cic.—³⁸ *Narratūrus*, Stat. *Narrandus*, Justin.—³⁹ *Natatūrus*, Cic. *Natatūrus*, Ovid. *Natatūrus*, Ovid.—⁴⁰ *Nauseans*, Cic. The other Participles are not found.

Navigo, ¹ R. D.	sail.	Porto, ²⁵ R. D. U.	carry.
Navo, ² R. D.	act vigorously.	Postulo, ²⁶ R. D. M.	demand.
Nego, ³ R. D. M.	deny.	Privo, ²⁷ D.	deprive.
*No,	swim.	Probo, ²⁸ R. D. M. U.	approve.
Nomino, ⁴ R. D.	name.	Profigo, ²⁹ D.	rust.
Noto, ⁵ D.	mark.	Propero, ³⁰ D.	hasten.
Novo, ⁶ R. D.	renew.	*Propino, ³¹	drink to.
Nudo, ⁷ D.	make bare.	†Propitio, ³² D.	appease.
Nuncupo, ⁸ R. D.	name.	Pugno, ³³ R.	fight.
Nuntio, ⁹ R. M.	tell.	Pulso, ³⁴ D.	beat.
*Nuto, R.	nod.	Purgo, ³⁵ R. D. U.	cleanse.
Obsecro, ¹⁰ R. D.	beseech.	Puto, ³⁶ D.	prune, think.
*Obtempéro, ¹¹ R.	obey.	Quamo, ³⁷ D.	shake.
Obtruncoo, ¹² R.	kill.	Radio, ³⁸	emit rays.
Onéro, ¹³ R. D.	load.	Rapio, ³⁹ D.	drag about.
Opto, ¹⁴ D.	wish.	Recupéro, ⁴⁰ R. D. M.	recover.
Orbo, ¹⁵ R.	deprive.	Recuso, ⁴¹ R. D.	refuse.
Orno, ¹⁶ R. D.	adorn.	Repudio, ⁴² R. D.	reject.
Oro, ¹⁷ R. D. M.	beg.	Reséro, ⁴³ D.	unlock.
Paco, ¹⁸	subdue.	*†Retalio,	retaliate.
Paro, ¹⁹ R. D.	prepare.	Rigo,	water.
Patro, ²⁰ R.	commit.	Rogo, ⁴⁴ R. D. M.	ask.
*Pecco, ²¹ R.	sin.	Rolo,	whirl.
Pio, ²² D.	propitiate.	Sacrifico, ⁴⁵ M.	sacrifice.
Placo, ²³ R. D.	appease.	Sacro, ⁴⁶ D.	consecrate.
Ploro, ²⁴ D. M.	bewail.	Segino, ⁴⁷ D.	fatten.

¹ *Navigātus*, 'sailed over;' Tacit. Germ. c. 34. *Navigandus*, Ulpian. *Navigatur*, pass. Plin. *Navigatur*, impers. Cic.—² *Navatūrus*, Curt. *Navandus*, Tacit. The Participle in *ns* does not occur.—³ *Negātum*, Liv. *Negatūrus*, ibid. *Negandus*, Ovid. *Negassim* for *Negavērim*.—⁴ *Nominatūrus*, Suet. *Nominandus*, Curt. *Notandus*, Hort. Art. Poet.—⁵ *Novatūrus*, Curt. *Novandus*, Ov.—⁷ *Nudandus*, Cæs.—⁸ *Nuncupatūrus*, Justin.—⁹ *Nuntiātum*, Sall. Jugur. c. 108. *Nuntiatūrus*, Liv.—¹⁰ *Obsecrandus*, Plin. *Obsecratūrus*, Ter.—¹¹ *Obtemperātum esset*, impers. Cic.—¹² *Obtruncatūrus*, Justin.—¹³ *Oneratūrus*, Plin. *Onerandus*, Suet.—¹⁴ *Optandus*, Stat.—¹⁵ *Orbatūrus*, Ovid. The Participles in *ns* and *dus* do not occur.—¹⁶ *Ornatūrus*, Claud. *Ornandus*, Gell.—¹⁷ *Orātum*, Cic. *Oratūrus*, Tacit. *Orandus*, Virg. *Æn.* 11. 232.—¹⁸ *Ad pacandas Hispanias*, Cæs.—¹⁹ *Paratūrus*, Justin. *Parandus*, Tibull.—²⁰ *Pacis patrandæ merces*, Liv.—²¹ *Peccatūrus*, Gell.—²² *Piātus*, Ovid. *Piandus*, Ovid.—²³ *Placatūrus*, Justin. *Placandus*, Stat. *Achil.* *Ploratūrus*, Cic. *Plorandus*, Stat. Theb.—²⁵ *Portatu*, Plin. *Portandus*, Virg. *Æn.* 12. 312.—²⁶ *Postulatūrus*, Cæs. *Postulatūrus*, Liv. *Postulandus*, Cic.—²⁷ *Privandus*, Cic.—²⁸ *Probātum*, Cic. Att. *Probātu*, Cic. Tusc. v. 1.—²⁹ The Participles *ns* and *rus* do not occur in the classics.—³⁰ *Properandus*, Virg. Georg.—³¹ None of the Participles are found.—³² The Perfect does not occur. *Propitiatus*, Tacit. *Propitiandus*, Gell.—³³ *Pugnatūrus*, Liv. *Expugnātum*, Justin. *Oppugnandus*, Gell.—³⁴ *Pulsandus*, Hor.—³⁵ *Purgātu*, Plin. *Expurgatu*, Terent.—³⁶ *Pulandus*, Catull.—³⁷ *Quassandus*, Ovid.—³⁸ *Radiātus*, 'shining;' passim. *Radiātus*, 'illuminated;' Lucan.—³⁹ *Raptandus*, Sil.—⁴⁰ *Recuperātum*, Justin. *Recuperatūrus*, Cæs. *Recaperandus*, Liv.—⁴¹ *Recusatūrus*, Sueton.—⁴² *Repudiatūrus*, Sueton. *Repudiandus*, Cic. The Participle *ns* does not occur.—⁴³ *Reserandus*, Cic.—⁴⁴ *Rogatūrus*, Sueton. *Rogandus*, Cic. Tusc. *Rogassit* for *Rogavērit*, Cic. Leg.—⁴⁵ *Sacrificātum*, Plaut. *Sacrificātus*, 'sacrificed,' 'slain in sacrifice.' ⁴⁶ *Sacerandus*, 'to be established,' 'ratified.'—⁴⁷ The Participles *ns* and *rus* do not occur.

<i>Salto</i> , ¹ R.	<i>dance.</i>	<i>*Susurro</i> , ²⁵	<i>whisper.</i>
<i>Salûto</i> , ² R. M.	<i>salute.</i>	<i>Tardo</i> ,	<i>stop, delay.</i>
<i>Sano</i> , ³ R. D.	<i>heal.</i>	<i>Taxo</i> , ²⁶ D.	<i>rate, reprove.</i>
<i>Satio</i> ,	<i>satiare.</i>	<i>Tempéro</i> , ²⁷ R. D.	<i>temper.</i>
<i>Satûro</i> , ⁴	<i>fill, glut.</i>	<i>Tento</i> , ²⁸ R. D. M.	<i>try.</i>
<i>Saucio</i> , ⁵ D.	<i>wound.</i>	<i>Terëbro</i> , ²⁹	<i>bore.</i>
<i>†Screo</i> , ⁶	<i>hawk.</i>	<i>Titûbo</i> , ³⁰	<i>stagger.</i>
<i>*Secundo</i> , ⁷	<i>prosper.</i>	<i>Toléro</i> , ³¹ R. D. U.	<i>bear.</i>
<i>Sedo</i> , ⁸ D. M.	<i>allay.</i>	<i>Tracto</i> , ³² D. U.	<i>handle.</i>
<i>Servo</i> , ⁹ R. D.	<i>keep.</i>	<i>*†Tripudio</i> ,	<i>dance, caper.</i>
<i>*Sibilo</i> ,	<i>hiss.</i>	<i>Trucido</i> , ³³ R. D.	<i>kill.</i>
<i>Sicco</i> , ¹⁰ D.	<i>dry.</i>	<i>Turbo</i> , ³⁴ D.	<i>disturb.</i>
<i>Signo</i> , ¹¹ R. D.	<i>mark out.</i>	<i>Umbro</i> , ³⁵ R.	<i>shade.</i>
<i>Simûlo</i> , ¹²	<i>pretend.</i>	<i>*Vaco</i> ,	<i>want, be at leisure.</i>
<i>Socio</i> , ¹³ D.	<i>associate.</i>	<i>*Vapûlo</i> , ³⁶ M.	<i>be beaten.</i>
<i>*Somnio</i> , ¹⁴	<i>dream.</i>	<i>Vario</i> ,	<i>diversify.</i>
<i>Specto</i> , ¹⁵ R. D. M.	<i>behold.</i>	<i>Vasto</i> , ³⁷	<i>lay waste.</i>
<i>Spero</i> , ¹⁶ D.	<i>hope.</i>	<i>Vellîco</i> , ³⁸	<i>pluck, rail at.</i>
<i>*Spiro</i> , ¹⁷	<i>breathe.</i>	<i>Verbëro</i> , ³⁹ R. D.	<i>beat.</i>
<i>Spolio</i> , ¹⁸ D. M.	<i>rob.</i>	<i>*Vestîgo</i> ,	<i>search for.</i>
<i>Spumo</i> , ¹⁹	<i>foam.</i>	<i>Vexo</i> , ⁴⁰ D.	<i>tease, harass.</i>
<i>Stillo</i> , ²⁰	<i>drop.</i>	<i>*†Vindemio</i> , ⁴¹	<i>gather grapes.</i>
<i>Stimûlo</i> ,	<i>goad, vex.</i>	<i>Vibro</i> , ⁴² D.	<i>brandish.</i>
<i>Stipo</i> ,	<i>stuff, guard.</i>	<i>Viôlo</i> , ⁴³ R. D. M.	<i>violate.</i>
<i>†Sirio</i> ,	<i>flute, a column.</i>	<i>Vitio</i> , ⁴⁴ D.	<i>vitiate.</i>
<i>†Sucenturio</i> , ²¹	<i>recruit.</i>	<i>Vito</i> , ⁴⁵ D. U.	<i>shun.</i>
<i>Sudo</i> ,	<i>sweat.</i>	<i>Voco</i> , ⁴⁶ R. D.	<i>call.</i>
<i>Suffûco</i> ,	<i>strangle.</i>	<i>*Volo</i> , ⁴⁷	<i>fly.</i>
<i>Sugillo</i> , ²² D.	<i>taunt, jeer.</i>	<i>Voro</i> , ⁴⁸ R.	<i>devour.</i>
<i>Supëro</i> , ²³ R. D.	<i>overcome.</i>	<i>Vulgo</i> , ⁴⁹ R. D.	<i>publish.</i>
<i>Suppedito</i> , ²⁴	<i>afford.</i>	<i>Vulnero</i> , ⁵⁰ D.	<i>wound.</i>

1 *Salatûrus*, Sueton.—2 *Salutatum*, Sall. *Salutatûrus*, Cic.—3 *Sanatûrus*, Cæs. *Sanandus*, Senec.—4 The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, are not found in the classics.—5 *Sauciandus*, Colum.—6 Neither the Perfects nor the Perfect Participles of *Screo* and *Excreo* are now in existence.—7 The Participle *ns* only, is now extant.—8 *Sedatum*, Plaut. *Sedandus*, Cic.—9 *Servandus*, Ovid.—10 Ad corpora *siccanda*, Plin.—11 *Signatûrus*, Plin. *Signandus*, Stat.—12 *Simulandus*, Sall.—13 *Sociandus*, Hor.—14 *Somniatur*, depon. Petron.—15 *Spectatum*, Ovid. *Spectatûrus*, Suet. *Spectandus*, Stat. Theb.—16 *Sperandus*, Propert.—17 The Participle in *ns* only is in use. *Exspiratûrus*, Liv.—18 *Spoliandus*, Lucan.—19 *Spumatus*, 'sprinkled with foam,' 'foamy,' Cic.—20 *Stillatus*, 'distilling,' 'dropping,'—21 *Succenturiatus*, Terent.—22 *Suggillandus*, Val. Max.—23 *Superatûrus*, Cic.—24 *Suppeditor*, depon. Cic.—25 *Susurratur*, impers. 'it is whispered about,' Terent.—26 *Taxandus*, Senec.—27 *Temperandus*, Suet.—28 *Tentatum*, Terent. *Tentatûrus*, Virg. Æn. iv. 293. *Tentandus*, Virg. Georg. iii. 8.—29 The Participles *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, are not found in the classics.—30 *Tibubatus*, 'stumbling,' Virg. Æn. v. 331.—31 *Toleratu*, Cic. *Toleratûrus* and *Tolerandus*, Ibid.—32 *Tractatu*, Plin. *Tractandus*, Juven.—33 *Trucidandus*, Cic.—34 *Turbatur*, impers. pass. Virg. Æn. Ecl. i. 12. *Turbasso* for *Turbavero*.—35 *Umbatûrus*, Honor. et Martial.—36 *Vapulatum*, Plaut. *Vapulandum*, Terent.—37 Ad *vastandos* agros, Liv. x. 33.—38 The Participle *Vellitatus*, occurs only in Paulin. Nolan.—39 *Verberatûrus*, Sueton. *Verberandus*, Apul.—40 *Vexandus*, Cic.—41 The Participle *ns* only is found in the classics.—42 *Vibratus*, Virg. *Vibrandus*, Claud.—43 *Violatum*, Cic. *Violatûrus*, Cæs. *Violandus*, Tibull.—44 *Vitiandus*, Suet.—45 *Viâtû*, Hor. l. Sat. 4. 115. *Vitandus*, Hor. ii. Sat. 3. 14.—46 *Vocatûrus*, Liv. *Vocandus*, Ovid.—47 *Devolatûrus*, Apul.—48 *Devoratûrus*, Justin. *Devorandus*, Apul.—49 *Vulgatûrus*, Claud. *Vulgandus*, Suet.—50 *Vulnerandus*, Hirt.

II. DEPONENTS.

Deponent Verbs are formed like Passives; as,

Mir-or,¹ -āri, -ātus, U. R. D. *admire*.—So,

Abōmīnor, ² D.	<i>abhor.</i>	Cōmītor, ¹³	<i>accompany.</i>
Adūlor, ³ D.	<i>flawn, flatter.</i>	Conciōnor,	<i>harangue.</i>
Ēmīlor, ⁴ D.	<i>vie with, envy.</i>	*Confābūlor, ¹⁴ M.	<i>discourses.</i>
*Aprīcor, ⁵	<i>bask in the sun.</i>	Cōnor, ¹⁵ D.	<i>endeavour.</i>
Arbītror, ⁶ R. D.	<i>think.</i>	Conspīcor, ¹⁶	<i>spy, see.</i>
Aspernor, ⁷ D.	<i>despise.</i>	Contemplor, ¹⁷	<i>view.</i>
Avēsor, ⁸ D.	<i>dislike.</i>	Crimīnor, ¹⁸ M.	<i>blame.</i>
Aucūpor, ⁹ R.	<i>hunt after.</i>	Cunctor, ¹⁹	<i>delay.</i>
Auxīlor, ¹⁰	<i>help.</i>	Dēprēcōr, ²⁰ M. R.	<i>entreat, pray against.</i>
Causor, ¹¹	<i>plead in excuse, blame.</i>	*Digladior,	<i>fence.</i>
Calumnior, <i>accuse falsely, calumniate.</i>		Dōmīnor, ²¹	<i>rule.</i>
*Cōmissor, ¹² M.	<i>revel.</i>	Epūlor, ²² R. D.	<i>feast.</i>
		*Fāmūlor, ²³ M.	<i>wait on.</i>

¹ *Mirāto*, Senec. *Mirātūrus*, Ovid. *Mirandus*, Stat. *Mirandus* is generally construed as an Adjective.—² *Abōmīnandus*, Quint. *Abōmīnārētus*, pass. Verrius. ³ *Adūlandus*, Val. Max. *Adūlārī*, pass. to be flattered, Cic. Off. i. 26.—⁴ *Ēmūlandus*, Plin. *Ēmūlārīs*, act. Apul.—⁵ *Aprīcārē*, act. Pallad.—⁶ *Arbītrātūrus*, Apul. *Arbītrandus*, Ulpian. *Arbītrantur*, pass. Ulpian. *Arbītrābunt*, Plaut.—⁷ *Aspernātus*, despising, having despised, Virg. Georg. iii. 393. et passim. *Aspernātus*, pass. despised, Liv. xxxiv. 40. *Aspernandus*, Virg. Æn. xi. 106. *Aspernātus*, pass. Cic.—⁸ *Averātus*, disliking, Ovid. et passim. *Aversātus*, pass. averied, Aurel. Vict. *Aversandus*, Liv. xxx. 25.—⁹ *Aucūpātūrus*, Cic. The active form *Aucūpo* occurs in Senec. Hence, *Aucūpātus*, pass. sought after, Lact. *Aucūpātus*, in an active sense does not occur.—¹⁰ *Auxīlātus*, having assisted, Stat. *Auxīlīa*, Gracch. Hence *Auxīlātus*, pass. aided. Lucil.—¹¹ *Causandus*, given in some Dictionaries, does not occur in the classics. *Causābor*, pass. Ovid. de Nuce, 125. where Salmas, Heins. and Burm. read *Causa habeor*.—¹² *Cōmissātum*, Liv. xl. 7. Terent. Some write *Comessor*, others *Comissor*, or *Comussor*; but *Comissor* is generally found in ancient books and inscriptions.—¹³ *Cōmīlātus*, attending, having attended, Cæs. B. G. vi. 7. *Cōmīto*, act. Propert. *Cāmītor*, pass. Ov. Trist. iii. 7. 47. Hence *Cāmītātus*, attended.—¹⁴ *Confābūlātum*, Terent. *Confābūlābunt* in some old edd. of Plaut. Most. ii. 2. 78.; but the true reading is *conturbābunt*.—¹⁵ *Cōnandus*, Cæs. B. C. i. 31. i. 65. *Cōnārem* for *cōnārē*, is quoted by some grammarians from Ennius ap. Prisc.; but it cannot be found either in the ed. of Putschius, Hanov. 1605, or in that of Krehl., Lips. 1819.—¹⁶ The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, *dus*, do not occur. *Conspīco*, act. Varr. Hence *Conspīcātus*, Varr. & Sall. Jug. c. 49. But Cortius in the last passage reads *conspīcitur*.—¹⁷ *Contempro*, Apul. & Plaut. passim. Hence *Contemplātus*, *θεωρουμνος*, Ammian. *Contemplātus*, *θεωρουμας* Curt. iii. 4. et passim. 'In *contemplandis*, rebus,' Cic. Nat. Deor. i. 27.—¹⁸ *Crimīno*, Plaut. Hence *Crimīnātus* accused, Hygin. 18. *Crimīnātus*, having accused, passim. *Crimīnātum*, Liv. ii. 37.—¹⁹ *Cuncto*, Plaut. Hence 'Cunctāta, fides,' his faith was arrested, Stat. Theb. though it may be construed actively.—²⁰ *Dēprēcātus*, having entreated, Cic. Orat. ii. 49. et passim. *Dēprēcātus*, pass. deprecated, Justin. viii. 5. asked, Apul. Met. iii. p. 59. *Dēprēcātum*, Cic. de Amic. c. 11. *Dēprēcātūrus*, Hirt. 'Ad pacem *dēprēcandū*,' Cic. 'Dēprēcandæ malevolentiae, causa,' pro Balb. xviii. 7.—²¹ *Dōmīnārīs*, pass. Cic. Off.—²² *Epūlātūrus*, Val. Max. *Epūlanda*, to be eaten, Ovid.—²³ *Fāmūlo*, Tertul. *Fāmūlātum*, Sil. *Fāmūlātus* occurs only in Tertul. de Res. Car. c. 47. where he quotes St. Paul, Rom. vi. 22. *δουλοῦντες δεῖ το θεῷ κατ'α. Fāmūlati autem Deo, &c.*

Fāris, ¹ or fāre, U.	speak.	Lāmentor, ¹⁶ D.	bewail.
Fērior, ² R.	keep holiday.	*Lignor, ¹⁷ M.	gather fuel.
*Frūmentor, ³ M.	provide corn, forage.	Luctor, ¹⁸	wrestle.
	purvey.	Mōdīcor, ¹⁹ R. D.	cure.
Fūrōr, ⁴ M.	steal.	Mōdītor, ²⁰	meditate.
Glōrior, ⁵ R. D.	boast.	Mercor, ²¹ M. R. D.	purchase.
Grātūlor, ⁶ M. D.	rejoice, congratulate.	Mīnor,	threaten.
Hortor, ⁷	encourage.	Mīsēror, ²² D.	pity.
Imītor, ⁸ U. R. D.	imitate.	Mōdēror, ²³ U. D.	rule.
Indignor, ⁹ D.	disdain.	Mūdōlor, ²⁴ D.	play a tune.
Infītor, ¹⁰ D.	deny.	Mōror, ²⁵ R. D.	delay.
*Injuriōr,	injure.	Mūtuor, ²⁶	borrow.
Insector, ¹¹	pursue.	Negotior,	traffic.
Ināfdior, ¹² R.	lie in wait.	*Nūgor, ²⁷	trifle.
Jācūlor, ¹³	dart.	Obtestor, ²⁸	beseech.
Jocor, ¹⁴	jest.	Opēror, ²⁹	work.
Lātor, ¹⁵ R. D.	rejoice.		

¹ For, Diomed, i. p. 375. Prisc. viii. p. 793. but without authority. *Fātu*, Virg. *Æn.* xii. 25. *Fandus*, Lucan. *Fāmīno* for *fāre*, Cato R. R. *Fātūr*, pass. Sueton.—² *Fēriātus*, Cic. Nat. Deor. i. 37. *Fēriātūrus*, Sidon. The Participles in *as* and *dus* are not found in the classics.—³ *Frūmentātum*, Cic. Epist. ad Att. Cæs. B. G.—⁴ *Fūrātum*, Plaut. Rud. i. 2. 23. Trin. iv. 2. 22.—⁵ *Glōriātūrus*, Sueton. *Glōriandus*, Cic. Tusc. v. 17.—⁶ *Grātūlātum*, Cic. in Pison. c. 22. *Grātūlātus*, Cic. Fam. iii. 11. *Grātūlandus*, Fronton.—⁷ *Horto*, *as*, Prisc. Hortor, pass. Gell. xv. 13. Tacit. Ann. xii. 9. 'Ad quas hortandas,' &c. Justin. xi. 9. 13.—⁸ *Imītātus*, Val. Max. *Imītātūrus*, Cic. *Imītandus*, Cic. Off. *Imīto*, Var.—⁹ *Indignandus*, Ovid. Met.—¹⁰ From *in* and *Fāteor*; some derive it from *in* and *Fācio*, and write *Infīciōr*. *Infītiandus*, Ovid.—¹¹ *Insecto* Plaut. Hence *Insectātus*, pressed on, pursued, Hirt. *Insectātus*, having inveighed against, Tacit. Hist. ii. 96. et passim. *Insectans āves*, Cic.—¹² *Ināfdiāvērint*, Callistr. *Insīdial*, in some copies of Virg. *Æn.* i. 719. according to Servius. *Insīdiātūrus*, Hirt. 'In legatis insīdiandis,' Cic. pro Cæl. c. 21.—¹³ *Ējācūlāvērat* is found in Gell. xvi. 19. 4. and *Jācūlātus*, pass. Lucan. iii. 568. *Jācūlātus*, having hurled, Virg. *Æn.* ii. 276. et passim.—¹⁴ *Jōcābo*, Plaut.—¹⁵ *Lāto*, *siōpāivōs*, I gladden, Liv. ap. Non. Hence *Lātātus*, gladdened, Virg. *Æn.* xii. 841. *Lātātus*, having rejoiced, Cic. Phil. xi. 4. et passim. *Lātātūrus*, Cic. de Div. ii. 9. *Lātandus*, Cic. Leg. Manil. c. 1. These two passages may be construed actively ob, or propter, being understood.—¹⁶ *Lāmentātus*, pass. impera. Apul. Met. *Lāmentātus*, lamented, Sil. *Lāmentātus*, having lamented, Cic. Tusc. i. 31. et passim. *Lamentandus*, Fronton. de Nep.—¹⁷ *Lignātūm*, Liv. x. 25. This verb has no Participle.—¹⁸ *Lucto*, Terent. Hence *Luctans*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 694.—¹⁹ *Mēdicāre*, *ιατρᾶν*, Sil. *Mēdicāre*, medicinis imbuere, tingere, Virg. Georg. i. 193. Hence *Mēdicātus*, *φάρμακον*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 420. et passim. *Mēdicentur*, pass. Colum. *Mēdicātūrus*, Colum. *Mēdicandus*, Tibull. ²⁰ *Mēdītantur*, pass. Minuc. Fel. Hence, *Mēdītātus*, pass. Cic. passim. *Mēdītātus*, act. This does not occur so frequently as the other.—²¹ *Mercātum*, Plaut. *Mercātus*, having bought, Cic. *Mercātus*, pass. Plin. *Mercātūrus*, Plin.—*Mercandus*, Cic.—²² *Mīsērandus*, Cic. de Or. i. 37.—²³ *Mōdēro*, Pacuv. ap. Non. vii. 23. Hence, *Mōdērātus*, pass. *Mōdērātū*, Liv. iv. 27. *Mōdērāndus*, Cic. de Orat. i. 18.—²⁴ *Mōdūlātus*, pass. Quint. ix. 2. Hor. i. Od. 32. 5. al. passim. *Mōdūlandus*, Hor. ii. Ep. 2. 143.—²⁵ *Mōrātus*, Propert. iii. 20. 12. *Mōrāndus*, Hor. Art. Poët. 223.—²⁶ *Mūtuo*, Cæcil. ap. Non. Hence, *Mūtūātus*, borrowed Plin. *Mūtūātus*, having borrowed, Val. Max. The Participles in *as*, *rus*, and *dus*, are not found in the classics.—²⁷ This verb has no Participles.—²⁸ *Obtestātus*, pass. conjured, Apul. *Obtestātus*, having entreated, Sallust. Catil. c. 46. et passim.—²⁹ *Opērātus*, pass. exercised, Lactant. *Opērātus*, working, sacrificing, Propert. ii. 24. 1. et passim.

Opīnor, ¹ U. R. D.	think.	Rimor, ¹⁵	search.
Opītūlor, ² M.	help.	Rixor, ¹⁶	scold.
Opōnor, ³ M.	cater.	*Rusticor, ¹⁷	dwell in the country.
Ōior, ⁴	be at leisure.	Sciscītlor, ¹⁷ M.	inquire.
Pabulor, ⁵ M. D.	graze, forage.	*Scītlor, ¹⁸ M.	ask.
Pālor, ⁶	wander.	Scrūtlor, ¹⁹	search.
Percontor, ⁷ M.	enquire.	Sōlor, ²⁰ D.	comfort.
Pēriclītlor, ⁸ D.	make trial, be in danger.	Spātlor,	walk about.
Piscor, ⁹ M.	fish.	Spēcūlor, ²¹ M. R.	view, spy.
Pōpūlor, ¹⁰ R. D.	lay waste.	Stīpūlor, ²²	stipulate.
Prædor, ¹¹ M.	plunder.	Suavior,	kiss.
Prælior, ¹²	fight.	Suspīcor, ²³	suspect.
Præmior,	make prizes.	Testor, ²⁴	witness.
Præcor, ¹³ M. U. R. D.	pray.	Tūtlor, ²⁵ D.	defend.
Rēcōrdor, ¹⁴	remember.		

¹ *Opinātu*, Plin. *Opinātūrus*, Cic. Acad. *Opinandus*, Cic. Tusc.—² *Opītūla*, Liv. Andron. ap. Non. *Opītūlātum*, Plaut.—³ *Opōno*, āre, āvi, ātus, is more usual. *Opōnāvī*, Plaut. *Opōnābo*, Terent. *Opōnātum*, Plaut. Some write *Obsōno*; but contrary to its derivation, ὀψων, ὀψωνος, *opsōnium*, any thing provided for food, except bread and wine; and particularly fish.—⁴ *Otiātus* occurs only in Sidon, Ep. III. 1. It has no other Participle.—⁵ *Pabūlātum*, Plaut. *Pabūlandus*, Colum.—⁶ This Verb is chiefly used in the Present Participle, *Pālans*, Liv. I. 11. Virg. XII. 738. al. passim. *Pālātus*, dispersed, wandering, Liv. *Pālāre*, act. occurs in the Satire of Sulpicia, vs. 43.—⁷ *Percontō*, Apul. Met. *Percontantur*, pass. Gell. Hence, 'pretio *percontato*,' Apul. Met. *Percontātum*, Ter.—⁸ *Pēriclītātus*, pass. Cic. de Amic. c. 17. *Pēriclītātus*, having made trial, Cic. pro Quint, c. 31. al. passim. *Pēriclītandus*, Cic. Catil. I. 5.—⁹ *Piscātum*, Plaut. The Participle *Piscans* occurs only in Festus.—¹⁰ *Pōpūlāvī*, Propert. Hence, *Pōpūlor*, pass. Liv. and *Pōpūlātus*, Cic. *Pōpūlātus*, act. Stat. Theb. et passim. *Pōpūlātūrus*, Cæs. B. G. *Pōpūlandus*, Ovid. Met.—¹¹ *Prædo*, Prisc. Hence *Prædātum* *iri*, Plaut. *Prædātum*, Liv. IV. 55.—¹² *Præliant*, Enn. ap. Non.—¹³ *Præco*, Prisc. Hence *Præcantur*, pass. Varr. ap. Non. and *Prēcātus*, prayed, supplicated. *Prēcātus*, having prayed, Cic. Tusc. I. 47. et passim. *Prēcātum*, Liv. VII. 31. *Prēcātu*, Stat. Theb. *Prēcātūrus*, Ovid. *Prēcandus*, Tacit. Ann.—¹⁴ *Rēcōrdāvī*, Ann. ap. Non. Hence, *Rēcōrdātus*, remembered, Sidon. *Rēcōrdātus*, having remembered, Ovid Met. et passim. 'Ad ea *rēcōrdanda*,' Cic. pro Syll. c. 26.—¹⁵ *Rimābam*, Jul. Valer. *Rimārem*, Accius ap. Non. Hence, *Rimātus*, pass. investigated, Sidon. 'Rimandis offensis sagax,' Tacit. Hist. IV. 11.—¹⁶ *Rixant*, *Rixent*, *Rixarent*, Varr. ap. Non. 'Cum *rixātus* esset,' Cic. de Orat. c. 59.—¹⁷ *Sciscitāre*, act. Plaut. Hence, *Sciscitātus*, asked, Ammian. *Sciscitātus*, having inquired, Petron. *Sciscitātum*, Gell. ¹⁸ *Scitābat*, Ammian.; but Vales. and Gronov. read *noctūbat*. *Scitātum*, Virg. Æn. II. 114.—¹⁹ *Scrūtāri*, pass. Ammian. XXVIII. 1. and *Scrūtātus*, searched after, xv. 8. *Scrūtātus*, having searched, Plin. XIII. 6. et passim. ²⁰ *Sōlandus*, Ovid.—²¹ *Spēcūlātum*, Sall. Jug. c. 116. *Spēcūlātūrus*, Justin. 'Ad *spēcūlandos* actūs Hannibālis,' Justin.—²² *Stīpūlat*, Symmach. Epist. Hence, *Stīpūlari*, pass. Sueton. and *Stīpūlātus*, contracted, Cic. pro Rosc. *Stīpūlātus*, having stipulated, ibid. c. 4. et passim. The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *us*, are not found in the classics.—²³ *Suspīces*, Plaut.—²⁴ *Testo*, -as, Prisc. but without example. *Testātus*, attested, Liv. XXXIV. 41. al. passim. *Testātus*, having called to witness, Cic. Fin. II. 20. et al. passim. 'Hoc *testandum* est,' Cic. Orat. c. 68.—²⁵ *Tūtētis*, Plaut. *Tūta*, Pacuv. ap. Non. *Tūtant*, Næv. ibid. *Tūtāret*, Pompon. ibid. Hence, *Tūtantur*, pass. Plaut. and *Tūtātus*, defended, Symmach. Ep. IX. 11. *Tūtātus*, having defended, Ovid. Trist. v. 6. 15. et passim. *Tūtandus*, Phædr.

Vāgor, ¹	wander.	Versor, ⁴	be employed, frequent, haunt,
Vēnēror, ² D.	worship.		dwell.
Vēnor, ³ M.	hunt.	Vōcīfēror, ⁵	boast.

¹ *Vāgant*, Enn. ap. Non. vii.—² *Vēnēro*, Plaut. Hence, *Vēnērātus*, Hor. Sat. II. 2. 124. Virg. *Æn.* III. 460. *Vēnērātus*, having worshipped, Propert. *Vēnērāndus*, Cic. Agr. II. 35. Virg. *Æn.* IX. 275. &c. *Vēnērantes*, i. e. *Vēnēri opēram dantes*, Hygin. Fab. LXXV. which is not to be imitated. Yet this, according to some etymologists, is the original meaning of the word.—³ *Vēnātum*, Virg. *Æn.* IV. 118. Plaut. *Vēnātus*, having hunted, Ovid. Fast. *Vēnor*, pass. Enn. ap. Non.—⁴ *Versor*, though generally ranked with Deponents, is merely the Passive of *Verso*; 'nam qui in aliquo loco, aut re immoratur, quodammodo in ea huc et illuc sese versat, et quasi volutatur, aut corpore, aut mente.' Facciolat.—⁵ *Vōcīfērant*. Varr. Liv. VII. 12. VIII. 38. *Vōcīfērātus*, Colum.

III. EXCEPTIONS.

*Crēpo, ¹ crēpare, crēpui, —,	make a noise.
*Cūbo, ² cūbare, cūbui, —, cūbitum,	lie down.
Do, ³ dare, dēdi, dātus, dātum, dātūrus, dandus,	give.
Dōmo, ⁴ dōmare, dōmui, dōmltus, dōmltūrus, domandus,	conquer.
Fricō, ⁵ fricāre, fricui, frictus, or fricātus, fricandus,	rub.
Jūvo, ⁶ jūvāre, jūvi, jūtus, jūvātūrus, jūvandus,	help.
*Lābo, ⁷ lābare, —, —, labasse,	droop, totter.
Lāvo, ⁸ lāvāre, lāvi, lautus, or lōtus, or lāvātus, lautum, or lāvātum, lāvātūrus, lāvandus,	wash.
*Mico, ⁹ micāre, micui, —,	vibrate, glitter.

¹ So *Concrēpo*, I rattle, ring. * *Discrēpo*, I differ in sound, I disagree, makes *ui*, or *avi*: *Discrēpuit*, Hor. Art. Poët. 219. *Discrēpavit*, Cic. de Or. III. 30. *Increpo*, I sound, strike, chide, *ui*, sometimes *avi*; *Incrēpavit*, Plaut. *Incrēpatus*, chidden, Liv. XXIII. 26. *Incrēpatus*, Prudent. Cathem. VII. 195, where the Jun-tine ed. has *Incrēpatus*. The Perfect and Participles of *Rēcrēpo*, I resound, do not occur.—² *Cūbasse*, Quintil. VIII. 2. *Cūbāris*, Propert. *Incūbāvere*, Plin. *Incūbui*, Virg. *Æn.* VII. 88. et passim. *Sūpercūbasse*, Apul. Met. *Cūbitum*, Cic. pro Rosc. *Incūbandus*, Plin. When the compounds of *Cūbo* take an M, they are of the third conj.—³ So four Compounds, *Circumdo*, I surround; *Pessumdo*, I destroy; *Sātīdo*, I give good bail; *Vēnumdo*, I set to sale. The other Com-pounds are of the third Conj. *Dātum iri*, Cæs. B. C. *Dātūrus*, Catull. *Dandus*, Cic. Off. I. 21. The first person pass. *Dor*, does not occur except in Diomed. I. p. 375.—⁴ *Dōmāvi*, Ennius. *Dōmāvērunt*, Flor. *Dōmātus*, Petron. Hence *Dōmātor*, a tamer, Tibull. IV. 116. *Dōmātūrus*, Virg. Georg. IV. 102. *Dōmandus*, Propert. II. 34. 50. So *Edōmo*, I subdue; *Perdōmo*, I subdue wholly. *Perdōmītūrus*, Justin. II. 13.—⁵ Some Grammars and Dictionaries give this verb a Per-fect in *-avi*; but no such Perfect exists now in the Latin classics. *Frictus*, Juv. Sat. VI. 577. *Fricātus*, Plin. *Fricandus*, Plin. *Africātus*, Apul. Met. *Confricātus*, Plin. *Dēfrictus*, Colum. *Dēfricātus*, Colum. *Infricātus*, Plin. *Perfrictus*, Apul. Met. *Perfricātus*, Vitruv. *Rēfricātūrus*, Cic. The Perfects of *Confrico* and *Infrico* seem not to exist.—⁶ *Jūvērunt*, Catull. LXV. 18. and in some edd. *Jūērunt*. Voësius quotes *Jūvāvi* from Manilius. *Jūvārit*, Pallad. but Gesner reads *jūvābit* *Jūtus*, Tacit. Ann. *Jūtūrus*, Colum. *Jūvātūrus*, Sall. Jug. c. 47. *Jūvandus*, Ovid. *Adjūvi*, Cic. *Adjūro*, for *adjūvōro*, Cic. de Se-nect. c. 1. *Adjūtus*, Macrob. *Adjūtum*, Corn. Nep. *Adjūtūrus*, Liv. *Adjuvātūrus*, Petron. c. 18. *Adjuvandus*, Cic.—⁷ Of the Perfect of *Lābo* we find no trace in the classics, except that we read *Lābasse* in Plin. XIV. 28.—⁸ *Lāvo*, *ts*, *ere*, &c. Hor. III. Od. 12. 2. IV. Od. 6. 26. I. Sat. 5. 24. Ovid. IV. 340. Virg. Georg. III. 221. *Æn.* III. 663. Plaut. passim. *Lāvāvit*, Plaut. *Lautus*, Cic. pro Deiot. c. 10. Hor. II. Sat. 3. 282. Ter. and Plaut. *Lōtus*, Stat. *Lāvātus*, Plaut. *Lautum*, Ter. and Plaut. *Lāvātum*, Hor. I. Sat. 3. 137. I. Sat. 6. 125. & Ter. *Lāvātūrus*, Ovid. Fast. III. 12. *Lāvandus*, Ovid. Fast. IV. 136. & Plin.—⁹ *Micui*, Ovid. *Micāvērūt*, Sollin. c. 53. *Dimico*, I fight, *avi*, sometimes *ui*: *Dimicāvi*, Sueton. *Dimicui*, Ovid. *Dimicātūrus*, Cæs. B. G. III. 24. *Emico*, I spring forth, I shine forth, *ui*, *ere*: *Emicui*, Virg. *Æn.* II. 174. et passim. Quintil. I. 6. finds fault with those, who, too scrupulously following analogy, preferred *Emicāvi* to *Emicui*. *Emicātūrus*, Senec. ad Helv. 11. The Perfects of *Intermico*, I shine among, and *Promico*, I spring out, do not occur. *Promicandus*, Næv. ap. Non. I. 329.

Nēco, ¹ nēcāre, nēcāvi, or nēcui, nēcātus, nēcātūrus, nēcandus,	kill.
*Nexo, ² nexāre, —, —,	tie, knit.
Plico, ³ plicāre, —, plicātus, or plicītus,	fold.
Pōto, ⁴ pōtāre, pōtāvi, pōtus, or pōtātus, pōtum, or pōtātum,	
pōtūrus, or pōtātūrus, pōtandus,	drink.
Sēco, ⁵ sēcāre, sēcui, sectus, sēcātūrus, sēcandus,	cut.
*Sōno, ⁶ sōnāre, sōnui, —, sōnātūrus, sōnandus,	sound.

¹ Nēcāvi, Cic. pro Leg. Manil. c. 5. Nēcui, Phædr. Nēcātus, Sall. Jug. c. 50. et al. passim. Nectus in some edd. of Cic. de Leg. III. 10. 'Proprie nēcātus, FERRO, nectus vero ALIA VI peremptus.' Nēcātūrus, Ovid. Nēcandus, Juv. Sat. VI. 596. Enīco, ἀφαιμαρ. Enēco, I slay, ui, ctus; sometimes āvi, ātus: Enēcui, Sueton. Enēcāvi, Plaut. Enīcasso, for enīcāvēro, Plaut. Enectus, Cic. de Divin. Enēcātus, Plin. Enēcandus, Cels. The Perfect of Internēco, I utterly destroy, and its Participles in *ns, rus, dus*, are not found in the classics. Internēcātus, Plaut. Internectus, quoted from Cic. Phil. XIV. 3. does not exist in correct copies.—² Nexo has neither Perfect nor Participle. See Necto and Nexo, third Conj.—³ The perfects Plicui and Plicāvi are found only in Priscian, and without example. Plicātus, Lucr. VI. 1085. Plicītus, Mart. Duplico, I double; Multiplico, I multiply; Rēplico, I unfold, make *avi, atus*. Rēplicasse, Plin. Rēplicātus, Plin. and Rēplicātus, Stat. Sylv. Supplico makes *avi*, and has no Perfect Participle. Supplicātum, Plaut. Supplicātūrus, Ter. Supplicassis, for Supplicāvēris, Plaut. Duplicātūrus, Cic. Att. V. 18. 'Ad Duplicanda verba,' Liv. XXVII. 11. Applico, I apply, Implico, I entangle, make *ui, itus*, and *āvi, ātus*. Complico, *ui, itus*, and *ātus*. Complicāvi does not occur. Applicui, Justin. Applicāvi, Cic. Applicūtus, Plin. Applicātus, Cæs. B. C. III. 101. &c. Applicītūrus, Justin. Implicui, Virg. Æn. XI. 751. et passim. Implicāvi, Liv. Implicītus, Hor. Art. Poët. 423. Liv. I. 31. et passim. Implicātus, Cæs. B. G. VII. 73, &c. Obs. Implicītus morbo, not implicātus. Implicītūrus, Ov. Explico makes *ui, itus*, and *āvi, ātus*. When it means to explain, *āvi, ātus*, are the more usual forms: in the sense of unfolding, *ui, itus* are more usual. Explicui, Petron. Virg. Georg. II. 280. et al. passim. Explicāvi, Plaut. and Cic. Gellius remarks, that Explicui was more usual in the time of Cicero, than Explicāvi. Explicītūrus, Stat. Theb. Explicātūrus, Cæs. B. C. I. 78. Complicui, Senec. Complicātus, Cic. Complicātus, Apul. Met.—⁴ Pōtus *sum*, for pōtāvi, Varr. Pōtus, act. Cic. Fam. VII. 22. Ovid. Pōtus pass. Cic. Ovid. Hor. Pōtātus. Cic. Tusc. V. 5. Pōtūrus, Plin. Pōtātūrus, Sueton. Pōtum, Virg. Ecl. VII. 11. Pōtātum, Plaut. Potandus, Ovid. Epōto, I drink up, makes epōtāvi, epōtus; Perpōto, perpōtāvi, and has no Perfect Participle, nor the Participles in *rus* and *dus*. Epōto, has not the Participles in *ns, rus* and *dus*.—⁵ Sēcui, Virg. Georg. III. 444. al. passim. Sēcāvi, mentioned by the Oxford Commentators on Lily, and by some others, does not exist in the classics. Sectus, Cic. Tusc. II. 53. et al. passim. Sēcātūrus, Colum. Sēcandus, Ovid. The Compounds make *ui, ctus, Præsēco*, I chop off, pare off, and Resēcō, I cut off, *ui ctus*, rarely *atus*. Præsēcātus, Apul. Met. Resēcātus, Apul. The Perfects of Circumsēcō, I cut about, and Intersēcō, intersect, are not in use; nor the Participles Intersēctus, Persectus. Intersēcandus, Colum. Resēcandus, Cic. Cat. II. 5.—⁶ Sōnēre, third Conj. Lucr. Sōnūt, Accius, ap. Non. Sōnunt, Accius et Enn. Sōnīvi, Non. Sōnui, Propert. Sōnāvērīnt, Turtull. whence Sōnātūrus, Hor. I. Sat. 4. 43. Sōmandus, Ovid. Sōnantur, pass. Albinov. ad Liv. I. 107. For Assōno, I resound; Circumsōno, I sound around; Dissōno, I am discordant, we find no Perfect. Resōno, I re-echo, makes *āvi*; Manil. Consōno, I sound together; Exsōno, I resound; Insōno, I resound; Persōno, I sound loudly; Præsōno, I sound before, make *ui*. Yet Persōnāvī, Apul. Met. Resōnūt, for resōnat, Accius ap. Non. Resōnunt, Accius et Enn. ap. Prisc.

**Sto*,¹ *stāre*, *stēti*, —, *stātūrus*,

stand.

**Tōno*,² *tōnāre*, *tōnui*, —,

thunder.

Vēto,³ *vētāre*, *vētui*, *vētūrus*,

forbid.

¹ *Stātūrus*, Lucan. et Liv. III. 60. The Compounds, *Consto*, I consist; *Exsto*, I exist, appear; *Insto*, I press on, am near; *Obsto*, oppose; *Persto*, I persist; *Præsto*, I surpass, make *stīti*, *stātūrus*. *Præstandus*, Ovid. Liv. x. 36. Cic. Fam. VI. 8. *Asto*, I stand near, *stīti*, *stātūrus*; Porcin. ap. Prisc. *Prosto*, I stand to be hired; *Resto*, I remain, make *stīti*, without the Perfect Participle. *Antesto*, or *antīsto*, I excel; *Circumsto*, I stand about; *Intersto*, I stand between; *Supersto*, I stand over, make *stīti*, without the Perfect Participle. See Cic. de Inv. Cæ. B. G. *Disto*, I am distant, I differ; *Substo*, I stand under, I bear up, have neither Perfect nor Perfect Participle. 'Multa quæ in præteritis efferuntur, ad *sisto*, commodè reduci possunt; *Facciolat*. See the Compounds of *Sisto*, third Conj. *Præstāvi*, Ammian. *Præstāvimus*, Paul. Dig. *Præstiturus* in some edd. of Cic. Fam. VI. 8.—² *Tōnūmus*, third Conj. Varr. ap. Non. I. 245. *Tōnāvi*, given by the Oxford commentators on Lily, and by Gesner in his Thesaur. Lat. and *Tōnivi*, quoted from Plautus, do not exist. *Altōno*, I astonish, *vi*, *itus*; *Circumtōno*, I thunder round, *ui*; *Intōno*, I thunder on, *ui*, *atus*; *Intōnāvi*, Paulin. Epist. *Intōnātus*, thundered on, Hor. Epod. II. 51. *Rētōno*, I resound, has neither Perfect nor Perfect Participle.—³ *Vētāvi*, Plaut. according to the Mss. of Langius and seven others. *Vētāvisti*, vs. 46. according to five Palatine Mss. and three others. See the Delphin Plautus printed by Valpy. *Vētāvit*, Pers. Sat. which some have altered to *nētāvit*, others to *rētābit*. *Vētāvēram*, Planc. ad Cic. Fam. x. 23. where the ed. Vindel. 1469. and the Ald. 1533. have *vētūvēram*. Some from Stat. Theb. III. 71. cite *vētātam*; but the two Mss. at Cambridge, one in the Peter-house Col. and the other in St. John's, with more than twenty printed copies, have in this passage *nētātam*.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

I. Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in *-eo*, and change *-eo* into *-ēre* long in the Infinitive; into *ui* in the Perfect; and into *-itus* in the Perfect Participle Passive; as,

Mōneo;¹ mōnēre, mōnui, mōnitus, R. D.

advise.

—So,

Admōneo, ² R. D.	admonish.	Dēbeo, ¹⁴ R. D.	owe.
Commōneo,	warn.	Mēreo, ¹⁵ R.	deserve.
Prēmōneo,	forewarn.	Commēreo, ¹⁶	deserve well or ill.
*Arceo, ³ D.	tie hard, drive away.	Dēmēreo, ¹⁷ D.	earn.
Coērcéo, ⁴ D.	restrain.	Emēreo,	merit.
Exerceo, ⁵ D.	exercise.	*Permēreo,	serve in war.
Hābeo, ⁶ R. D.	have.	Prēmēreo, ¹⁸	deserve.
Adhībeo, ⁷ R. D.	admit, use.	Terreo, ¹⁹ D.	terrify.
Cōhībeo, ⁸ D.	restrain.	Absterreo, ²⁰	deter.
Inhībeo, ⁹ D.	hinder.	Conterreo, ²¹	affright.
Exhībeo, ¹⁰ R. D.	show.	Dēterreo, ²² D.	deter.
*Perhībeo, ¹¹ D.	report.	Exterreo,	scare.
Prōhībeo, ¹² R. D.	hinder.	Pertterreo,	frighten.
Posthābeo,	postpone.	Tāceo, ²³ R. D.	be silent, conceal.
Præbeo, ¹³ R. D.	afford.		

¹ Mōnūtūrus, Propert. i. Mōnendus, Plaut.—² Admōnūtūrus, Ovid. Admonitum, Cic. Admōnendus, Plin.—³ Arcendus, Cic. Off. i. 34.—⁴ Coērcendus, Cels.—⁵ Exerendus, Cic. de Orat. i. 157.—⁶ Hābitūrus, Cic. Philip. iii. 27. Hābendus, Ovid.—⁷ Adhībūtūrus, Curt. Adhībendus, Auson.—⁸ Cōhībendus, Cels. Cōhībēs, for cōhībērī, Lucr. iii. 445.—⁹ Inhībendus, Sen.—¹⁰ Exhībūtūrus, Petron.—¹¹ Exhībendus, Plin. Epist.—¹² Perhībendus, Cic. The Perfect Participle, and the Participles in *ns* and *rus* do not occur.—¹³ Prōhībūtūrus, Liv. xxxi. 25. Prōhībendus, Cic. Off. i. 25. Prōhībesso, is, it, for prōhībēam, or prōhībētrī, Plaut.—¹⁴ Prābūtūrus, Liv. Prābendus, Cic. Off. i. 41.—¹⁵ Dēbitūrus, Curt. Dēbitū iri, for dēbitum iri, ap. Ulp.—¹⁶ Mēritūrus, Cic. Acad. i. 7. Liv. ii. 38.—¹⁷ Commēritus, pass. Plaut. Commēritus, having deserved, comes from the Deponent Commēreor.—¹⁸ Dēmērendus, Colum. i. 4. The Participles in *ns* and *rus* do not occur.—¹⁹ Prēmēritus, pass. Plaut. Prēmēritus, having deserved, from Prēmēreor, Virg. Æn. iv. 333. 'Prēmērendi, āmōris stūdium,' Sueton. Calig. c. 3.—²⁰ Terrendus, Aul. Gell.—²¹ Absterētus, Liv.—²² Conterētus, Virg. Æn. iii. 507.—²³ Dēterrendus, Hirt. B. G.—²⁴ Tāctus, concealed, Virg. Æn. iv. 67. Tāctūrus, Cic. Tācendus, Hor. Ode. The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *dus* of Commōneo, Posthābeo, Commēreo, Emēreo, Absterreo, Conterreo, Exterreo, Pertterreo, do not occur in the classics. Permēreo has no Participle.

II. Neuter Verbs of the Second Conjugation generally make *-ui*, and have no Perfect Participle :

*Aceo, ¹	be sour.	*Liceo, ¹⁷	be put to sale, be valued.
*Areo, ²	be dry.	*Mādeo, ¹⁸	be wet.
*Cāleo, ³ R.	be warm, hot.	*Nigreo, ¹⁹	be black.
*Cādeo, ⁴	be white, hot.	*Niteo, ²⁰	shine.
*Cāneo, ⁵	be hoary.	*Olēo, ²¹	emit a smell.
*Cāreo, ⁶ R.	want.	*Palleo, ²²	be pale.
Clāreo, ⁷	be bright, renowned.	*Pāreo, ²³ M. R.	appear, obey.
Dōleo, ⁸ R. D.	grieve.	*Pāteo, ²⁴	be open.
Egeo, ⁹ R.	want.	*Percalleo, ²⁵	be hurdened, understand.
*Emīneo, ¹⁰	be raised above.		well.
*Flacceo, ¹¹	with.	*Plāceo, ²⁶	please.
*Flōreo, ¹²	flourish.	*Pubeo, ²⁷	arrive at puberty.
*Horreo, ¹³ D.	be rough, tremble with	*Puteo, ²⁸	stink.
	cold.	*Pūteo.	be rotten.
*Jāceo, ¹⁴ R.	lie.	*Rīgeo, ²⁹	be stiff.
*Langueo, ¹⁵ uī,	languish.	*Rūdeo, ³⁰	be red.
*Lāleo, ¹⁶	lie hid.		

¹ *Acui*, Ulpian.—² *Arui*, Prudent.—³ *Cālui*, Stat. Theb. *Cālūtūrus*, Ovid.—⁴ *Candui*, Ovid.—⁵ *Cānui*, Ovid. Fast. III. 880. *Cānēret*, Propert.—⁶ *Cārui*, Plaut. *Cārūtūrus*, Ovid Met.—⁷ *Clārui*, Sueton.—⁸ *Dōlui*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 673. *Dōlūtus est*, for *dōluit*, Inscr. *Dōleātur*, for *dōleat*, ibid. *Dōlērui*, Stat. *Dōlūtūrus*, Liv. xxxix. 43. *Dōlendus*, Ovid.—⁹ *Egvi*, Cic. in Brut. c. 67. *Egūtūrus*, Tertul. *Egūtūrus*. See Sciop.—¹⁰ The Perfect of the simple *Mīneo* does not occur. *Emīnui*, Vell.
¹¹ *Flaccuit*, Varr. where Gesner reads *Flācuit*. 'Flaccente, sententia,' Mamert.
¹² *Flōrui*, Ovid.—¹³ *Horruui*, Ovid. Fast. II. 502. *Horrendus*, Virg. *Æn.* ix. 112.—
¹⁴ *Jācui*, passim. *Jācūtūrus*, Stat. Theb.—¹⁵ *Langui*, three syll. Lucan. vii. 245. Ovid. Met.—¹⁶ *Lātui*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 134. et passim.—¹⁷ *Līcui*, Cic.—¹⁸ *Mādui*, Ovid.
¹⁹ *Nigrui*, Colum.—²⁰ *Nītui*, Tibull.—²¹ *Olui*, Hor. The compounds of *Oleo*, when they signify to *smell*, make *ui*: *Adōleo*, I smell, burn, *ui*, Varr. *Adultus*, Antias ibid. *Adōlendus*, Ovid. *Obōleo*, smell, *ui*, Plaut. *Rēdōleo*, smell strongly, *ui*; *Rēdōlūtrat*, had got a scent, Capitolin. in Gordian. *Sūbōleo*, smell a little, *ui*; but of this there is no classical proof: *Subōlēvi* certainly does not exist. *Perolesse*, to have smelt strongly, is cited from Lucil. by Prisc. In the signification, to *grow*, *grow out of use*, *fade*, &c., they make *evi*: *Abōleo*, I efface, *ēvi*, Gell. *Abolūtus*, Tacit. *Abolūtūrus*, Sueton. *Abolendus*, Sueton. *Adolesco*, I grow up, *ēvi*, Sall. Jug. c. 2. *Adolesse*, Ovid. *Exoleo* occurs only in Prisc. *Exolesco*, I fade, *ēvi*, Plin. *Exolūtus*, Cic. pro Mil. *Obsoleo*, or *Obsolesco*, I grow out of use, *ēvi*, Cic. Manil. c. 17. *Obsoletus*, Cic. *Inolesco*, I grow upon, implant. *ēvi*, Gell. *Inolescendus*, Gell. The Perfects *Abolui*, *Adolui*, I have grown up; *Adolēvi*, I have burned. *Exōlui*, *Inōlui*, do not occur in the entire body of classical Latinity. Priscian, gives *Abōlui*, but without authority.—²² *Pallui*, Propert.
²³ *Pārui*, Mart. *Pārūtūrus*, Justin. *Pārūtum*, Symmach.—²⁴ *Pātui*, Ovid. Met.
²⁵ *Percallui*, Cic. Milon. The Perfect of the simple *Calleo* does not occur.—
²⁶ *Plācui*, Ovid.—²⁷ *Pūbui*, Ulp. Dig.—²⁸ *Pūtui*, Hor. II. Sat. 4. 66. So the Mss. of Cruquius, Torrentius, Bentley, three of the Harleian Mss. in the British Museum, and most of the modern edd. *Pūtuit*, one of the Harleian Mss. with the edd. Mediol. 1477, Florent. 1482, and some others.—²⁹ *Rīgvi*, Ovid. Met. iv. 554.
³⁰ *Rūbui*, Ovid.

*Sordeo, ¹	<i>be filthy.</i>	*Torpeo, ⁶	<i>be torpid, numb.</i>
*Squaleo, ²	<i>be foul.</i>	*Tūmeo, ⁷	<i>swell.</i>
*Stūdeo, ³	<i>study.</i>	*Vāleo, ⁸ R.	<i>be able.</i>
*Stūpeo, ⁴	<i>be amazed.</i>	*Vigeo, ⁹	<i>be strong.</i>
*Tēpeo, ⁵	<i>be warm.</i>	*Vireo, ¹⁰	<i>be green.</i>

To these add the Actives *Tīmeo*,¹¹ *ēre, ui, endus*, fear : and *Nōceo*,¹² *ēre, ui, nōcītum, nōcītūrus*, hurt. Also *Sīleo*,¹³ *ēre, ui, sīlendus*, keep silent, conceal.

¹ *Sordui*, Alcim.—² *Squālui*, Paulin. Nolan.—³ *Stūdui*, Cic.—⁴ *Stūpui*, Val. Flac.—⁵ *Tēpui*, Mart.—⁶ *Torpui*, Ovid.—⁷ *Tūmui*, Ovid.—⁸ *Vāhui*, Tibull. *Vālītārus*, Cic.—⁹ Anciently *Vigo*. *Vigui*, Ovid. Met. xv. 426.—¹⁰ *Vīrui*, Flor.—¹¹ *Tīmui*, Cæs. *Tīmendus*, Hor.—¹² *Nōcui*, Cic. Att. et passim. *Nosim, -is, -it*, for *nōcūrim*, Lucil. ap. Fest. in 'Tama.' *Nōcītum iri*, Cæs. B. G. v. 36. *Nōcītūrus*, Cic. Off. *Nōcītus*, Vet. Interp.—¹³ *Sīlui*, Senec. Med. *Sīlītum est*, August. de Civ. Dei. *Sīlendus*, Ovid.

EXCEPTIONS.

III. Verbs in *-beo* and *-ceo* :

Jūbeo, ¹ jübēre, jussi, jussus, jussūrus,	<i>order.</i>
*Sorbeo, ² sorbēre, sorbui, —,	<i>sup.</i>
Dōceo, ³ dōcēre, dōcui, doctus, dōcendus,	<i>teach.</i>
Misceo, ⁴ miscēre, miscui, mistus or mixtus, R. D.	<i>mix.</i>
Mulceo, ⁵ mulcēre, mulsi, mulsus, mulcendus,	<i>soothe.</i>
*Lūceo, ⁶ lūcēre, laxi, —,	<i>shine.</i>

IV. Verbs in *deo* :

Ardeo, ⁷ ardēre, arsi, arsus, arsūrus,	<i>burn.</i>
Audeo, ⁸ audēre, ausus sum, ausūrus, audendus,	<i>dare.</i>
Gaudeo, ⁹ gaudēre, gavisus sum, gavisūrus,	<i>rejoice.</i>
Mordeo, ¹⁰ mordēre, mōmordi, morsus, mordendus,	<i>bite.</i>
*Pendeo, ¹¹ pendēre, pēpendi, —,	<i>hang.</i>
Prandeo, ¹² prandēre, prandi, pransus, pransūrus,	<i>dine.</i>
Rideo, ¹³ ridēre, risi, risus, risum, risūrus, ridendus,	<i>laugh.</i>

¹ Anciently *Jūsi*. See Quintil. I. 7. *Jussūrus*, Lucan—² *Sorbui*, Plin. *Sorpsi*, Diomed. but without authority. *Absorbui*, Plin. *Absorpsi*, Lucan. *Exsorbui*, Plin.—³ *Dōcendus*, Cic. de Or. II. 17.—⁴ *Mistus* seems preferable to *Mixtus*; though in the ancient Mss. of Virgil and Inscript. ap. Manut. this Participle is written with *xt* which is approved of by Dausquius. *Mistūrus*, Lucan. *Miscendus*, Ovid.—⁵ *Mulsi*, Enn. ap. Prisc. The Participle *Mulsus* is used only in the sense of *sweet*, as in Plaut. or *mixed with honey*, as in Colum. Plin. XXII. 24. *Mulcendus*, Ovid. *Permulsus*, Pacuv. ap. Gell. *Permulsus*, Cass. B. G. IV. 6. *Permulsus*, Sall. in Frag. Hist. IV. ap. Prisc. I. I. Gell. I. 11., where some read *Permulsus*.—⁶ So the Compounds, *Dilūceo*, 'dawn'; *Elūceo*, 'shine forth'; *Pellūceo*, 'shine through'; *Prælūceo*, 'shine before,' without the Perfect Participle. But *Pollūceo*, 'I offer in sacrifice,' 'prepare a banquet,' 'consecrate,' makes *zi*, *ctus*.—⁷ *Arđui*, Inscr. *Arđūrint*, Inscript. *Arsus*, in the sense of *totus*, Plin. *Arsūrus*, Ovid.—⁸ *Ausi*, for *ausus sum*, Cato ap. Prisc.; hence *Ausim*, for *ausūrim*, Liv. in Præf. *Ausint*, Stat. Theb. *Ausūrim*, Lactant. where Cellarius reads *ausis*. *Ausus*, Virg. *Æn.* VI. 624. *Ausūrus*, Ovid. *Audendus*, Liv. XXV. 35.—⁹ *Gavisi*, for *gavisus sum*, Liv. in Odys. ap. Prisc. IX. 868. *Gavisūrus*, Terent. *Gaudendus*, pass. Symmach.—¹⁰ *Mēmordi*, Gell. The Compounds do not double the first syllable: *Admordeo*, *admordi*, *admorsus*, &c. Yet *Admēmordi*, Plaut. *Mordendus*, Ovid.—¹¹ The Participle *Pensus*, occurs only in the compound, *Prōpendeo*, Pers. Sat. *Pensūrus* comes from *Pendo*, -is, of the third Conj., which also makes *Pēpendi*.—¹² Some give this Verb another Perfect, *Pransus sum*. See Liv. XXVIII. 14. *Pransūrus*, Plaut.—¹³ *Rido*, -is, Lucr. *Irridunt*, Brut. ap. Diomed. *Ridear*, pass. Ovid. *Ridētur*, Mart. *Risus est*, was laughed at, Val. Max. *Risūrus*, Plaut. *Ridendus*, Hor. *Risum*, Cic. *Irrisum*, Plaut. *Dērisum*, Id.

*Sēdeo, ¹ sēdere, sēdi, —, sessum, sessūrus,	sit.
Spondeo, ² spondere, spōpondi, sponsus,	promise.
Suādeo, ³ suādere, suāsi, suāsus, suāsūrus, suadendus,	advise.
Tondeo, ⁴ tondere, tōtondi, tonsus,	clip.
Video, ⁵ videre, vidi, visus, visum, visu, visūrus, videndus,	see.

V. Verbs in *geo* :

*Algeo, ⁶ algere, alsi, —, —, —,	be cold, shiver with cold.
Augeo, ⁷ augere, auxi, auctus, auctūrus,	increase.
*Fulgeo, ⁸ fulgere, fulsi, —, —, —,	shine.
Indulgeo, ⁹ indulgere, indulsi, indultus, R. D.	indulge.
*Lūgeo, ¹⁰ lūgere, luxi, —, —, lūgendus,	mourn.
*Mulgeo, ¹¹ mulgere, mulsi, —, —, —,	milk.
Tergeo, ¹² tergere, tersi, tersus,	wipe.
*Turgeo, ¹³ turgere, tursi, —, —, —,	swell, be angry.
*Urgeo, ¹⁴ urgere, ursi, —, —, —, urgendus,	press.

VI. Verbs in *-ieo* and *-leo* :

Cieo, ¹⁵ ciere, [civi,] cītus,	stir up.
---	----------

¹ *Sessum*, Cic. *Sessūrus*, Hor. Art. Poet. *Sēdeatur*, imper. Gell.—² *Spōpondi*, Liv.; never *Spospondi*. The Compounds do not double the first syllable: *Despondeo*, *despondi*, *desponsus*, Cic.; yet *Despōpondi*, Plaut. *Spēpondi*, Valer. *Spondērat*, Tertull.—³ *Suāsus*, Plaut. *Suāsūrus*, Quintil. III. 8. *Suādendus*, Trajan.—⁴ The Perfect, though not found in the classics, is acknowledged by all the old Grammarians; and is confirmed by the Compound *Dētōtonderat* in Varr. ap. Prisc. IX. p. 868., and *Dēque tōtondūt* in Enn. ibid., though *Dētōndeo* generally makes *Dētōndi*; see Colum. VII. 4.; and so the other compounds, without doubling the syllable *to*.—⁵ *Visum*, Cic. *Visu*, Juv. *Visūrus*, Virg. Georg. II. 68. *Æn.* v. 107. *Videndus*, Terent. We use the tense *Vidēris*, *-it*, *-int*, imperatively, when we disclaim the care of any thing, and leave it entirely to others. *Viderint alii*, let others look to it; for it is no concern of mine. The passive *Videor* is often used in a neuter sense, *I seem*, *I appear*; and generally with the datives *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*: *Videor mihi*, *Vidēris tibi*, &c.—⁶ *Alsi*, Hor. Art. Poet. 413. *Alsus*, Cic. Att. IV. 8., as if from *Alsus*.—⁷ *Auctūrus*, Liv. I. 7. 'Ad fruges augendas,' Lucr. *Auxim*, *-is*, *-it*, for *augeam*, *-as*, *-at*, or *auxērim*, *-is*, *-it*, Liv. XXX. 7.—⁸ *Fulceo*, Diomed. *Fulgo*, Prisc. *Fulgū*, Lucr. *Fulgere*, Virg. *Æn.* VI. 827.—⁹ *Indultus*, Ovid. *Indultūrus*, Ulpian. *Indulgendus*, Ulpian.—¹⁰ *Luxi*, for *luxisti*, Catull. *Lūgendus*, Ovid. *Lūgetur*, imper. Catull.—¹¹ *Mulsi*, Virg. Georg. III. 400. 'Mulxi, differentie causa, quidam protulerunt, quia Mulceo quoque Mulsi facit.' Prisc. IX. p. 870. Neither *Mulxi* nor *Mulctus* occur in the classics.—¹² *Tergunt*, Cic. *Terguntur*, Varr. L. L. *Tersi*, for *teristi*, Catull. 'Tergendus mensis utilis,' Mart. The Participles in *ns* and *rus* do not occur.—¹³ *Tursērat*, Enn. ap. Prisc. IX. p. 870. *Turgo* and *Turgit* occur in the ancient Glossaries.—¹⁴ Some write *Urgueo*, contrary to the opinion of Longus, Papir., Cassiodor., Bede, Dausq.; but Pierius on Virg. *Æn.* v. 202., Barth., Heins., Cort., Drakenb. and Oudend. seem to prefer it, from its more frequent occurrence in *Mss.* *Ursi*, Cic. *Urgendus*, Quintil.—¹⁵ *Civi* properly belongs to

Compleo,¹ complère, complèvi, complētus,
 Dèleo,² délère, délèvi, délētus, delendus,
 Fleo,³ fière, fièvi, flētus, flētūrus, flendus,
 Sòleo,⁴ sòlère, sòlitus sum or sòlui,

*all
 blot out.
 weep.
 be accustomed.*

VII. Verbs in -neo -queo, -reo, -seo :

Censeo,⁵ censère, censui, census, censendus,
 *Hæreo,⁶ hærère, hæsi, —, hæsurus,
 *Maneo,⁷ mănère, mansi, —, mansum, mansurus,
 Neo,⁸ nère, nèvi, nētus,
 Seneo,⁹ sènère, sēnui, sēnectus,
 Teneo,¹⁰ tènère, tēnui, tentus, tenturus, tēnendus,
 Torqueo,¹¹ torquère, torsi, tortus, torquendus,
 Torreo,¹² torrère, torrui, tostus,

*think, judge.
 stick, hesitate.
 stay.
 spin.
 grow old.
 hold.
 whirl.
 roast.*

VIII. Verbs in -veo :

Caveo,¹³ cāvère, cāvi, cautus, cautum, cavendus,
 *Conniveo,¹⁴ connivère, connīvi, —,
 *Faveo,¹⁵ fāvère, fāvi, —, fauturus,
 *Ferveo,¹⁶ fervère, ferbui, —,

*beware of.
 wink at.
 favour.
 boil, be hot.*

Cio of the Fourth Conj., which see in List. 1. The Perfect *Cii*, mentioned by Charis. III. init. takes place only in the Compounds. *Citus*, Cels. *Concitus*, Ovid. *Excitus*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 301.

¹ Of the simple Verb we find only *Plentur*. *Complērunt*, for *complēverunt*, Cæs. B. G. 'Ad fossas, complendas,' Hirt. B. H.—² *Delendus*, Cic. pro *Leg. Manil.* c. 7.—³ *Flesse*, for *fluisse*, Plin. *Flētus*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 481. *Flēturus*, Hor. *Epod.* v. 74. *Flendus*, Ovid. *Trist.*—⁴ *Soluerat*, Sallust, in *Fragm.* *Soluerint*, Cæsar. Antipater ap. Non. *Sòlitus sum*, Cic. de *Orat.* i. 30. et passim. *Sòlene*, Plaut.—⁵ *Census*, Liv. III. 3. *Rēcensus*, Sueton. *Censitus*, Cod. Justin; hence *Rēcensitus*, Sueton. *Censendus*, Ovid.—⁶ *Hæsurus*, Ovid. ⁷ *Manati*, for *mansisti*, Lucil. ap. Gell. *Mansum*, Terent. *Mansurus*, Virg. *Æn.* III. 85. *Manenda*, Lucr.—⁸ *Nēvi*, Ovid. *Nesse*, Claud. in *Eutrop.* i. 274. *Nētus*, Alcim. *Avit*.—⁹ *Sēnui*, Sueton. *Sēnectus*, Lucr. Sall. in *Orat.*—¹⁰ *Tēnui*, Virg. *Georg.* iv. 483. et passim. *Tēnivi*, Charis. *Tētni*. Festus. *Tētnērīm*, -is, -it, Accius et Pacuv. ap. Non. II. 838. *Tētnisse*, Pacuv. *ibid.* *Tentus*, held, Ammian. *Tenturus*, Claud. de *Torp.* 19. *Tēnendus*, Ovid.—¹¹ *Tortus*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 575. So *Contorquo*, -si, -tus, whirl about; *Detorqueo*, -si, -tus, turn aside; but the Participle *Deltorsus* is used by Cato ap. Prisc. ix. p. 871., and the Supine *Torsum* is given by Prisc. *ibid.*, but without authority. *Torquendus*, Liv. xxiv. 5.—¹² *Torrui*, Ovid. *Tostus*, Cic. *Tusc.* III. 19. et passim.—¹³ *Cāvi*, Ter. Cic. et passim. *Cautus*, legally secured, Hor.; avoided, Plaut.; defended, Mart. *Cautus* is a contraction of *Cāvitus*. It is more frequently used in an active sense, *cautious*, *circumspect*. *Cautum*, Liv. *Cāvendus*, Propert. Cic. *Or.* II. 195. *Cāvērem*, for *cāvērem*, Tibull.; hence *Cāvē*, Hor. II. Sat. 3.—¹⁴ *Connīvi*, Cassius ap. Prisc. ix. 866. Plaut. 'Dum ego *connīvi* somne,' Turpil. ap. Prisc. i. c.; but this seems to come from *Connīvo*, -is, of the third Conj. *Connivère*, Calvus ap. Prisc. *ibid.* At all events *Connīvi* is more certain, and more consonant with analogy.—¹⁵ *Fāvi*, Cic. pro *Planc.* 'Huic Romæ ita *fautum* est, ut,' &c. Spartan. *Fauturus*, Cic. ¹⁶ *Ferbui*, Pallad. *Deferbui*, Cato R. R. c. 96. *Conferbui*, Cels. *Fervērit*, Cato R. R. c. 157., where some Mss. have *ferbuērūt*. 'Fervit aqua, et fervet; fervit'

Fōveo, ¹ fōvēre, fōvi, fōtus, fōvendus,	cherish.
Mōveo, ² mōvēre, mōvi, mōtus, mōturus, mōvendus,	move.
*Pāveo, ³ pāvēre, pāvi, —, pāvendus,	fear.
Vōveo, ⁴ vōvēre, vōvi, vōtus,	vow.

IX. The Perfects of the following Verbs are doubtful :

*Dirībeo, ⁵ ui, count over, distribute.	Splendeo, ⁹ ui, shine.
Frendeo, ⁶ ui, fressus or frēsus, gnash.	Strīdeo, ¹⁰ ui, hiss, creak.
*Frigeo, ⁷ frixi, be cold.	Vieo, ¹¹ viēvi, viētus, bind with twigs, hoop.
*Frondeo, ⁸ ui, bear leaves.	

Marceo, I fade, is said to have *Marcui*, which does not occur in the classics; but is confirmed by the compound *Emarcesco*, *emarcai*, fade away, Plin. xv. 29.

X. These Verbs have neither Perfects nor Perfect Participles :

*Albeo, ¹²	be white.	*Lenteo,	be slow.
*Aveo,	covet.	*Liveo,	be black and blue.
*Calveo, ¹³	be bald.	*Māceo,	be lean.
*Cāveo, ¹⁴	fawn as a dog.	*Māreo, ¹⁷	grieve.
*Clueo,	be famous, exist, be.	*Mūceo, ¹⁸	be mouldy.
*Denseo, ¹⁵	thicken.	*Nideo, ¹⁹	shine.
*Flāveo,	be yellow.	*Polleo,	be powerful.
*Fāteo,	stink.	*Rēnideo, ²⁰	glutter.
*Glābreo, ¹⁶	be bare.	*Scāteo, ²¹	overflow.
*Hēbeo,	be dull.	*Uveo, ²²	be moist.
*Hūmeo,	be moist.	*Vēgeo,	be strong.
*Lacteo,	suck milk.		

nunc, *fervet ad annum*, Lucil. ap. Quintil. *Fervat* Pompon et Accius ap. Non. *Fervēre*, Virg. Georg. i. 455.

¹ *Fōvi*, Virg. *Æn.* xii. 420. *Fōtus*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 699. *Fōvendus*, Colum. vi. 12.—² *Mōturus*, Liv. *Mōvendus*, Virg. Georg. ii. 418. *Mos-tis*, for *mōvistis*, Mart. *Mōrunt*, for *mōvērunt*, Sil.—³ *Pāvi*, Petron. *Ex-pāvi*, Hor. i. Od. 37, 23. *Pāvendus*, Plin.—⁴ *Votus*, Cic. de Nat. Deor.—⁵ *Dir-ribui* is found in dictionaries only.—⁶ *Frendui*, Bibl. Vulgat. Psalms. xxxiv. 16. *Frendi*, Lowe Gramm. p. 14. *Fressus*, Cels. *Frēsus*, Colum.—⁷ *Frizi*, Diomed.; also *Perfrigesco* makes *perfrixi*, Cels., and *Rēfrigesco*, *rēfrizi*, Cic. Att. i. 11.—⁸ *Frondui*, Prisc.—⁹ *Splendui*, Charis.—¹⁰ *Strīdui*, Prisc. *Strīdēre*, Hor. ii. Sat. 8. 78. Vid. Heins. et Burmann. ad Ovid. Met. ix. 171. ‘*rostrisque strīdentibus*,’ in some Mss.—¹¹ *Viēvi* Grammatici. *Viētus*, weak, flaccid, is used as a mere adjective. *Vietis* in Hor. Epod. xii. 7. is considered by some as an Anapest; it would be more correct to make it a Spondee by Synæresis.—¹² *Albui* Grammatici.—¹³ *Calvi* occurs only in dictionaries.—¹⁴ *Cēvi*, Valer. Prob. in Cathol. p. 1482. *Cēvo*, *cēvis*, *cēvi*, Idem ibid. p. 1484.—¹⁵ *Denseo*, *densi*, Charis. iii. p. 233. See Heinsius on Ovid. Fast. iii. 820.—¹⁶ Of this verb *Glābrentibus* only occurs, and that in Colum. ii. 9. 8. ed. Gesn., where Schneider and others read *cālentibus*.—¹⁷ *Mārei* debuit *facere*, sed in usu non est. Prisc. viii. p. 817. Some give this Verb *Māstus sum* as a Perfect, which does not differ in signification from *Māreo*, since *Māstus* is a mere adjective.—¹⁸ *Mūcui* is found in dictionaries only.—¹⁹ This Verb occurs only in Petron. ‘*Are aqua attritis nīdet*,’ &c. where others read *ridet*.—²⁰ *Rēnīdui*, Gloss. Vett.—²¹ Præteritum *Scātui* analogia defenditur, ut *Pātui*, *Lātui*, &c. Facciolat.—²² Of this Verb the Participle *Uvens* only occurs in the classics.

DEPONENTS.

Polliceor, ¹ -ēris or -ēre, -ēri, -itus,			promise.
Fāteor, ² fassus, R. D.	confess.	*Mādeor, ⁶ ———, D.	cure.
Confiteor, ³ confessus, D.	acknowledge.	Misereor, ⁷ misērītus or misertus,	pity;
*Diffiteor, ———,	deny.	Reor, ⁸ rātus,	think.
Profiteor, ⁴ professus, D.	declare.	Tueor, ⁹ tūtus, D.	see, protect.
Liceor, ⁵ līcītus,	bid a price.	Vereor, vērītus, ¹⁰ D.	fear.

¹ Pollicītus, having promised, Cass. B. G. II. 4. Pollicītus, pass. promised. Ovid. Polliceor, pass. Ulpian. Pollicēres, act. Varr. ap. Non.—² Fassus, Plaut. Fassurus, Ovid. Fālendus, Id. Trist. I. 9. 16. Fāleātur, pass. Cic. But see Ernesti.—³ Confessus, act. Plaut. passim. Confessus, pass. confessed, manifest, Cic. Quintil. et Plin. Confītētur, pass. Ulpian. Confītendus, Cic.—⁴ Professus, Cic. passim. Professus, pass. Ovid. Prōfītendus, Cic. de Orat. Prōfītēntia, for prōfītēātur, Vet. Tab. æn. ap. Murator, p. 582.—⁵ Licītus, Cic. Verr. v. 11.—⁶ Mādeor has no Perfect; but in its stead Mēdicātus from Mēdicor, I heal, is used. See Diomed, I. p. 376. Mēdendus, Stat. Theb. Mēdendo, pass. Virg. Æn. XII. 46. 'Ut huic vitio mēdeātur,' that this fault may be obviated, Vitruv.—⁷ 'Ipse sui misēret,' Lucr. Misērītus, Phædr. Misertus, Justin. Misērērier, for misērēri, Lucr. Misērētur, pass. Cic.—⁸ Of this Verb the following forms only are found in the classics: Reor, Hor. II. Ep. I. 69. Rēris, Virg. Æn. VI. 96. Rērin, for rēris ne! Plaut. Rēre, Virg. Æn. VII. 437. Rētur, Stat. Theb. Rēmur, Cic. Off. Rēmīni, Arnob. Rentur, Plaut. Rēbar, Cic. Rēbāre, Virg. Æn. X. 608. Rēbātur, Cic. Rēbāmur, Plaut. Rēbantur, Cic. de Nat. Deor. Rēbor, Senec. Rēbītur, Plaut. Reor, Id. Reāre. Reāris, Auson. Reantur, Plaut. Rātus, Cic. See Quintil. VIII. 3. and Cic. Or. III. 38. Wherefore this and many other Verbs might, with as much propriety, be classed among the Defectives, as Aio, Inquo, &c.—⁹ Tuor, Stat. Theb. Hence Tūtus, protected, Sall. Jug. c. 56. Liv. X. 37. Tūtus, Quintil. v. 13. Tuentur, pass. Varr. Tuendus, Cic. Virg. Æn. IX. 175.—¹⁰ Vērītus, Cic. Vērendus, Ovid. Met. Vērēri, pass.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

<i>Dēcet</i> , ¹ <i>dēcēre</i> , <i>dēcuit</i> ,	<i>it becomes.</i>
<i>Lībet</i> , ² <i>libēre</i> , <i>libuit or libitum est</i> ,	<i>it pleases.</i>
<i>Lūbet</i> , ³ <i>lūbēre</i> , <i>lūbuit or lūbitum est</i> ,	<i>it pleases.</i>
<i>Līcet</i> , ⁴ <i>licēre</i> , <i>licuit or licitum est</i> ,	<i>it is lawful.</i>
<i>Līquet</i> , ⁵ <i>liquēre</i> , <i>liquit or licuit</i> ,	<i>it is clear.</i>
<i>Misēret</i> , ⁶ <i>misērēre</i> , <i>misērui or misērītum est</i> ,	<i>it pities.</i>
<i>Oportet</i> , ⁷ <i>oportēre</i> , <i>oportuit</i> ,	<i>it behoves.</i>
<i>Piget</i> , ⁸ <i>pīgēre</i> , <i>pīguit or pīgītum est</i> ,	<i>it grieves.</i>
<i>Pœnitet</i> , ⁹ <i>pœnitēre</i> , <i>pœnituit</i> ,	<i>it repents.</i>
<i>Pūdet</i> , ¹⁰ <i>pūdēre</i> , <i>pūdui or pūditum est</i> ,	<i>it shames.</i>
<i>Tædet</i> , ¹¹ <i>tædēre</i> , <i>tædui or tæsum est</i> ,	<i>it wearies.</i>

¹ *Dēceant*, Cic. *Dēcūrint*, Sall. Jug. c. 53. 'Si non *dēdēcui*,' If I have not dishonoured, Stat. Theb.—² *Sciendum*, quod hæc omnia inveniuntur perfectorum declinationem, habentia in usu veterum, teste, Capro, *Pigeo*, *Pūdeo*, *Tædes*, *Pœntes*, *Liqueo*, *Liceo*, *Libeo*, *Oporteo*, quomodo, *Plāceo*, *Contingo*, &c. Priscian. xi. p. 528. *Libitum ērit*, Plaut. Asin. i. 1. 9.—³ *Lūbet* is the ancient form for *Lībet*, especially in the comic writers. *Lūbet*, Plaut. *Lūbuit*, Pseud. *Lūbēre*, Cic. Att. ⁴ *Liceat*, for *licuērit*, Plaut. *Licitum, ērit*, Cic. *Licitum esset*, Id. Att. ii. 1.—⁵ *Liquēret*, Cic. Nat. Deor. i. 42. *Lūcuērit*, Ulp. Dig. For *licuit* some write *liquuit*. *Licitum*, which some give to this Verb, belongs to *Līcet*.—⁶ *Misēre*, Enn. ap. Non. *Misērērent*, Enn. ap. Prisc. 'Ipse sui *miseret*,' Lucr. *Misērui*, Apul. Met. *Misērītum est*, Terent.—⁷ *Oportēbant*, Terent. *Oportent*, Id. Andr. *Oportuērint*, Cæcil. ap. Prisc. *Oportēto*, for *oporteat*, Vet. Leg.—⁸ *Piguet*, Petron. *Pīgītum*, Sil. *Pigens*, Apul. Met. *Pigendus*, Propert.—⁹ *Pœnitēbunt*, Pacuv. ap. Non. *Pœnitens*, Cic. Phil. xii. 2. *Pœnitūrus* Quintil. *Pœnitendus*, Colum. Liv. i. 35. Some write *Pœnitet* with *Æ*; and so it is in an Inscript. ap. Grut. p. 502, and in some ancient Mss. of Virgil. Gellius seems to have written it in the same manner, since he derives it, xvii. 1., not from *Pœna*, but from *Pœne*, or *Pœnūria*.—¹⁰ *Pūdeo*, Plaut. *Pūdent*, Terent. *Pūdebunt*, Lucan. *Pūditum est*, Plaut. *Pūditum esset*, Cic.—¹¹ *Tædui*, Sidon. Ep. *Tæsum est*, Plaut. Mostel. So *Pertædet*, *pertædui*, *pertæsum est*, Cic. Virg. Æn. v. 714. *Pertæduissent*, Gell. i. 2. Some of the ancients used to write *Pertisum*, (as from *Cædo*, *Concisum*), which is disapproved of by Cic. Orat. 159.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in *-o*, and change *-o* into *-i* or *-si* in the Perfect; into *-ere* short in the Infinitive; and into *-itus*, *-tus*, or *-sus* in the Perfect Participle Passive; as,

Tribuo, *tribuere*, *tribui*, *tributus*, R. D.

give, divide.

II. Verbs in *-co*, *-cto*, and *-go* generally take *-si*; but the letters *cs* and *gs* unite to form *x*; as, *Dico*, I say, (*dic**si*) *dixi*; *Rēgo*, I rule, (*reg**si*,) *rex**i*.

III. *G* before *-tus* becomes *c*; as, *Lēgo*, I read, (*lēg**itus*, *leg**tus*) *lectus*; *Jungo*, I join, (*jung**itus*, *jung**tus*) *junctus*, &c.

IV. *B* before *-si* and *-tus* becomes *p*; as, *Nūbo*, I veil, *nupsi*, *nuptus*; *Scrībo*, I write, *scripsi*, *scriptus*.

V. *R* before *-si* and *-tus* becomes *s*; as, *ūro*, I burn, *ussi*, *ustus*; *Gēro*, I carry, *gessi*, *gestus*.

VI. *D* and *t* are generally dropped before *-si*, *-sus*, *-tus*; as, *Claudo*, I shut, *clausi*, *clausus*, *Dīvīdo*, I divide, *divīsi*, *divīsus*; *Lædo*, I hurt, *læsi*, *læsus*; *Lūdo*, I play, *lūsi*, *lūsus*; *Plaudo*, I applaud, *plausi*, *plausus*; *Rādo*, I shave, *rāsi*, *rāsus*; *Trūdo*, I thrust, *trūsi*, *trūsus*; *Vādo*, I go, *vāsi*; *Flecto*, I bend, (*flec**si*,) *flexi*, (*flec**sus*,) *flexus*, &c.

VII. *D* and *t* sometime become *s* before *s*; as, *Cēdo*, I yield, *cessi*, *cessus*; *Mitto*, I send, *mīsi*, *missus*; *Quātio*, I shake, *quassi*, *quassus*, &c.

VIII. *G* is sometimes dropped before *-si* and

-sus; as, *Spargo*, I scatter, *sparsi*, *sparsus*; *Vergo*, I incline, *versi*, *versus*; *Mergo*, I dip, *mersti*, *mersus*, &c. So *Parco*, I spare, drops *c* in *parsūrus*; and *Pasco*, I feed, drops *c* in *pastus*.

IX. Verbs in *-sco* change *-sco* into *-vi* for the Perfect, and drop *sc* before *-tus*; as, *Cresco*, I grow, *crēvi*, *crētus*; *Nosco*, I learn to know, *nōvi*, *nōtus*.

X. *m* and *n* are frequently dropped both in the Perfect and Perfect Participle Passive; as, *Temno*, I despise, *temsi*; *Frango*, I break, *frēgi*, *fractus*; *Rumpo*, I burst, *rūpi*, *ruptus*, &c. *M* becomes *s* before *-si* in *Prēmo*, I press, *pressi*, *pressus*; *n* becomes *s* in *Pōno*, I place, *pōsi*, *pōsitus*.

XI. Verbs changing *-o* into *-i* for the Perfect, and into *-itus*, *-tus*, or *-sus*, for the Perfect Participle Passive:

*Abnuo, ¹ abnuēre, abnui, —, abnuītūrus, abnuendus,	<i>refuse.</i>
Accendo, ² accendēre, accendi, accensus,	<i>set on fire.</i>
Acuo, ³ ācuēre, ācui, ācūtus, ācuendus,	<i>sharpen.</i>
Appendo, appendēre, appendi, appensus,	<i>weigh.</i>
Arguo, ⁴ arguēre, argui, argūtus, argūtum, arguītūrus,	
arguendus,	<i>show, prove, accuse.</i>
*Bātno, ⁵ bātuēre, bātui, —, bātuendus,	<i>beat.</i>
Bībo ⁶ bibēre, bibi, bībitus, bībendus,	<i>drink.</i>
*Congruo, ⁷ congruēre, congrui, —,	<i>come together, agree.</i>
Dēfendo, ⁸ dēfendēre, dēfendi, dēfensus, R. D.	<i>ward off.</i>
*Dēgo, ⁹ dēgēre, dēgi, —, dēgendus,	<i>live, dwell.</i>

¹ Neither the Participle *Abnūtus* nor the Supine *Abnūtum* are found except in dictionaries. *Abnuītūrus*, Sallust. Fragm. Hist. 1. *Abnuendus*, Senec.—² 'Accendendis offensionibus callidi,' Tacit. Ann.—³ *Acūtus*, Prisc.; but it is used as a mere Adjective. *Acuendus*, Cic. Phil. II.—⁴ *Argui*, Liv. *Argūtus*, Plaut. *Argūtum*, Supine, Festus. *Arguītūrus*, Sallust. *Arguendus*, Tacit.—⁵ *Bātui*, Cic. Fam. *Bātuendus*, Næv. ap. Fulgent. 21. Some incorrectly write *Battuo*; hence *Battūtum*, Vett. Gloss.—⁶ *Bībitus*, Plin. Valer. *Bībendus*, Ovid.—⁷ *Congrui*, Val. Flac.—⁸ *Dēfensūrus*, Claud. *Dēfendendus*, Cæs. B. G. & Terent. *Dēfensum*, Nepos. *Dēfensu*, Sallust.—⁹ The Perfect of *Dēgo* occurs only in Auson. Epist. xvii. ad Symmach., where some copies have *Dēgūtus*. *Dēgendus*, Cic. de Amic.

Edo, ¹ edēre, ēdi, ēsus, ēsum, ēsūrus, ēdendus,	eat.
Emo, ² emēre, ēmi, emtus, emtūrus, emendus,	buy.
Excūdo, ³ excūdēre, excūdi, excūsus,	shake out, stamp.
Exuo, ⁴ exuēre, exui, exūtus, exuendus,	put off, strip.
Fervo. See <i>Ferveo</i> , Second Conj. List VIII.	
Findo, ⁵ findēre, fidi, fissus, findendus,	cleave.
Fundo, ⁶ fundēre, fūdi, fūsus, fūsūrus, fundendus,	pour.
Ico, ⁷ icēre, ici, ictus, ictūrus,	strike.
Imbuo, ⁸ imbuēre, imbuī, imbūtus, imbuendus,	imbrue.
Induo, ⁹ induēre, induī, indūtus,	put on.
Inuo, ¹⁰ insuēre, insui, insūtus,	sow in, join to.
*Lambo, ¹¹ lambēre, lambi, —,	lick.
Lēgo, ¹² lēgēre, lēgi, lectus, lectūrus, legendus,	gather, read.
*Linguo, ¹³ linguēre, liqui, —, linguendus,	leave.
*Luo, ¹⁴ luēre, lui, —, luītūrus, luendus,	pay, atone.
Mando, ¹⁵ mandēre, mandi, mansus, mandendus,	chew.
Mētuō, ¹⁶ mētuēre, mētui, mētūtus, mētuendus,	fear.
Mīnuo, ¹⁷ mīnuēre, mīnui, mīnūtus, mīnuendus,	lessen.
Pīnso, ¹⁸ pīnsēre, pīnsi or pīnsui, pīnsitus, pīnsus or pīstus,	bake.

¹ See Irregular verbs.—² *Emtus*, not *Emptus*; because P. is never inserted in the Present *Emo*. So *Suntus*, *Comtus*, *Demtus*, &c. See the old Grammarians, Terentius Scaurus and Marius Victorinus. *Emtūrus*, Justin. *Emendus* Cic. *Emissim*, for *emērim*, Plaut.—³ The Perfect of the simple *Cūdo* does not occur. It makes *Cūsi* according to some; according to others, *Cūdi*. See Priscian. x. p. 869. In Colum. xi. we have *Excūdūt*, and viii. 5. *Percūdērūt*. The Participle *Cūsus* does not occur in the classics; yet we find *Excūsus*, hatched, Varr. R. R. *Incūsus*, Virg. Georg. i. 275. 'Pullis excudendis triginta diebus opus est.' Colum. ⁴ 'Ezuendam ad fidem, hostes emerari,' Tacit. Ann. xii. 14.—⁵ *Findo* quoque *fidi* facit; licet quidam *fisi* putaverunt.' Prisc. x. p. 890. *Fidērūt*, Cels. *Findendus*, Cels.—⁶ *Fūsūrus*, Lucan. *Fundendus*, Curt.—⁷ Of this Verb the following forms only are found: *Ice*re, infin. Plaut. *Ice*t, Lucr. *Ice*tis, Cael. ap. Prisc. x. p. 886. *Ice*tur, Plin. *Ice*mur, Lucr. *Ice*i, perf. Plaut. *Ice*ras, Cic. in Pison. *Ice*ris, Turpil. ap. Non. *Ice*sse, Cic. pro Balb. *Ice*tus, passim. *Ice*turi, Senec. ⁸ *Imbui*, perf. Catull. *Imbuendus*, Curt.—⁹ *Indui*, Cic. Tusc. *Indūtus*, Virg. *Æn.* ii. 275. It has no other Participle.—¹⁰ The Perfect of the simple *Suo* occurs only in Prisc.; but we have *Inuēre*, Plin. *Inuissēs*, Cic. and *Inuērat*, Liv. *Sūtus*, Ovid. *Suēndus*, Cels. *Assūtus* does not occur. *Consūtus*, Plaut. *Circumsuo* is not found in the classics; yet *Circumsūtus*, Plin. *Dissūtus*, Ovid. *Dissuendus*, Cic. Off. i. 33.—¹¹ *Lambērat*, Lucil. ap. Prisc. *Lambui*, Bibl. Vulgat. Priscian ibid. gives the supine *Lambitum*, but without authority. *Lambo*, -is, -ivi, Cassiodor. de Orthogr. p. 2309. Putsch.—¹² *Lectūrus*, Ovid. Met. *Lēgendus*, Ovid. ¹³ 'Lictus, particip. quidam putant legi ap. Capitolin. in M. Anton. Philosc. c. 7., sed locus ille incertus valde est, et mendo corruptus.' Facciolat. *Relictus*, Virg. Georg. iv. 127. et passim. *Linguendus*, Ovid. Met.—¹⁴ *Lui*, Justin. 'In præteritis U dicimus longum. *luīt*, *plūit*; in præsentī breve, *luīt*, *plūit*.' So writes Varro, *Luītūrus*, Claud. *Luendus*, Tacit. *Eluendus*, Cic. Off. *Ablūtūrus*, August. *Abluendus*, Plin. *Diluendus*, Liv.—¹⁵ 'Quidam præteritum *mandui*, alii *mandidi* esse voluerunt; sed neutrum obtinuit.' Priscian. *Mandisset*, Liv. *Mansus*, Quintil. *Mandendus*, Cels.—¹⁶ *Mētui*, Terent. *Mētūtus*, Lucr. *Mētuendus*, Senec.—¹⁷ *Mīnuendus*, Cic. Off.—¹⁸ *Pīnsērūt*, Varr. R. R. *Pīnsui*, Pompon. ap. Diomed. *Pīnsitus*, Colum. *Pīnsus*, Vitruv. *Pīstus*, Plin.

*Pluo, ¹ pluere, plui or pluvi, —,	rain.
Præhendo, ² præhendere, præhendi, præhensus, n. d. or	
Prendo, prendere, prendi, prensus, n. d.	take, seize.
*Psallo, psallere, psalli, —,	play on an instrument.
Rumpo, ³ rumpere, rūpi, ruptus, rupturus, d.	break.
Ruo, ⁴ ruere, rui, rūtus, rūturus,	rush, fall.
*Scābo, ⁵ scābere, scābi, —,	scratch.
*Scando, ⁶ scandere, scandi, —, scandendus,	climb.
*Sido, ⁷ sidere, sidi, —,	sink down.
Solvo, ⁸ solvere, solvi, solūtus, solūturus, d.	loose.
*Spuo, ⁹ spuere, spui, —,	spit.
Stātuo, ¹⁰ stātuerē, stātui, stātutus, stātuentus,	place.
*Sternuo, ¹¹ sternuere, sternui, —,	sneeze.
Strido, ¹² stridere, stridi, —,	hiss, creak.
Tribuo, ¹³ tribuere, tribui, tribūtus, tribūturus. d.	give.
Verro, ¹⁴ verrere, verri, versus, verrendus,	brush.
Verto, ¹⁵ vertere, verti, versus, versurus, vertendus,	turn.
Vinco, ¹⁶ vincere, vici, victus, victurus, d.	conquer.
Volvo, ¹⁷ volvere, volvi, vōlūtus, volvendus,	roll.

XII. Verbs changing -o into -si for the Perfect, and into -tus, or -sus, for the Perfect Participle Passive :

¹ *Pluisse*, Cic. Div. *Pluērat*, Plaut. The Perfect *Pluit* according to Varro L. L. viii. 60, had the first syllable long. See *Luo*.—² *Prændērat*, Stat. Theb. *Præhensurus*, Ovid. 10. *Præhendendus*, Ovid. Some write *Præhendo*, others *Prendo*. See Dausqu. in Orthogr.—³ *Rupturus*, Plaut. *Rumpendus*, Justin.—⁴ This Verb is mostly used in the imperfect Tenses. *Ruērant*, Claud. *Rūtus* is found only in the Neut. pl. *Rūta cæsa*, Cic. Varro de L. L. viii. 60, makes the U long in the simple *Rutus*. *Rūturus*, Ovid. *Diruendus*, Vell. *Obruendus*, Colum.—⁵ *Scābērat*, Lucil. None of the Participles are found.—⁶ The Perfect *Scandi* cannot be found : Ainsworth cites *scandisse*, Liv. xxi. 62; but the reading is *escendisse*, *ascendisse*, Cic. *Consēdērat*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 646. *Descendērit*, Liv. xxxvi. 7. Yet *Descenditū*, Gell. *Descendērat*, ibid. *Ascendi*, Cic. pro Dom. c. 28. *Scandendus*, Propert. *Ascensurus*, Tibull. *Ascendendus*, Cæs. B. C.—⁷ *Sidērat*, Stat. Sylv. *Sidērit*, Colum. *Consēdērant*, Tacit. Ann. The Perfect *Sādi* given in grammars and dictionaries does not come from *Sido*, but from *Sideo*.—⁸ *Solvi*, Cic. Off. iii. 12. et passim. *Soluisse*, Tibull. *Solūturus*, Cic. Off. *Solvendus*, Plin. Epist.—⁹ *Spuisse*, Solin. This Verb has no Participle. *Respuērit*, Cic. Nat. Deor. *Respuendus*, Aul. Gell.—¹⁰ *Stātutus*, Varr. *Stātuentus*, Colum. *Constātuentus*, Aul. Gell.—¹¹ *Sternuērit*, Plin.—¹² *Stridērat*. See *Strideo*, Second Conj. List ix.—¹³ *Tribūturus*, Ovid. Met. *Tribuendus*, Lucr.—¹⁴ *Verrērint*, Hieronym. in Helvid. in fin. The Perfect *Verri* occurs nowhere else, except in Charis. iii. p. 218; and in Prisc. x. p. 900. But Servius on Virg. *Æn.* i. 63. gives *Versi*. *Versus*, Propert. *Vorsus*, Plaut. *Verrendus*, Ovid.—¹⁵ *Verti*, Cic. Propert. The Perfect *Versi*, found in Ovid. ex Pont. i. 9. 52., does not come from *Verto*, as some suppose, but from *Vergo*. See Heinsius and Burman on the passage. *Versus*, Hor. iii. Od. 29. 2. et passim. *Versurus*, Liv. *Vertendus*, Colum.—¹⁶ *Victurus*, Liv. *Vincendus*, Martial.—¹⁷ *Volvi*, Virg. vi. 748. *Vōlūtus*, Virg. Georg. iii. 521. *Volvendus*, Cic.

Carpo , ¹ <i>carpĕre</i> , <i>carpsi</i> , <i>carptus</i> , <i>carpendus</i> ,	<i>pluck.</i>
Cĕdo , ² <i>cĕdĕre</i> , <i>cessi</i> , <i>cessus</i> , <i>cessŭrus</i> ,	<i>yield.</i>
Claudo , ³ <i>claudĕre</i> , <i>clausi</i> , <i>clausus</i> , <i>clausŭrus</i> , <i>claudendus</i> ,	<i>shut.</i>
*Clĕpo , ⁴ <i>clĕpĕre</i> , <i>clepsi</i> , —,	<i>steal.</i>
Cōmo , ⁵ <i>cōmĕre</i> , <i>comsi</i> , <i>comtus</i> ,	<i>deck.</i>
Dĕmo , ⁶ <i>dĕmĕre</i> , <i>dĕmsi</i> , <i>dĕmtus</i> , <i>dĕmtŭrus</i> , <i>dĕmendus</i> ,	<i>take away.</i>
Divido , ⁷ <i>dividĕre</i> , <i>divisi</i> , <i>divisus</i> , <i>divisŭrus</i> , <i>D.</i>	<i>divide.</i>
Gĕro , ⁸ <i>gĕrĕre</i> , <i>gessi</i> , <i>gestus</i> , <i>gestŭrus</i> , <i>gĕrendus</i> ,	<i>carry.</i>
Lædo , ⁹ <i>lædĕre</i> , <i>læsi</i> , <i>læsus</i> , <i>læsum</i> , <i>læsŭrus</i> ,	<i>hurt.</i>
Lŭdo , <i>lŭdĕre</i> , <i>lŭsi</i> , <i>lŭsus</i> , <i>lŭsŭrus</i> ,	<i>play.</i>
Mergo , ¹⁰ <i>mergĕre</i> , <i>mersi</i> , <i>mersus</i> , <i>mersŭrus</i> ,	<i>dip.</i>
Nŭbo , ¹¹ <i>nŭbĕre</i> , <i>nupsi</i> , <i>nuptus</i> , <i>nuptum</i> , <i>R.</i>	<i>veil, marry.</i>
Plaudo , ¹² <i>plaudĕre</i> , <i>plausi</i> , <i>plausus</i> , <i>plaudendus</i> ,	<i>applaud by clapping the hands.</i>
Prĕmo , ¹³ <i>prĕmĕre</i> , <i>pressi</i> , <i>pressus</i> , <i>pressŭrus</i> , <i>D.</i>	<i>press.</i>
Prōmo , ¹⁴ <i>prōmĕre</i> , <i>promsi</i> , <i>promptus</i> , <i>promptŭrus</i> , <i>prōmendus</i> ,	<i>bring out.</i>
Rādo , ¹⁵ <i>rādĕre</i> , <i>rāsi</i> , <i>rāsus</i> , <i>rādendus</i> ,	<i>shave.</i>
*Rĕpo , ¹⁶ <i>rĕpĕre</i> , <i>repsi</i> , —,	<i>creep.</i>
Rōdo , ¹⁷ <i>rōdĕre</i> , <i>rōsi</i> , <i>rōsus</i> , <i>rōsŭrus</i> ,	<i>gnaw.</i>
Scalpo , ¹⁸ <i>scalpĕre</i> , <i>scalpsi</i> , <i>scalptus</i> ,	<i>scratch.</i>
Scribo , ¹⁹ <i>scribĕre</i> , <i>scripsi</i> , <i>scriptus</i> , <i>scriptŭrus</i> , <i>D.</i>	<i>write.</i>

¹ *Carptus*, Ovid. *Carpendus*, Cic. de Orat. III. 49.—² *Cessi*, Ovid. *Cesse*, for *cessisse*, Lucr. *Cessus*, Liv. *Cessŭrus*, Tacit. Ann.—³ *Clausi*, Hor. II. Od. 4. et passim. *Clŭsi*, Nummus Neronis, ap. Patin. *Claudo*, -is for *claudus sum*, I am lame, has no Perfect. *Clausus*, Virg. Æn. VI. 734. et passim. *Clŭsus*, Senec. *Clausŭrus*, Ovid. *Claudendus*, Ovid. *Clŭdendus*, Scribon. Larg. c. 42. The Compounds drop A of the root.—⁴ *Clepsi*, Manil. *Clepsi*, for *clepsit*, Liv. XIII. 10. The Perfect *Clĕpi* is found in Cic. de Leg. II. 9. This Verb has no Participles. *Cleptus* is found only in dictionaries.—⁵ *Comsi*, Tibull. See note on *Emo*, foregoing list.—⁶ *Dĕmsi* Liv. *Dĕmtŭrus*, Justin. *Dĕmendus*, Cels.—⁷ *Divisse*, for *divisisse*, Hor. II. Sat. 3. 169. *Divisŭrus*, Liv. *Dividendus*, *Dividendus*, Aul. Gell.—⁸ *Gestŭrus*, Lucan. *Gĕrendus*, Cic. de Senec.—⁹ *Læsum*, Cic. Fam. *Læsŭrus*, Lucan. The compounds make *lŭdi*; *Allido*, I dash against; *Collido*, I dash together; *Elido*, I dash out; *Illido*, I dash against.—¹⁰ *Lŭsus*, played, Ovid. Trist. deluded. Id. Fast. *Lŭsŭrus*, Id. Trist.—¹¹ *Mersŭrus*, Ovid.—¹² *Nupsi*, Cic. passim. *Nŭbui*, Valer. Prob. in Cathol. *Nupta sum*, Cic. 'Novus nuptus,' Plaut. *Nuptui*, Cæs. B. G. We should always say, 'Nuptum dare collŭcare,' never *Nuptui*, as is found in some grammars and dictionaries. See Drakenborch on Liv. I. 49. *Nuptŭrus*, Ovid.—¹³ *Plausus*, Virg. Georg. III. 185. *Plaudendus*, Ovid. *Plōdĕre*, Varr. ap. Non. whence the compounds, *Complōdo*, I clap together; *Explōdo*, I hiss or clap off, explode, &c.—¹⁴ *Pressŭrus*, Ovid. *Prĕmendus*, Cic. Tusc. The Compounds make *prĕmo*, *pressi*, *pressus*; *Comprĕmo*, I press together; *Exprĕmo*, I squeeze out, &c. *Dĕpressum* eunt, Plaut.—¹⁵ *Prōmŭrus*, Apul. Florid. *Prōmendus*, Cic. *Dĕpromptum*, Plaut. See note on *Emo*, foregoing list.—¹⁶ *Rāsi*, Plin. XXVIII. 4. *Rādendus*, Tacit. Ann.—¹⁷ *Rōsisse*, Plin. *Circumrōsĕrit*, Plin. *Corrōsĕrint*, Cic. de Divin. II. 27. *Perrōsĕrint*, Cels. *Rōsus*, Stat. *Rōsŭrus*, Phædr. The Perfects of *Abrōdo*, *Arrōdo*, *Erōdo*, *Obrōdo*, *Prærōdo*, are not found in the classics.—¹⁸ *Scalpsi*, Plin. *Scalptus*, Cic. Acad. *Circumscalptus*, Plin. *Inscalptus*, Plin. though *Circumscalpo*, *Inscalpo*, do not occur. *Exscalpo*, Varr. L. L. Quintil. *Exscalptus*, Cato, R. R.—¹⁹ *Scripsi*, for *scripsisti*, Plaut. *Scripsĕre*, for *scripsisse*, Auson. *Scriptŭrus*, Tacit. Ann. *Decemvir legibus scribendis*, Sueton. *Describendus*, Aul. Gell.

Sculpo, ¹ sculpĕre, sculpsi, sculptus, sculpendus,	cure.
*Serpō, ² serpĕre, serpsi, —,	creep.
Spargo, ³ spargĕre, sparsi, sparsus, sparsurus, D.	spread.
Sūmo, ⁴ sūmĕre, sumai, sumtus, sumturus, D.	take.
*Temno, ⁵ temnĕre, temsi, —, temnendus,	despise.
Tergo. See <i>Tergeo</i> , Second Conj. List V.	
Trūdo, ⁶ trūdĕre, trūsi, trūsus,	thrust.
Uro, ⁷ ūrĕre, uasi, ustus, ūrendus,	burn.
*Vado, ⁸ vādĕre, vāsi, —,	go.
Vergo, ⁹ vergĕre, versi, versus,	incline.

XIII. Verbs making *-xi* in the Perfect, and *-tus*, or *-ctus* in the Perfect Participle Passive :

*Ango, ¹⁰ angĕre, angī, —,	strangle, vex.
Cingo, ¹¹ cingĕre, cīxi, cinctus, cingendus,	surround.
Cōquo, ¹² cōquĕre, coxi, coctus, coctum, cōquendus,	cook.
Dico, ¹³ dicĕre, dixi, dictus, dictu, dicturus, dicendus,	say.
Diligo, ¹⁴ diligĕre, dilexi, dilectus,	love dearly.
Dūco, ¹⁵ dūcĕre, duxi, ductus, ductum, ducturus, D.	lead.

¹ Diomed. i. p. 574., does not admit of *Sculpo*; but derives the Compounds, *Exsculpo*, *Insculpo*, from *Scalpo*. It is rejected also by Gesner in his *Thesaur.* L. L. *Sculpsit*, Ovid. where some read *Scalpsit*, others *Sculpit* or *Scalpit*. *Sculpendus*, Vitruv. '*Sculpendis gemmis laus*,' Apul. where others read *Scalpendis*. Cf. Plin. xxxvi. 4.—² *Serpsi* is found only in Festus, lib. xvii., where he says, '*Serpsit*, antiqui pro *serpsit* usi sunt.'—³ *Sparsi*, Virg. Georg. iv. 28. *Sparsurus*, Ovid. *Spargendus*, Vell. The Compounds make *spergo*, *spersi*, *spersus*.—⁴ *Sumse*, for *sumsisse*, Næv. ap. Gell. *Sumturus*, Ovid. *Sūmendus*, Sueton. The difference between *Sūmo* and *Accipio* is this: *Sūmtus*, *irsi*; *accipit*, *as* *alio*.—⁵ *Temnere*, Lucil. where Scaliger reads *Temnere*, supposing the Perfect to be *Temni*. *Temsi* does not occur elsewhere in the classics, except in the Compound *Contemsi*, Cic. pro Mur. Tibull. *Temtus* occurs only in the Compound *Contemtus*, Cic. *Temnendus*, Ovid.—⁶ *Trūsi*, Claud. *Trusus*, Tacit.—⁷ *Uasi*, Plin. *Urendus*, Hor.—⁸ *Vāsi*, Tertull. It occurs nowhere else, except in the Compounds *Evāsi*, Cic. Catil. *Invāsi*, Cic. Phil. *Pervāsi*, Tacit. Ann. *Evāsirus*, Liv. xxv. 11. *Invāsirus*, x. 35. *Invādendus*, xxiii. 44. *Pervāsirus*, xxxvii. 25.—⁹ *Versi*, Ovid. See note on *Verto*, foregoing List. *Verxi*, Diomed. but without example. The Compounds, *Dēvergo*, I incline downwards, *Evergo*, I send forth, *Invergo*, I invert, pour out, have neither Perfect nor Perfect Participle. Yet we read in Festus, '*Deversus*, dicebant, deorsum versus.' *Versus*, Liv.—¹⁰ *Anxi*, Gell. The Participles *Anxus* and *Anctus*, and Supine *Anzum*, given by Priac. do not exist elsewhere, though Scaliger would read, '*Anctos*, excruciatos,' in Festus, where others read *Antios*.—¹¹ *Cīxi*, Virg. *Æn.* v. 13. *Cingendus*, Ovid.—¹² *Coxi*, Cic. Tusc. *Coctum*, Plaut. *Cōquendus*, Id.—¹³ *Dixi*, *dixis*, for *dixisti*, *dixēris*, Gell. *Dixē*, for *dixisse*, Varr. ap. Non. *Dice*, for *dic*, Plaut. *Dictu*, Plin. *Dicturus*, Liv. *Dicendus*, Vell.—¹⁴ An irregular compound of *Lēgo*. *Dilexi*, Cic. Fam. So *Colligo*, I collect, *collexi*. *Collectu*, Plin.—¹⁵ *Duce*, for *duc*, Plaut. *Duxi*, for *duxisti*, Varr. ap. Non. *Ductum*, Cæs. B. C. *Ducturus*, Liv. i. 44. *Ducendus*, Cels.

<i>Emungo</i> , ¹ <i>ēmungere</i> , <i>ēmunxi</i> , <i>ēmunctus</i> ,	<i>wipe.</i>
<i>Extinguo</i> , ² <i>extinguere</i> , <i>extinxi</i> , <i>extinctus</i> , R. D.	<i>quench.</i>
<i>Figo</i> , ³ <i>figere</i> , <i>fixi</i> , <i>fixus</i> , <i>fixūrus</i> ,	<i>fix, fasten.</i>
<i>Fingo</i> , ⁴ <i>ingere</i> , <i>finxi</i> , <i>fictus</i> , <i>figendus</i> ,	<i>feign, form.</i>
<i>Flecto</i> , ⁵ <i>flectere</i> , <i>flexi</i> , <i>flexus</i> , <i>flectendus</i> ,	<i>bend.</i>
* <i>Fligo</i> , ⁶ <i>ligere</i> , <i>fixi</i> , —,	<i>dash.</i>
<i>Fluo</i> , ⁷ <i>fluere</i> , <i>fluxi</i> , <i>fluxus</i> , <i>fluxūrus</i> ,	<i>flow.</i>
<i>Intelligo</i> , ⁸ <i>intelligere</i> , <i>intellexi</i> , <i>intellectus</i> , <i>intellectu</i> ,	
<i>intellectūrus</i> , <i>intelligendus</i> ,	<i>understand.</i>
<i>Jungo</i> , ⁹ <i>jungere</i> , <i>junxi</i> , <i>junctus</i> , <i>junctūrus</i> , D.	<i>join.</i>
* <i>Mingo</i> , ¹⁰ <i>ingere</i> , <i>minxi</i> , —, <i>mictum</i> ,	<i>make water.</i>
<i>Mungo</i> . See <i>Emungo</i> .	
<i>Necto</i> , ¹¹ <i>nectere</i> , <i>nexui</i> or <i>nexi</i> , <i>nexus</i> , <i>nectendus</i> ,	<i>knit.</i>
<i>Negligo</i> , ¹² <i>negligere</i> , <i>neglexi</i> , <i>neglectus</i> , R. D.	<i>neglect.</i>
<i>Pango</i> , ¹³ <i>pangere</i> , <i>panxi</i> or <i>pēgi</i> , <i>pactus</i> , <i>pancturus</i> ,	
<i>pangendus</i> ,	<i>drive in, fix, fasten.</i>
<i>Pecto</i> , ¹⁴ <i>pexui</i> or <i>pexi</i> , <i>pectere</i> , <i>pexus</i> or <i>pectūrus</i> , <i>pectendus</i> ,	<i>comb, dress, beat.</i>
* <i>Pergo</i> , ¹⁵ <i>pergere</i> , <i>perrexi</i> , —, <i>perfectūrus</i> ,	<i>go forward.</i>

¹ *Emunxi*, for *ēmunxisti*, Plaut. The simple *Mungo* occurs only in the Vett. Gloss., and in the various reading of a Fragment of Cato, where the text has *ēmungentur*.—² Some derive *Extinguo* from *Tinguo*, 'quia ignis aqua tinctus opprimitur.' *Extinxi*, for *extinxerit*, Plaut. *Extinctūrus*, Liv. *Extinguendus*, Cic. de Orat. i. 14.—³ *Fixus*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 495. et passim. *Fictus*, for *fixus*, Varr. R. R. So 'confictus sagittis,' Scaur. ap. Diomed. *Fixūrus*, Ovid. *Affixit*, for *affixisset*, Sil.—⁴ *Fingendus*, Auson.—⁵ *Flectendus*, Plin.—⁶ *Fluxi*, Lucr. Some cite *Flictus* from Virgil, but no such Participle occurs in that poet. *Afflictus*, Cæs. B. G. et passim. *Conflictus* does not occur.—⁷ *Fluxus*, Apul. Met. *Fluxūrus*, Lucan. *Fluctūrus*, Prisc.—⁸ An irregular compound of *Lēgo*. *Intellexi*, Cic. *Intellexi*, for *intellexisti*, Cic. *Intellexes*, for *intellexisses*, Plaut. *Intelligi*, for *intellexi*, Ulpian. ap. Voss. *Intellectus*, Ovid. *Intellectu*, Nepos. *Intellectūrus*, Ovid. *Intelligendus*, Cic.—⁹ *Junctūrus*, Liv. xxix. 5. *Jungendus*, Cels. *Ad junctum iri*, Cic. Fam.—¹⁰ The imperfect tense of *Mingo* and its Compounds are scarcely ever found. *Minxi*, Hor. Art. Poët. 471. *Meio*, which is of more frequent use, has no Perfect, though Valer. Prob. Cathol. p. 1483, gives it *Meri*, and Diomed. i. p. 366, *Meiāvi*. The latter also gives *Mio*, -is, -it, but cites no example to prove either. *Mictum*, Hor. i. Sat. 8. 38.—¹¹ *Nexui*, Sallust. Fraga. *Nexi*, Propert. *Annexui*, Plin. *Connexui*, Claud. Rufin. *Innexui*, Virg. *Æn.* v. 426. *Nexus*, Cic. Tusc. *Annexus*, Id. de Iuv. *Connexus*, Id. Nat. Deor. et passim. *Innexus*, Virg. *Æn.* v. 510. *Nectendus*, Hor.—¹² An irregular Compound of *Lēgo*. *Neglexi*, Cic. Fam. et passim. *Neglegi*, for *neglexi*, Æmil. Macer ap. Diomed. *Neglectūrus*, Cæs. B. G. *Negligendus*, Id. B. G.—¹³ This Verb should be carefully distinguished from *Pāgo*, List xvi. *Panxi*, Colum. *Pēgerit*, Cic. de Leg. (ubi Steph. et al. *Pēpigerit*); *Pēgi*, -Pacuv. ap. Fest. *Pactus*, fixed, fastened, Pallad. *Panctūrus*, Id. *Pangendus*, Colum.—¹⁴ *Pexisti*, Mecænas. ap. Prisc. *Pexui*, plerique ap. Prisc. *Pectūvi*, Asper. l. c. et ap. Prisc. The Perfects of *Dīpecto*, I trim, I curry, and *Rēpecto*, I comb again, do not exist. *Pexus*, Hor. i. Epist. i. 95. et passim. *Pectūrus*, Colum. *Pectendus*, Ovid. *Impepus*, Hor. though *Impecto* does not occur in the classics.—¹⁵ *Porgo*, Lucr. i. 930. *Perrexi*, Cic. pro Planc. *Perfectūrus*, Cic. Tusc.

<i>Cōlo</i> , ¹ <i>cōlĕre</i> , <i>cōlui</i> , <i>cultus</i> , <i>cōlendus</i> ,	<i>till, adorn, worship.</i>
* <i>Compesco</i> , ² <i>compescĕre</i> , <i>compescui</i> , ———, <i>compescendus</i> , <i>restrain.</i>	
<i>Consĕro</i> , ³ <i>consĕrĕre</i> , <i>consĕrui</i> , <i>consertus</i> , <i>consertŭrus</i> , <i>join together.</i>	
<i>Consŭlo</i> , ⁴ <i>consŭlĕre</i> , <i>consŭlui</i> , <i>consultus</i> , <i>consultum</i> ,	
<i>consultŭrus</i> , <i>consŭlendus</i> ,	<i>consult.</i>
<i>Depsō</i> , ⁵ <i>depsĕre</i> , <i>depsui</i> , <i>depatus</i> ,	<i>knead, tan leather.</i>
<i>Dĕsĕro</i> , ⁶ <i>desĕrĕre</i> , <i>dĕsĕrui</i> , <i>desertus</i> , <i>dĕsertŭrus</i> ,	<i>forsake.</i>
* <i>Desterto</i> , ⁷ <i>destertĕre</i> , <i>destertui</i> , ———,	<i>cease snoring.</i>
* <i>Dissĕro</i> , ⁸ <i>dissĕrĕre</i> , <i>dissĕrui</i> , ———,	<i>discourse, debate.</i>
<i>Excello</i> , ⁹ <i>excellĕre</i> , <i>excellui</i> , <i>excelsus</i> ,	<i>be raised high, excel.</i>
<i>Exsĕro</i> , ¹⁰ <i>exsĕrĕre</i> , <i>exsĕrui</i> , <i>exsertus</i> ,	<i>put forth.</i>
* <i>Frĕmo</i> , ¹¹ <i>frĕmĕre</i> , <i>frĕmui</i> , ———, <i>frĕmendus</i> ,	<i>roar.</i>
* <i>Gĕmo</i> , ¹² <i>gĕmĕre</i> , <i>gĕmui</i> , ———, <i>gĕmendus</i> ,	<i>groan.</i>
<i>Gĕno</i> , ¹³ <i>gĕnui</i> , or	
<i>Gigno</i> , <i>gignĕre</i> , <i>gĕnui</i> , <i>gĕnŭtus</i> , <i>gĕnŭtŭrus</i> ,	<i>beget, produce.</i>
<i>Insĕro</i> , ¹⁴ <i>insĕrĕre</i> , <i>insĕrui</i> , <i>insertus</i> , <i>insĕrendus</i> ,	<i>ingraft.</i>
* <i>Mālo</i> . See Irregular verbs.	
<i>Mōlo</i> , ¹⁵ <i>mōlĕre</i> , <i>mōlui</i> , <i>mōlŭtus</i> ,	<i>grind.</i>
* <i>Nōlo</i> . See Irregular Verba.	
<i>Occŭlo</i> , ¹⁶ <i>occŭlĕre</i> , <i>occŭlui</i> , <i>occultus</i> ,	<i>hide.</i>

sim. *Assĕrui*, Ovid. *Assertus*, Sueton. *Assertŭrus*, Sueton. Claud. *Assĕrendus*, Sueton. Jul. So the other Compounds, *Consĕro*, I join together; *Dĕsĕro*, I forsake; *Dissĕro*, I discuss; *Edissĕro*, I declare, discourse of; *Exsĕro*, I put forth; *Insĕro*, I ingraft.

¹ *Colui*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 19. et passim. *Cōlendus*, Curt.—² *Compescui*, Ovid. The Perfect Participle does not occur in the classics: yet we have ‘*saxo compescita*,’ in an ancient inscription. The Supine *Compescitum* is found only in Priscian. x. p. 887. *Compescendus*, Plin. Epist.—³ See *Assĕro*. *Consertŭrus*, Liv. vi. 12.—⁴ *Consŭlui*, Cæs. B. C. *Consultus*, Stat. Achill. *Consultum*, Plaut. Bacch. *Consultŭrus*, Tacit. Ann. *Consŭlendus*, Aul. Gell. *Consŭlŭtŭrus*, ap. Fortunat. Carm., is a barbarism not to be imitated.—⁵ *Depsui*, Cato R. R. *Depsi*, Varr. ap. Non. *Condepsui*, Pompon. ap. Proh. *Perdepsui*, Catull. *Depatus*, Cato R. R. It has no other Participle.—⁶ *Dĕsĕrui*, Quintil. *Dĕsertus*, Cic. Fam. *Dĕsertŭrus*, Terent. Andr. ‘*Dĕsĕrenda* Italix conjuratio,’ Liv. xxiv. 43.—⁷ *Destertui*, Pers. This Verb has no Participles. *Stertui*, the Perfect of the simple *Sterto*, does not occur in the classics; but it is given by Prisc. x. p. 903. *Steriens*, Cic. de Div.—⁸ See *Assĕro*. *Dissertus*, disputed, debated, occurs only in St. Jerome on Isaias. xi. 4.—⁹ *Excelleas*, of the second Conj. is found in Cic. Fragm. ap. Prisc. The simple *Cello* does not exist; though many grammars and dictionaries give it the Perfects *Cĕcŭli* and *Cellui*. *Cillĕrentur*, i. e. *mōvērentur*, is read in Servius on Virg. Georg. ii. 389., and *Cillĕntur*, for *mōvēntur*, in Isid. *Excellui*, Gell. *Anticello*, I excel; *Præcello*, I surpass, *Rĕcello*, I move or draw back, have no Perfects. See *Percello*, List xviii. *Celvus* and *Excelsus* are used adjectively.—¹⁰ See *Assĕro*. *Exsertus*, Plin. passim.—¹¹ *Frĕmui*, Martial. *Frĕmendus*, Stat. Theb.—¹² *Gĕmui*, Propert. *Gĕmendus*, Ovid.—¹³ *Gĕnui*, Varr. ap. Prisc. *Gĕnendi*, Id. R. R. *Gĕnui*, Cic. Nat. Deor. *Gĕnŭtus*, Virg. *Æn.* ii. 642. et passim. *Gĕnŭtŭrus*, Curt. ‘*Gignenda* herbæ aptior,’ Curt.—¹⁴ See *Assĕro*. *Insĕrendus*, Cels. See *Sĕro*, List xviii.—¹⁵ *Mōlui*, Petron. Sat. *Mōlŭtus*, Cæs. B. G.—¹⁶ A Compound of *Cōlo*. *Occŭlui*, Ovid. Met. *Occultus*, Virg. Georg. iii. 397. et passim. The other Participles do not occur.

Pōno, ¹ pōnēre, pōsui, pōsitus, pōsitūrus, D.	<i>put, place.</i>
Sterto. See <i>Dēsterto</i> .	
*Strēpo, ² strēpere, strēpui, —, —,	<i>make a noise, murmur.</i>
Texo, ³ texere, texui, textus, texendus,	<i>weave.</i>
*Trēmo, ⁴ trēmēre, trēmui, —, trēmendus,	<i>tremble.</i>
*Volo. See <i>Irregular Verba</i> .	
Vomo, ⁵ vōmēre, vōmui, vōmītus, vōmītūrus, D.	<i>cast up.</i>

XV. The following make *-ivi*:

Arcesso, ⁶ arcessēre, arcessivi, arcessitus, arcessitūrus, arcessendus,	<i>call, send for.</i>
*Cāpesso, ⁷ cāpessēre, cāpessivi or capessii, —, —, cāpessitūrus, cāpessendus,	<i>take in hand.</i>
*Incesso, ⁸ incessēre, incessivi or incesi, —, —,	<i>attack.</i>
Lācesso, ⁹ lācessēre, lācessivi, lācessii or lācessi, lācessitus, lācessitūrus, lācessendus,	<i>provoke.</i>
Pēto, ¹⁰ pētēre pētivi or pēti, pētītus, pētītum, pētītu, pētītūrus, pētendus,	<i>ask.</i>
Quæro, ¹¹ quærēre, quæsiui or quæsi, quæsitus, quæsitum, quæsitūrus, quærendus,	<i>seek.</i>
Fācesso, ¹² I execute, go away, makes <i>fācessi, fācessitūrus</i> .	

XVI. Verbs doubling the first syllable in the Perfect:

¹ *Pōsui*, Cæs. B. C. *Pōsivi*, Plaut. Pseud. So *Appōsivi*, Plaut. Mil. III. 3. 30. *Compōsivi*, Inscript. *Dēpōsivi*, Plaut. Curc. IV. 3. 4. Catull. XXXIV. 8. *Dēpōsisse*, for *dēpōsivisse*, Catal. Virg. de Sab. *Expōsivi*, Plaut. *Impōsivi*, Id. *Impōsisse*, for *impōsivisse*, Most. *Oppōsivi*, Curt. *Rēpōsivi*, Asin. *Suppōsivi*, Truc. Terent. Eun. *Pōsitus*, Virg. Ecl. II. 54. et passim. *Postus*, Lucr. *Pōsitūrus*, Ovid. Met. *Pōnendus*, Cic. Orat. *Præpōsitum iri*, Terent. Eun.—² *Strēpui*, Virg. Æn. VIII. 2. The Participle in *ns* only is found in the classics.—³ *Texui*, Martial. Some dictionaries add *Texi*, which, however, does not occur in the classics, except as the Perfect of *Tēgo*. *Textus*, Ovid. Fast. *Texendus*, Virg. Georg. II. 371.—⁴ *Trēmui*, Virg. Æn. VIII. 296. *Trēmendus*, Stat. Theb.—⁵ *Vōmui*, Pers. Sat. *Vōmītus*, Cæs. Aurel. *Vōmītūrus*, Plin. *Vōmendus*, Lucr.—⁶ *Arcesso*, not *arcesso*, Voss. in Etym. *Arcessivi*, Cic. Quint. *Arcessitus*, Propert. *Arcessitūrus*, Plaut. Cas. *Arcessendus*, Cels.—⁷ *Cāpessivi*, Tacit. Ann. *Cāpessii*, Ann. XII. 30. *Cāpessitūrus*, Apul. Met. Tacit. Ann. *Cāpessendus*, Plin. Paneg.—⁸ *Incessivi*, Plin. *Incesserint*, Tacit. Hist. II. 23., which is also the Perfect of *Incido*, I go.—⁹ *Lācessivi*, Cic. Fam. *Lācessii*, Liv. XVIII. 12. *Lācessisti*, Cic. Phil. *Lācessitus*, Virg. Æn. VII. 526. *Lācessitūrus*, Liv. *Lācessendus*, Cæs. B. G.—¹⁰ *Pētivi*, Cic. *Pētīi*, Cæs. B. G. *Pētisse*, Cic. *Pētītus*, Ovid. Met. *Pētītum*, Catull. *Pētītu*, Claudian. *Rēpētītum*, Liv. III. *Pētītūrus*, Tibull. *Pētendus*, Propert.—¹¹ *Quæsiui*, Cic. *Quæsi*, Cic. pro Quint. c. 3. *Quæsitus*, Virg. Æn. VII. 758. et passim. *Quæsitum*, Terent. *Quæsitūrus*, Cic. *Quærendus*, Lucr. *Exquæsitum*, Plaut. *Inquæsitum*, Liv. XL. 20.—¹² *Fācesseris*, Cic. *Fācessisset*, Tacit. Hist. Neither the Perfect *Fācessivi*, nor the Participle *Fācessitus*, given in some grammars and dictionaries, occurs in the classics. *Fācessitūrus*, Cic. Verr. IV. 64.

*Cādo, ¹ cādēre, cēcīdi, —, cāsūrus,	fall.
Cædo, ² cædēre, cēcīdi, cæsus, cæsūrus, D.	cut, beat.
*Cāno, ³ cānēre, cēcīni, —, cānendus,	sing.
*Curro, ⁴ currēre, cūcurri, —, cursūrus,	run.
*Disco, ⁵ discēre, didīci, —, discitūrus, discendus,	learn.
Fallo, ⁶ fallēre, fēfelli, falsus, fallendus,	deceive.
Pāgo, ⁷ pāgēre, pēpīgi, pactus,	bargain, lay a wager.
*Parco, ⁸ parcēre, pēperci or parsi, —, parsūrus,	spare.
*Pēdo, pēdēre, pēpēdi, Hor. 1. Sat. 8. 46. —,	weigh.
Pello, ⁹ pellēre, pēpūli, pulsus, pellendus,	drive.
Pendo, ¹⁰ pendēre, pēpendi, pensus, pensūrus,	weigh.
*Posco, ¹¹ poscēre, pōposci, —, poscendus,	demand.
Pungo, ¹² pungēre, pūpūgi, punctus,	prick, sting.
Tango, ¹³ tangēre, tētīgi, tactus, tactūrus, tangendus,	touch.
Tendo, ¹⁴ tendēre, tētēdi, tensus or tentus,	stretch.
Tundo, ¹⁵ tundēre, tūtūdi, tunsus or tusus,	beat, pound.

Also *Pārio*, I bring forth, List XXV.

¹ *Cēcīdi*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 158. et passim. *Cāsūrus*, Cic. *Cādīt*, for *cādat*, Plaut.—² *Cæcīdi*, Juvenal. *Cæsus*, Liv. *Cæsūrus*, Justin. *Cædendus*, Cic. *Occisum iri*, Cic. Att. ³ *Cēcīni*, Virg. Georg. i. 378. et passim. *Cānērūt*, for *cēcīnērūt*, Festus in 'Rumentum.' *Cānui*, for *cēcīni*, Serv. ad Virg. Georg. ii. 384.: hence *Cānūrus*, Vulgat. Apocalyp. viii. 13. *Cante*, for *cānte*, Carmen Saliare ap. Varr. L. L. vi. 3. *Cānendus*, Stat. Theb.—⁴ *Cūcurri*, Cic. *Cūcurri*, Gell. *Curristi*, Tertull. *Cursūrus*, Ovid.—⁵ *Didīci*, Cic. de Senect. *Discitūrus*, Apul. Fragm. ap. Prisc. *Discendus*, Plaut.—⁶ *Fēfelli*, Cic. *Falsus sum*, I am deceived, Plaut. *Fēfellitus sum*, Petron. *Fallendus*, Catull.—⁷ *Pāgunt*, Quintil. *Pēpīgi*, Quintil. *Pēgi*, Prisc. but he does not prove it by any authority. *Pazim*, for *pēpīgērīm*, I will lay a wager, Plaut. *Pactus*, Cic. off. i. 10. See *Pango*, List XIII. and *Paciscor*, List XXIX.—⁸ *Pēperci*, Cic. *Parsi*, Terent. *Parcui*, for *parsi*, Næv. ap. Non. *Parso*, for *peppercero*, Plaut. *Parcūm est*, in some edd. of Plin. xxxiii. 4., where Har- duin reads *parci*. *Parsūrus*, Liv.—⁹ *Pēpūli*, Liv. *Pulsi*, for *pēpūli*, Ammian. but this is not to be imitated. *Pulsus*, Cic. de Orat. *Pellendus*, Justin.—¹⁰ *Pēpendi*, Justin. *Pendissent*, Liv. xlv. 26. So in all the Mss. and in all edd. except Sigonius and Drakenborch., who read from conjecture, *pēpendissent*. See Voas. Gram. v. 26. *Pensus*, Ovid. Met. *Pensūrus*, Liv.—¹¹ *Pōposci*, Cic. *Pēposci*, Valer. Antias ap. Gell. vii. 9. *Dēpōposci*, Cic. *Expōposci*, Liv. *Rēpōposci* seems not to exist in the classics. See Mordeo, Second Conj. List iv. *Poscendus*, Sil. *Poscītus*, given by Priscian and other grammarians, does not exist.—¹² *Pūpūgi*, Cic. *Pēpūgi*, Atta ap. Gell. *Punxi*, Diomed. i. p. 369., but without authority. *Pūpūgēral*, with the second syllable long, occurs in Prudent. *Punctus*, Cic. Of the Compound *Rēpungo*, I vex again, *Rēpungēre* only is found, Cic. Fam. *Compungo*, I puncture, makes *Compunxi*, Senec. *Compunctus*, Cic. Off. *Dispungo*, I mark off, reckon. *Dispunxi*, Vell. i. 13. *Dispunctus*, Tertull.—¹³ *Tāgo*, for *tango*, Pacuv. ap. Fest. *Tētīgi*, Cic. *Taxis*, for *tētīgēris*, Varr. ap. Non. *Tactūrus*, Cic. *Tungendus*, Hor.—¹⁴ *Tētēdi*, Virg. *Æn.* v. 508. *Tēndisti*, Propert. in the Mss. and early edd., but two Vatican Mss., and the edd. since Scaliger have *nexisti*. *Carbāsa tendērant*, Senec. *Tensus*, Lucan. *Tentus*, Lucr. ¹⁵ *Tūtūdi*, Varr. de L. L. *Tunsi*, Diomed. *Tūsērunt*, Næv. ap. Merulam in Collect. Fragm. Ennii p. 42. *Tunsus*, Virg. Georg. iv. 302. *Tusus*, Vitruv. The Compounds of *Tango*, *Tendo*, and *Tundo*, drop the reduplication of the Perfect. The Compounds of *Tundo* make *tūdi*, *tūsus*; yet *Dētunsus*, Apul. Met. *Obtunsus*, Virg. Georg. i. 252. *Rētunsus*, Plaut.

XVII. The Compounds of *do* make *-didi*, *-ditus*:

Abdo , ¹ <i>abdĕre</i> , <i>abdĭdi</i> , <i>abdĭtus</i> , <i>abdendus</i> ,	<i>hide.</i>
Addo , ² <i>addĕre</i> , <i>addĭdi</i> , <i>addĭtus</i> , <i>additŭrus</i> , <i>d.</i>	<i>add.</i>
Condo , ³ <i>condĕre</i> , <i>condĭdi</i> , <i>condĭtus</i> , <i>condendus</i> ,	<i>hide, lay up, build.</i>
Crĕdo , ⁴ <i>crĕdĕre</i> , <i>crĕdĭdi</i> , <i>crĕdĭtus</i> , <i>crĕditŭrus</i> , <i>d.</i>	<i>believe.</i>
Dĕdo , ⁵ <i>dĕdĕre</i> , <i>dĕdĭdi</i> , <i>dĕdĭtus</i> , <i>dĕditŭrus</i> , <i>d.</i>	<i>surrender.</i>
Dĭdo , ⁶ <i>didĕre</i> , <i>didĭdi</i> , <i>didĭtus</i> ,	<i>give out, divide.</i>
Edo , ⁷ <i>ĕdĕre</i> , <i>ĕdĭdi</i> , <i>ĕdĭtus</i> , <i>ĕditŭrus</i> , <i>ĕdendus</i> ,	<i>publish.</i>
Indo , ⁸ <i>indĕre</i> , <i>indĭdi</i> , <i>indĭtus</i> , <i>indendus</i> ,	<i>put in.</i>
Obdo , ⁹ <i>obdĕre</i> , <i>obdĭdi</i> , <i>obdĭtus</i> ,	<i>oppose.</i>
Perdo , ⁹ <i>perdĕre</i> , <i>perdĭdi</i> , <i>perdĭtus</i> , <i>perditum</i> , <i>perditŭrus</i> , <i>perdendus</i> ,	<i>destroy.</i>
Prōdo , ¹⁰ <i>prōdĕre</i> , <i>prōdĭdi</i> , <i>prōdĭtus</i> , <i>prōditŭrus</i> , <i>prōdendus</i> ,	<i>betray.</i>
Reddo , ¹¹ <i>reddĕre</i> , <i>reddĭdi</i> , <i>reddĭtus</i> , <i>redditŭrus</i> ,	<i>restore.</i>
Subdo , <i>subdĕre</i> , <i>subdĭdi</i> , <i>subdĭtus</i> ,	<i>put under.</i>
Trādo , ¹² <i>trādĕre</i> , <i>trādĭdi</i> , <i>trādĭtus</i> , <i>trāditŭrus</i> , <i>d.</i>	<i>deliver.</i>
Vendo , ¹³ <i>vendĕre</i> , <i>vendĭdi</i> , <i>vendĭtus</i> , <i>venditŭrus</i> , <i>d.</i>	<i>sell.</i>

XVIII. Verbs that cannot be classed with any of the foregoing :

*Conquĭnisco , ¹⁴ <i>conquĭniscere</i> , <i>conquexi</i> , —,	<i>stoop, sit, squat.</i>
Fĕro , ¹⁵ <i>ferre</i> , [<i>tŭli</i> ,] [<i>lātus</i> , <i>lātŭrus</i> ,] <i>fĕrendus</i> ,	<i>bear, suffer.</i>
Confido , ¹⁶ <i>confidĕre</i> , <i>confissus sum</i> or <i>confidi</i> ,	<i>rely on.</i>
Mĕto , ¹⁷ <i>mĕtĕre</i> , <i>messui</i> , <i>messus</i> , <i>mĕtendus</i> ,	<i>mow, reap.</i>

¹ *Abdendus*, Liv.—² *Additŭrus*, Tacit. Ann. *Addendus*, Ovid.—³ *Condendus*, Liv.—⁴ *Crĕditŭrus*, Gell. *Crĕdendus*, Cic. pro Cœl.—⁵ *Dĕditŭrus*, Cæs. B. G. *Dĕdendus*, Cic.—⁶ The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, do not occur.—⁷ *Ēditŭrus*, Sueton. *Edendus*, Cic. Fam.—⁸ *Indendus*, Cels.—⁹ *Perdŭis*, *perduit*, *perduint*, for *perdas*, at, ant, Plaut. *Perduunt*, for *perdunt*, Plaut. *Perditum*, Sallust. Catil. 52. *Perditŭrus*, Cic. de Orat. *Perdendus*, Ovid.—¹⁰ *Prōduit*, in *Lege Censorina* ap. Fest. *Prōditŭrus*, Terent. *Prōdendus*, Cic.—¹¹ *Reddĭbo*, Plaut. *Reddĭtu iri*, Paul. Dig. *Reddĭtŭrus*, Tacit. 'Ad vota Herculi reddenda,' Justin.—¹² *Trāditu iri*, Paul. Dig. *Trāditŭrus*, Liv. *Trādendus*, Cic. de Orat.—¹³ *Venditŭrus*, Plaut. *Vendendus*, Cic.—¹⁴ *Conquexi*, Pompon. ap. Prisc.—¹⁵ *Tŭli* comes from the obsolete *Tŭlō*, or *Tōlō*, whence *Tōlĕro*, -as, -avi. See Diomed. Hence *Tĕtŭli*, Plaut. *Tĕtŭlissem*, Terent. Andr. *Tĕtŭlĕro*, Plaut. *Tĕtŭlisſe*, Rud. See note on *Tollo*. *Ferre* is a contraction of *Fĕrĕre*. *Lātus*, seems to be formed from *Tŭlātus*. See Voss. *Lātŭrus*, Hor. *Fĕrendus*, Cic.—¹⁶ *Confissus sum*, Cæs. *Confiderunt*, Liv. *Fissus* sum, The Perfect of the simple *Fido*, given by Prisc. viii. p. 818 Charis. and Diomed. does not occur. *Fidĕbo*, Næv. ap. Non.—¹⁷ *Messui*, Cato, ap. Prisc. *Dēmessus*, Cæs. *Hemina* ap. Prisc. *Messum fĕci*, for *messui*, Charis. Another Perfect, *Messui* is quoted by Prisc., but he condemns it. *Messus*, Virg. Æn. iv. 513. *Mĕtendus*, Cic.

Mitto, ¹ mittere, misi, missus, missurus, mittendus,	send.
Percello, ² percellere, percūli or percūlai, percussus,	strike, shock.
*Rūdo, ³ rūdere, rūdivi, —,	bray like an ass.
Scindo, ⁴ scindere, scīdi, sciissus, scindendus,	cut.
Sēro, ⁵ sērere, sēvi, sātus, sāturus, sērendus,	sow.
*Sino, ⁶ sinere, sīvi, —, sīturus,	suffer.
*Tollo, ⁷ tollere, tolli, —, tollendus,	raise, lift up.
Sustollo, ⁸ sustollere, sustūli, sublātus, sublāturus,	raise, take away.
Vello, ⁹ vellere, velli or vulsi, vulsus, vellendus,	pull, pinch.

XIX. Verbs forming the Perfect by transposition or elision :

¹ *Misi*, Ovid. Met. III. 38. et passim. *Misti*, for *mīsi*, Catull. *Missus*, Virg. Æn. III. 595. et passim. *Missurus*, Hor. Art. Poët. 476. *Mittendus*, Justin.—² *Percūli*, Val. Flac. Terent. Cic. pro Mil. *Percūlai*, Ammian. *Percūlai* in some edd. of Horace, l. Od. 7. 11., and Terent. Andr. i. 1. 98.; but the true reading in the two last passages is *percussit*. *Percūli*, passively for *percussus* fuit, Flor. *Percussus*, Catull. passim, which is also often confounded with *Percussus*. See Bentl. on Hor. Epod. xi. 2. Burm. on Ovid. Met. iv. 138.—³ *Persius* Sat. III. 9. makes the first syllable in *Rūdo* long. *Rūdivi*, as if from *Rudio*, Apul. Met. *Rūdi* occurs only in grammars and dictionaries.—⁴ *Scīdi*, Stat. III. Sylv. *Sciādi*, Afran. ap. Prisc. *Scēscīdi*, Gell. *Sciissus*, Liv. passim. *Scindendus*, Liv. *Ab-scissurus*, Quintil. *Discindendus*, Cic.—⁵ *Sēvi*, Cic. Vorr. *Sātus*, Tibull. *Sāturus*, Plin. *Sērendus*, Tibull. *Sērundus*, Varr. R. R. *Consēro*, in the sense of sowing, planting, makes *ēvi*, *itus*; in the sense of joining, putting together, it makes *erui*, *ertus*; as in Quintil. Decl. ix. 3. Ovid. Heroid. Epist. II. 58, &c. Yet 'arborem consēruisset,' Liv. x. 24., where some read *sēruisset*, others *consēvīisset*. *Conserturus*, Liv. vi. 12. *Asserturus*, Sueton. *Consērendus*, Arnob. So, *Insēro*, I sow, plant, *ēvi*, *itus*; *Insēro*, I ingraft, innoculate, insert, *ēruī*, *ertus*. Yet these are sometimes used one for the other. *Insūturus*, Colum. See *Sēro*, List XVIII.—⁶ *Sīvi*, Cic. *Sīturus*, Cic. Plaut. *Sii*, for *sīvi*, Varr. ap. Diomed. Terent. *Sīrit*, Liv. *Scīstis*, Cic. *Sissem*, Liv. III. 18. *Sini*, for *sīvi*, in some edd. of Plaut and Terent. Andr. i. 2. 17. But this may have arisen from the similarity of *n* and *v* in the ancient *Mss.*—⁷ *Tollisse*, Ulpian. Dig. *Tollit*, Pers. Sat. iv. 2., which is undoubtedly a Perfect, and the reading of all the *Mss.* and printed copies. See the passage, and Scaliger on Varr. R. R. i. 69. *Tūli*, Diomed. See following note. *Tollendus*, Hor. i. Sat. 10. 51.—⁸ *Sustollere*, Plaut. *Sustolle*, Plaut. Pœn. *Sustolli*, inf. Plaut. *Sustollens*, Catull. *Sustollant*, Id. *Sustollat*, Plaut. *Sustollit*, Søren. Samm. xxxviii. 716. *Sustūli*, Cic. *Sublātus*, Cæs. B. G. *Sublāturus*, Cic. Att.—⁹ *Velli*, Cic. Vorr. *Vulsi*, Lucan. *Vulsus*, Propert. *Vellendus*, Colum. So *Avello*, I tear away; *Avelli*, Curt. *Avulsi*, Lucan. *Avellendus*, Cic. Vorr. *Divello*, I tear asunder; *Divelli*, Hirt. B. A. *Divulsi*, Senec. Hippol. *Evello*, I pluck up; *Evelli*, Cic. pro Sext. c. 28. Phædr. II. 2. 10. *Evolsi*, Quintil. Decl. *Evellendus*, Cic. *Prævello*, I pluck before; *Præveli*, Tertull. adv. Gnost. c. 13. *Prævulsi*, Labr. ap. Diomed. *Rēvello*, I tear away; *Rēveli*, Cic. *Revulsi*, Ovid. Met. In the former passage Heins. and Burm. read *rēveli*, and in the latter *rēveli*; which renders *Rēvulsi* doubtful; though Pierius reads so in Virg. Æn. iv. 427. the Vatican *Mss.* *Convello*, I tear in pieces, makes *Convelli*, Cic. pro Dom. c. 21. *Convellendus*, Cels. III. 4. *Convulsurus*, Cic. 2. *Dēvello*, I pull away, *Dēveli*, Plaut. Pœn. iv. 2. 50. *Pervello*, I twitch, *Pervelli*, Cic. Tusc. II. Ascon. *Intervello*, I pluck here and there, *Intervulsi* only, Colum. v. 10.

Cerno, ¹ cernĕre, crĕvi, crĕtus, cernendus,	sift, distinguish, see, decree, &c.
Sperno, ² spernĕre, sprĕvi, sprĕtus, spernendus,	separate, spurn, despise.
Sterno, ³ sternĕre, strĕvi, strĕtus, sternendus,	srew.
Tĕro, ⁴ tĕrĕre, trivi, tritus, tĕrendus,	rub, wear.
Sisto, ⁵ sistĕre, sŭti, stĕtus,	stop, make stand.

XX. These change the vowel of the root :

Ago, ⁶ āgĕre, ĕgi, actus, actŭrus, āgendus,	do, drive.
Frango, ⁷ frangĕre, frĕgi, fractus, fractŭrus, n.	break.
Lino, ⁸ linĕre, lŭvi or lĕvi, litus,	anoint, daub.

To which add *Allicio*, *Cāpio*, *Fācio*, *Jācio*, and *Pārio*, from List XXV.

XXI. These Verbs in -sco make -vi, -tus :

¹ The Perfect *Crĕvi* is used in the signification of *I have decreed*, Cic. de Leg. III. 3. *I have resolved*, Plaut. *I have taken possession of an inheritance*, Cic. Att. VI. 1. *I have perceived*, i. e. *I have heard*, Tiliŭ ap. Prisc. In this sense it occurs nowhere else. *Cerno*, I see, has no Perfect. *Crĕtus*, separated, sifted, Pallad. *Cernendus*, Ovid.—² *Sprĕvi*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 679. *Sprĕtus*, Id. Georg. iv. 233. *Spernendus*, Colum.—³ *Strĕvi*, Virg. *Æn.* viii. 719. et passim. *Strĕrat*, Manil. *Strasset*, Varr. ap. Non. *Strĕtus*, Virg. *Ecl.* vii. 54. et passim. *Sternendus*, Liv.—⁴ *Trivi*, Hor. i. Sat. 1. 45. et passim. *Tristi*, for *trivisti*, in some edd. of Catull. See Tergeo, Second Conj. List v. *Intristi*, for *intrivisti*, Terent. *Terui*, for *trivi*, Plaut. Hence *Attĕruisse*, for *attrivisse*, Tibull. *Trĕtus*, Ovid. *Tĕrendus*, Ovid. Art. Am.—⁵ The Perfect *Sŭti* seems to be used only in the sense of *appearing in court to a summons*, or of *appearing to one's recognizance*. See Cic. pro Quint. c. 6. Corn. Nep. Att. c. 9., and particularly Aul. Gell. ii. 14. The grammarians make the Perfect *Sŭti*, when the verb is used absolutely, and *Stĕtus*, when it is used actively. But they adduce no authority. *Stĕtus*, Cic. Off. & Ovid. These Compounds make *sŭti*, but have no Perfect Participle: **Absisto*, I stand off, desist; **Assisto*, I stand by; **Consisto*, I stand fast, halt; **Dĕsisto*, I desist; **Existo*, I come forth, appear; **Insisto*, I tread upon, insist; **Intersisto*, I stop in the midst; **Obsisto*, I oppose; **Persisto*, I persevere; **Rĕsisto*, I stand still; and **Subsisto*, I stop, withstand. **Circumsisto*, has neither Perfect nor Perfect Participle.—⁶ *Ēgi*, Hor. *Actus*, Id. III. Od. 7. 5. et passim. *Actŭrus*, Liv. *Agendus*, Cass. B. G. *Azim*, for *ĕgerim*, Pacuv. Vid. Voss. Gramm.—⁷ *Frĕgi*, Ovid. Met. *Fractus*, Cic. Phil. *Fractŭrus*, Claud. *Frangendus*, Vell.—⁸ Some grammars and dictionaries give us three perfects for *Lino*: *Lŭvi*, *Lĕvi*, and *Lini*; and the Oxford annotators on Lily add a fourth, *Lini*. *Lŭvi*, Juvenal. Sat. Quintil. *Levi*, Hor. (*Obŭlĕverunt*, Gell.); and this seems to be the Perfect of the obsolete *Leo*. For *Lini* we have only the authority of Prisc., who quotes *Obŭlĕverunt* from Varr., where no such word is to be found; and of Voss. Gram. v. 29, who cites *Lini*, from Quintil. Decl. i. 15., where the Mss. and best edd. have *Lŭsisti*. *Lini* is a contraction of *linvi* and comes from *Linio* of the Fourth Conj. So *Obŭlĕvĕrit*, for *obŭlĕvĕrit*, Paul. *Lŭtus*, Plin. *Lisse*, for *luisse*, Spartian. in Adrian.

*Cresco, ¹ crescēre, crēvi, —,	grow.
Nosco, ² noscēre, nōvi, nōtus, noscītūrus, noscendus,	learn to know.
Ignosco, ³ ignoscēre, ignōvi, ignōtus, ignōtūrus, ignoscendus,	pardon.
Agnosco, ⁴ agnoscēre, agnōvi, agnītus, agnōtūrus, agnoscendus,	recognize.
Cognosco, ⁵ cognoscēre, cognōvi, cognītus, cognītu, cognītūrus, cognoscendus,	know.
Pasco, ⁶ pascēre, pāvi, pastus, pastum, pastūrus, pascendus,	feed.
Quiesco, ⁷ quiscēre, quiēvi, quiētus, quiētūrus,	rest.
Scisco, ⁸ sciscēre, scīvi, scītus, sciscendus,	ordain.
Suesco, ⁹ suescēre, [suēvi,] suētus,	be accustomed.

XXII. Inceptives in *-sco*, when their Primitives exist, have no Perfect of their own. The following, whose Primitives are obsolete, make *-ui*:

Coālesco, ¹⁰ coālescēre, coālui, coālītus,	grow together.
*Consānesco, ¹¹ consānescēre, consānui, —,	grow sound.
*Consēnesco, ¹² consēnescēre, consēnui, —,	grow old.
*Contīcesco, ¹³ contīcēscēre, contīcui, —,	be silent.
*Convālesco, ¹⁴ convālescēre, convālui, —	grow strong.

¹ *Crēvi*, Cic. *Crētus*, born, descended, comes by Syncope from *creātus*; neither does the Supine *Crētum*, nor the Participle *Crētūrus*, as coming from *Cresco*, occur in the classics. *Cresce*, for *crēvisse*, Lucr.—² *Nōvi*, Ter. *Nosti*, *nōram*, *nosse*, *nōrim*, &c. Cic. passim. *Nōmus*, for *nōvīmus*, Enn. ap. Diomed. *Nōtus*, Cic. passim. *Noscītūrus*, Liv. viii. 32. ap. Ainsworth, *Noscendus*, Liv.—³ *Ignōvi*, Cic. *Ignōtus*, Hirt. *Ignōtūrus*, Cic. *Ignoscītūrus*, Piso Frugi. *Ignoscendus*, Virg. Georg. iv. 489. *Ignosset*, for *ignōvisset*, Sil.—⁴ *Agnōvi*, Cic. *Agnōrunt*, Ovid. *Agnītus*, Tacit. Ann. *Agnōtus*, Pacuv. ap. Prisc. *Agnōtūrus*, Sallust. Hist. ii. ap. Prisc. *Agnoscendus*, Sil.—⁵ *Cognōvi*, Virg. *Æn.* ix. 245. *Cognossem*, *Cognōram*, *Cognōro*, &c. Cic. passim. *Cognītus*, Cic. Off. i. 6. et passim. *Cognītu*, Val. Max. *Cognītūrus*, Aul. Gell. *Cognoscendus*, Ovid.—⁶ *Pāvi*, Tibull. *Pastus*, Cic. c. 25. *Pastum*, Plaut. *Pastūrus*, Varr. R. R. *Pascendus*, Hor. *Pascor*, in Plin. ix. 3. Virg. Georg. iii. 314. iv. 181. *Æn.* ii. 471. &c. &c., may be considered as a Deponent, (see Serv. on Virg. *Æn.* i. 189. ii. 215.) or as a Passive, with a Greek construction. But the former seems preferable. Prisc. cites the Supine *Compescitum*. but without authority. *Compescita*, Inscript.—⁷ *Quiēvi* Virg. *Æn.* vi. 226. *Quiētus* is used as an adjective. *Quiētūrus*, Cic. de Orat.—⁸ *Scīvi*, Cic. Off. *Scītus*, decreed, Cic. de Leg. i. 15. *Sciscendus*, ibid. *Sciscor*, depon. Prisc. *Rescītum*, Terent.—⁹ *Suēvi*, dissyll. Proper; but this seems to come rather from *Sueo* of the Second Conj., which we find in Lucr. i. 54. 301. *Suērunt*, for *suēvērunt*, Cic. de Nat. Deor. *Suērunt*, dissyll. for *suēvērunt*, Sil. *Suesti*, for *suēvisti*, Cic. Fam. xv. 8. *Suētus*, Lucan. or *Suētus*, Hor. i. Sat. 8. 17.—¹⁰ *Coālui*, Sallust. Jug. *Coālītus*, Tacit. Hist. iv. 55.—¹¹ *Consānui*, Cels.—¹² *Consēnui*. Ovid.—¹³ *Contīcui*, Ovid.—¹⁴ *Convālui*, Ovid.

- **Crēbresco*,¹ *crēbrescēre*, *crēbrui* or *crēbui*, —, increase more and more.
- **Dēliquesco*,² *dēliquescēre*, *dēlicui*, —, become liquid.
- **Dēlītesco*,³ *dēlītescēre*, *dēlītui*, —, turn.
- **Dulcesco*,⁴ *dulcessēre*, *dulcui*, —, grow sweet.
- **Dūresco*,⁵ *dūrescēre*, *dūruī*, —, grow hard.
- **Elanguesco*,⁶ *ēlanguescēre*, *ēlangui*, —, become feeble.
- **Emarcesco*,⁷ *ēmarcescēre*, *ēmarcui*, —, fade away.
- **Erubescō*,⁸ *ērūbescēre*, *ērūbui*, —, blush.
- **Evānesco*,⁹ *ēvānescēre*, *ēvānui*, —, *ēvānītūrus*, disappear.
- **Evilescō*,¹⁰ *ēvilēscēre*, *ēvilui*, —, grow cheap.
- **Exāresco*,¹¹ *exārescēre*, *exārui*, —, grow dry, wither.
- **Excandescō*,¹² *excandescēre*, *excandui*, —, grow hot, be enraged.
- **Exhorresco*,¹³ *exhorrescēre*, *exhorruī*, —, shudder, dread.
- **Expallesco*,¹⁴ *expallescēre*, *expallui*, —, turn pale, dread.
- **Extimesco*,¹⁵ *extīmescēre*, *extīmui*, —, be afraid.
- **Frācesco*,¹⁶ *frācescēre*, *frācui*, —, grow mouldy.
- **Ināresco*,¹⁷ *inārescēre*, *inārui*, —, grow dry, wither.
- **Incrēbresco*,¹⁸ *incrēbrescēre*, *incrēbrui* or *incrēbui*, —, increase, grow frequent.
- **Indōlesco*,¹⁹ *indōlescēre*, *indōlui*, —, *indōlescendus*, grieve.
- **Innōtesco*,²⁰ *innōtescēre*, *innōtui*, —, become known.
- **Intūmesco*,²¹ *intūmescēre*, *intūmui*, —, begin to swell.
- **Irraucesco*,²² *irraucescēre*, *irraucui*, —, grow hoarse.
- **Māresco*,²³ *mārescēre*, *mārcui*, —, grow lean.
- **Mātūresco*,²⁴ *mātūrescēre*, *mātūrui*, —, ripen.
- **Obbrūtesco*,²⁵ *obbrūtescēre*, *obbrūtui*, —, become brutish, or senseless.
- **Obcallesco*,²⁶ *obcallescēre*, *obcallui*, —, become callous.
- **Obdūresco*,²⁷ *obdūrescēre*, *obdūrui*, —, grow hard.

¹ *Crebresco* and its Compounds make *bui* oftener than *brui*: *Crebuerat*, Apul. Met. al. *crebruerat*. 'Libri et Mss. variant, et cum iis eruditorum sententiæ.' Facciolat.—² *Delicui*, Ovid. Trist.—³ *Dēlītui*, Cæs. B. G. Though *Diliteo* does not exist now, yet we find its Participle *Dēlītens* in Plin. xxxv. 1.—⁴ *Dulcui*, Paulin. Nolan. *Dulcit* occurs in Lucr. ii. 473., where some read *Dulcis*; others *Dulcet*, as if from *Dulceo*.—⁵ *Durui*, Ovid. Met. *Dureo*, mentioned by Prisc., and by Servius on Virg. Georg. i. 91., does not exist.—⁶ *Elanguī*, Val. Flac. iv. 572.—⁷ *Emarcui*, Plin.—⁸ *Erūbui*, Ovid. Fast.—⁹ *Evānui*, Virg. Æn. ix. 658. *Evānītūrus*, Lactant.—¹⁰ *Evilui*, Sueton. Claud.—¹¹ *Exārui*, Cic. Fom.—¹² *Excandui*, Cic. Tusc.—¹³ *Exhorruī*, Ovid. Met. Yet *Exhorreat* is found in Colum. x. 154.—¹⁴ *Expallui*, Hor.—¹⁵ *Extīmui*, Terent. Hec. *Extīmentur* occurs in Tacit. Ann. xv. 71., but it is rendered doubtful by various readings.—¹⁶ *Frācui*, Cato, R. R.—¹⁷ *Inārui*, Colum.—¹⁸ Some prefer writing *Incrēbesco*. See *Crēbresco*. *Incrēbrui*, Cic. Orat. c. 20. Phil. xiv. 5.—¹⁹ *Indōlui*, Ovid. Trist. *Indōlescendus*, Sidon.—²⁰ *Innōtui*, Ovid. Am.—²¹ *Intūmui*, Ovid. Fast.—²² *Irraucūrit*, Cic. Or. i. 61., where some some read *irraustrit*.—²³ *Mārcui*, Festus in 'Curionem'.—²⁴ *Mātūrui*, Ovid.—²⁵ *Obbrūtui*. Festus in 'Obrutuit'.—²⁶ *Obcallui*, Cels.—²⁷ *Obdūrui*, Cic. Tusc.

- *Obmutesco,¹ obmutescēre, obmūtui, —, *grow dumb, become silent.*
 *Obstūpesco,² obstūpescēre, obstūpui, —, *be amazed.*
 *Obsurdesco,³ obsurdescēre, obsurdui, —, *grow deaf.*
 *Pērāresco,⁴ pērārescēre, pērārui, —, *grow dry.*
 *Percrebresco,⁵ percrebrescēre, percrebrui or percrebui, —, *be divulged, prevail.*
 *Pērhopresco,⁶ pērhorrescēre, pērhorruī, —, *shudder, dread.*
 *Pertimesco,⁷ pertimescēre, pertimui, —, pertimescendus, *fear greatly.*
 *Rēc rūdesco,⁸ rēc rūdescēre, rēc rūdui, —, *grow raw, be sore again.*
 *Rēlanguesco,⁹ rēlanguescēre, rēlangui, —, *be languid.*
 *Rēviresco,¹⁰ rēvirescēre, rēvīrui, —, *become green again.*
 *Vilesco,¹¹ vilescēre, vilui, —, *become worthless.*

XXIII. These make -ēvi:

- Adōlesco,¹² adōlescēre, adōlēvi, adultus, *grow up.*
 Exōlesco,¹³ exōlescēre, exōlēvi, exōlētus, *grow old.*
 Mansuesco,¹⁴ mansuescēre, mansuēvi, mansuētus, *grow mild, become tame; make tame.*

To which add :

- Exardesco,¹⁵ exardescēre, exarsi, exarsus, *be inflamed.*
 *Rēfrigesco,¹⁶ rēfrigescēre, rēfrixi, —, *grow cool.*
 *Rēvivisco,¹⁷ rēviviscēre, rēvixi, —, rēvictūrus, *revive, come to life.*

XXIV. The following Inceptives, though having no other verbal form, want the Perfect:

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|-------------------|
| *Ægesco, | grow sick. | *Fāisco, | gape, grow faint. |
| *Ditesco, | grow rich. | *Incurvesco, | bow down. |
| *Grandesco, | grow big. | *Intēgrasco, | be renewed. |
| *Grāvesco, | grow heavy. | *Jūvenesco, | grow young. |

¹ Obmūtui, Plin. Virg. *Æn.* iv. 279.—² Obstūpui, Cic. de Div.—³ Obsurdui, Cic. Somn. Scip.—⁴ Perrārui, Colum.—⁵ Percrebrui, Cæs. B. C. Percrebui, Cic. Verr. Tacit. Ann. xii. 6.—⁶ Pērhorruī, Ovid. Met. vi. 704.—⁷ Pertimui, Nepos in Alcib. c. 5. Yet Pertimens, Lactant. Pertimescendus, Cic. Fam. i. 9.—⁸ Rēc rūdui, Liv. x. 19.—⁹ Rēlangui, Ovid. Amor. ii. 9. 27.—¹⁰ Rēvīrui, Auct. ad Heren. iv. 34. Rēvirens occurs in Albinor. ii. 113.—¹¹ Vilui, Avien. in Arat. 318. Of this Verb the Perfect only is found. See Evilesco.—¹² See Oleo, Second Conj. List. ii. Adōlui, in the same sense, Varr. ap. Prisc. Adultus, Cic. Tusc. Exōleo, mentioned by Prisc. does not exist in the classics.—¹³ Mansuēvi, Lucan. Mansuētus, Varr. R. R.; but it is generally used as a mere Adjective.—¹⁴ Exarsi, Virg. *Æn.* viii. 219. Exarsus, Cod. Justin.—¹⁵ Rēfrixi, Cic. Rēfrigui, Veget. R. V.—¹⁶ Rēvixi, Cic. Verr. Yet Revivent, Paulin. Nolan. Revicturus, Senec. Med.

*Lāpīdesco,	petrify.	*Rancesco,	grow mouldy.
*Mītesco,	grow mild.	*Rēpuērasco,	become childish.
*Mollesco,	grow soft.	*Stērīlesco,	grow barren.
*Pinguesco,	grow fat.	*Tēnērasco, or	
*Piūnesco,	be fledged.	*Tēnēresco,	grow tender.
*Puērasco,	play the child.	*Uvesco,	grow moist.

XXV. Twelve Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in -io:

Allicio, ¹ allicēre, alexi or allicui, allectus, alliciendus,	allure.
Aspicio, ² aspicēre, aspexi, aspectus, aspiciendus,	behold.
Cāpio, ³ cāpēre, cēpi, captus, captūrus, cāpiendus,	take.
Cupio, cupēre, cupui or cupii, cupitus, cupiendus,	desire.
Fācio, ⁴ fācēre, feci, factus, factum, factu, factūrus, faciendus,	do make.
Fōdio, ⁵ fōdēre, fōdi, fossus,	dig.
*Fūgio, ⁶ fūgēre, fūgi, —, fūgītūrus, fūgiendus,	fly.
Jācio, ⁷ jācēre, jēci, jactus, jāciendus,	cast.
Pārio, ⁸ pārēre, pēpēri, partus, pārītūrus, pārīendus,	bring forth, procure, get.
Concūtio, ⁹ concūēre, concussi, concussus, concūtiendus,	shake, move violently.

¹ *Alexi*, Plaut. *Allicui*, Piso. Hist. ap. Prisc. et Hygin. Poët. Astron. Charis. III. p. 217., and Diomēd. I. p. 364., give *Alliceo*, -es; and the latter adds that *Allicio* was the ancient form. *Allectūrus* comes from *Allēgo*. *Alliciendus*, Ovid. Art. Am. *Elicio*, I draw out, makes *Elicui*, Liv. v. 15. *Elexi*, Arnob. *Illicio*, I inveigle, *Illexi*, Plaut. Sallust. Cat. c. 59. *Pellicio*, I entice, deceive, *Pellexi*, Cic. pro Cluent. Terent. *Pellīcui*, Liv. Laodam, ap. Prisc. *Pellīceo*, -es, Charis.—² *Aspexi*, Cic. passim. *Asperit*, for *aspererit*, Plaut. *Aspectus*, Tacit. Agric. c. 40. *Aspiciendus*, Ovid. *Inspecitūrus*, Virg. Æn. II. 47. *Inspiciendus*, Ovid. *Perpectus*, Festus,—³ *Cēpi*, Propert. *Captus*, Cic. Cat. III. 7. et passim. *Exceptum iri*, Cic. *Captūrus*, Sueton. Vesp. *Cāpiendus*, Terent. *Capsis*, for *cāpi si via*, Cic. Orat. 45. Quintil. I. 5. *Capso*, is, it, for *cēpero*, is, it, Plaut.—⁴ *Fēci*, Virg. Ecl. I. 6. et passim. *Factus*, Cic. Verr. VI. 18. et passim. *Factum iri*, Cic. Fam. *Factu*, Id. ibid. VII. 3. *Factūrus*, Liv. XVI. 25. *Fāciendus*, Val. Flac. *Fācē*, for *fac*, Val. Flac. *Fāciem*, for *fāciam*. Cato ap. Quintil. *Fāzo*, -is, -it. See Irreg. Verba.—⁵ *Fōdi*, Sil. *Fossus*, Plin. 'Ad fōdiendos, puteos,' Hirt. B. Alex.—⁶ *Fūgi*, Stat. Theb. Albinov. shortens the first syllable: 'Sic illi vixere, quibus fuit aurea virgo, Quæ bene præcinctos postmodo pulsa fūgit,' unless this can be accounted for by Heterosis. *Fūgītūrus*, Ovid. *Fūgiendus*, Cic. Off. 'Mors fūgitur,' Cic. de Leg.—⁷ *Jēci*, Liv. I. 12. et passim. *Jactus*, Virg. Ecl. VI. 41. et passim. *Dējectum*, Hor. *Rējectum*, Cic. *Jāciendus*, Curt. *Abjectūrus*, Cic. *Adjiciendus*, Quintil.—⁸ *Pēpēri*, Tibull. *Pārri*, for *pēpēri*, Cato, R. R. *Pārribi*, for *pārri*, Pompon. ap. Non. *Pārre*, for *pārre*, Enn. ap. Varr. L. L. *Partus*, Virg. Æn. VI. 89. *Partus* is used like the Participle of a Deponent in Colum., having brought forth. *Pārītūrus*, Cic. Orat. *Pārīndus*, Cic. Fam.—⁹ See *Quatio*, List XVIII. *Concusi*, Juv. Sat. x. 328. *Concussus*, Virg. Georg. I. 159. *Concūtiendus*, Cels. *Discussūrus*, Liv. *Discūtiendus*, Cels. *Dēcussu*, Plin.

Rāpio,¹ rāpēre, rāpui, raptus, raptūrus, rāpiendus, *snatch.*
 *Sāplo,² sāpēre, sāpivi or sāpii, —, *savour, be wise.*

XXVI. To which add four Deponents in -ior:

Grādiōr,³ grādēris or grādēre, [grādi,] gressus, *go, walk, advance.*
 Mōriōr,⁴ mōrēris or mōrēre, mōri or mōriri, mortuus,
 mōritūrus, *die.*
 Oriōr,⁵ ōrēris or ōrēre, ōriri, ortus, ōritūrus, ōriundus, *rise,*
spring up.
 Pātiōr,⁶ pātēris or pātēre, pāti, passus, passūrus, pāti-
 endus, *suffer, endure.*

XXVII. The following have neither the Perfect nor the Perfect Participle Passive:

*Ambigo,	doubt.	*Gliſco, ⁹	grow, increase.
*Clango, ⁷	sound as a trumpet.	*Gruo, ¹⁰	crank like a crane.
*Claudo,	be lame.	*Nexo, ¹¹	bind, tie.
*Cluo, ⁸	be famous.	*Sālāgo,	be busily employed.

Sallo,¹² I season with salt, makes *salsus, salsūrus*; but has no Perfect.

XXVIII. The Perfects of the following are doubtful:

Frendo,¹³ frendēre, frendi, fressus or frēsus, *gnash the teeth, break, bruise.*

¹ Rāpui, Phædr. *Raptus*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 382. et passim. *Raptūrus*, Stat. *Theb.* *Rāpiendus*, Ovid. *Direptum*, Sil. *Ereptum*, Terent. *Præreptum*, Plant.—² Sāpivi, Næv. ap. Prisc. Sāpisti, Mart. Sāpisset, Plant. Rud. iv. 1. 8., where Priscian, vii. p. 328. ed. Krehl. reads *sāpuiſſet*; but two of Krehl's Mss. of Priscian have *sāpisset*, and another *sāpivisset*. The editio princeps of Plautus in the British Museum, the Mediol. an. 1490., and the edd. of Carpenter, Lucas Olchinnensis, and Lambinus, exhibit *sāpuiſſet*; but the Burney Ms., No. 228., in the British Museum, all the Palatine Mss. and the edd. since Lambinus, have *sāpisset*. The Mss. of Bohte seem to have the same, since he does not mention a various reading. *Rēstipio*, I savour of, makes *ivi, ii, or ui: Rēstipivi*, Sueton. *Rēstipui*, Cic. *Rēstipisti*, Plaut. *Rēstipuisse*, Terent. *Constipui* and *Dēstipui*, the Perfects of *Constipio*, I am perfectly in my senses, and *Dēstipio*, I am foolish, occur only in grammars and dictionaries.—³ The infinitive does not occur except in the Compounds. *Gressus*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 633. The Compounds make *grādiōr: Prōgrādiōr*, I advance, *prōgrādēris* or *prōgrādēre*, *prōgrādi*, *prōgressus*, *prōgressūrus*, &c. ⁴ *Mōrimur*, Enn. ap. Prisc. *Mōri*, Tibull. *Mōriri*, Ovid. Met. *Mortuus*, Cic. passim. *Mōritūrus*, Tacit. Hist. iii. 10.—⁵ *Ōriri*, Lucr. Cic. Quintil. *Ortus*, Hor. *Ortūrus*, ibid. *Oriundus*, descended, Liv. i. 49. et passim.—⁶ *Passus*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 203. et passim. *Passūrus*, Ovid. *Pātiendus*, Id. Trist.—⁷ Some give this verb the Perfect *Clanxi*, others *Clangui*; but we have not any authority for either.—⁸ *Clui*, Prudent. *Cluērent*, Auson. Prof.—⁹ *Gliſco* seems to be an Inceptive. *Gliſcērētur*, pass. Sempron. ap. Non.—¹⁰ This Verb occurs in the Carmen de Philom. v. 23., and in Paul. ex Festo.—¹¹ Neither *Nexo*, *is*, nor *Nexo*, *as*, has a Perfect. See *Necto*, List xiii.—¹² *Sallērent*, Sallust. ap. Prisc. *Sallēre*, Lucil. *Sallunt*, Id. ap. Diomed. *Salsus*, salted. Colum. *Salsūrus*, Mummius ap. Prisc. See *Sallio*, Fourth Conj. List iv.—¹³ *Frendi* and *Frendui* are given in some grammars and dictionaries. See *Frendeo*, Second Conj. List. ix.

Frigo,¹ frigere, frixi, frictus or frixus,
 *Furo,² fūrere, fūrui, —,
 Lingo,³ lingere, linxi, linctus, lingendus,
 Pando,⁴ pandere, pandi, passus or pansus,
 Quatio,⁵ quātere, quassi, quassus,
 *Viso,⁶ visere, visi, —,

fry, parch.
 be mad, rage.
 lick.
 open.
 shake, agitate.
 go see, visit.

¹ Frizi, Diomed. *Frictus*, Cels. *Frixus*, Cels. Sidon.—² *Fūrui*, Serv. ad. *Æn.* i. 45. *Fūrūrunt*, Sedul. i. 196., where some read *servērunt*; *Fūrui*, Plin. xxxiii. 53. edd. Harduin. Bipont. Miller. Franz. *Fūrui* in the edd. before Harduin. *Fūrui*, Brotier.; but he does not say on what authority. *Fūro*, *fūrūis*, and all the persons of the Futures and Imperative are nowhere to be found. We meet with *Fūrtivus* and *fūrant* in Senec. Ep. 95. *Fūrio*, is, Sidon. Carm. xxii. 94.—³ *Linzi*, given in grammars and dictionaries, does not occur in the classics now extant. Yet we have *Linctus*, Plin. xxv. 15. and *Lingendus*, xxi. 9.—⁴ *Pandi*, Prisc. x. p. 891.; but he cites no authority. *Passus*, Ovid. Virg. *Æn.* i. 483. et passim. *Pansus*, Vitruv. The Compounds also want their Perfects. *Dispando*, I spread abroad, has only *Dispansus*, Plin. *Expando*, I spread out, *Expansus*, Tacit. Hist. Cæcil. ap. Non. *Oppansus*, Plin. *Oppando*, I spread over against, *Oppassus*, Tertull. Apol. *Oppansus*, Id. *Prōpando* does not occur; yet *Prōpassus*, Apul. Florid. *Prōpansus*, Id.—⁵ *Quassi* is found only in grammars and dictionaries. *Quassus*, Ovid. *Dicussus*, Plin. See *Concūtio*, List xxv.—⁶ The Perfects *Visi*, *Invisi*, *Rēvisi*, are found only in grammars and dictionaries.

XXIX. DEPONENTS.

Amplector, ¹ amplectēris or amplectēre, amplecti, am-	
lexus, amplectendus,	<i>embrace, encircle.</i>
Apiscor, ² āpiscēris or āpiscēre, āpiaci, aptus,	<i>get.</i>
Commīniscor, ³ commīniscēris or commīniscēre, com-	
mīnisci, commentus,	<i>devise, invent.</i>
Complector, ⁴ complectēris or complectēre, complecti,	
complexus,	<i>embrace, compass, comprehend.</i>
*Dēfētiscor, ⁵ dēfētiscēris or dēfētiscēre, dēfētisci, —	<i>be weary.</i>
Expergiſcor, ⁶ expergiſcēris or expergiſcēre, expergiſci,	
experrectus,	<i>awake, rise.</i>
Fruor, ⁷ fruēris or fruēre, frui, fructus or fructus, fructū-	
rus, fruendus,	<i>enjoy, reap the fruits of.</i>
Fungor, ⁸ fungēris or fungēre, fungi, functus, functūrus,	
	<i>discharge, perform a duty.</i>
*Irascor, ⁹ irascēris or irascēre, irasci, —,	<i>be angry.</i>
Lābor, ¹⁰ lābēris or lābēre, lābi, lapsus, lapsūrus,	<i>glide, slip, err, fall</i>
	<i>gently, decay.</i>
Lōquor, ¹¹ lōquēris or lōquēre, lōqui, lōcūtus, lōcūtū-	
rus, lōquendus,	<i>speak.</i>
Nanciscor, ¹² nanciscēris or nanciscēre, nancisci, nactus,	
	<i>find by chance, find, obtain.</i>

¹ *Amplecto*, *is*, Prisc. and Diomed. *Amplexetur, amplecti*, pass. Prisc. VIII. p. 791. *Amplector, aris*, Prisc. *ibid.* *Amplexus*, having embraced, Ovid. *Amplexus*, pass. Petron. ap. Prisc. *Amplectendus*, Manil., where some Mss. have *amplectandus*.—² *Apiscuntur*, pass. (C. Fannius ap. Prisc. VIII. p. 791. *Aptus*, Plaut. 'Apiscendi, favoris facultas,' Tacit. Ann. i. 31. The compounds make *-eptus*.—³ *Commīniscimus*, act. Apul. Met. *Commentus*, having devised, Cic. Nat. Deor. *Commentus*, pass. feigned, fictitious, Ovid.—⁴ *Complecto*, act. Pompon. ap. Non. *Complecti*, pass. Cic. ap. Prisc. *Complexus*, having embraced, Stat. Sylv. *Complexus*, enfolded, interwoven, Lucr. and Plaut. Amph.—⁵ *Dēfātiscens*, Plin. as if from *Dēfātiscor*. *Dēfessus* is a mere adjective. The simple *Fātiscor* occurs in Lucr. v. 309. *Fātisco*, I faint, am exhausted, Val. Flac. and Stat. Sylv. passim.—⁶ *Experrectus essem*, Cic. Att.—⁷ *Fructus*, Senec. Epist. *Fructus*, Lucr. III. 953. *Perfructus*, Cic. Fragm. ap. Prisc. x. p. 883. *Fructūrus*, Cic. Tusc. *Fructūrum*, Apul. Apol. where some read *Fructūrum*. See Voss. Anal. III. 32. *Fruendus*, Ovid.—⁸ *Fungi*, pass. Sex. Pedius ap. Paul. Dig. *Functus*, Hor. *Functūrus*, Apul. Met. 'Ad suum munus fungendum,' Cic. Tusc. III. 7.—⁹ *Irascēre*, act. for *irasci*, Pompon. *Irātus* is an adjective.—¹⁰ *Lapsus*, Val. Flac. Some Mss. of Virgil have *lapsus*, Georg. III. 448. and *ēlapsus*, II. 305. *Lapsūrus*, Ovid.—¹¹ *Lōquēre, lōquis*, act. Petron. Frag. Trag. *Lōcūtus*, Cic. *Lōcūtūrus*, Ovid. *Lōquendus*, Mart. v. 26.—¹² *Nactus*, Cic. in Orat. et passim. *Nactus*, opt. codd. Liv. XXI. 2. and Plaut.

- Nascor,¹ nascēris or nascēre, nasci, nātus, nātu, nasci-
tūrus, *be born, spring up.*
- Nitor,² nitēris or nitēre, niti, nixus or nixus, nisūrus,
strive, endeavour, be in labour.
- Obliviscor,³ obliviscēris or obliviscēre, oblivisci, oblitus,
obliviscendus, *forget.*
- Pāciscor,⁴ pāciscēris or pāciscere, pācisci, pactus, pā-
ciscendus, *bargain.*
- Prōficiscor,⁵ prōficiscēris or prōficiscēre, prōficisci,
prōfectus, prōfectūrus, *set out on a journey, go.*
- Quēror,⁶ quērēris or quērēre, quēri, questus, questum,
questūrus, quērendus, *lament, bewail.*
- *Rēmīniscor,⁷ rēmīniscēris or rēmīniscēre, rēmīnisci,
———, *call to mind, recollect.*
- *Ringor, ringēris or ringēre, ringi, ———, *grin, show the teeth.*
- Sēquor,⁸ sēquēris or sēquēre, sēqui, sēcutus, sēcutūrus,
sēquendus, *follow.*
- Tuor,⁹ tuēris or tuēre, ———, tūtus, tuendus, *see, protect.*
- Ulciscor,¹⁰ ulciscēris or ulciscēre, ulcisci, ultus, ultum,
ulciscendus, *avenge, punish.*
- Utor,¹¹ utēris or utēre, ūti, ūsus, ūsūrus, ūtendus, *use.*
- *Vescor,¹² vescēris or vescēre, vesci, ———, vescendus, *feed upon.*

¹ Nātus, Terent. Andr. et passim. Nātu, Plin. vi. 33. Nascitūrus, Pallad. Jun. Nascēre, for nasci, Cato R. R.; but the reading is doubtful.—² Nixus, Ovid. passim. Nixus, Cic. pro Cluent. c. 57. Vitruv. i. 2. In all the Mss. of Livy Nixus is more frequent than Nixus. Some distinguish them from each other, thus: Nixus CORPORE, nixus ANIMO; but this distinction does not appear from the classics. Nisūrus, Cæs. B. C. ii. 37. Annitor, I lean upon, makes Annixus, Virg. Æn. i. 148. et passim; Annisus, Liv. v. 25. Connitor, I struggle, bring forth, Connixus, Liv. i. 33. et passim; Connisus, Val. Flac. iii. 193. Enitor, I struggle hard, bring forth. Enixus, Liv. vi. 24. et passim. Enisus, Cic. an Q. Fr. iii. 9. Diomed. i. p. 371. confines Enixus to the labour of bringing forth, and takes Enisus in a sense of general exertion; but this distinction is not favoured by Mss. authority. Innitor, I lean upon, Innixus, Cæs. B. G. ii. 27. et passim; Innisus, Tacit. Obnitor, I struggle against, Obnixus, Virg. ix. 724. et passim. Obnisus, Liv. xxxiv. 46. Rēnitor, I resist, has no Perfect Participle Passive. Subnitor is not found in the classics; yet Subnixus, Virg. Æn. i. 510. et passim.—³ Oblitus, Cic. Obliviscendus, Hor.—⁴ Pācisco, Næv. ap. Non. Pactus sum, Cic. Servius on Virg. Æn. xi. 133. gives this Verb another Perfect, Pēpigi. See Pango and Pāgo, Lists XIII. xvi. Paciscendus, Ammian. xxxi. 12.—⁵ Prōficisco, Plaut. Mil. iv. 8. 19. Prōfectus sum, Cic. passim. Prōfectūrus, Justin.—⁶ Questus sum, Liv. Questum, Nepos in Chabr. Plaut. Questūrus, Stat. Theb. Quērendus, Ovid. Met.—⁷ Rēmīnisco, Rufus ap. Auson. Epigr.—⁸ Sēcutus sum, Virg. Ecl. x. 23. et passim. Sēcutūrus, Lucan. Sēquendus, Ovid. Sēquo, Princ. viii. p. 799.—⁹ See Tueor, Second Conj. p. 140.—¹⁰ Ultus sum, Propert. Ultum, Sallust. Jug. c. 71. Tacit. Ann. iv. 73. Ulciscendus, Cic. Fam. xii. 23. Ulciscerem, Enn. ap. Non. Ulcisci, pass. Sallust. Jug. c. 34. Hence Ultus, avenged, punished, Liv. ii. 17.—¹¹ Utor, pass. Novius ap. Gell. Uto, is, Cato R. R. Usus sum, Nepos Att. Usūrus, Cic. Verr. Utendus, Cic. Verr. iv. 18.—¹² Vescet, Tertul. de Jejun. c. 5., quoting the Old

IMPERSONALS.

Ningit,¹ ningēre, ninxit, *it snows.*
 Vesp̄rascit,² vesp̄rascēre, ———, *it draws towards evening.*

[An Alphabetical List of the preceding Verbs of the Third Conjugation, for easy reference. If the compound verb cannot be found in this List, look for the simple; then refer to it in its proper place, and the compound may be found in the notes.]

A		C.		
	PAGE			
Abdo, - - -	156	Cado, - - -	155	
Abnuo, - - -	146	Cado, - - -	155	
Abſiſto, - - -	158	Cano, - - -	155	
Accendo, - -	146	Capesso, - -	154	
Accumbo, - -	152	Capio, - - -	162	
Acuo, - - -	146	Carpo, - - -	149	
Addo, - - -	156	Cedo, - - -	149	
Adolesco, - -	161	Cerno, - - -	158	
Egresco, - -	161	Cingo, - - -	150	
Agnosco, - -	159	Clango, - - -	163	
Ago, - - -	158	Claudo, - - -	163	
Allicio, - - -	162	Clando, - - -	149	
Alo, - - -	152	Clepo, - - -	149	
Ambigo, - - -	163	Cluo, - - -	163	
Amplector, -	165	Coalesco, - -	159	
Apiscor, - - -	165	Cognosco, - -	159	
Appendo, - -	146	Colo, - - -	153	
Arcesso, - - -	154	Comminiscor,	165	
Arguo, - - -	146	Compeſco, - -	153	
Anſo, - - -	150	Complector, -	165	
Apiscor, - - -	165	Como, - - -	149	
Aspicio, - - -	162	Concutio, - -	162	
Aſſero, - - -	152	Condo, - - -	156	
Aſſiſto, - - -	158	Confido, - - -	156	
		Congruo, - - -	146	
		Conquiniſco,	156	
		Coquo, - - -	150	
Batuo, - - -	146	Conſaneſco,	159	
Bibo, - - -	146	Conſeneſco,	159	
			D.	
			Dedo, - - -	156
			Defendo, - -	146
			Defetiaſcor, -	165
			Dego, - - -	146
			Deliquieſco,	160
			Deliteſco, - -	160
			Demo, - - -	149
			Depſo, - - -	153
			Deſero, - - -	153
			Deſerto, - - -	153
			Deſiſto, - - -	158
			Dico, - - -	150
			Dido, - - -	156
			Diligō, - - -	150
			Diſco, - - -	155
			Diſſero, - - -	153
			Diteſco, - - -	161

Test. Num. xi. 4., where the Vulgate has, 'Quis dabit nobis ad *vescendum* carnes?' *Vescendus*, Plin. xx. 5.

¹ *Ningitur*, pass. impers. Apul. Florid. i. 2. 2. *Ningunt*, Lucr. ii. 627., where some read *pingunt*. *Ninxerit*, Accius ap. Prisc. *Ningit* is approved of by Pierius on Virg. Georg. iii. 367.; and by Prisc. *ibid.* *Ningit* by Caper de Verb. Dub. p. 2249.—² *Vesp̄rascit* has no Perfect. *Vesp̄rascens* occurs in Nepos Pelop. c. 2., and in Tacit. Ann. xvi. 34.

Divido, . . .	149	Gradior, . . .	163	Necto, . . .	151
Dulcesco, . . .	160	Grandesco, . . .	161	Negligo, . . .	151
Duresco, . . .	160	Gravesco, . . .	161	Nitor, . . .	166
Duco, . . .	150	Gruo, . . .	163	Ningit, . . .	167
E.					
Edo, . . .	147			Nubo, . . .	149
Edo, . . .	156	I.			
Elanguesco, . . .	160	Ico, . . .	147	O.	
Emarcesco, . . .	160	Ignosco, . . .	159	Obbrutesco, . . .	160
Emo, . . .	147	Imbuo, . . .	147	Obcallesco, . . .	160
Emungo, . . .	151	Induo, . . .	147	Obduresco, . . .	160
Erubescio, . . .	160	Incesso, . . .	154	Obdo, . . .	156
Evanesco, . . .	160	Indo, . . .	156	Obmutesco, . . .	161
Evilescio, . . .	160	Incurvesco, . . .	161	Obsurdesco, . . .	161
Extardesco, . . .	161	Integrasco, . . .	161	Obliviscor, . . .	166
Extaresco, . . .	160	Intumesco, . . .	160	Obstupesco, . . .	161
Excandesco, . . .	160	Intelligo, . . .	151	Occulo, . . .	153
Excello, . . .	153	Irascor, . . .	165	Orior, . . .	163
Excudo, . . .	147	Irraucesco, . . .	160		
Exhorresco, . . .	160	Insero, . . .	153	P.	
Existo, . . .	158	Insuo, . . .	147	Paciscor, . . .	166
Exolesco, . . .	161			Pando, . . .	164
Expallesco, . . .	160	J.		Patior, . . .	163
Expergiscor, . . .	165	Jacio, . . .	162	Pario, . . .	162
Exsero, . . .	153	Jungo, . . .	151	Pasco, . . .	159
Extinguo, . . .	151			Pago, . . .	155
Extimesco, . . .	160	L.		Pango, . . .	151
Exuo, . . .	147	Lacesco, . . .	154	Pecto, . . .	151
		Lædo, . . .	149	Pergo, . . .	151
		Lambo, . . .	147	Peto, . . .	154
		Lego, . . .	147	Pedo, . . .	155
		Linquo, . . .	147	Pello, . . .	155
Facio, . . .	162	Lino, . . .	158	Pendo, . . .	155
Fallo, . . .	155	Lingo, . . .	164	Perdo, . . .	156
Fatisco, . . .	161	Loquor, . . .	165	Peraresco, . . .	161
Fervo, . . .	147	Ludo, . . .	149	Percrebresco, . . .	161
Figo, . . .	151	Luo, . . .	147	Perhorresco, . . .	161
Findo, . . .	147			Pertimesco, . . .	161
Fingo, . . .	151	M.		Pinso, . . .	147
Flecto, . . .	151	Macresco, . . .	160	Pinguesco, . . .	162
Fligo, . . .	151	Mando, . . .	147	Plaudo, . . .	149
Fino, . . .	151	Mansuesco, . . .	161	Plumesco, . . .	162
Fodio, . . .	162	Maturesco, . . .	160	Pluo, . . .	148
Fracesco, . . .	160	Malo, . . .	153	Plango, . . .	152
Fremo, . . .	153	Mergo, . . .	149	Plecto, . . .	152
Frendo, . . .	163	Metuo, . . .	147	Pono, . . .	154
Frigo, . . .	164	Meto, . . .	156	Posco, . . .	155
Fruor, . . .	165	Mitto, . . .	157	Prodo, . . .	157
Fugio, . . .	162	Mingo, . . .	151	Proficiscor, . . .	166
Fungor, . . .	165	Minuo, . . .	147	Premo, . . .	149
Furo, . . .	164	Molo, . . .	153	Promo, . . .	149
Frango, . . .	158	Mitesco, . . .	162	Prendo, . . .	148
Fundo, . . .	147	Mollesco, . . .	162	Prehendo, . . .	148
		Morior, . . .	163	Psallo, . . .	148
		Mungo, . . .	151	Puerasco, . . .	162
				Pungo, . . .	155
		N.			
Gemo, . . .	153	Nanciscor, . . .	165	Q.	
Geno, . . .	153	Nascor, . . .	166	Quatio, . . .	164
Gero, . . .	149				
Gigno, . . .	153				
Glisco, . . .	163				

THIRD CONJUGATION.

189

Queror, -	-	166	Sero, -	-	157	Tergo, -	-	150
Quiesco, -	-	159	Serpo, -	-	150	Texo, -	-	154
	R.		Sido, -	-	148	Tollo, -	-	157
Rado, -	-	149	Sisto, -	-	158	Trado, -	-	156
Rapio, -	-	163	Sisco, -	-	159	Traho, -	-	152
Rancesco, -	-	162	Sino, -	-	157	Tremo, -	-	154
Recrudesco, -	-	161	Solvo, -	-	148	Tribuo, -	-	148
Reddo, -	-	156	Spao, -	-	148	Trudo, -	-	150
Refrigesco, -	-	161	Spargo, -	-	150	Tuor, -	-	166
Rego, -	-	152	Sperno, -	-	158	Tundo, -	-	155
Relanguesco, -	-	161	Statuo, -	-	148		U.	
Reminisco, -	-	166	Sterno, -	-	158	Ulciscor, -	-	166
Repo, -	-	149	Sternauo, -	-	148	Ungo, -	-	152
Repuerasco, -	-	162	Stinguo, -	-	152	Uro, -	-	160
Revivisco, -	-	161	Strido, -	-	148	Utor, -	-	166
Reviresco, -	-	161	Stringo, -	-	152	Uvesco, -	-	162
Ringor, -	-	166	Strepo, -	-	154		V.	
Rodo, -	-	149	Sterio, -	-	152	Vado, -	-	150
Ruo, -	-	148	Siruo, -	-	162	Veho, -	-	152
Rudo, -	-	157	Sterileasco, -	-	159	Vello, -	-	157
Rumpo, -	-	148	Suasco, -	-	156	Vergo, -	-	160
	S.		Subdo, -	-	152	Verio, -	-	148
Sapio, -	-	163	Sugo, -	-	150	Verro, -	-	148
Satago, -	-	163	Sumo, -	-	152	Vendo, -	-	156
Scabo, -	-	148	Surgo, -	-	152	Vesperascit, -	-	167
Scalpo, -	-	149		T.		Vinco, -	-	148
Scando, -	-	148	Tango, -	-	155	Vileasco, -	-	161
Scindo, -	-	157	Tego, -	-	152	Vivo, -	-	152
Scribo, -	-	149	Tenerasco, -	-	162	Viso, -	-	164
Sculpo, -	-	150	Tendo, -	-	155	Vomo, -	-	154
Sequor, -	-	166	Tero, -	-	158			
			Tingo, -	-	152			

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I. Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation end in *-io*, and change *-io* into *-is* long in the Second Person Present; into *-ivi* long in the Perfect; into *-ire* long in the Infinitive, and into *-itus* long in the Perfect Participle Passive; as,

Audio,¹ audire, audiivi or audii, auditus, auditum, auditu, auditurus, audiendus,

hear.—So,

*Cio, ² civi,	move, excite.	Impedio, ¹⁰ ivi or ii, D.	entangle.
Conodio, ³ ivi or ii,	season.	*Ineānio, ¹¹ ivi or ii,	be mad.
Custodio, ⁴ ivi or ii, D.	keep.	Irrētio, ¹² ivi or ii,	ensnare.
*Dormio, ⁵ ivi or ii, M. R. D.	sleep.	Lēnio, ¹³ ivi or ii, D.	mitigate.
Erūdio, ⁶ ivi or ii, D.	instruct.	Mollio, ¹⁴ ivi or ii, D.	soften.
Expedio, ⁷ ivi or ii,	disentangle.	*Mugio, ¹⁵ ivi or ii,	bellicw.
Finio, ⁸ ivi or ii, R. D.	finish.	Mūnio, ¹⁶ ivi or ii, R. D.	fortify.
*Gestio, ⁹ ivi or ii,	leap, desire.		

¹ *Audibam*, Ovid. *Audibis*, Plaut. Many of the Verbs of this Conj. making *-ivi*, have also *-ii* in the Perfect. *Audii*, Virg. Ecl. vi. 83. *Auditum*, Hor. *Auditus*, Cæs. B. Afr. *Auditurus*, Lucan. *Audiendus*, Cæs. B. G.—² *Civi*, Tacit. Ann. xv. 33. & Plaut. The Participle *Citus* exists only in the Compounds, *Concitus*, summoned, Val. Flac. excited, Lucan. v. 597. *Excitus*, called out, Virg. Æn. x. 38. *Exciturus*, Liv. *Excibat*, Liv. xxxii. 13. See *Cicio*, Second Conj.—³ *Condivi*, Cic. pro Cluent. Colum. *Condii*, Varr. R. R. *Conditus*, Cic. de Orat. iii. 25.—⁴ *Custodibant*, Catull. *Custodibitur*, Plaut. *Custodivi*, Plin. *Custodii*, Sueton. *Custodisset*, Auson. Epist. *Custoditus*, Ovid. *Custodiendus*, Cæs. B. G.—⁵ *Dormibo*, Plaut. *Dormivi*, Ovid. *Dormii*, Cic. Att. *Dormitum*, Hor. i. Sat. 5. 48. *Dormiturus*, Cels. *Dormiendus*, Catull.—⁶ *Erūditi*, Cic. Tusc. i. 26. *Erūditi*, Val. Flac. *Erūditi*, Cic. passim. *Erūdiendus*, Ovid.—⁷ *Expēdibo*, Plaut. *Expēdivi*, Liv. ix. 9. *Expēdii*, Val. Flac. *Expēdisse*, Cic. *Expēditus*, Cic. Mil. c. 10. 'Ad expēdiendas pecunias,' Sueton. Jul.—⁸ *Fēnivi*, Ovid. Met. *Fēnii*, Id. *Fēnitus*, Ovid. Trist. *Fēnitus*, Id. Art. Am. *Fēniendus*, Tertull. Scorp.—⁹ *Gestibant*, Plaut. *Gestivi*, Gell. *Gestierunt*, Vell.—¹⁰ *Impēdivi*, Cic. *Impēdii*, Hor. i. Sat. 6. 27. Ovid. Met. *Impēditus*, Cic. pro Cæl. et passim. *Impēdiendus*, Ovid. Met.—¹¹ *Ineānivi*, Plaut. *Ineā, nisi*, Cic. Or. c. 67.—¹² *Irrēditi*, Colum. *Irrētisses*, Cic. Catil. i. 6. *Irrēditus*, Cic. Fin. v. 18. et passim.—¹³ *Lēnibam*, *Lēnibo*, Virg. Æn. v. 527. vi. 468. Propert. *Lēnivi*, Cic. Att. vi. 2. *Lēnii*, Id. Phil. ii. 45. *Lēnitus*, Liv. i. 16. *Lēniendus*, Cels. *Lēniendus*, Sallust. Cat. c. 48.—¹⁴ *Mollivi*, Vell. *Mollii*, Ovid. Met. *Mollitus*, Sil. *Mollendus*, Cic.—¹⁵ *Mūgivi*, Propert. *Mūgissent*, Liv. i. —¹⁶ *Moenio*, anciently. *Mūnivi*, Cic. Cat. i. 4. *Mūnii*, Nep. Hannib. c. 3. Liv. ix. 29 et passim. *Mūnitus*, Cic. passim. *Mūniturus*, Hirt. *Mūniendus*, Cic. *Mūnibis*, Veget. de R. V.

• Mütio, ¹ i vi,	mutter.	Scio, ⁷ scivi, u. r.	know.
Nütrio, ² i vi or ii, d.	nourish.	*Servio, ⁸ i vi or ii. M.	serve, obey.
Partio, ³ i vi or ii, r.	divide.	Söpio, ⁹ i vi or ii,	lull asleep.
Pölio, ⁴ i vi, d.	polish.	Stäbflö, ¹⁰ i vi or ii,	establish.
Pünio, ⁵ i vi or ii, d.	punish.	Tinnio, ¹¹ i vi or ii, r.	tinkle.
Rëdimo, ⁶ i vi,	crown, encircle.	Vestio, ¹² i vi or ii,	clothe.

II. The following are irregular either in the Perfect, or Perfect Participle Passive, or in both :

Amicio, ¹³ amicare, amixi or amicui, amictus, amiciendus,	clothe.
Apërio, ¹⁴ apërire, apëru, apertus, aperturus, apëriendus,	open.
Bullio, ¹⁵ bullire, bullii, bullitus,	boil, bubble.
Compërio, ¹⁶ compërire, compëri, compertus,	find out.
Farcio, ¹⁷ farcire, farsii, farctus,	cram.
Fastidio, ¹⁸ fastidire, fastidii, fastiditus, fastidiendus,	disdain.
Fulcio, ¹⁹ fulcire, fulsi, fultus, fulciendus,	prop.

¹ Mütivi, Plant. Mütitus, Terent.—² Nütribam, Virg. Æn. vii. 484. Nüttribo, Rhemm. Nütrimus, for Nüttrivimus. Nüttrilor, for nüttrilo, Virg. Georg. ii. 425. Nüttrivi, Senec. Nüttrii, Pers. Sat. Nüttrissent, Ovid. Nüttritus, Hor. Nüttriendus, Cels.—³ Partior, depon. Virg. Æn. i. 198. et passim. Partivi, Sallust. Jug. c. 47. Partisses, Lucil. Partitus, Cic. Orat. iii. 30. Partiturus, Cæs. B. Civ. i. 4.—⁴ Pöliui, Phædr. Pölitus, Cic. passim. Pöliendus, Vitruv. Pölubant, Virg. Æn. viii. 435.—⁵ Pünivi, Apul. Met. Pünii, Sueton. Jul. c. 74. Pünisse, Tib. c. 61. Pünitus, punished, Cic. Inv. Pünitus, having punished, Cic. Mil. Pünendus, Cic. Pennibant, anciently, Lucr. See Münio in this List.—⁶ Rëdīmivui, Sueton, where Baumgarten-Crusius reads rëdīmuit. Rëdīmitus, Tibull. passim. Rëdīmibat, Virg. Æn. x. 538.—⁷ Scivi, Terent. 'Pro scrivisse, rectius dicimus scisse.' Facciolat. Scisse, Liv. Ovid. Fast. Scisti, Ovid. Scissent, Cic. Att. The Participle Scitus is used in an active signification, knowing, shrewd. Sciturus, Liv. iii. Senec. Epist. 6. Scitu facile, Terent.—⁸ Servivi, Plant. 21. Servii, Vell. Servisset, Cic. Servistis, Liv. Servitum, Virg. Æn. ii. 786. Servitum est, impera. Cic. Or. Servibas, Plant. Servibo, Merc.—⁹ Söpivi, Liv. Söpui, Vell. Söpierat, Tibull. Söpistis, Ovid. Met. Söpitus, Virg. Æn. x. 642. et passim.—¹⁰ Stäbflivi, Plin. Stäbflisset, Gell. Stäbflitus, Lucr.—¹¹ Tinnivi, Tinnii, Plant. Tinniturus, Sueton.—¹² Vestivi, Cic. de Nat. Deor. Vestierint, Colum. Vestitus, Propert. passim.—¹³ Amicui, Brut. ap. Diomed. Amixi, Varr. ibid. Some add Amicvi, but without authority. Amictus, Hor. Amiciendus, Fronton. ad M. Aurel.—¹⁴ Apëribo, Plaut. Apëru, Liv. passim. Some think the Perfect Apërii might also be used, reading in Cic. Att. vii. 3. Apëriërtus, where the true lection is Apëruërtus. Apertus, Cic. passim. Aperturus, Liv. Apëriendus, Sallust. Cat. c. 58.—¹⁵ Bullii, Apic. Bullitus, Veget. Veter.—¹⁶ Compëri, Cic. passim. Compertus, Cic. passim. Compërior, depon. I know assuredly, Sall. Jug. c. 49. Hence Compertus est, for compërit, Tertull.—¹⁷ Farsii, Senec. Epist. Fartus, Cic. passim. 'Ita in melioribus libris exaratum est.' Voss. Anal. iii. 33. Some write Fartus. The Oxford Annotators on Lily quote Fartitus from Cicero ; others quote it from Varro ; but this appears to be a mistake. Farsus, Hygin. Fab.—¹⁸ Fastidii, Mart. Fastidivi is found only in grammars and dictionaries. Fastiditus, Ovid. Trist. Fastidiendus, Plin.—¹⁹ Fulsi, Cic. Fulxi, Prisc. Fulcivi, Vet. Inscript. sub Honor. et Theodos. ap. Murator. p. 466. Fultus, Virg. Ecl. vi. 53. Fulcitus, Cæl. Aurel. Tard. Fulciendus, Cels.

*Glütio, ¹ glütire, glütii, —,	swallow.
*Grunnio, ² grunnire, grunnii, —,	grunt.
Haurio, ³ haurire, hauri, rarely haurii, haustus, haustus or hausurus, hauriendus,	draw, drink up, absorb.
*Lascivio, ⁴ lascivire, lascivii, —,	be wanton, frisk.
*Ligurio, ⁵ ligürire, ligürii, —,	feed delicately.
*Obedio, ⁶ obédire, obédii, —, obéditurus,	obey.
Opério, ⁷ opérire, opériui, opertus, opériendus,	cover, hide.
*Prösilio, ⁸ prósilire, prósilui or prósilvi, —,	sally forth.
Répério, ⁹ répérire, répérii, répertus, réperturus, v.	find.
*Sævio, ¹⁰ sævire, sævii, —, sæviturus,	rage.
*Sálio, ¹¹ sálire, sálui or sálvi, —,	leap.
Sancio, ¹² sancire, sanai or sancii, sancitus or sanctus, sancitendus,	establish, ratify.
Sarcio, ¹³ sartus, sarsi, sarcire,	patch, repair.
Sarrio, ¹⁴ sarrire, sarrivi or sarrui, sarritus, sarrriendus,	weed with a hook, hoe.

¹ *Glütisse*, Juv. Sat. iv. 28. *Glütivi*, found in grammars and dictionaries, does not occur in the classics. 'Mors glütita,' Tertull. adv. Marc.—² *Grunnisse*, Juv. *Grunnivi* is found only in grammars and dictionaries.—³ *Hauri*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 742. *Haurii*, Varr. ap. Prisc. *Haustus*, Val. Flac. et passim. *Hause*, Solin. *Hauritus*, Apul. Met. *Hauritum*, ibid. *Hauritu*, ibid. *Haustus*, Cic. *Hausurus*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 384. *Hauriturus*, Juvenc. *Hauriendus*, Colum. *Hauribent*, Lucr.—⁴ *Lascivisset*, Gell.—⁵ *Ligürii*, Hor. *Obligürii*, Cic. Catil. ii. 5. *Ligürii*, given in grammars and dictionaries, does not exist.—⁶ *Obédito*, Afran. ap. Non. *Obédisse*, Apul. Florid. *Obedivi* is not found in the classics. *Obéditurus*, Plin.—⁷ *Opériui*, Terent. *Opertus*, Virg. Georg. i. 465. et passim. *Opériendus*, Cels.—⁸ *Prösilui*, Val. Flac. Lucan. *Prösilvi*, Curt. vii. 4., and so some read in Liv. l. c.; but the Perfect in *ui* seems more correct. See *Sálio* in this List. *Transilio*, I leap over, makes *Transilui*, Liv. i. 7. *Transilvi*, Plin. et Plaut. or *Transilui*, Hirt. *Transiliendus*, Ovid.—⁹ *Répéri*, Ovid. Met. et passim. When the first syllable of this Perfect is made long, some double the P. *Répertus*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 343. *Réperturus*, Curt. *Réperiendus*, Cic. *Répérito*, Cæcil. et Pompon. ap. Non.—¹⁰ *Sævii*, Gell. *Sævil*, for *Sæviil*, Ovid. Met. *Sævitum est* impers. cruelty was exercised, Liv. i. 1. Curt. viii. 10. 6. *Sæviturus*, Liv. *Sævitabat*, Lucr.—¹¹ *Sálui*, Virg. Georg. ii. 384. Ovid. *Sálvi*, Claud. See Heins on Ovid. *Sálvi*, found in grammars and dictionaries, does not exist in the classics. So *Désilio*, I dismount, I alight, *désilui*, Virg. *Æn.* xi. 501. *désilui*, Cæs. B. G. iv. 12. *Exsilio*, I spring forth, *exsilui*, Plaut. *exsilui*, Sil. *Subsilio*, I spring up, *subsilui*, Propert. iv. 8. 46. *subsilui*, Senec. Epist. 13. Three have *ui* only: *Assilio*, I leap upon, *assilui*. Val. Flac. i. 258. *Dissilio*, I fly asunder, I burst, *dissilui*, Virg. *Æn.* iii. 415. *Insilio*, I leap upon, *insilui*, Ovid. Met. iii. 367. & Plaut. See *Prosilio*.—¹² *Sanzi*, Cic. Tusc. i. 27. Liv. xiv. 8. Propert. *Sancii*, Pompon. ap. Diomed. *Sancivi* is quoted by Nizolius from Cic. pro Planc., where no such form is to be found; and by others from Liv. x. 9., where the *Mss.* and best edd. have *sanzi*. *Sancitus*, Cic. de Harusp. Resp. *Sanctus*, Liv. i. 9. & Quintil. *Sanciendus*, Liv. viii. 7.—¹³ *Sarci*, Cato R. R. *Sartus*, Juvenal. iii. 254. et passim. 'Sarcienda infamiae,' &c. Cæs. B. C. iii. 74.—¹⁴ *Sarrivi*, Colum. *Sarrui*, Cato R. R. *Sarrui*, given in some dictionaries, does not occur, except in the various reading of Cato. *Sarritus*, Colum. *Sarrriendus*, Colum.

Sentio, ¹ sentire, sensi, sensus, sensûrus,	<i>feel, perceive.</i>
Sépelio, ² sêpélire, sêpélivi, sêpélii or sêpéli, sêpultus, sêpultûrus, sêpéliendus,	<i>bury, inter.</i>
Sêpio, ³ sêpire, sepsi, septus,	<i>hedge in, enclose.</i>
*Sitio, ⁴ sîtire, sîtii, —,	<i>thirst, thirst after.</i>
Suffio, ⁵ suffire, suffi, suffitus, suffiendus,	<i>fumigate.</i>
*Vâgio, ⁶ vâgire, vâgii, —,	<i>cry as a child.</i>
*Vênio, ⁷ venire, vëni, —, ventûrus,	<i>come.</i>
Vincio, ⁸ vinoire, vinxi, victus, victûrus, vinciendus,	<i>bind.</i>

III. These Verbs end in -eo :

*Eo, ⁹ ire, ii or ivi, —, itûrus,	<i>go.</i>
*Queo, ¹⁰ quîre, quîvi or quii, —,	<i>be able.</i>
*Nêqueo, ¹¹ nêquire, nêquivi or nêquii, —,	<i>cannot.</i>
*Vêneo, ¹² vênire, vëni, —, vënitûrus,	<i>be sold.</i>

¹ *Sensi*, Cæs. B. G. v. 32. & Hor. *Sensî*, for *sensisti*, Terent. *Sensus*, Arnob. *Sensûrus*, Ovid. Met.—² *Sêpélivi*, Senec. Epist. *Sêpélii*, Petron. *Sêpéli*, Pers. Sat. *Sêpultus*, Virg. *Æn.* ii. 265. et passim. *Sêpélitus*, Cato. ap. Prisc. *Sêpultûrus*, Sidon. Carm. *Sêpéliendus*, Cic. Tusc. ii. 13.—³ *Dausqu*. Cellar. Noris. Pier. write *Sepio*, with a diphthong; Voss. Heins. Erythræus and others write it with a single vowel. *Sepsi*, Cic. Fam. xv. 4. Nat. Deor. Virg. *Æn.* i. 415. & Tacit. Ann. Dictionaries give *Sêpîvi*, *Sêpîtum*; but neither *sêpîlus*, nor *sêpîtum* have any place in the classics; nor is *sêpîvi* to be found, with the exception of the contracted form *sêpissent* in Liv. xlii. 39., where the true reading is *sepsissent*. See Gronov. on the passage, Voss. Anal. iii. 33. *Septus*, Virg. *Æn.* ix. 551. et passim.—⁴ *Sîtisti*, Justin. *Sîtivi*, given by grammars and dictionaries, does not occur in the classics.—⁵ *Suffii*, Propert. iv. 8. 83. See Broukhua & Burman on the passage. *Suffitus*, Ovid. Fast. *Suffiendus*, Colum.—⁶ The author of the Carmen de Philom. makes the first syllable short. *Vâgii*, Ovid.—⁷ *Vênîbo*, Pompon. ap. Non. *Vëni*, Cic. *Ventûrus*, Virg. vi. 66. *Vënitur*, *ventum est*, impers. passim. *Inventu ardua*, Plin. ii. 46.—⁸ *Vinxi*, Virg. *Æn.* xi. 81. *Vinxtus*, Ovid. et passim. *Vinctûrus*, Virg. Georg. ii. 94. *Vinciendus*, Cic.—⁹ *Ivi* is rare; it occurs in Aul. Gell. xiii. 12. 3. *Ii*, Liv. Cic. Fam. Virg. *Æn.* i. 376. et passim. These Compound verbs make *ii*: *Abeo*, I depart, *âbii*; *Adeo*, I approach, *âdii*; *Anteo*, I go before, *anteii*; *Coëo*, I meet, *coii*; *Exeo*, I go out, *exii*; *Intêreo*, I die, *intêrii*; *Introëo*, I enter, *introii*; *Prædeo*, I come forth, *prôdii*; *Transëo*, I pass over, *transii*. But *Ineo*, I enter, makes *inii*, Cic. et passim; *ini*, Stat. Theb. *Oëo*, I go about, undergo, die, *ôbii*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 802. *Obii*, Lucr. *Pêreo*, I perish, *pêrii*, Ovid. *Pêrivi* occurs only in Apul. Met. *Præeo*, I go before, *præivi*, Plin. *præii*, Liv. *Prætêreo*, I go beyond, *prætêrii*, Ovid. Art. Am. et passim; *prætrêvi*, Apul. Met. *Râdeo*, I return, *rêdii*, Cic. et passim; *rêdivi*, Lucil. ap. Non. *Sûbeo*, I go under, *sûbivi*, Ovid. *sûbii*, Hor. i. Sat. 9. 21. *Itûrus*, Cic.—¹⁰ *Quîvi*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 463. Terent. *Quii*, Lucr. vi. 855. See Irregular Verbs. *Quittus*, Accius ap. Diomed.—¹¹ *Nêquîvi*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 507. Irregular Verbs. *Sall.* Jug. c. 18. See Irregular Verbs.—¹² *Vëni*, Cic. Cato R. R. et passim. *Vênisse*, Liv. ii. 14. *Vênivi*, given in grammars and dictionaries, does not occur in the classics. Some give this Verb a Supine, *Vënum*, which is a noun, and one of its component parts, (*Vënum eo*.) and of which the ablative *Vëno* occurs in Tacit. Ann. xiii. 51. *Vënitus*, Sedul. Plyn. *Vënitûrus*, Senec. de Const. Sap. c. 3. See Irregular Verbs.

IV. The Perfects of the following Verbs are doubtful :

*Cambio, ¹ campai.	exchange.	*Lippio, ⁵ i vi, r.	be blear-eyed.
*Dementio, ² i vi,	be mad.	*Raucio, ⁶ rausi, r.	be hoarse.
Effutio, ³ i vi, itus,	speak foolishly.	Sallio, ⁷ i vi, itus, r. d.	season with salt.
*Ferio, ⁴ ferii, n.	strike.		

V. These have neither Perfects nor Perfect Participles :

*Balbütio, ⁸	stammer.	*Ineptio,	trifle.
*Cacütio,	be dim-sighted.	*Prurio,	itch, tickle.
*Ferocio,	be fierce.	*Rugio,	roar as a lion.
*Gannio,	yelp, whine.	*Sagio,	foresee.
*Glöcio,	cluck as a hen.	*Scatürio,	gush out.
*Grandio,	make great.	*Singultio,	sob.
*Hinnio,	neigh.	*Tussio,	cough.

Pävio, I beat, pave, has no Perfect ; but the Perfect Participle *Pävitus* is found in Varr. R. R. i. 51. I. and in Plin. ix. 10.

¹ *Campai*, Prisc. x. p. 906.—² *Dimentivi*, Grammatici.—³ *Effütivi*, Grammatici. *Effütus*, Cic. Div.—⁴ *Ferii*, Acron in his commentary on Hor. i. Od. 7. 11. The Perfect of the Compound *Riferio*, I strike again, does not occur.—⁵ *Lippivi*, Grammatici. *Lippiturus*, Plin.—⁶ The Perfect *Rausi*, and Supine *Rausum* occur only in Prisc. x. p. 907. *Rausurus*, Lucil, ap. Prisc. ibid.—⁷ *Sallivi*, or *säivi*, Grammatici. *Sallitus*, or *salitus*, Colum. *Salliturus*, Næv. ap. Prisc. ibid. *Salliendus*, Colum. The Participles *Salsus*, Colum. and *Salsurus*, Mumm. ap. Diomed. l. c. come from *Sallo*, is, of the Third Conjugation.—⁸ *Balbütivi* in some dictionaries.

VI. DEPONENTS.

Blandior, ¹ -iris or -ire, -iri, -itus,	soothe, flatter.—So,
Largior, ² give liberally, lavish.	Partior, ⁵ D. divide.
Mentior, ³ R. lie.	Pōtior, ⁶ R. D. obtain, enjoy.
Mōlior, ⁴ D. attempt something difficult, contrive, plan.	Sortior, ⁷ R. draw lots.

VII. EXCEPTIONS.

Assentior, ⁸ assentiris or assentire, assentiri, assensus, assensurus,	assent.
Expērior, ⁹ expēriris or expērire, expērirī, expertus, experturus, expēriendus,	try.
Mētiōr, ¹⁰ mētiris or mētire, mētiri, mensus or mētītus, mētiendus,	measure.
Oppērior, ¹¹ oppēriris or oppērire, oppērirī, oppertus or oppēritus, oppēriendus,	wait for.
Ordior, ¹² ordiris or ordire, ordiri, orsus, ordiendus,	begin.

¹ *Blanditus*, Ovid. *Met.* *Blanditus*, pass. Verrius ap. Prisc. viii. p. 792.—

² *Largio*, Accius ap. Non. Hence *Largitus*, pass. Tibull. *Largitus*, having bestowed, Cic.—³ *Mentio*, Prisc. Hence *Mentitus*, pass. Virg. *Æn.* ii. 422. Ovid. *Mentibor*, Plaut. *Mentitus*, having lied, Propert. *Mentiturus*, Ovid.—⁴ *Mōliebatur*, pass. Apul. *Met.* *Mōlitus*, Ovid. Am. Virg. *Georg.* i. 494. *Mōliendus*, Cic. *Orat.*—⁵ *Partus*, Cic. de Univ. *Partiendus*, Cic. See *Partio*, List 1.—⁶ This verb is sometimes used by the poets in the Third Conj. in the Pres. Indic. and Imperf. Subj. See Virg. *Æn.* iii. 55. Ovid. *Met.* xiii. 130. Also in the Pres. Infin. *Pōti*, Pacuv. ap. Non. vii. 66. *Pōtuit*, Plaut. *Pōtitus*, Cms. B. G. et passim. *Pōturus*, Cic. *Tusc.* i. 37. *Pōtiendus*, Ovid. *Met.*—⁷ *Sortitus*, Virg. *Æn.* viii. 444. & Ovid. *Sortiturus*, Cic.—⁸ *Assentio*, act. passim. Hence *Assensus*, pass. Cic. *Acad.* iv. 31. *Assensus*, having assented, Cic. *Assensurus*, Cic.—⁹ *Expēribis*, Catull. *Expertus*, Val. Flac. *Experturus*, Plaut. *Expēriturus*, Cato R. R. *Expēriendus*, Ovid.—¹⁰ *Mētiatur*, pass. Arnob. Hence *Mensus*, measured, Cic. N. D. ii. 27. *Mensus*, having measured, Val. Flac. v. 476. *Mētītus*, Claud. Ep. *Mētiendus*, Cic. *Orat.* c. 57.—¹¹ *Oppertus*, Terent. *Oppēritus*, Plaut. *Oppēriendus*, Tacit. *Ann.* iv. 6.—¹² *Orsus*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 125. et passim. *Orditus*, pass. Sidon. Ep. *Ordiendus*, Cic. *Leg.* i. 7.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The IRREGULAR VERBS are, *Sum*, 'I am;' *Eo*, 'I go;' *Queo*, 'I am able;' *Volo*, 'I am willing;' *Fero*, 'I bear or suffer;' *Fio*, 'I am made,' 'I become;' *Edo*, 'I eat,' and their compounds.

SUM has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds.¹

Prosum, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*.

Prosum, *prodesse*, *profui*.

Indicative Mode.

PR. *Pro-sum*, *prod-es*, *prod-est*; *pro-sūmus*, *prod-estis*, &c.

IMP. *Prod-eram*, *prod-eras*, *prod-erat*; *prod-erāmus*, &c.

PER. *Pro-fui*, *pro-fuisti*, *pro-fuit*; *pro-fuīmus*, *pro-fuistis*, &c.

PLU. *Pro-fuēram*, *pro-fuēras*, *pro-fuērat*; *pro-fuerāmus*, &c.

FUT. *Prod-ēro*, *prod-ēris*, *prod-ērit*; *prod-erīmus*, &c.

Subjunctive Mode.

PR. *Pro-sim*, *pro-sis*, *pro-sit*; *pro-sīmus*, *pro-sitis*, *pro-sint*.

IMP. *Prod-essem*, *prod-esses*, *prod-esset*; *prod-essēmus*, &c.

PER. *Pro-fuērim*, *pro-fuēris*, *pro-fuērit*; *pro-fuerīmus*, &c.

PLU. *Pro-fuissem*, *pro-fuisses*, *pro-fuisset*; *pro-fuissēmus*, &c.

FUT. *Pro-fuēro*, *pro-fuēris*, *pro-fuērit*; *pro-fuerīmus*, &c.

¹ Compounds of *Sum*:—*Absum*, I am absent; *Adsum*, I am present; *Dēsum*, I am wanting; *Intersum*, I am present; *Obsum*, I am against, I hurt; *Possum*, I am able; *Præsum*, I am before, I preside over; *Prōsum*, I avail, I do good; *Subsum*, I am under, I lurk; *Sūpersum*, I am over and above, I survive; and *Insum*, I am in, which wants the Perfect. *Prōsum* takes *o* after *pro*, when the simple Verb begins with *z*; as, *Prosum*, *prodest*, *prodesse*, &c. Compounds of *Eo*:—*Abeo*, I depart; *Adeo*, I approach; *Anteo*, I go before; *Coeo*, I assemble, I meet; *Eaeo*, I go out; *Ineo*, I enter; *Intereo*, I perish, I die; *Introeo*, I come in; *Obeo*, I am about, I manage, I die; *Pereo*, I perish; *Præeo*, I go before; *Prætereo*, I pass by; *Prædeo*, I go forth; *Rædeo*, I return; *Sūdeo*, I go under; *Trans eo*, I pass over; *Veneo*, I am sold. Compound of *Queo*:—*Næqueo*, I am unable. Compounds of *Volo*:—*Nolo*, I am unwilling; *Malo*, I am more willing. Compounds of *Fero*:—*Affero*, I bring; *Antifero*, I prefer; *Aufero*, I take away; *Circumfero*, I carry round; *Confero*, I contribute; *Dēfero*, I convey; *Differo*, I disperse; *Effero*, I carry forth; *Infero*, I bring in; *Offero*, I offer; *Perfero*, I carry through; *Præfero*, I prefer; *Præfero*, I bring forward; *Rēfero*, I bring back; *Suffero*, I take up, I endure. Compounds of *Edo*:—*Adedo*, I devour; *Ambēdo*, I eat around, I gnaw; *Cūmedo*, I eat up; *Exēdo*, I consume; *Pēredo*, I eat through.

Imperative Mode.

PR. 2. Prod-es or prod-esto,	2. Prod-este or prod-estôte,
3. Prod-esto;	3. Pro-sunto.

Infinitive Mode.

PR. Prod-esse.	FUT. Esse pro-futûrus, -a, -um.
PER. Pro-fuisse.	Fuisse pro-futûrus.

Participle.

FUT. Pro-futûrus.

Possum is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*: and is thus conjugated:

Possum,¹ posse, pōtui. *To be able.*

Indicative Mode.

PR. Possum,	pōtes,	pōtest;	possûmus,	potestis,	possunt.
IMP. Pot-eram,	-eras,	-erat;	-erâmus,	-erâtis,	-erant.
PER. Pot-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uîmus,	-uistis	} -uērunt or -uère.
PLU. Pot-uëram	-uëras,	-uërat;	-uerâmus,	-nerâtis,	
FUT. Pot-ëro,	-ëris,	-ërit;	-erîmus,	-eritis,	-erunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

PR. Pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit;	-simus,	-sitis,	-sint.
IMP. Pos-sem,	-ses,	-set;	-sêmus,	-sêtis,	-sent.
PER. Pot-uërim,	-uëris,	-uërit;	-uerîmus,	-ueritis,	-uërint.
PLU. Pot-uiessem,	-uissēs,	-uissēt;	-uissêmus,	-uissêtis,	-uissent.
FUT. Pot-uëro,	-uëris,	-uërit;	-uerîmus,	-ueritis,	-uërint.

Infinitive Mode.

PR. Posse.	PER. Potuisse.	<i>The rest wanting.</i>
------------	----------------	--------------------------

NOTE: *Possum* wants the Fut. Infin. and has no Gerunds or Supines. *Pōten*² is considered as a mere Adjective; and not as a Participle.

¹ *Possum* is compounded of *pōtis* and *sum*. They sometimes occur separately, (Virg. *Æn.* iii. 671. xi. 148. Ter. Eun. ii. 2. 32. Adelph. iv. 1. 5. Lucr. i. 451. ii. 849. 911. iv. 718. v. 718. Catull. lxxi. 7. lxxv. 24. Varr. R. R. ii. 2. Cic. Tusc. ii. 16. Gell. xix. 9, &c.) and then *pōtis* is Masc. Fem. or Neut. and Plur. as well as Sing. Cf. Plaut. *Poen.* i. 2. 17. We find the following forms also;—*Pōtessim*, Plaut. *Pers.* i. 1. 41. *Pōtesset*, Lucil. ap. Non. v. 98. where some read *Pōtissset*. Cf. Ascon. in Divin. Verr. 13. *Pōtissum*, Plaut. *Curc.* v. 3. 23. *Pōtissim*, *is*, *et*, Cic. in Arat. 304. Plaut. *Bacch.* iv. 5. 2. Most. ii. 2. 34. iv. 2. 68. *Pōtestur*, Lucr. iii. 1024. Pacuv. ap. Non. x. 34. cf. Pier. ad Virg. *Æn.* viii. 402. *Possitur*, Cat. R. R. 154. *Possitur*, Claud. *Quadrig.* Ap. Non. x. 30. *Pōtesse*, Lucr. i. 666. Ter. Eun. iv. 3. 24. Charis. iii. p. 231. cites, *Pōteste*, *pōtesto*, *pōtestôte*, *possumto*, but without authority.

EO,¹ Ire, ivi, itum. To go.*Indicative Mode.*

PR. Eo,	is,	it;	imus,	itis,	eunt.
IMP. Ibam,	ibas,	ibat;	ibāmus,	ibātis,	ibant.
PER. Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit;	ivimus,	ivistis,	ivērunt or ivēre.
PLU. Ivēram,	ivēras,	ivērat;	iverāmus,	iverātis,	ivērunt.
FUT. Ibo,	ibis,	ibit;	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

PR. Eam,	eas,	eat;	eāmus,	eātis,	eant.
IMP. Irem,	ires,	iret;	irēmus,	irētis,	irent.
PER. Ivērim,	ivēris,	ivērit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	ivērint.
PLU. Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset;	ivissēmus,	ivissētis,	ivissent.
FUT. Ivēro,	vēris,	ivērit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	ivērint.

Imperative Mode.

PR.	{ I,	{ ite,	eunto.
	{ Ito, ito;	{ itōte,	

Infinitive Mode.

PR. Ire.
PER. Ivisse.
FUT. Esse itūrus, -a, -um.
Fuisse itūrus, -a, -um.

Participles.

PR. Iens, Gen. euntis.
FUT. Itūrus, -a, -um.

Gerunds.

Eundum.
Eundi.
Eundo, &c.

Supines.

1. Itum.
2. Itu.

The compounds of *Eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ad-, ob-, ex-, cō-, in-, inter-, ob-, rēd-, sub-, pēr-, prae-, ante-, prōd-eo*; only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *Adeo, adii*, seldom *adivi, aditum, adire*, to go to; perf. *Adii, adiisti*, or *adisti*, &c. *adiēram, adiērim*, &c. So likewise *VENEO veni*, —, to be sold, compounded of *venum* and *eo*.) But *AMBIO, -ivi, -itum, -ire*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

¹ Of this Verb the Infinitive Passive *Iri* occurs frequently joined with the Perfect Participle Passive of other verbs. We also find the Impersonals, *Itūr, catūr, ibātūr, irētūr, ibitūr, itum est*, &c. Virg. *Æn.* vi. 179. Plaut. *Truc.* iii. 1. 21. Senec. *Med.* 460. Cic. *Att.* ii. 1. *Eundus* occurs in Claud. *Eutrop.* ii. 419. *Issem, Isse*, Cic. *Phil.* xii. 12. Verr. iii. 44. and in Ovid. *Propert. Stat. Sil. passim.* *Isfis*, Lucan. vii. 834. *Iam, iēs, iēt*, Cic. *Agr.* ii. 25. Cf. *Tibull.* i. 4. 23. Senec. *Benef.* ii. 1. Apul. *Met.* vi. p. 122. Most of the Compounds of *Eo* make *ii* in the Perfect, rather than *ivi*. *Adeo, Ineo, Prætereo, Subeo, Transseo*, being used transitively, are found in the Passive. Cic. *Q. Fr.* i. 2. 5. *Offic.* i. 19. Cæs. B. G. vii. 9. Cic. *Tusc.* v. 19. Manil. iv. 398. Juv. xvi. 2. *Ambio* is conjugated regularly like *Audio*, *Veneo, veni* is conjugated like *Eo*; yet we find *Vēniēt*, Murator. p. 1311. ii. n. 2. *Vēnear*, and *Vēneātur*, Diomed. i. p. 365. *Vēnitus*, Sedul. *Hymn.* i. 21. *Vēnitum*, (Supine) Priscian. x. p. 907.

Eo, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form thus, *it*, he is going; *ivul*, he is gone; *ivērat*, he was gone; *ivērit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So, *vēnit*, he is coming; *vēnit*, he has come; *vēnrat*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally; as, *itur ab illo*, he is going; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally; as, *pericula adven-tur*, are undergone. Cic. *Libri sibyllini aditi sunt*, were looked into. Liv. *Flumen pedibus transiri potest*. Cæsar. *Inimicitiae subeantur*. Cic.

QUEO, I can, and *NEQUEO*,¹ I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

VOLO,² *velle*, *völui*. *To will*, or *to be willing*.

Indicative Mode.

PR.	Völ-o,	vis,	vult;	volūmus,	vultis,	volunt.
IMP.	Vol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Vol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uīmus,	-uistis,	} -uērunt or -ēre.
PLU.	Vol-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	
FUT.	Vol-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

PR.	Velim,	velis,	velit;	velīmus,	velitis,	velint.
IMP.	Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	vellētis,	vellent.
PER.	Vol-uērim,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-ueritis,	-uērint.
PLU.	Vol-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
FUT.	Vol-uēro,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uērint.

Infinitive Mode.

PR. *Velle.* PER. *Voluisse.*

Participle.

PR. *Volens.*

The rest not used.

¹ Of *Queo* and *Nequeo* these forms occur: *Quii*, Priscian, x. p. 905. 907. *Quiit*, Accius ap. Macrobi. vi. 1. *Quistis*, Juven. Hist. Ev. ii. 679. *Quiissent*, Auson. Epigr. cxxxix. 7. *Quisse*, Lucr. v. 1421. *Quiens*, Apul. Met. vi. 113. ix. 906. *Quitur*, Cæcil. ap. Diomed. i. p. 380. *Quitus*, Id. ibid. Apul. Apol. p. 402. Terent. Hecyr. iv. 1. 57. *Queuntur*, Cæcil. ap. Diomed. i. p. 380. *Queatur*, Lucr. i. 1043. *Queantur*, Plaut. Pers. ii. 2. 12. *Qui-tum*, (Supine) Priscian, ix. p. 867. *Neguiscent*, Lucr. iv. 1248. Sallust Jug. c. 18. *Neguitur*, Sallust, Jug. c. 34. Plaut. Rud. iv. 4. 20. *Neguitum*, Pacuv. ap. Fest. et Cato ibid. *Neguitus*, Caper Priscian. x. p. 899. *Neguiens*, Sallust, Fragm. Apul. Met. viii. p. 162. Auson. Prof. ii. sub. fin. Ammian. xv. 10.

² *Vis*, *vult*, *vultis*, or, as they were anciently written, *voll*, *vollis*, (Auson. Epigr. xxxix. Ter. Andr. v. 3. 1. Plaut. Most. iii. 2. 68. 71. Novius ap. Non. x. 18, &c.) are contractions of *vollis*, *vollu*, *vollitis*. In Lucil. lib. xxvii ap. Non. vii. 88. and Plaut. Asin. i. 2. 26. we find *Vollam* for *vellim*.

NOLO,¹ nolle, nolui. *To be unwilling.*

Indicative Mode.

PR.	Nôlo,	non-vis,	non-vult;	nôlîmus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
IMP.	Nol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ebant.
PER.	Nol-ai,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uîmus,	-uistis,	} -uērunt or -uēre
PLU.	Nol-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	
FUT.	Nolam,	noleas,	nolet;	nolēmus,	nolētis,	nolent.

Subjunctive Mode.

PR.	Nolim,	nolis,	nolit;	nolîmus,	nolitîs,	nolint.
IMP.	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollēmus,	nollētîs,	nollent.
PER.	Nol-uērim,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerîmus,	-uerîtîs,	-uērint.
PLU.	Nol-uissē,	-uissēs,	-uissēt;	-uissēmus,	-uissētîs,	-uissent.
FUT.	Nol-uēro,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerîmus,	-uerîtîs,	-uērint.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Participle.

	2 Sing.	2. Plur.			
PR.	} Noli or } Nolito.	} nolite or } nolitote.	PR.	Nolle.	PR. Nolens.
			PER.	Noluisse.	The rest wanting.

MALO,² malle, malui. *To be more willing.*

Indicative Mode.

PR.	Mâl-o,	mavis,	mavult;	malîmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
IMP.	Mal-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ebant.
PER.	Mal-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uîmus,	-uistis,	} -uērunt or -uēre.
PLU.	Mal-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	
FUT.	Mal-am,	-ea,	-et; &c.	<i>This is scarcely in use.</i>		

¹ *Nolo* is a contraction of *nôn vōlo*. For *nônvis* we find *nēvis*, Plaut. Trin. v. 2. 32. Most. iii. 2. 75. for *nônvult*, *nēvult*, Plaut. Most. i. 2. 29. *Nollis* for *nonvultis*, Lucil. ap. Diomed. i. p. 381. Putsch.

² *Malo* is a contraction of *māgîs*, or *māgē vōlo*. Of this Verb we find the following forms: *Māvōlo*, Plaut. Asin. v. 1. 8. Pers. i. 2. 90. *māvōlet*, Asin. i. 1. 108. *māvōlunt*, Næv. ap. Fest. in 'Stuprum'; *māvōluit*, Petron. Fragm. *māvōlîs*, Plaut. Truc. iv. 2. 29. *māvōlîs*, Capt. ii. 2. 20. Pseud. i. 2. 8. *māvōlîz*, Trin. ii. 2. 25. *māvōllem*, Plaut. Mil. ii. 2. 16. Amph. 1. 3. 14. Pseud. i. 1. 128.

Subjunctive Mode.

PR. Malim,	malis,	malit;	malimus,	malitis,	malint.
IMP. Mallem,	malles,	mallet;	mallēmus,	mallētis,	mallent.
PER. Mal-uērim,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-uerītis,	-uērint.
PLU. Mal-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uiassēmus,	-uiissetis,	-uissent.
FUT. Mal-uēro,	-uēris.	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-uerītis,	-uērint.

Infinitive Mode.

PR. Malle. PER. Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

FERO, ferre, tūli, lātum. *To carry, to bring, or suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

PR. Fēro,	fers,	fert;	ferīmus,	fertis,	ferunt.
IMP. Fer-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER. Tuli,	tulisti,	tulit;	tulīmus,	tulistis,	} tulērunt or -ēre.
PLU. Tul-ēram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	erāmus,	-erātis,	
FUT. Feram,	feres,	feret;	ferēmus,	ferētis,	ferent.

Subjunctive Mode.

PR. Feram,	feras,	ferat;	ferāmus,	ferātis,	ferant.
IMP. Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret;	ferrēmus,	ferrētis,	ferrent.
PER. Tul-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.
PLU. Tul-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.
FUT. Tul-ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.

Imperative Mode.

Infinitive Mode.

PR. Fer,	ferto;	{ ferte, fertôte,	ferunto,	PR. Ferre.
FERTO,				PER. Tulisse.
				FUT. Esse latūrus, -a, -um.
				Fuisse latūrus, -a, -um.

Participles.

Gerunds.

Supines.

PR. Fērens.
FUT. Latūrus, -a, -um.

Ferendum,
Ferendi,
Ferendo, &c.

1. Lātum,
2. Lātu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fēror, ferri, latus. To be brought.

Indicative Mode.

PR. Fēror,	{ ferriis, or ferre,	{ fertur; ferimur, ferimīni, feruntur.
IMP. Fer-ēbar.	{ -ebāris, or -ebāre,	{ -ebātur; -ebāmur, -ebāmīni, -ebantur.

PER. Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.

PLU. Latus eram, &c. latus fuēram, &c.

FUT. Ferar,	{ ferēris, or ferēre,	{ ferētur; ferēmur, feremīni, ferentur.
-------------	--------------------------	---

Subjunctive Mode.

PR. Ferar,	{ ferāris, or ferāre,	{ ferātur; ferāmur, feramīni, ferantur.
IMP. Ferrer.	{ ferrēris, or ferrēre,	{ ferrētur; ferrēmur, ferremīni, ferrentur.

PER. Latus sim, &c. latus fuērim, &c.

PLU. Latus essem, &c. latus fuissem, &c.

FUT. Latus fuēro, &c.

Imperative Mode. -

PR. Ferre or fertor, fertor; ferimīni, feruntor.

Infinitive Mode.

Participles.

PR. Ferri. PER. Latus, -a, -um.
 PER. Esse or fuisse latus, -a, -um, FUT. Ferendus, -a, -um.

In like manner are conjugated the Compounds of *fēro*; as, *affēro, attūli, allātum*; *aufēro, abstūli, ablātum*; *diffēro, distūli, dilātum*; *confēro, contūli, collātum*; *infēro, intūli, illātum*; *offēro, obtūli, oblātum*; *effēro, extūli, elātum*. So, *circum-, per-, trans-, de-, pro-, ante-, prae-, re-fēro*. In some writers we find *adfēro, adtūli, adlātum*; *conlātum*; *inlātum*; *obfēro*, &c. for *affēro*, &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo*; *malo* for *magis volo*; *fēro, fers, fert*, &c. for *feris, feris*, &c. *Fēror, ferri* or *ferre, fertur*, for *ferrēris*, &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dīco, dūco*, and *fācio*, are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dic, duc, fac*; instead of *dīce, dūce, fāce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

FIO,¹ fiēri, factus. *To be made or done, to become.*

Indicative Mode.

PR.	Fio,	fiſ,	fiť;	fiſus,	fiťis,	fiunt.
IMP.	Fiēbam,	fiēbas,	fiēbat;	fiēbāmus,	fiēbātis,	fiēbant.
PER.	Factus ſum, &c. factus fui, &c.					
PLU.	Factus eram, &c. factus fuēram, &c.					
FUT.	Fiam,	fies,	fiet;	fiēmus,	fiētis,	fient.

Subjunctive Mode.

PR.	Fiam,	fias,	fiat;	fiāmus,	fiātis,	fiant.
IMP.	Fiērem,	fiēres,	fiēret;	fiērēmus,	fiērētis,	fiērent.
PER.	Factus ſim, &c. factus fuērim, &c.					
PLU.	Factus eſſem, &c. factus fuiſſem, &c.					
FUT.	Factus fuēro, &c.					

Imperative Mode.

Infinitive Mode.

PR.	{ Fi, fiťo:	{ fiťe, fiāťo,	PR.	Fiēri.
		{ fiťōťe, fiāťōťe,	PER.	Esse or fuiſſe factus, -a, -um.
			FUT.	Factum iri.

Participles.

Supine.

PER.	Factus,	-a, -um.		Factu.
FUT.	Faciendus,	-a, -um.		

NOTE.—The Compounds of *facio* which retain *a*, have also *ſio* in the passive, and *ſac* in the imperative active; as *calefacio*, too warm, *caleſio*, *caleſac*: but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *ſice* in the imperative; as, *conficio*, *confice*; *conficior*, *confici*, *confectus*. We find, however, *confi*, it is done, and *confēri*; *deſi*, it is wanting; *inſi*, he begins.

Edo², ēdērē, ēdī, or esse, ēſtīſ, eat.

Infinitive Mode.

Present. Edērē, or esse.

Past. Edisse,

Future. Eaūrūſ, or ēſūrūſ esse.

¹ *Fāciōr*, the Passive of *Fācio*, very rarely occurs in the classics. *Fio* was used in its stead. *Fāciťur*, however, is read Nigid. ap. Non. x. 19. *Fāciťtur*, Petron. Frag. Priscian. viii. p. 101. Putsch. The Indicatives, *Fiſ*, *Fiťus*, and the Imperatives, *Fi*, *Fio*, *Fiťe*, *Fiťōťe*, rarely occur. *Fiſ* is read in Hor. ii. Ep. 2. 211. *Fiťus*, Arnob. ii. p. 53. and in some edd. of Terent. Heaut. iii. l. 74. ubi. al. *Siťus*. *Fi*, Hor. ii. Sat. 5. 38. Plaut. Cure. i. 87. *Fio*, 2d Pers. Cato ap. Non. vii. 62. *Fiťe*, Plaut. Cure. i. l. 89. *Fiťōťe*, Cato. Crassus, Liv. in Odyss. ap. Non. l. c. Of *Fiťis* no trace can be found. *Fiťens* occurs only in Diomed. i. pp. 352. 177. *Fiťur*, Cato ap. Priscian. viii. p. 789. *Fiťbantur*, id. ibid. *Fiťum est*, Liv. in Odyss. ap. Non. l. c.—*Fio* is sometimes used impersonally: *Fiť*, it happens; *Fiťbat*, it happened, &c.

² *Edo* is a regular Verb of the third Conjugation; but in the Infinitive and Imperative Modes, in the Present-imperfect Indicative, and the Imperfect Sub-

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Edo</i> , ēdīs, or ēs,	ēdīt, or est;	ēdīmūs,	ēdītis, or estis,	ēdunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Ed-ēbam</i> ,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt;	-ēbāmūs,	-ēbātis,
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Ed-ī</i> ,	-istī,	-it;	-imūs,	-istis,
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>Ed-ēram</i> ,	-ērās,	-ērāt;	-ērāmūs,	-ērātis,
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Ed-am</i> ,	-ēs,	-ēt;	-ēmūs,	-ētis,

ēdunt.
-ēbant.
-ērunť,
or -ēre.
-ērant.
-ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Ed-am</i> .	-ās,	-āt;	-āmūs,	-ātis,	-ant.
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Ed-ērem</i> ,	-ērēs,	-ērēt,	-ērēmūs,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
	or	or	or	or	or	or
	<i>Essem</i> ,	<i>essēs</i> ,	<i>essēt;</i>	<i>essēmūs</i> ,	<i>essētis</i> ,	<i>essent.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Ed-ērim</i> ,	-ērīs,	-ērīt;	-ērīmūs,	-ērītis,	-ērint.
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>Ed-issēm</i> ,	-issēs,	-issēt;	-issēmūs,	-issētis,	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Ed-ēro</i> ,	-ērīs,	-ērīt;	-ērīmūs,	-ērītis,	-ērint.

*Imperative Mode.**Singular.*

- No first person.
2. *Edē*, ēdītō, or ēs, esto,
3. **Edāt*, ēdītō, or esto.

Plural.

1. **Edāmūs*,
2. *Edīte*, ēdītōte, or estē, estōtē,
3. **Edant*, ēdunto.

Participles.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Edena</i> .	<i>Fut. in -RUS</i> , <i>Esūrūs</i> .
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Esūs</i> .	<i>Fut. in -DUS</i> , <i>Edendūs</i> .

Gerunds.

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Eden-di</i> ,
<i>Dat. & Abl.</i>	<i>Eden-do</i> ,
<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	<i>Edendum</i> .

Supines.

<i>Former</i> , <i>Esum</i> .
<i>Latter</i> , <i>Esū</i> .

junctive, it assumes other forms, as if from the Verb *Sum*. *Esse*, Cic. Nat. Deor. 11. 3. *Esse*, 'to be eaten,' Plaut. Most. 11. 2. 42. *Es*, Plaut. Cas. 11. 3. 32. *Est*, Hor. 11. Sat. 2. 57. 1. Epist. 2. 39. Virg. *Æn.* 11. 66. v. 683. *Essēs*, Val. Max. 11. 3. *Esset*, Virg. Georg. 1. 151. *Essēmūs*, Terent. Eun. 111. 4. 2. *Esto*, Cato R. R. 156. *Este*, Plaut. Most. 1. 1. 61. *Esus*, Gell. 11. 6. *Esūrus*, Ovid. Heroid. Epist. 11. 37. *Edens*, Ovid. Met. 11. 768. *Edendus*, Cic. de Amic. 69. Ovid. Heroid. Epist. 1. 95. *Esum*, Plaut. Stich. 1. 3. 29. *Esu*, Plaut. Pseud. 111. 2. 35. *Esum*, Priscian. x. p. 893. These forms also occur: *Esus sum*, 'I have eaten,' Solin. 17—27. *Edim*, *is*, *it*, for *Edam*, *as*, *at*, Plaut. Aul. 111. 2. 16. Pœn. 111. 1. 34. 11. 2. 45. Capt. 111. 1. 1. *Edītis* for *Edātis*, Cœcil. Nov. and Pompon. ap. Non. 11. 114. x. 18. Cf. Virg. *Æn.* 111. 801. Hor. Epod. 111. 3. *Cōmēdim*, *is*, *it*, Cic. Fam. 11. 20. Plaut. Curc. 11. 4. 4. *Edērim*, for *Edērim*, Apul. Met. 11. p. 152. 32. *Estur*, Sen. de Ira, 111. 15. Cels. v. 27. 3. Ovid. ex. Pont. 1. 1. 69. Plaut. Pœn. 11. 2. 13.—Of the quantity of *Es* no proof can be found. It would therefore be better to follow Servius, Vossius, Alvarex, and others, who suppose it long, than pronounce it short with some later grammarians.

NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called **NEUTER PASSIVE Verbs**, which, like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *sōleo, solēre, solitus*, to use; *audeo, audēre, ausus*, to dare; *gaudeo, gaudēre, gavisus*, to rejoice; *fido, fidere, fisis*, to trust. So, *confido*, to trust; and *diffido*, to distrust; which also have *confidi* and *diffidi*. Some add *mareo, merēre, mæstus*, to be sad; but *mæstus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *jūrātus sum* and *cōnātus sum*, for *jūrāvi* and *cōnāvi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *vapūlo, -āvi, -ātum*, to be beaten or whipped; *vēneo*, to be sold; *exūlo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

DEFECTIVE VERBS are those of which several Tenses and Persons are not found in the ancient classics. The Verbs usually so called are, 1. *Aio*, 'I say;' 2. *Inquo*, 'I say;' 3. *Fari*, 'to speak;' 4. *Apāge*, 'begone;' 5. *Ave*, 'hail;' 6. *Salve*, 'hail;' 7. *Ausim*, 'I dare;' 8. *Cedo*, 'give me, tell me;' 9. *Confit*, 'it is done;' 10. *Defit*, 'it is wanting;' 11. *Infit*, 'he begins;' 12. *Ovat*, 'he rejoices;' 13. *Quæso*, 'I pray;' 14. *Faxo*, 'I will take care;' 15. *Odi*, 'I hate;' *Memini*, 'I remember;' *Cæpi*, 'I have begun.'

1. **IND. Pres. Sing.** *Aio*, Plaut. Capt. i. 1. 3. *Ais*, Hor. ii. Sat. 7. 67. *Ai*, Terent. Andr. v. 4. 4. **Plur.** *Aiunt*, Terent. Andr. ii. 1. 21.—**Imp. Sing.** *Aiēbam*, Hor. i. Sat. ix. 12. *Aiēbas*, Plaut. Men. iii. 3. 9. *Aiēbat*, Cic. Verr. iii. 18. **Plur.** [*Aiēbamus*, Diomed. p. 371. Putsch.] *Aiēbātis*, Plaut. Capt. iii. 5. 18. *Aiēbant*, Sallust. Cat. c. 49. [*Aiēbant*, Accius ap. Priscian. x. p. 906.]—**Perf. Sing.** [*Ai*, Prob. Gram. p. 1482. *Aisti*, id-m. ibid. et Augustin. Epist. 54. et 174. *Ai*, Prob. ibid. **Plur.** *Aistis*, Gramm. *Aiērunt*, Tertul. de Fug. in Persec. c. 6.]

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Aias*, Plaut. Rud. ii. 4. 14. *Aiat*, Cic. de Fin. ii. 22. **Plur.** [*Aiāmus*, Priscian. i. l.] *Aiant*, Apul. Apol. p. 448.

IMPERAT. *Ai*, Næv. ap. Priscian. x. p. 906. et Plaut. Truc. v. 49.

PARTICIP. *Aiens*, Cic. Top. c. 11. et Apul. Met. vi. p. 118.

The Infinitive *Aiēre*, occurs in St. Augustin, de Trinit. ix. 10. *Aia*, do you

say so? *Plant. Amph. i. 1. 188. Apul. Met. i. p. 6. The ancients wrote, Aïio, aïis, aïit. See Quintil. i. 4. Voss. Etym. Lat. p. 132. and Anal. iii. p. 140.*

2. IND. Pres. Sing. *Inquo*, Catul. x. 27. or *Inquam*, Cic. Phil. ii. 44. *Inquit*, Hor. i. 4. 78. *Inquit*, Nepos Alcib. c. 8. *Inquitmus*, Hor. i. Sat. 3. 66. *Inquitis*, Arnob. ii. p. 44. *Inquunt*, Cic. Verr. vi. 14.—Imp. Sing. *Inquiebat*, al. *Inquibat*, Cic. Top. 12. Plur. [*Inquibant*, Grammatici].—Fut. Sing. *Inquies*, Catull. xxiv. 7. *Inquiet*, Cic. Verr. iv. 18.—Perf. Sing. *Inquisti*, Cic. de Orat. ii. 64. *Inquit*, Cic. pro Cluent. c. 34.

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Inquial*, Auct. ad Heren. iv. 3.

IMPERAT. Sing. *Inquē*, Terent. Heaut. iv. 7. 1. *Inquillo*, Plaut. Aulul. iv. 10. 58. Rud. v. 2. 55.

PARTICIP. [*Inquiens*, Grammatici.]

Inquo, according to Priscian, lib. x. is of the third Conj. but according to Diomed. i. p. 375, of the fourth. *Inquist* occurs in some edd. of Catull. x. 14. and *Inqui* ibid. vs. 27. *Inquit* and *Inquam* are of frequent occurrence. Vid. Voss. Etym. Lat. p. 133. and Anal. iii. 40.

3. INFIN. *Fāri*, Horat. iv. Od. 6. 18. *Fārier*, Virg. *Æn.* xi. 242.

INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Fātur*, he speaks, Val. Flac. iii. 616. Virg. *Æn.* i. 131. et passim. *Fātur*, is spoken, Sueton. ap. Priscian. viii. p. 793.—Fut. *Fābor*, Propert. iv. 4. 1. *Fābitur*, Gell. xv. 6.

SUBJ. Imp. *Fārer*, St. August. Conf. i. 8.

IMPERAT. *Fāre*, Virg. *Æn.* v. 389. et passim. *Fāmīno*, Cato R. R. c. 141.

PARTICIP. Pres. *Fans*, Plaut. Pers. ii. 1. 7. Propert. iii. 5. 19.—Perf. *Fātus*, Virg. *Æn.* ii. 323. et passim.—Fut. in *-dus*, *Fandus*, Pacuv. ap. Cic. de Divin. i. 31.

GERUNDS: *Fandi*, Virg. *Æn.* x. 225. et passim. *Fando*, in or by speaking, Stat. Theb. i. 655. *Fando*, by report, by hearsay, Cic. Nat. Deor. i. 29.

SUPINE: *Fātu*, Virg. *Æn.* xii. 25.

Fār and *Fāris* do not occur in the classics, although cited by Diomed. i. p. 375. and by Priscian. viii. p. 791. Neither does, *Der*, nor the Subjunctives *Fer*, *Der*. Similarly defective are the Compounds *Affāri*, *Effāri*, *Profāri*.

4. IMPERAT. Sing. and Plur. *Apāgē* is considered by some as an Interjection. *Apāgēte* is found in Oudendorp's ed. of Apul. Met. i. p. 13. Elmenh. also in Cic. Fam. v. 10. Terent. Eun. v. 2. 65. Plaut. Cas. ii. 8. 24. Amph. ii. 1. 32. where the best Mss. and most edd. have *Apāgē te*. See Facioliati's Lat. Lex.

5. INFIN. *Avēre*, Martial, i. 109. iii. 5.

IMPERAT. Sing. *Ave*, Martial, iii. 95. et passim. *Avēto*, Sallust. Cat. c. 35. Plur. *Avētū*, Grut. Inscr. p. 735. n. 6. Sueton. Claud. c. 21.

The Eton and other grammars add *Avētōte* for which there is no authority. Some write *Hāvē*, *hāvēre*, &c. Quintil. Inst. i. 6. finds fault with many learned men of his day for writing and saying *Avēte*, with the second syllable long, in place of *Hāvēte*, with an aspiration and the second syll. short.—The Verb *Aveo*, I covet, is complete.

6. INFIN. *Salvēre*, Plaut. Rud. i. 5. 5. Petron. c. 98.

IND. Fut. *Salvēbis* (for *Salve*) Cic. Att. vi. 2.

IMPERAT. Sing. *Salve*, Virg. Geo. ii. 173. *Æn.* xi. 97. et passim. *Salvēto*, Plaut. Rud. ii. 4. 3. Men. v. 9. 17. Plur. *Salvēte*, Plaut. Trin. iii. 2. 39.

Salveo is humorously put in the mouth of a clown by Plautus, Truc. II. 2. 4. To the Defectives *Ave* and *Salve*, some add *Vale, vālēte, vālēbis, vāleas*; but these come from *Vāleo*, I am well.

7. SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Ausim*, Virg. Ecl. III. 32. et passim; *Ausis*, Fest. et Lactant. de Pass. Dom. vs. 66. where some read *Ausēris*; *Ausit*, Stat. Theb. XII. 101. Achil. I. 544. Plur. *Ausint*, Stat. Theb. XI. 126. See Voss. de Anal. III. 41. p. 124.

8. IMPERAT. Sing. *Cādō*, Cic. de Orat. c. 86. et passim. Plur. *Cette*, Plaut. Merc. v. 4. 4. Enn. ap. Non. II. 122. Accius, ibid.

Cādō is used in the Plur. Cic. Senect. c. 6. *Cette* is a contraction of *Cādite* which last some cite from the Fragm. of Plautus, p. 1216. ed. Gronov., but it is very uncertain.

9. INFIN. *Confīrēri*, Cæs. B. G. VII. 58.

INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Confīt*, Lucr. IV. 292. Terent. Adelph. v. 8. 23. Plur. *Confūnt*, Arnob. VI. p. 219.—Fut. Sing. *Confiet*, Lucr. III. 413.

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Confiat*, Colum. I. 8. Imp. Sing. *Confīret*, Liv. v. 50. Cic. ad Att. IX. 8. VIII. 15. Liv. v. 50. Plur. *Confīrent*, Arnob. II. p. 73.

10. INFIN. *Dēfīrēri*, Terent. Hecyr. v. 2. 1. Liv. IX. 11.

INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Dēfī*, Virg. Ecl. II. 22. et passim; Plur. *Dēfūnt*, Gell. XX. 8.—Fut. Sing. *Dēfiet*, Liv. IX. 11. ubi al. *Dēficiet*.

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Dēfiat*, Plaut. Men. I. 4. 3. Rud. IV. 4. 63.

11. INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Infī*, Virg. Æn. v. 708. Lucr. III. 516. et passim; Plur. *Infūnt*, Mart. Capell. II. in fin.

Infīo, Varr. ap. Priscian. VIII. p. 818. '*Infe, ap̄as* i. e. incipe,' in Glossis. Some to these add *Explicīt*, it is finished.

12. INDIC. Pres. Sing. [*Ovas*, Grammatici:] *Ovat*, Val. Flac. II. 506. IV. 342. Virg. Æn. X. 500.

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Ovet*, Stat. Sylv. IV. 1. 8.—Past-imp. Sing. *Ovāret*, Gell. VI. 7.

PARTICIP. *Ovans*, Liv. v. 31. Cic. de Orat. c. 47. et passim. *Ovātus*, Persius, II. 55. *Ovātūrus*, Solin. cap. 45—57.

GERUND. *Ovandi*, Sueton. Claud. c. I. Gell. v. 6. 5.

13. INFIN. *Quasēre*, Plaut. Bacch. II. 2. 1.

INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Quasō*, Terent. Eun. III. 2. 13. *Quasit*, Lucr. v. 1229. Plur. *Quasīmus*, Sil. XVI. 250. et passim.

IMPERAT. *Quasē*, Plaut. ap. Non. I. 213. IV. 39.

PARTICIP. *Quasens*, Apul. Met. IV. p. 70. Elmenh.

Quasēs, given in some grammars, does not occur in the classics. *Quasē*, Perf. Priscian, x. p. 505. ed. Krehl. *Quasīvit*, Sallust. ap. Priscian. ibid. who says that *Quasīvi* is a perfect common to *Quasō* and *Quasēre*.

14. INDIC. Fut. Sing. *Faxo*, for *fāciam*, or *fēcēro*, Virg. Æn. IX. 158. et passim.

SUBJ. Perf. Sing. *Faxim*, for *fēcērim*, Plaut. Amph. I. 3. 13. et passim; *Faxis*, Terent. Andr. IV. 4. 14. *Faxit*, Cic. de Leg. II. 8. *Faximus*, Plaut. Truc. I. 1. 40. Plur. *Faxitis*, Liv. XXIX. 27. *Faxint*, Terent. Heaut. I. 1. 9. et passim.—Imp. *Faxim*, for *fācērem*, or *fēcīssēm*, Plaut. Pseud. I. 5. 84.

15. These three, *Odi*, *Capi*, and *Mēmīni*, are only used in the preterite tenses ; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs* ; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification ; thus,

Odi, I hate, or have hated, *odēram*, *odērim*, *odissem*, *odēro*, *odisse*. Participles, *okus*, *osūrus* ; *exōsus*, *perōsus*.

Capi, I begin, or have begun, *caspēram*, *-ērim*, *-issem*, *-ēro*, *-isse*. Supine, *capitum*. Participles, *capitū*, *capitūrus*.

Mēmīni, I remember, or have remembered, *meminēram*, *-ērim*, *-issem*, *-ēro*, *-isse*. Imperative, *memento*, *mementōte*.

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say, *okus sum* : and always *exōsus*, *perōsus sum*, and not *exōdi*, *perōdi*. We say, *opus capit fieri*, or *capitum est*.

The following forms also occur : *Odio*, C. Gracch. ap. Fest. *Odivit*, Cic. Phil. xiii. 19. *Odiit*, Tertul. de An. c. 10. *Odiēs*, Tertul. adv. Marc. iv. 35. *Osus sum*, Plaut. Amph. iii. 2. 19. Gell. iv. 18. *Osūrus*, Cic. de Amic. c. 16. *Odiendi*, Apul. de D. Plat. iii. p. 631. *Odiens*, Petron. c. 132. *Odientes*, Tertul. adv. Marc. iv. 16. *Odērem* et *Odēre*, infin. Charis. iii. p. 228. *Oditur*, Tertul. Apol. iii. in fin. *Odūrēmur*, Hieronym. Epist. 43.—*Capio*, Plaut. Men. v. 5. 67. *Caspeam*, Cato ap. Fest. *Capiat*, Plaut. Truc. ii. 1. 23. *Caspēret*, Terent. An. iii. 3. 43. edd. Rivii, Faern. et Bothe ; sic. codd. Benti. Bæcl. et Donat. et Priscian. x. p. 879. *Caspērit* al. *Caspēre*, Plaut. Pers. i. 3. 41. *Cauptus est*, Cæs. B. G. iv. 18. *Cauptūrus* Quintil. x. l. Plin. N. H. xvi. 25. Cf. Cæcil. ap. Non. ii. 159.—*Mēmīnus*, Liv. ap. Priscian. xi. p. 922. Auson. Prof. ii. 4. Sidon. ii. 10. ad. fin. iv. 12. vl. 3. vii. 6.

Some to the *Defective Verbs* add *Nōvi*, I know ; but this is the Perfect of *Noceo*, I am learning. See Voas. Anal. iii. 39.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any person or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs, in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person ; thus, *dēlectat*, it delights ; *dēcet*, it becomes ; *contingit*, it happens ; *evēnit*, it happens.

	1st. Conj.	2d. Conj.	3d. Conj.	4th. Conj.
Ind.	PR. Delectat. IMP. Delectābat, PER. Delectāvit, PLU. Delectavērat, FUT. Delectābit.	Dēcet, Decēbat, Decuit, Decuērat, Decēbit.	Contingit, Contingēbat, Contigit, Contigērat, Continget.	Evēnit, Eveniēbat, Evēnit, Evenērat, Eveniet.
Sub.	PR. Delectet, IMP. Delectāret, PER. Delectavērit, PLU. Delectavisset, FUT. Delectavērit.	Dēcreat, Decēret, Decuērit, Decuisset, Decuērit.	Contingat, Contingēret, Contigrit, Contigisset, Contigērit.	Eveniat, Eveniret, Evenērit, Evenisset, Evenērit.
Inf.	PR. Delectāre. PER. Delectavisse.	Decēre. Decuisse.	Contingēre. Contigisse.	Evenire. Evenisse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive ; as, *pugnātur*, *fāvētur*, *curritur*, *venitur* : from *pugno*, to fight ; *faveo*, to favour ; *curro*, to run ; *venio*, to come.

Ind.	PR. Pugnātur,	Fāvētur,	Curritur,	Vēnītur,
	IMP. Pugnabātur,	Favebātur,	Currebātur,	Veniebātur,
	PER. Pugnātum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
	PLU. Pugnātum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat,
	FUT. Pugnabūtur.	Favebūtur.	Curretur.	Veniētur.
Sub.	PR. Pugnētur,	Faveātur,	Curritur,	Veniātur,
	IMP. Pugnaretur,	Faveretur,	Curretur,	Veniretur,
	PER. Pugnātum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
	PLU. Pugnātum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
	FUT. Pugnātum fuērit.	Fautum fuērit.	Cursum fuērit.	Ventum fuērit.
Inf.	PR. Pugnāri.	Favēri.	Curri.	Veniri.
	PER. Pugnātum esse.	Fautum esse.	Cursum esse.	Ventum esse.
	FUT. Pugnātum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative ; but instead of that we use the subjunctive ; as, *delectet*, let it delight ; &c. nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few ; as, *penitens*, -*dum*, -*dus*, &c. *Indūci ad pudendum et pigendum*. Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation ; *dēcet*, it becomes ; *pēnitēt*, it repents ; *oportet*, it behoves ; *misēret*, it pities ; *piget*, it irketh ; *pudet*, it shameth ; *licet*, it is lawful ; *libet* or *libet*, it pleaseth ; *tædet*, it wearieeth ; *liquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite ; *misēret*, *miseruit*, or *miseritum est* ; *piget*, *piguit*, or *pigitum est* ; *pudet*, *pudivit*, or *pudivitum est* ; *licet*, *licuit*, or *licitum est* ; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libitum est* ; *tædet*, *tædavit*, *tæsum est*, oftener, *pertassum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations.

In the first, *Juvat*, *spectat*, *vācat*, *stat*, *constat*, *præstat*, *restat*, &c.

In the second, *Appāret*, *attinet*, *pertinet*, *dēbet*, *dōlet*, *nōcet*, *lūlet*, *liquet*, *pātet*, *plācet*, *displicet*, *sēdet*, *sōlet*, &c.

In the third, *Accidit*, *incipit*, *destinit*, *sufficit*, &c.

In the fourth, *Convēnit*, *expēdit*, &c.

Also, irregular verbs, *Est*, *obest*, *prōdest*, *pōtest*, *intērest*, *supērest* ; *fit*, *præstitit*, *nēquit*, and *nequitur*, *subit*, *confert*, *rēfert*, &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature ; as, *Fulgurat*, *fulminat*, *tonat*, *grandinat*, *gēlat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *lucescit*, *advesperascit*, &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern ; as, *placet mihi*, *tibi*, *illi*, it pleases me, thee, him ; or I please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnatur a me*, *a te*, *ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So, *Curritur*, *venitur a me*, *a te*, &c. I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favetur tibi a me*, Thou art favoured by me, or I favour thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally, or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus, we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *hi places audire*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire*. So we can say, *multa homini contingunt*, many things happen to a man; but instead of *ego contigisse esse domi* we must either say, *me contigit esse domi*, or *mihi contigit esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called REDUNDANT VERBS, which have different forms to express the same sense. Some are *Redundant* 1. in Signification; as, *Criminor*, 'I blame or I am blamed;' 2. in Termination; as, *Fabrico* and *Fabricor*, 'I frame;' 3. in Conjugation; as, *Lavo*, *lavare*, and *Lavo*, *lavère*, 'I wash;' 4. in Tenses; as, *Suesco*, 'I am accustomed,' Perf. *Suèvi* and *Suetus sum*.

I. Verbs of the same signification used in different Conjugations :

Cio, <i>ēs</i> , *Cio, <i>is</i> ,	<i>stir up.</i>	Lino, <i>is</i> , Līno, <i>is</i> ,	<i>anoint.</i>
Claudo, <i>is</i> , Claudeo, <i>ās</i> ,	<i>be lame.</i>	*Nexo, <i>ās</i> , *Nexo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>knit.</i>
*Denseo, <i>ās</i> , *Denso, <i>ās</i> ,	<i>thicken.</i>	*Oleo, <i>ēs</i> , Olo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>smell.</i>
Excello, <i>is</i> , Excelleo, <i>ēs</i> ,	<i>excel.</i>	*Scāteo, <i>ēs</i> , *Scato, <i>is</i> ,	<i>abound.</i>
*Ferveo, <i>ēs</i> , *Fervo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>be hot.</i>	*Strideo, <i>ēs</i> , Strido, <i>is</i> ,	<i>creak.</i>
Fōdio, <i>is</i> , Fōdio, <i>is</i> ,	<i>dig.</i>	Tergeo, <i>ēs</i> , Tergo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>wipe.</i>
*Fulgeo, <i>ēs</i> , Fulgo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>shine.</i>	Tueor, <i>ēris</i> , Tueor, <i>ēris</i> ,	<i>behold, protest.</i>
Lāvo, <i>ās</i> , Lāvo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>wash.</i>		

II. Verbs spelt alike, or nearly alike, but differing in sound or signification :

Abdico, <i>ās</i> ,	<i>abdicate.</i>	Caelo, <i>ās</i> ,	<i>curve.</i>
Abdico, <i>is</i> ,	<i>refuse.</i>	Censeo, <i>ēs</i> ,	<i>think.</i>
*Accido, <i>is</i> ,	<i>happen.</i>	Sentio, <i>is</i> ,	<i>feel.</i>
Accido, <i>is</i> ,	<i>cut short.</i>	Claudo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>shut.</i>
Addo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>add.</i>	*Claudo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>be lame.</i>
Adeo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>go to.</i>	Colligo, <i>ās</i> ,	<i>tie together.</i>
Aggéro, <i>ās</i> ,	<i>heap up.</i>	Colligo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>collect.</i>
Aggéro, <i>is</i> ,	<i>lay in a heap.</i>	Cōlo, <i>ās</i> ,	<i>strain.</i>
Allégo, <i>ās</i> ,	<i>plead, send.</i>	Cōlo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>till, deck.</i>
Allégo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>choose.</i>	Compello, <i>ās</i> ,	<i>accost.</i>
Appello, <i>ās</i> ,	<i>call.</i>	Compello, <i>is</i> ,	<i>force.</i>
Appello, <i>is</i> ,	<i>drive, land.</i>	Concido, <i>is</i> ,	<i>chop off.</i>
*Cādo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>fall.</i>	*Concido, <i>is</i> ,	<i>fall.</i>
Cādo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>bent.</i>	Conscendo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>climb.</i>
Cēdo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>yield.</i>	Conscindo, <i>is</i> ,	<i>cut in pieces.</i>
*Cāleo, <i>ēs</i> ,	<i>be hot.</i>	Consterno, <i>ās</i> ,	<i>terrify.</i>
*Calleo, <i>ēs</i> ,	<i>be hard.</i>	Consterno, <i>is</i> ,	<i>strew over.</i>
*Cāno, <i>is</i> ,	<i>sing.</i>	*Dēcido, <i>is</i> ,	<i>fall down.</i>
*Cāneo, <i>ēs</i> ,	<i>be white.</i>	Dēcido, <i>is</i> ,	<i>cut off.</i>
*Cāreo, <i>ēs</i> ,	<i>want.</i>	Dēcipio, <i>is</i> ,	<i>deceive.</i>
*Cāro, <i>is</i> ,	<i>card wool.</i>	*Dēcipio, <i>is</i> ,	<i>dote.</i>
Cōlo, <i>ās</i> ,	<i>conceal.</i>	Dēligo, <i>ās</i> ,	<i>tie up.</i>

Dēlīgo, īs,	choose.	Nīcto, īs,	open as a wound.
Dillīgo, īs,	love.	*Nīteo, ēs,	glitter.
Dīco, īs,	say.	Nītor, ēris,	strive.
Dīco, ās,	dedicate.	Obseō, ās,	lock up.
Edo, īs,	eat.	Obseō, īs,	sow, plant.
Edo, īs,	publish.	*Occīdo, īs,	fall.
Edūco, ās,	educate.	Occīdo, īs,	kill.
Edūco, īs,	draw out.	Opērio, īs,	cover.
Effēro, ās,	make wild.	*Oppērior, īris,	wait for.
Effēro, effers,	carry off, lift up.	Opāror, āris,	work.
*Excīdo, īs,	fall out.	Pando, ās,	bend, bow.
Excīdo, īs,	cut off.	Pando, īs,	open, spread.
*Fērio, īs,	strike.	Pāro, ās,	prepare.
Fēro, fers,	bear.	*Pāreo, ēs,	appear.
Fērior, āris,	keep holiday.	Pārio, īs,	beget.
*Frīgeo, ēs,	be cold.	*Pārio, ās,	balance.
Frigo, īs,	fry.	*Pēdo, īs,	spade
Fugo, ās,	put to flight.	Pēdo, āro,	prop up.
*Fugio, īs,	fly.	*Pendeo, ēs,	hang.
Fundo, ās,	found.	Pendo, īs,	weigh.
Fundo, īs,	pour out.	Percōlo, ās,	filter.
*Incīdo, īs,	fall into.	Percōlo, īs,	adorn.
Incīdo, īs,	cut.	*Permāneo, ēs,	remain.
Indīco, ās,	show.	*Permāno, ās,	flow over.
Indīco, īs,	proclaim.	Prædīco, ās,	publish.
Infīcio, īs,	infect.	Prædīco, īs,	foretel.
Infītor, āris,	deny.	Prælēgo, ās,	bequeath in the first
*Intercīdo, īs,	happen.	Prælēgo, īs,	place.
Intercīdo, īs,	cut asunder.	Prōdo, īs,	read to one.
Jaceo, ēs,	lie, lie down.	*Prōdeo, ēs,	betray.
Jācio, īs,	throw.	*Rēcēdo, īs,	come forth.
*Lābo, ās,	toller.	*Rēcīdo, īs,	retire.
Lābor, ēris,	slip, glide.	Rēcīdo, īs,	fall back.
*Lacto, ās,	suckle, suck.	Rēcīdo, īs,	cut off.
*Lacto, ās,	deceive.	Reddo, īs,	restore.
*Lacteo, ēs,	grow milky.	*Redeo, īs,	return.
Lēgo, ās,	send.	Rēfēro, refers,	bring back.
Lēgo, īs,	gather, read.	*Rēfērio, īs,	strike again.
Līceo, ēs,	be lawful.	Rēlēgo, ās,	remove.
Līceor, ēris,	bid for.	Rēlēgo, īs,	read over.
Līquo, ās,	mell.	Sēdo, ās,	allay.
*Līqueo, ēs,	becomes liquid, be manifest.	*Sēdeo, ēs,	sit.
		*Sīdo, īs,	sink.
*Līquor, ēris,	mell.	*Sēro, īs,	sow.
*Māno, ās,	flow.	Sēro, īs,	knit, join.
*Māneo, ēs,	stay.	Sēro, ās,	lock, bolt.
Mando, ās,	deliver.	*Succīdo, īs,	fall down.
Mando, īs,	eat.	Succīdo, īs,	cut down.
Mēto, īs,	mow, reap.	*Vādo, īs,	go, walk.
Mētor, āris,	measure.	Vādor, āris,	give bail.
Mētiōr īris,	measure.	*Vēneo, īs,	be sold.
Mētuo, īs,	fear.	*Vēnio, īs,	come.
Misēror, āris,	pity.	Vēnor, āris,	hunt.
Misēreor, ēris,	pity.	Vīncio, īs,	bind.
Mōror, āris,	delay.	Vīnco, īs,	conquer.
*Mōror, āris,	play the fool.	Vōlo, ās,	fly, hasten.
Mōrior, ēris,	die.	*Vōlo, vīs,	be willing.
*Nīcto, ās,	wink.		

III. Verbs having the same Perfect:

*Aceo, ācui,	be sharp.	Acuo, ācui,	sharpen.
Cresco, crēvi,	grow.	Cerno, crēvi,	take possession.
*Fulgeo, fulsi,	shine.	Fulcio, fulsi,	prop.
*Lūceo, luxi,	shine.	*Lūgeo, luxi,	mourn.
Mulceo, mulsi,	soothe	*Mulgeo, mulsi,	milk.
*Pāveo, pāvi,	fear.	Pasco, pāvi,	feed.
*Pendeo, pēpendi,	hang.	Pendo, pēpendi,	weigh.

To these add *Sto*, *Sisto*, and some of their Compounds.

IV. Verbs having the same Perfect Participle:

Cerno, crētus,	sift.	Pando, passus,	expand.
Cresco, crētus,	grow.	Pātor, passus,	suffer.
Pāscior, pactus,	bargain.	Vergo, versus,	incline.
Pāgo, pactus,	lay a wager.	Verro, versus,	brush.
Pango, pactus,	fasten.	Verto, versus,	turn.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

I. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative*; as,

Cæno, to sup; *laudo*, to praise; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapido*, to throw stones; *apōror*, to work; *frumentor*, to forage; *lignor*, to gather fuel; &c. from *cæna*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *Patrisso*, *Græcor*, *būbūla*, *cornīcor*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Grecian, an owl, a crow, &c. from *pater*, *Græcus*, *bubo*, *cornix*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātū* into *ītū*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamītū*, to cry frequently; *terreo*, *terrītū*; *verto*, *versō*; *dormio*, *dormītū*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minītor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no*; *nosūtū*, from *nosco*; *scītor*, or rather *sciātor*, from *scio*; *pavītū*, from *paveo*, *sector*, from *sequor*; *loquītū*, from *loquor*. So, *querītū*, *fundītū*, *agītū*, *fluītū*, &c.

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other Frequentatives; as, *curro*, *curūtū*; *pello*, *pulsū*, *pulsītū*, or by contraction *pulso*; *capio*, *capto*, *capītū*; *cano*, *canto*, *cantītū*; *defendo*, *defenso*, *defensītū*; *dico*, *dicto*, *dictītū*; *gero*, *gesto*, *gestītū*; *jacio*, *jacto*, *jactītū*; *venio*, *vento*, *ventītū*; *mutio*, *musso*, (for *muītū*), *muītū*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE Verbs* mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person singular of the present of the indicative, by adding *co*; as, *caleo*, to be hot; *cales*, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labasco*, from *labo*; *tremisco*, from *tremo*; *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hisco*, from *hio*, is contracted for *hiasco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*; *juvenesco*, from *juvénis*.

All Inceptives are neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE Verbs* signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u*; as, *cônâtûrio*, I desire to sup, from *cônâtu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *esûrio*, -*ivi*, -*itum*, to desire to eat; *partûrio*, -*ivi*,—to be in travail; *nuptûrio*, -*ivi*, —, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in *LLO*, which are called *DIMINUTIVE*; as, *cantillo*, *sorbillo*, -*äre*, I sing, I sup a little. To these some add *albico*, and *candico*, -*äre*, to be, or to grow whitish; also, *nigrîco*, *fodico*, and *vellico*. Some verbs in *SSO* are called *Intensive*; as, *Capesso*, *facesso*, *pelesso*, or *petisso*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

II. Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of the simple verbs are not in use; as, *Fûto*, *fendo*, *specio*, *gruo*, &c. The component parts usually remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prodeo*, for *pro-eo*; or taken away; as, *asporto*, *omîto*, *trado*, *pejêro*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *præben*, &c. for *absporto*, *obmîto*, *transdo*, *perjêro*, *perrêgo*, *dehibeo*, *præhibeo*, &c. So, *demo*, *promo*, *sumo*, of *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified, *to take*, or *to take away*. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition is changed; as, *damno*, *condemno*; *calco*, *conculco*; *lædo*, *collido*; *audio*, *obedio*, &c. *Afêro*, *aufêro*, *collaudo*, *implico*, &c. for *adfêro*, *abfêro*, *conlaudo*, *inplico*, &c.

REMARKS ON THE VERB.

A VERB has been defined as a word which signifies *doing*, *suffering*, or *being*. It would have been more simple and much more intelligible to have said, A verb is that part of speech which MENTIONS SOME ACT, EVENT, or CIRCUMSTANCE of or concerning PERSONS, PLACES, THINGS, or IDEAS; as, *Cæsar vicit*, Cæsar conquered; *Rôma ruit*, Rome falls; *Argentum splendet*, silver shines; *Próbûtas laudâtur et alget*, honesty is praised and starves. A Verb being the most essential word in a sentence, and without which a sentence cannot subsist, any word that, placed after the names of Persons, Places, Things, or Ideas, will make full sense, is a Verb. An English Verb may be known by its making sense with the words *he will*, or *it shall*, placed before it; as, *He will conquer*, *It shall fail*.

The letters which precede the Infinitive terminations, -*äre*, -*êre*, -*êre*, -*îre*, are called *Radicals*, and always remain unchanged. Thus, *Am* is the radical part of *Amâre*; *Môn* of *Mônêre*; *Rêg* of *Rêgêre*; *Aud* of *Audîre*. By prefixing the radicals

to the changeable parts, or terminations, which are the same in all Verbs of a similar Conjugation, every person of the simple Tenses of a regular Verb may be formed with the greatest facility.

Verbs seem to have had but one uncontracted Conjugation originally. At present there are four Conjugations; one uncontracted in *-ère*, as *Lègère*; and three contracted in (*être*) *-äre*, as *Amäre*; in (*-être*) *-ëre*, as *Mönëre*; and in (*être*) *-ire*, as *Audire*. Charis. lib. II. and some other ancient grammarians admit of but three Conjugations; and Vossius de Anal. III. 33. shows the fourth to be a mere contraction of the third.

The Participles in *-rus* and *-dus* in the Future Infinitive and the Perfect Participle in the Past Infinitive Passive are used only in the Nom. and Accus. but in all Genders and Numbers; as, *Amätürus*, -a, -um, *esse*; *Amatur-um*, -am, -um, *esse*; *Amatur-i*, -æ, -a *esse*; *Amatur-os*, -as, -a *esse*; *Amatur-us*, a, -um *fuisse*; *Amatur-um*, -am, -um *fuisse*, &c. *Amät-us*, -a, -um *esse*; *Amat-um*, -am, -um *esse*; *Amat-i*, -æ, -a *esse*, &c. In the Future Infinitive Passive the termination *-um* of the Supine remains always unchanged. The Past Infinitive Passive seems to have been anciently of no certain Gender. In Plautus, Amph. Prol. 33. we read, *Justam rem et facilem esse oratum a vobis volo*; and in Cic. Att. VIII. 18. *Cohortes ad me missum facias*. The Neuter of the Future in *-rus* is found contracted in the same manner. See Cic. II. Ver. v. 65. Aul. Gell. I. 7. Lambin. ad Plaut. Casin. III. 5. 37. Jan. Gulielm. Quæst. Plaut. p. 4. Voss. de Anal. III. 16. Perizon. ad Sanct. Min. I. 15. p. 125.

To the Present Infinitive Passive the syllable *-er* was occasionally added by the early poets; as, *Amärier* for *Amari*; *Färier* for *Färi*. So *Dicier*, Pers. Sat. I. 28.

The Future Infinitive Active occurs sometimes in *-ssere*; as, *Expugnassere*, Plaut. Amph. I. 1. 55. *Impetrassere*, Aul. IV. 7. 6. Casin. II. 3. 53. Mil. IV. 3. 35. Stich. I. 2. 23. *Pæconciliassere*, Capt. I. 2. 65.

The Perfect Infinitive Active is frequently contracted; the syllable *vi* is omitted before *s*; as, *Amasse*, *Complesse*, *Nosæ*, *Isse*, &c. Also, *Cesse*, Lucr. I. 1104. *Consumse*, I. 234. *Divisse*, Hor. II. Sat. 3. 169. *Dixe*, Non. v. 17. *Prædixæ*, Ter. Ad. IV. 2. 22. *Præmissæ*, Catull. ex. 5. *Subduxe*, Varr., &c. In the 4th Conj. *vi* or *v* only is omitted; as, *Perisse*, Plaut. Capt. III. 5. 35. *Perisse*, Aul. II. 4. 21. A similar contraction takes place in the Perfects of the Indicative and Subjunctive; *vi* is dropped before *s*, and *ve* before *r*. Of Perfects in *-ovi*, *Növi* and *Mövi* alone admit of contraction. Also, *Dixi* and *Dixis*, Cic. pro Cæcin. c. 29. Quintil. IX. 3. Terent. And. III. 1. 1. Gell. VII. 17. *Accesti*, Virg. Æn. I. 205.

The Imperfect Indicative in the 4th Conj. anciently ended in *-ibam*, and the Future in *-ibo*; thus, *Scibo*, Plaut. Asin. I. 1. 13. Most. IV. 3. 5. Truc. II. 6. 69. *Servibas*, Ter. And. I. 1. 11. Plaut. Capt. II. 1. 50. *Custödibant*, Catull. LXIV. 319. *Vestibat*, Virg. Æn. VIII. 160. *Expödibo*, Plaut. Truc. I. 2. 36. *Largibere*, Bacch. IV. 7. 30. *Servibo*, Terent. Hec. III. 5. 45. *Mollibit*, Hor. III. Od. 23. 19. *Reddibitur*, Plaut. Epid. I. 1. 22. &c. &c.

The termination *-ere* in the third Person Plur. Perfect Indicative is not so usual as that in *-erunt*, especially in prose.

In the second Person Sing. of the Present Indic. Passive the termination *-re* for *-ris* is rare. In Cicero *-re* for *-ris* in the Imperfect and Future Indicative, and the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, occurs frequently.

The Present Subjunctive anciently ended in *-im*; as, *Duim*, *Duis*, *Duit*, *Du int* for *Dem*, *Des*, &c. *Perduim*, *is*, *it*, *int*. for *Perdam*, *as*, &c. Vid. Plaut. Amph. II. 2. 215. Aul. I. 1. 23. IV. 6. 6. Terent. Andr. IV. 1. 42. Cic. Cat. I.

9. Att. xv. 4. Deiot. c. 7. Liv. x. 19. xiii. 10, &c. We also find such forms as *Perduunt*, Plaut. Rud. Prol. 24. *Creduis*, Amph. ii. 2. 40. Capt. iii. 4. 73. Truc. ii. 2. 52. *Credum, as, at*, Plaut. Pœn. iii. 5. 2. Trin. iii. Bacch. iv. 8. 6. *Siem, es, et*, for *Sim, &c.* Plaut. Amph. Prol. 57. Lucr. ii. 1078. Terent. Eun. i. 1. 21. *Fuat*, for *sit*, Virg. Æn. x. 108.

The Future Subj. in a few instances occurs in *-sso*, and the Perfect Subjunctive in *-ssim*; thus, *Lévasso*, Cic. de Senect. c. 1. *Abjürassit*, Plaut. Pers. iv. 3. 9. *Invitassitis*, Rud. iii. 5. 31. *Irritassitis*, Amph. i. 1. 298. Pers. v. 2. 47. Stich. ii. 2. 21. *Servassint*, Asin. iii. 3. 64. Casin. iii. 5. 16. Pseud. i. 1. 35. *Servassit*, Cistel. iv. 2. 76. *Servasso*, Most. i. 3. 71. *Licessit*, Asin. iii. 3. 13. *Prohibessis*, Plaut. Pseud. i. 1. 11. Cic. de Leg. iii. 3. So *Jusso* for *Jusséro*, Virg. Æn. xi. 467.

The Imperatives of *Dico, Dūco, Fēro*, and *Fūrio*, drop the final *e*; thus, *Dic, Dūc, Fēr, Fūc*. So *Ingēr*, Catull. xxvii. 2. But the Compounds of *Fācio* retain the *e*; as *Conficē, Perficē*. *Dicē, Dūcē, Fūcē* occur sometimes in the early poets. Vid. Voss. Gr. p. 131.

The Present Subjunctive is frequently used for the Imperative; as, *Nē faciās*, do not do it; and sometimes the Future-Indic.; as, *Nōn occidēs*, thou shalt not kill. So *Vālēbis* and *Vidēbis* in Cic. for *Vāle* and *Vide*. The Perfect Subjunctive is used also in the same manner; as, *Tū vidērīs*, see you to it; *Nē dixerīs*, do not say it.

The termination *-mīno* in the second Person Sing. Passive, and *-mīnor*, for *-mīni*, in the Plural, are exceedingly rare. *Arbitrāmīnor*, Plaut. Epid. v. 2. 30. *Progrēdīmīnor*, Pseud. iii. 2. 70. *Fāmīno* for *Fāre*, Cato, R. R. c. 141.

The third Person in *-to* and *-nto* is used chiefly in law-giving; as, *Ad Divos ādeunto caste, pietātem cōlunto*, Cic. Leg. ii. 19. Sometimes in the comic writers; as, *Phormiōnem lācessūto*, Ter. Phorm. v. 7. 38.

The termination *-tōte* is rare. It occurs in Ennius, Cicero, Ovid, and Plautus. See Voss. Anal. iii. 4.

The Participle in *-rus* and the Participle in *-dus* are found joined with most of the tenses of *Sum*. But the Participle in *-rus* does not occur joined with *Fuēro*.

PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of Adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having in Latin, gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both.

Participles in Latin are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only Participles in *dus*, are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving; *āmātūrus*.

about to love ; and the perfect and future passive ; as, *amātus*, loved ; *amandus*, to be loved.

The Latins have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice ; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the pluperfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connexion with the other words of a sentence ; as, he having loved ; *quum amavisset*, &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles ; as, *Sēdēns*, *sessūrus* ; *stans*, *statūrus*.

From some Neuter verbs are formed Participles of the perfect tense ; as, *Errātus*, *festinātus*, *jurātus*, *laborātus*, *vigilātus*, *cessātus*, *sudātus*, *triumphātus*, *regnātus*, *decursus*, *desitus*, *emeritus*, *emersus*, *obitus*, *placitus*, *succensus*, *occāsus*, &c. and also of the future in *dus* ; as, *Jurandus*, *vigilandus*, *regnandus*, *carendus*, *dormiendus*, *erubescendus*, &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veneo* has no participle : *Fido*, only *fidens* and *fusus* ; *soleo*, *solens*, and *solitus* ; *vapulo*, *vapulans*, and *vapulaturus* ; *Gaudeo*, *gaudens*, *gavisus*, and *gavisurus* ; *Audeo*, *audens*, *ausus*, *ausurus*, *audendus*. *Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense ; as, *Ausi omnes immāne, nefas, ausoque potiti*. Virg. *Æn.* vi. 624.

Deponent and Common Verbs have commonly four Participles ; as,

Loquens, speaking ; *locutūrus*, about to speak ; *locūtus*, having spoken ; *loquendus*, to be spoken. *Dignans*, vouchsafing : *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe ; *dignātus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed ; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense ; as, *Abominātus*, *conātus*, *confessus*, *adortus*, *amplexus*, *blandītus*, *largītus*, *mentītus*, *oblītus*, *testātus*, *venerātus*, &c.

There are several Participles, compounded with *in*, signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition ; as,

Insciens, *inspērans*, *indicens* for *non dicens*, *inopinans* and *necopinans*, *immērens* ; *Illusus*, *impransus*, *inconsultus*, *incustodītus*, *immetātus*, *impunitus*, *imparātus*, *incomitātus*, *incomptus*, *indemnātus*, *indolātus*, *in corruptus* *interrītus*, and *imperterītus*, *intestātus*, *inausus*, *inopinātus*, *inultus*, *incensus* for *non census*, not registered ; *infectus* for *non factus* ; *invisus* for *non visus* ; *indictus*, for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo* ; *infectus* from *infesio* ; *invisus* from *invideo* ; *indictus* from *indico*, &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison ; as,

Amans, loving, *amantior*, *amantissimus* ; *doctus*, learned, *doctior*, *doctissimus* ; or a substantive ; as, *Praefectus*, a commander or governor ; *consōnans*, f. sc. *littēra*, a consonant ; *continens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent ; *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together ; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east ; *occidens*, m. the west ; *dictum*, a saying ; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *atus*, *itus*, and *utus*, which, although resembling participles, are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from

verbs; as, *alātus, barbātus, cordātus, caudātus, cristātus, aurītus, pellītus, terrītus; astātus, cornūtus, nasūtus, &c.* winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *aurātus, arātus, argentātus, ferrātus, plumbātus, gypsātus, calceātus, clypeātus, galeātus, tunicātus, larvātus, palliātus, lymphātus, purpurātus, prætextātus, &c.*, covered with gold, brass, silver, &c., are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistrātus*, frizzled, crisped, or curled; *crinītus*, having long hair; *perītus*, skilled, &c.

There is a kind of Verbal adjectives in *Bundus*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much. *Sal. Jug. 60, and 101. Liv. xxv. 13.* So, *errabundus, ludibundus, populabundus, moribundus, &c.*

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

There are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the Gerund, *Delector legendo Cicerōnem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectiōne Cicerōnis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of Verbs in *-to*, and some others, often take *u* instead of *e*; as, *faciundum, -di, -do, -dus; experiundum, potiundum, gerundum, petundum, ducundum, &c.* for *faciendum, &c.*

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *coctum non vapulātum, dudum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapulārem*, or *verberārē*, to be beaten. *Plaut.*

8. SEPARATION; as, *seorsum*, apart; *sēpārātīm*, separately; *sīgūl -ātīm*, one by one; *virītīm*, man by man; *oppīdātīm*, town by town, &c.

9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, *simul*, *unā*, *pārīter*, together; *gēnērālīter*, generally; *ūnīversālīter*, universally; *plērūmq̄ue*, for the most part.

10. INDICATION or POINTING OUT; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.

11. INTERROGATION; as, *cur*, *quāre*, *quāmobrem*, why, wherefore? *num*, *an*, whether? *quōmōdo*, *quā*, how? To which add, *Ubi*, *quōd*, *quorsum*, *unde*, *quā*, *quando*, *quādiū*, *quoties*.

Those Adverbs which are called *Comparative* denote,

1. EXCESS; as, *valde*, *maxīme*, *magnopere*, *maximopere*, *summopere*, *admōdum*, *oppīdō*, *perquam*, *longē*, greatly, very much, exceedingly; *nimis*, *nīmīum*, too much; *prorsus*, *penītus*, *omnino*, altogether, wholly; *magis*, more; *melīus*, better; *pejus*, worse; *fortius*, more bravely; and *optīmē*, best; *pessīmē*, worst; *fortissīmē*, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.

2. DEFECT; as, *Fermē*, *stere*, *prōpēmōdum*, *pēnē*, almost; *pārūm*, little; *paulō*, *paulūlum*, very little.

3. PREFERENCE; as, *pōtīus*, *sātīus*, rather; *pōtissīmūm*, *præcipue*, *præsertim*, chiefly, especially; *imō*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, *ita*, *sic*, *ādēdō*, so; *ut*, *ūtī*, *sicut*, *sicūtī*, *vēlut*, *velūtī*, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasī*, as, as if; *quemadmōdum*, even as; *sūtīs*, enough; *īdēdē*, in like manner; *juxta*, alike, equally.

5. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY; as, *alīter*, *secus*, otherwise; *aliōquī* or *aliōquin*, else; *nēdum*, much more, or much less.

6. ABATEMENT; as, *sensim*, *paulātīm*, *pēdēlentīm*, by degrees, piecemeal; *vix*, scarcely; *agrē*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. EXCLUSION; as, *tantūm*, *sōlūm*, *modō*, *tantummōdo*, *duntaxat*, *dēmum*, only.

DERIVATION, COMPARISON, AND COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in *īm* or *tus*; as, *Partīm*, partly, by parts; *nominātīm*, by name; *generātīm*, by kinds, generally; *speciātīm*: *vicātīm*, *gregātīm*; *radicītus*, from the root, &c. 2. From adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in *e*; as, *liberē*, freely; *plenē*, fully; some in *o*, *um*, and *ter*, as, *falsō*, *tantūm*, *gravīter*; a few in *a*, *itus*, and *im*; as, *recta*, *antiquītus*, *privātīm*. Some are used two or three ways; as, *prīmūm*, or *-ō*, *purē*, *-iter*; *certē*, *-ō*; *caute*, *-īm*; *humanē*, *-iter*, *-itus*; *publicē*, *publicītus*, &c. Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in *ter*, seldom in *e*; as, *turpīter*, *felicīter*, *acrīter*, *parīter*; *facīle*, *repente*; one in *o*, *omnino*. The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken adverbially; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter*; *perfidum ridens*, for *perfidē*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for *multūm* or *valdē*, Virg. So in English we say, *to speak loud, high*, &c. for *loudly, highly*, &c. In many cases a substantive is understood; as, *prīmō*, sc. *loco*; *optatō advenis*, sc. *tempore*; *hāc*, sc. *viā*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as, from *Ille*, *illuc*, *illorsum*, *illinc*, and *illac*. So from *Quis*, *ubi*, *quo*, *quorsum*, *unde* and *quā*; also of time; thus, *quando*, *quādiū*, &c.

4. From verbs and participles; as, *cæsim*, with the edge; *punctim*, with the point; *strictim*, closely; from *cedo*, *pungo*, *stringo*; *amanter*, *properanter*, *dubitanter*; *distinctè*, *emendatè*, *meritò*, *inopinatò*; &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood.

5. From prepositions; as, *istius*, *istre*, from *in*; *elanculitum*, from *clam*; *subtus*, from *sub*, &c.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter*; as, *durè*, *facilè*, *acriter*; the *comparative*, in *ius*; as, *durius*, *facilius*, *acrius*; the *superlative*, in *ime*; as, *durissime*, *facillimè*, *accerrimè*.

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too; as, *benè*, *melius*, *optime*; *malè*, *pejus*, *pestimè*; *parim*, *minùs*, *minimò*, & *-um*; *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*; *prope*, *propius*, *proximè*; *ocysus*, *ocysime*; *prius*, *primò*, *-um*; *nuper*, *nuperrimè*; *novè*, & *noviter*, *adviastimè*; *meritò*, *meritissimò*, &c. Those adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete; as, *sæpe*, *sæpius*, *sæpissimè*; *penitus*, *penitiùs*, *penitissimè*; *satis*, *satiùs*; *secus*, *seciùs*, &c. *Magis*, *maximè*; and *potius*, *potissimum*, want the positive.

Adverbs are variously compounded with all the different parts of speech; thus, *postulic*, *magnopère*, *maximopère*, *summopère*, *tantopère*, *multimodis*, *omnimodis*, *quomodo*, *quare*; of *postèro die*, *magno opère*, &c. *Illicet*, *scilicet*, *videlicet*, of *ire*, *scire*, *vidère*, *licet*; *illico*, of *in loco*; *quorsum*, of *quo versum*; *comitinus*, hand to hand, of *cum* or *con* and *manus*, *eminus*, at a distance, of *e* and *manus*; *quorsum*, of *quo versum*; *denuo*, anew, of *de novo*; *quin*, why not, but, of, *qui ne*; *cur*, of *cui rei*; *pedetentim*, step by step, as it were, of *pedem tendendo*; *perendie*, for *perempto die*; *nimirum*, of *ne*, i. e. *non*, and *mirum*; *antea*, *postea*, *præterea*, &c. of *ante* and *ea*, &c. *Ubivis*, *quovis*, *undelibit*, *quousque*, *sicut*, *sicûti*, *velut*, *velûtî*, *desûper*, *insûper*, *quamobrem*, &c. of *ubi* and *vis*, &c. *nudiustertius*, of *nunc dies tertius*; *identidem*, of *idem et idem*; *impræsentidurum*, i. e. *in tempore rerum præsentium*, &c.

Obs. 1. The Adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientiâ*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *semper*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel*, for *unâ vice*; *bis*, for *duâbus vicibus*; *Mehercûle*, for *Hercûles me juvet*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other; as, *ubi*, where, or when; *inde*, from that place, from that time, after that, next; *hactenus*, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past*, *present*, or *future*; as, *jam*, al- ready, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, *esse peregrè*, to be abroad; *ire peregrè*, to go abroad; *redire peregrè*, to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque*, answer to the English adjection *soever*; as, *ubiûbi*, or *ubicunque*, whersoever; *quouò*, *quòcunque*, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in interrogative words; as, *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many soever; *quantus-quantus*, or *quantuscunque*, how great soever; *utut*, or *utcunque*, however or how- soever, &c.

PREPOSITIONS.

A *Preposition* is an indeclinable word which shows the relation of one thing to another.

There are Thirty-two Prepositions which govern the Accusative.

AD, expresses *conjunction* or *propinquity*, and its general signification is TO, as, *ad Carthaginem*, 'to Carthage;' *omnes ad unum*, 'all to a man.' AT or ON, as, *ad præstitam diem*, 'at the appointed day;' *ad portam*, 'at the gate.' AFTER, as, *aliquanto ad rem avidior*, 'a little too greedy after money.' It is also used for *secundum*, 'according to;' as, *ad cursum lunæ*, 'according to the course of the moon.' FOR, as, *rebus ad protectionem comparatis*, 'things being ready for a march.' BEFORE, as, *ductus est ad magistratum*, 'he was led before a magistrate.' ABOUT, as, *ad duo millia*, 'about two thousand.' IN COMPARISON OF, *nihil ad Cæsarem*, 'nothing in comparison of Cæsar.' But all these different renderings may be referred to the simple signification of 'TO.'—Phrases. *Ad summum*, 'at most,' or 'to the top;' *ad summam*, 'in the whole;' *ad ultimum*, 'at last,' 'finally;' *ad iudicem agere*, 'to plead before a judge;' *ad hoc*, 'in addition to this,' 'besides;' *ad decem annos*, Cic. 'after ten years,' or 'ten years hence,' that is, up to the completion of ten years; *ad manus venire*, 'to come to a close engagement;' *ad lunam*, 'by the light of the moon;' *ad amussim*, 'exactly,' (literally, 'to a mason's rule.')

ADVERSUS, or ADVERSUM. This is compounded of *ad*, 'to,' and the participle *versus*, 'turned.' So we have in English the same two prepositions compounded in the word, 'to-wards.' The general idea of this Preposition is that of OPPOSITION, or tendency AGAINST something, and hence its general meaning is AGAINST; as, *adversus hostem*, 'against the enemy;' *adversus legem*, 'contrary to law.' Hence it signifies OPPOSITION of place; as, *adversus Italiam*, 'opposite Italy.' From this, it signifies BEFORE, or IN THE PRESENCE OF, or TOWARDS; as, *adversus me*, 'in my presence;' *pietas adversus deos*, 'piety towards the gods.' To, as, *adversus hunc loqui*, 'to speak to him.'

ANTE denotes *precedence* of time or place, and hence means 'BEFORE.' It is opposed to *Post*; as, *ante, non post, decimam horam*, 'before, not after the tenth hour;' *ante aciem*, 'in front of the army.' It also signifies *priority* in point of *degree*; as, *Una longè ante alias specie ac pulchritudine*, 'one far above the others in beauty and figure.' It is sometimes used adverbially, but in all such cases some noun or adjective may be supplied; as, *ille ante incessit*, 'he marched first,' that is, *ante omnes*, 'before all.'

APUD denotes *presence* of place and person, and is said to be corrupted from *ad pedes*, 'at the feet.' It may generally be translated by 'AT;' as, *apud forum*, 'at the forum;' hence it is used for *cum*, as, *cenavit apud me*, 'he supped with me;' *potior apud exercitum*, 'in greater credit with the army.' Hence it also

signifies 'NEAR,' or 'BY,' being used for *juxta*; as, *sedens apud eum*, 'sitting by him.' From the notion of bodily presence, it comes to signify 'presence of mind;' as, *vis sum apud me*, 'I am hardly myself;' *tu fac, apud te ut sis*, Terent. 'take care to be self-collected.' From presence of place may easily be deduced its signification of *inter*, 'AMONG,' as, *apud majores nostros*, 'among our ancestors.' The difference between *Apud* and *Inter* is, however, very clear. *Inter* means 'among,' or 'in the number of,' as, *inter amicos*, 'among,' or 'in the number of my friends;' *Apud* means 'among,' 'with,' 'in the writings of,' 'in the customs of,' as, *apud Ciceronem*, 'with Cicero,' or 'or in the opinion of Cicero;' *Apud Homerum invenio*, 'I find in the writings of Homer;' *Apud Romanos mos erat*, 'it was the custom among the Romans.' Another meaning is 'BEFORE,' as, *causam apud regem dicere*, 'to plead before the king.'

CIRCA, CIRCUM. This Preposition signifies *approximation* and *comprehension* of time, place, person, and number. It is derived from the Greek *κρηκος* 'a circle.' Its generic signification is 'ABOUT,' or 'ROUND ABOUT;' as, *circa portas*, 'about the gates;' *postero die circa eandem horam copias admovit*, 'the next day, about the same hour, he advanced his army;' *oppida circa septuaginta*, 'about seven hundred towns;' *circa deos religionesque fuit negligens*, 'about the gods and their worship he was negligent.'

CIRCITER. This is nearly related to *circa* and *circum*, but is principally used in expressing approximation of time; as, *circiter idus Mai*, 'about the Ides of May;' *octavam circiter horam*, 'about the eighth hour.'

CIS expresses limitation of space and time, included within some distant boundary or distant time, to the place where we are, or the time when we are speaking. Its signification is, 'ON THIS SIDE,' 'WITHIN,' as, *cis Appenninum*, 'on this side the Appenine;' *cis dies paucos*, 'within a few days.'

CITRA,* like *Cis*, signifies limitation within a certain boundary; as, *citra Rhenum*, 'on this side the Rhine.' It also means 'SHORT OF,' as, *peccavi citra scelus*, 'I have committed an offence short of guilt.' Hence from the signification of 'short of,' it comes to imply 'deficiency,' and is used for *sine*, 'without,' as, *Phidias in ebore citra æmulum fuit*, 'Phidias was without a rival in ivory;' *citra hanc necessitatem*, 'without this necessity.'

* *Citra* is not immediately derived from *Cis*, but from its derivative *Citer*; and is, like *Extra*, *Infra*, *Intra*, *Supra*, *Ultra*, an ablative case feminine, governed by *a* or *ab*, and having *parte* understood with which it agrees. It governs the accusative not by any natural power of its own, but by an ellipsis of *quoad*, or *quod ad* . . . *attinet* understood after it. Thus, *citra Rubiconem*, 'on this side the Rubicon,' when fully explained, means, *a citerâ* (or *citra*) *parte quoad Rubiconem*, or, *a citrà parte quoad ad Rubiconem attinet*. Thus we see how prepositions are used even for whole sentences, for convenience of speech, and shortening those circuitous expressions, the frequent recurrence of which would be very tedious and unpleasant in common discourse.

CONTRA,* in its general signification, implies *opposition*, and hence signifies 'AGAINST,' or 'IN OPPOSITION TO;' as *contra naturam*, 'against nature;' *contra expectationem*, 'beyond expectation;' *Carthago est contra Italiam*, 'Carthage is opposite to Italy.' It is also frequently used adverbially, signifying, 'on the other hand;' as, *contra etiam*, &c. Cic. 'on the other hand also;' *stat contra*, *farique jubet*, 'he stands opposite and bids me speak;' *contra intueri aliquem*, 'to look any one full in the face.' *Contra* is sometimes used to express 'price,' especially by Plautus, evidently from the idea of the *value* being put in the scale *opposite* to the commodity; as, *non carus est auro contra*, 'he is not dear for so much gold,' that is, 'he is worth an equal weight of gold put in the *opposite* scale;' literally—'he is not dear against gold.' So we say, 'worth its weight in gold.'

ERGA, 'TOWARDS,' as, *erga amicos*, 'towards his friends;' 'BEFORE,' as, *quæ modo erga oves habitat*, 'who lives now before our house.'

EXTRA† implies something *without* or *beyond* the limits of the thing spoken of, and is opposed to *Intra*. Its general meaning is 'WITHOUT;' as, *ingenium magis extra vitia, quam cum virtutibus*, 'a character rather without vices than accompanied with virtues.' 'BEYOND;' as, *extra modum*, 'beyond measure.' Hence it easily passes into the sense of *Supra*, 'above,' or 'exceeding;' as, *esse extra culpam*, 'to be above fault,' 'to be blameless.' Hence it is elegantly used for *Præter*, 'besides,' 'except;' as, *neque, extra unam ancillam, quisquam aderat*, 'neither was any one present, *besides* one poor old woman.' *Extra jocum*, 'without a joke,' 'joking apart.'

INFRA, expresses *inferiority* or *lower situation*, and may generally be rendered by 'below,' or 'BENEATH,' as *infra tectum*, 'below the roof;' *infra se*, 'beneath himself;' *magnitudine paulo infra elephantos*, 'in size a little inferior to the elephant;' *infra infimos*, 'below the very lowest.' Hence it means 'WITHIN,' as *infra decem dies*, 'within ten days.'

INTER, 'BETWEEN,' as, *inter eos magna contentio fuit*, 'there was a great strife between them.' As that which is between two persons may be referred to one or the other, *inter* is often used for *invicem*, 'one another;' as, *pueri amant inter se*, 'the boys love one another.' It also means 'among,' 'in the midst of;' as, *inter exercitum*, 'in the midst of the army;' *inter omnem vitam*, 'during their life time.'

INTRA,‡ is used to express the boundary *within* which any thing is contained referring either to time or space, and hence it signifies 'WITHIN;' as, *intra decem annos*, 'within ten years,' *intra muros*, 'within the walls;' *intra verba desipiant*, 'they commit offence within words;' that is, 'no offence beyond words.'

JUXTA signifies *approximation* or *contiguity*, being derived from *jungo*, 'to join.' Its primary meaning is 'NEAR,' or 'by the side of;' as, *juxta murum*, *cas-*

* Probably the ablative feminine of the obsolete adjective *Contērus*, just as, *citra*, *extra*, *infra*, *intra*, and *supra*, are the ablatives of *citer*, *extērus*, *inferus*, *intērus*, *supērus*. ¶ See note on *Citra*.

† See note on *Citra*

‡ See *Citra*.

traposuit, 'he pitched his camp near the wall;' hence it means *proximity* of relationship; as, *velocitas juxta formidinem*, Tacit. 'rapidity is a-kin to cowardice.' Also, 'according to,' as, *juxta præceptum Themistoclis*, 'according to the instructions of Themistocles.' It is also used adverbially for *alike, equally*; as, *Eorum ego vitam, mortemque juxta aestimo*, 'I esteem their life and death alike.' *Salust.*

OB, in its more general signification is used to express the *reason* or *cause* of any thing, and may be rendered by 'FOR' or 'ON ACCOUNT OF;' as, *ob quantum*, 'for gain;' *ob hanc rem*, 'on account of this thing;' also, 'BEFORE,' as, *ob oculos exitum versatur*, 'destruction is before my eyes.'

PENES is said to be derived from *penus*, 'a store house,' being used to signify the absolute possession and power over a thing, as if it were laid up at our disposal. Its meaning is, 'IN THE POWER OF,' or, IN POSSESSION OF; as, *me penes est unum vasti custodia mundi*, 'in my power alone is the custody of the vast world.' Also, 'WITH;' as, *penes te culpa est*, 'the fault lies with you.'

PER, (derived probably from the Greek *παρα*, 'to pass through,') is of extensive use. It denotes the cause, means, or instrument of an action, or transition through some medium, and may generally be rendered by 'THROUGH;' as, *per mare, per saxa, per ignes*, Hor. 'through the sea, through rocks, through fire.' Also, 'through,' or 'for,' signifying continuation of space or time; as, *per triennium*, 'for the space of three years;' also, 'through,' denoting the instrument or subordinate agency; as, *per servum epistolam misit*, 'he sent the letter through a servant.' Sometimes it may be translated 'under pretence,' as, *aliquem per fidem fallere*, 'to deceive any one under colour of security.' *Per se*, 'of himself,' 'by his own exertions.' *Per ludum et jocum*, 'in sport and jest' *Per me*, 'by my permission.' *Per silentium*, 'silently.'

PONE is derived like *post*, from the verb *pono*, and expresses the situation of a thing *behind* or *after* another in point of *place*; but it is not used, like *post*, to signify the same relation in point of *time*. It is opposed to *Ante*. It may always be rendered 'BEHIND.' *Pone aedem Castoris*, 'behind the temple of Castor.' It is often used adverbially; *pone sequens*, 'following behind.'

POST has the same origin and general signification as *Pone*, but is used to express relations of time as well as place. Applied to place, *post montem*, 'behind the mountain.' In point of time, *post mortem*, 'after death.' *Post hominum memoriam*, 'since the memory of man.' It is often joined with *ea*, forming the adverb *postea*, 'afterwards,' that is, 'after these things;' and with *quam*, as, *postquam*, 'after that.'

PRÆTER implies exclusion, and may be translated 'EXCEPT,' or 'BUT;' as, *omnibus sententiis præter unum condemnatus est*, 'he was condemned by all the votes but one;' *neque illis vestitus, præter pelles*, 'neither have they any clothing besides skins.' Hence it easily passes into the sense of 'along,' or 'by the side of;' as, *præter oram Etrusci maris Neapolim transmisit*, 'he sent them by the shore of the Tuscan sea to Naples.' Hence it means 'before,' 'in sight of;' as, *præter oculos*, 'before my eyes.' From the sense of 'exclusion,' it easily comes

to signify, 'beyond,' or 'above;' as, *Florum ille nihil egregie præter cetera studibat*, Terent. 'he inclined to none of these particularly above the rest.' Also, 'contrary to;' as, *præter spem*, 'contrary to expectation.'

PROPE, 'NEAR,' is rather an adverb, and when it is followed by an accusative *ad* or *apud*, is understood. It is the neuter of the obsolete adjective *propis*, of which the comparative and superlative yet remain in *proprior* and *proximus*. *Prope hostium castra*, 'near the camps of the enemy;' *prope calendæ Sextilis*, 'about the calends of August.' It is often used adverbially; as, *sapientia præditus prope singulari*, 'endowed with almost singular wisdom.'

PROPTER is derived from *prope*, and has the same general signification of contiguity. Its primary meaning is 'NEAR,' or 'BY THE SIDE OF;' as, *In pratulo propter Platonis statuum consedimus*, Cic. 'we sat down in a little meadow by the statue of Plato.' Also, 'ON ACCOUNT OF;' 'FOR THE SAKE OF;' as, *Nam propter frigora, frumenta in agris matura non erant*, 'for in consequence of the cold, the fruits of the earth were not ripe.' *Propter misericordiam*, 'out of pity.'

SECUNDUM. This preposition is the neuter gender of the ordinal adjective *secundus*, 'SECOND,' (which follows the first,) which itself comes from *sequor*, 'to follow.' Its general signification implies the notion of 'following after' something which has gone before. Here it is translated, 'next to,' 'after;' as, *Secundum te nihil est mihi amicis solitudine*, Cic. 'next to your company nothing is more agreeable to me than solitude.' As he who follows after another goes in the same direction, *secundum* signifies 'after,' or 'according to;' as, *omnia quæ secundum naturam sunt, sunt habenda in bonis*, Cic. 'all things which happen according to nature are to be esteemed good.' Hence it signifies 'in favour of;' as, *Nuntiat populo pontifices secundum se decrevisse*, Cic. 'he tells the people that the pontifices had decreed in his favour.'

SECUS, as a preposition, is obsolete, being superseded by *secundum*, with the same sense. As an adverb it frequently occurs, but in a sense almost diametrically opposite, signifying *diversity* or *opposition*; as, *nemo dicet secus*, 'no one will say otherwise.'

SUPRA is in reality the ablative feminine of *superus*; (see *Citra*.) and implies elevation, and may be translated, 'ABOVE,' 'HIGHER THAN;' as, *supra lunam*, 'above the moon;' *supra modum*, 'beyond measure;' *Tres prohibet supra rixarum metuens tangere Gratia*, 'the Graces, guarding against quarrels, forbid us to drink more than three.' *Cum hostes supra caput sint*, 'since the enemy are nigh at hand.' But the phrase *supra caput* is used to signify 'exceedingly;' as, *supra caput homo levis ac sordidus*, 'a fellow exceedingly contemptible and sordid.' It is also used adverbially; as, *omnia hæc quæ supra et subter unum esse*, 'that all these things which are above and below, are one system.'

TRANS, 'OVER,' 'ON THE OTHER SIDE,' 'BEYOND,' is opposed to *cis*, and is limited to place. *Trans mare*, 'across the sea;' *trans Euphratam*, 'on the other side of the Euphrates.'

ULTRA, 'BEYOND,' is referred to both place, time, and degree; as, *ultra termi-*

non vagari, 'to wander beyond the bounds;' *ultra tempus*, 'beyond the time;' *ultra vires senectæ*, 'beyond the strength of old age;' *ultra mortem*, 'beyond what was sufficient to occasion death.'

USQUE is more properly an adverb, and governs the accusative by the force of *ad* understood. Its signification is, 'AS FAR AS.' *Usque Miletum*, 'as far as Miletus.' As an adverb it is frequently used. *Usque ambo defessi sumus*, 'we were both exceedingly wearied.' *Ctesipho usque occidit*, 'Ctesipho has all but killed me.'

VERSUS, 'TOWARDS.' This preposition, like *Usque*, seems to govern the accusative by the force of *ad*, which, though sometimes omitted, is generally expressed. *Brundisium versus*, 'towards Brundisium.'

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

There are fifteen Prepositions which govern the Ablative.

A, AB, ABS. This preposition is derived from the Greek *από*, 'from,' and in its primary notion signifies *beginning*. 'FROM,' as, *ab ovo usque ad mala*, 'from the egg to the apple,' that is, 'from beginning to end.' 'BY REASON OF.' *Vir ab innocentia clementissimus*, 'a man very mild by reason of his probity.' Also, 'ON THE SIDE OF,' 'TO TAKE ANY ONE'S PART;' as, *a mendacio contra verum stare*, 'to stand for a lie in opposition to truth.' *A principio*, 'from the very first.' *A pedibus*, 'a footman;' *a rationibus*, 'an accountant.' *A frigore*, 'against the cold.' *Hujus a morte*, 'after his death.'

ABSQUE, 'WITHOUT.' *Propositio nihil valet absque approbatione*, 'the proposition avails nothing without proof.' *Nam absque eo esset*, 'for had it not been for him,' &c.

CLAM* conveys the idea of privacy, or secrecy, and may be translated 'UNKNOWN TO,' 'WITHOUT THE KNOWLEDGE OF.' *Clam viro*, 'unknown to her husband.' It is also used *adverbially*; as, *plura clam de medio removebat*, 'he removed many more out of the way privately.'

CORAM marks the actual *presence* of a person before whom an action is done, and therefore signifies 'BEFORE,' 'IN THE PRESENCE OF;' as, *coram rege*, 'in the presence of the king.' It is also used *adverbially*; as, *cum coram sumus*, 'when we are together.'

CUM, 'WITH,' expresses the *society*, *presence*, or *accompaniment* of some thing or person with another. *Vagantur egentes cum conjugibus et liberis*, 'we wander

* *Clam* is sometimes found with an Accusative; as, *Clam patrem*, Terent. Also with a Dative; as, *mihi clam*, Plaut.; and even with a Genitive, as, *clam patris*, Plaut.

in poverty with our wives and children;' *bellum gerere cum Jugurtha*, 'to carry on war with Jugurtha;' *exit cum nuntio*, 'he departed as soon as he saw the messenger;' *cum primâ luce*, 'at break of day.' This preposition is always added to the ablatives of the primitive pronouns, *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*; as, *meum*, 'with me;' *nobiscum*, 'with us;' *vobiscum*, 'with you.'

DE. The primary signification of this preposition is, *derivation from something anterior, descent, effect, consequence, or dependence*; and hence it may be translated 'FROM,' 'OUT OF,' 'OF,' 'ON.' *Epicûri de grege porcus*, 'a hog of the herd of Epicurus.' Also, 'touching,' 'concerning'; as, *de periculis reipublicæ*, 'concerning the dangers of the republic.' *De sententiâ meâ*, 'according to my opinion.' *Somnus de prandio*, 'sleep after dinner.' *De loco superiøre*, 'from the higher ground.' *De integro*, 'afresh;' *de industria*, 'on purpose;' *de transverso*, 'across;' *de meo*, 'at my cost;' *de die*, 'by day;' *de improvise*, 'unexpectedly.'

E. EX. This preposition implies *motion out of, departure from the interior of any place*, and hence is translated 'FROM.' It differs from A or AB, in showing that the person or thing excluded had a more intimate connexion with that from which it was excluded. *Dejectus est ex domo*, 'he was driven out of the house,' implies that the person had been *within it*; but *dejectus est ab domo*, 'he was driven from the house,' shows merely that the person was around or near it. *Ex Æthiopiâ est usque hæc*, Terent. 'this woman comes as far as from Ethiopia,' *Ex quo in provinciam venerunt*, 'from the time that they came into the province.' *Ex mea sententiâ*, 'according to my opinion;' *magnâ ex parte*, 'for the most part;' *poculum ex auro*, 'a cup made out of gold;' *ex equo*, 'on horseback;' *ex ordine*, 'in order;' *ex animo*, 'from the heart;' *ex industriâ*, 'on purpose;' *ex tempore*, 'without taking thought beforehand,' 'suddenly;' *ex toto*, 'on the whole.'

PALAM is opposed to *clam*, and expresses something done *openly*. It is translated 'BEFORE,' 'IN THE PRESENCE OF.' *Palam populo*, 'before the people;' *palam omnibus*, 'in the presence of all.'

PRÆ, 'BEFORE,' signifies *precedence* in point of situation, and hence *precedence*, in comparison of, or superiority. *Præ oculis*, 'before the eyes.' Hence the phrase *præ se ferre* or *gerere*, 'to carry before,' or 'in front of a man,' means 'to profess,' 'to avow,' 'to have the appearance of.' *Præ nobis beatus est*, 'he is happy in comparison of us.' Also, 'through,' 'that is,' 'by reason of;' as, *nec loqui præ moerore potuit*, 'neither could he speak through grief.' *Præ multitudine*, 'by reason of the multitude.'

PRO, 'FOR,' implies, primarily, *interchange or substitution*; as, *te, pro istis dictis et falsis, ulsiscar*, Terent. 'for these reports and falsehoods I will pay you handsomely.' *Cato mihi est pro centum millibus*, 'Cato is to me instead of,' that is, 'Cato is worth to me a hundred thousand.' *Pro tempore*, 'according to the time.' Also 'BEFORE,' 'IN FRONT OF;' as, *sedens pro æde Castoris*, 'sitting before the temple of Castor.'

SINE is in reality nothing but the imperative of the verb *sino*, 'to let

alone,' and signifies *privation*, or being **WITHOUT** a thing. *Sine pondère*, 'without weight.'

TENUS, 'UP TO,' 'AS FAR AS.' *Capūto tenuis*, Cic. 'up to the hilt.' *Antiochus Tauro tenuis regnāre jussus*, 'Antiochus was ordered to reign as far as mount Taurus.' *Tenus* is sometimes used with a genitive case, but the noun is then always in the plural number; as, *crurum tenuis*, 'down to the legs;' *labiorum tenuis*, 'as far as the lips.'

Four prepositions, **IN**, **SUB**, **SUPER**, and **SUBTER**, govern the Accusative and Ablative.

IN with an Accusative, 'TO,' or 'UNTO,' or 'INTO;' as, *Ex Asia in Eurōpam exercitum trajicere*, 'from Asia he marched his army into Europe.' Also 'towards;' as, *indulgentia in liberos*, 'indulgence towards children.' *Inflammarē populum in improbos*, 'to inflame the people against the wicked.' *In lucem*, 'until day.' *In rem tuam est*, 'it is for your advantage.' *Potestas in filium*, 'authority over a son.' *In dies*, 'every day.' *Vivere in diem*, 'to live from hand to mouth.'

IN with an Ablative, 'IN.' *Esse in manu*, 'to be in one's power.' 'Towards,' as, *mitis in hoste*, 'merciful towards an enemy.' Hence it is even put for 'concerning,' 'about,' or as we sometimes say, 'at;' *In quo igitur homines exhorrescunt*, 'at whom then do men tremble?' Also, 'among,' as, *esse in clarissimus civibus*, 'to be ranked among the most illustrious citizens.' 'Within,' as, *talentā ducenta in sex mensibus promissa*, 'two hundred talents were promised within six months.' *In primis*, or *imprimis*, 'especially,' 'particularly.'

SUB implies *inferiority* and *contiguity*. When applied to time it generally governs an accusative; when applied to space it generally governs an ablative; but this rule is not invariable. With an Accusative, 'UNDER,' as, *sub ipsos muros*, 'under the very walls.' 'On,' 'about;' as, *Pompeius sub noctem naves solvit*, 'Pompey set sail about night;' *sub cantum galli*, 'at cock-crowing.' From the notion of proximity and inferiority which this word conveys, it sometimes signifies 'next after,' or 'immediately following;' as, *Sub eas literas statim recitatae sunt tuas*, 'immediately after them your letters were read aloud.' *Sub hæc dicta*, 'at these words.'

With an Ablative. 'UNDER,' or 'BENEATH.' *Manet sub Jove frigido*, 'the hunter remains beneath the cold sky;' *Sub pœna mortis*, 'on pain of death;' *Sub specie venationis*, 'under the pretence of hunting.'

SUBTER is derived from *Sub*, and like it, signifies *contiguity* and *inferiority* of place, but is not referred to time. It governs an accusative more frequently than an ablative. 'UNDER.' *Subter mare*, 'beneath the sea.' *Subter densa testudine*, 'under a thick testudo.' *Rhæteo subter litore*, 'beneath the Rhætian shore.'

SUPER expresses, for the most part, *elevation*, or a situation *higher* than ourselves, or the object spoken of.

With an Accusative, 'upon,' 'above.' *Super ripas*, 'upon the banks.' 'Beyond;' as, *famosissima super cæteras fuit coena*, 'the supper was famous beyond all the rest.' 'Besides,' as, *Punicum exercitum super morbum etiam fames affecit*, 'famine also, besides the disease, affected the Carthaginian army.'

With an Ablative. *Fronde super viridi*, 'upon the green leaf.' *Consultant bello super*, 'they take counsel about the war.' It is often used adverbially; as, *satis superque dictum est*, 'enough, and more than enough has been said.'

Obs. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am*, *di* or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

A, **AB**, **ABS**, signify *privation*, or *separation*, and may generally be rendered by the English *Off*, as, *duco*, 'to lead;' *abduco*, 'to lead off,' 'to lead away;' *moveo*, 'to move;' *amoveo*, 'to move off,' 'to remove;' *scindo*, 'to cut;' *absciendo*, 'to cut off.' **A** is likewise added to nouns as a *privative*; as, *mens*, 'the mind;' *amens*, 'without mind,' 'senseless,' 'mad.' **Ab** is sometimes changed into *au* before words beginning with *f*, for the sake of euphony; as, *fero*, 'to bear;' *auffero*, 'to bear off,' 'to take away;' (in which verb the preposition *ab* resumes its place in those tenses which have not *f*, as, *abstuli*, *ablatum*;) *fugio*, 'to fly;' *aufugio*, 'to fly off,' 'to fly away.' **Abs** is used in composition before *t*; as, *teneo*, 'to hold;' *abstineo*, 'to hold off from,' 'to abstain.'

AD retains its primary signification of *approach*, or that of *accession* or *augmentation*, and may generally be translated 'to.' In the writers of the Augustan age it generally takes the consonant of the word with which it is compounded; as, *curro*, 'to run;' *adcurro* or *accurro*, 'to run to;' *figo*, 'to fix;' *adfigo* or *affigo*, 'to fix in addition,' or 'affix;' *loquor*, 'to speak;' *adloquor* or *alloquor*, 'to speak to,' 'to address;' *nudo*, 'to nod;' *annuo*, 'to nod to,' 'to assent;' *rogo*, 'to ask;' *errago*, 'to ask for one's self,' 'to claim;' *sumo*, 'to take;' *assumo*, 'to take to one's self,' 'to assume;' *do*, 'to give;' *addo*, 'to give in addition,' 'to add.' It also increases the signification of the primitive; as, *amo*, 'to love;' *adamo*, 'to love much,' 'to be enamoured of;' *bibo*, 'to drink;' *adbibō*, 'to drink hard.'

AM is an inseparable preposition, being never found alone. It is from the Greek *αμφι*, 'round about;' and may be translated 'around,' 'about;' as, *uro*, 'to burn;' *amburo*, 'to burn all about;' *quero*, 'to seek;' *inquiro*, 'to seek about,' 'to search carefully.' From the signification 'around,' it comes to mean 'on all sides,' 'two ways;' as, *ago*, 'to lead;' *ambigo*, 'to be led around;' that is, 'to doubt,' 'to hesitate,' 'what course to take;' *capio*, 'to take;' *anceps*, 'that which may be taken two ways,' 'doubtful.'

ANTE signifies *precedence*, and is translated 'before;' as, *cedo*, 'to go;' *antecedo*, 'to go before;' *fero*, 'to bear;' *antefero*, 'to bear before,' 'to prefer.'

CUM signifies 'society,' 'participation,' or 'accompaniment;' but is changed into *com* before *m*; as, *memoro*, 'to relate;' *commemoro*, 'to relate together,' 'to commemorate;' or else into *con*, which varies its last consonant before several others, and sometimes even drops it; as, *curro*, 'to run;' *concurro*, 'to run together;' *ago*, 'to drive;' *con-ago* or *co-ago* or *cogo*, 'to drive together,' 'to collect;' *agito*, 'to agitate,' or 'revolve;' *con-agito*, or *cogito*, 'to agitate with one's self;' hence 'to think;' *natus*, 'born;' *con-natus* or *cognatus*, 'having a participation of birth,' or 'related;' *petitor*, 'a candidate;' *competitor*, 'a fellow candidate,' or 'rival;' *gradior*, 'to walk;' *congregior*, 'to come together;' hence 'to engage in battle.'

DE in composition takes the sense of 1. *privation*; 2. *diminution*; 3. *removal*; 4. *descent*; 5. *completion*; and sometimes from the notion of completion it signifies, 6. *excess*. Thus—1. *decōro*, 'to adorn;' *dēdecōro*, 'to disgrace;' *spero*, 'to hope;' *despēro*, 'to be without hope,' 'to despair;' *mens*, 'the mind;' *dēmens*, 'out of one's mind,' 'mad.' 2. *facio*, 'to do;' *deficio*, 'to do less than one ought,' 'to fail,' 'to be deficient.' 3. *ferveo*, 'to be hot;' *deferveo*, 'to remove heat,' 'to grow cool.' 4. *cado*, 'to fall;' *decido*, 'to fall down.' 5. *finio*, 'to bound;' *definio*, 'to bound completely,' 'to define.' 6. *flagro*, 'to burn;' *deflagro*, 'to burn excessively,' 'to burn to ashes.'

DIS, DI, is an inseparable preposition, denoting 'separation,' 'division,' 'denial;' as, *traho*, 'to draw;' *distrāho*, 'to pull asunder,' 'to disjoin,' 'to distract;' *puto*, 'to think;' *dispūto*, 'to think differently,' 'to dispute.' From 'separation' it comes to denote 'distinction;' as, *iudico*, 'to judge;' *dijudico*, 'to judge between,' 'to distinguish,' 'to discern.'

E, EX, generally signifies 'out,' and from this sense all its others may be deduced, such as, 'privation,' 'perfection,' 'elevation,' 'declaration,' &c. Before certain consonants *e* is only used, and before *f*, *x* is changed into *f*. Thus, *bibo*, 'to drink;' *ebibo*, 'to drink out,' 'to drink up;' *dico*, 'to tell;' *edico*, 'to tell out,' 'to publish;' *levo*, 'to lighten;' *elevo*, 'to lighten out and out,' that is 'to lighten thoroughly,' and so 'to raise,' 'to elevate;' *vado*, 'to go;' *evado*, 'to go out of,' 'to escape;' *capio*, 'to take;' *excipio*, 'to take out,' 'to except;' *quaero*, 'to seek;' *exquiro*, 'to seek out,' 'to search;' *sanguis*, 'blood;' *exsanguis*, 'out of blood,' 'bloodless;' *anima*, 'life;' *exanimis*, 'lifeless.'

IN, in composition, changes its consonant before the other liquids into the liquid it precedes; as, *illudo*, from *in* and *ludo*, and before *b* and *p* the *n* is changed into *m* as *imbibo*, from *in* and *bibo*.

The signification of *in* is very various in composition, and in some cases even contradictory. Thus it augments, as *minuo*, 'to lessen;' *imminuo*, 'to make less upon less,' or 'to make very small.' But it is more frequently used in the sense of 'negation,' as the *α* privative of the Greek, and the *un* or *in* prefixed to words in English; as, *mundus*, 'clean;' *immundus*, 'unclean.' But in some instances the augmentative and privative senses appear in the same word; thus, *impotens* is used in the sense of 'very powerful,' that is, 'ungovernable,' and in the sense of 'weak,' 'powerless.' It has also various other significations; as,

ludo, 'to play'; *illudo*, 'to play upon,' 'to mock'; *pono*, 'to place'; *impono*, 'to place upon,' 'to put upon,' 'to impose'; *habeo*, 'to have'; *inhibeo*, 'to have within control,' 'to check,' 'to rein in'; *albesco*, 'to grow white'; *inalbesco*, 'to begin to grow white'; *video*, 'to see'; *invideo*, 'to see' or 'look against,' and thus 'to envy' a person.

INTER has generally the same meaning in composition that it has when alone, namely: 'between,' or 'among'; as, *pono*, 'to place'; *interpono*, 'to place between,' 'to interpose.' Sometimes it signifies 'prevention,' as if from an opposing medium; as, *dico*, 'to say'; *interdico*, 'to say between,' and so 'to forbid,' 'to interdict'; *venio*, 'to come'; *intervenio*, 'to come between,' and thus 'to prevent.' It also augments as *interfacio*, 'to do thoroughly,' 'to do up,' 'to kill.' Perhaps in this word the primitive meaning of 'between' may be traced, as *facio*, 'to do,' 'to make'; *interfacio*, 'to make' or 'go between' a person and the period of life to which he is aiming, and thus 'to cut him off' from the living.

OB takes the sense of 'before,' 'against'; as, *ruo*, 'to rush'; *obruo*, 'to rush before,' or 'overwhelm'; *loquor*, 'to speak'; *obloquor*, 'to speak against'; *duco*, 'to lead'; *obduco*, 'to draw over,' 'to hide,' 'to blot.' Sometimes it increases the signification: as, *dormio*, 'to sleep'; *obdormio*, 'to sleep upon sleep,' 'to sleep soundly.'

PER retains its original notion of 'transition,' or its secondary one of 'intensity'; as, *eo*, 'to go'; *pereo*, 'to go through,' and so 'to go through life,' 'to perish'; *do*, 'to give'; *perdo*, 'to give thoroughly,' 'to give without hopes of recall'; and so 'to lose'; *adolescens*, 'young'; *peradolescens*, 'very young.' Sometimes it is privative: as *fidus*, 'faithful'; *perfidus*, 'perfidious.'

POST takes the sense of 'behind'; as, *pono*, 'to place'; *postpono*, 'to place behind' or 'postpone'; *habeo*, 'to have,' 'to esteem'; *posthabeo*, 'to esteem less.'

PRAE takes the sense of 'precedence,' or 'prevention.' Thus, *dico*, 'to tell'; *praedico*, 'to foretell'; *facio*, 'to make'; *praefacio*, 'to make first' or 'head,' that is, 'to set over'; *claudio*, 'to shut'; *praeccludo*, 'to shut before a person can get in,' that is, 'to shut out,' or 'prevent admission.' From the notion of priority, it also conveys the idea of 'excellence,' or 'superlativeness,' or 'excess': as, *potens*, 'powerful'; *praepotens*, 'very powerful'; *maturus*, 'early'; *praematurus*, 'very early,' 'too early,' 'premature'; *stare*, 'to stand'; *praestare*, 'to stand before the rest,' 'to excel.'

PRO in composition has generally the sense of advancing: as, *moveo*, 'to move'; *promoveo*, 'to move forward,' 'to promote'; *cedo*, 'to go'; *procedo*, 'to go forward,' 'to proceed'; *habeo*, 'to have'; *prohibeo*, 'to have in advance' of another, and so in prevention of him, or 'to prohibit.' Sometimes it has the sense of 'substitution,' as, *curator*, 'a guardian'; *procurator*, 'a guardian for another,' 'a steward'; *nomen*, 'a noun'; *pronomen*, 'a word instead of a noun,' or 'a pronoun.' Also, 'presence,' 'publicity'; as, *pono*, 'to place'; *propono*, 'to place before' or 'in presence of others,' 'to propose'; *scribo*, 'to write'; *proscribo*, 'to write in the presence of the public,' or 'publicly denounce,' or 'proscribe'; *voco*, 'to call'; *provoco*, 'to call out before the public,' or 'challenge.'

RE is an inseparable preposition, and means 'back again,' or 'against;' as, *capio*, 'to take;' *recipio*, 'to take again,' 'to receive;' *pono*, 'to place;' *repono*, 'to place again.'

SE is also inseparable, and means 'apart,' 'aside;' as, *voco*, 'to call;' *sevoco*, 'to call aside;' *claudio*, 'to shut;' *secludo*, 'to shut up.'

SUB. The last consonant of this word is frequently changed into others according to the word with which it is compounded. Most of its meanings in composition may be traced to its primitive signification of 'under;' and frequently corresponds with our termination 'ish;' as, *jacio*, 'to throw;' *subjicio*, 'to cast under,' 'to subject;' *rufus*, 'red;' *subrufus*, 'reddish,' that is, a little 'under' red; *rideo*, 'to laugh;' *subrideo*, 'to smile;' *timeo*, 'to fear;' *subtimeo*, 'to fear a little;' *tristis*, 'sad;' *subtristis*, 'a little sad.' Sometimes it means something secret, or clandestine; as, *gero*, 'to carry;' *suggero*, 'to carry under,' 'to suggest;' *duco*, 'to lead;' *subduco*, 'to lead away,' 'to withdraw privily.'

SUBTER signifies simply 'under,' or 'beneath;' as, *labor*, 'to glide;' *subterlabor*, 'to glide beneath,' or something secret; as, *fugio*, 'to fly;' *subterfugio*, 'to fly away privily,' 'to escape beneath the shelter of something.'

SUPER, 'upon,' or 'over;' as, *gradior*, 'to go;' *supergradior*, 'to go beyond,' or 'surpass;' *scribo*, 'to write;' *superscribo*, 'to write upon,' 'to superscribe.'

TRANS in composition has the same signification that it has by itself; as, *eo*, 'to go;' *transeo*, 'to pass over;' *adigo*, 'to drive;' *transadigo*, 'to pierce through.' It sometimes drops its two final letters before other consonants; as, *do*, 'to give;' *trado*, 'to give over to another,' and so 'to deliver.'

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural sounds and common to all languages; as, *Oh!* *Ah!*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them; thus,

1. JOY; as, *evax!* hey, brave, lo!
2. GRIEF; as, *ah, hei, heu, eheu!* ah, alas, woe is me!
3. WONDER; as, *papæ!* O strange! *vah!* hah!
4. PRAISE; as, *euge!* well done!
5. AVERSION; as, *apåge!* away, begone, avaunt, off, fie, tush!
6. EXCLAIMING; as, *Oh, proh!* O!
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, *atat!* ha, aha!

8. IMPRECATION; as, *oe*! woe, *pax* on't!

9. LAUGHTER; as, *ha, ha, ha, ha*!

10. SILENCING; as, *ai*, 'st, *pax*! silence, hush, 'st!

11. CALLING; as, *cho, chödum, io, ho*! soho, ho, O!

12. DERISION; as, *hui*! away with!

13. ATTENTION; as, *hem*! ha!

Some Interjections denote several different passions; thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum*! with a mischief! *Infandum*! O shame! fy, fy! *Miserum*! O wretched! *Nefas*! O the villainy!

CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus, "You and I and the boy read Virgil," is one sentence made up of three, by the conjunction and twice employed; *I read Virgil*; *You read Virgil*; *The boy reads Virgil*. In like manner, "You and I read Virgil, but the boy reads Ovid," is one sentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, at, atque, que*, and; *etiam, quodque, item*, also; *cum, tum*, both, and. Also their contraries, *nec, neque, neu, neve*, neither, nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive*, either, or.

3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis*, though, although, albeit.

4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, at, atque*, but; *tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumtamen, vero*, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

5. CAUSAL; as, *nam, namque, enim*, for; *quia, quippe, quoniam*, because; *quod*, that because.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque*, therefore; *quapropter, quocirca*, wherefore; *proinde*, therefore; *cum, quum*, seeing, since; *quandoquidem*, soasmuch as.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut, uti*, that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL; as, *si, sin*, if; *dum, modo, dummodo*, provided, upon condition that; *siquidem*, if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni, nisi*, unless, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *saltem certe*, at least.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as *an, anne, num*, whether; *ne, annon*, whether, not; *necne*, or not.

12. EXPLETIVE; as, *autem, vero*, now, truly; *quidem, equidem*, indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde*, thereafter; *denique*, finally; *insuper*, moreover; *ceterum*, moreover, but, however.

14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c.* to wit, namely.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an, anne, &c.* are either *interrogative adverbs*, as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or, *suspensive conjunctions*, as, *Nescio an scribat*, I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca, quare, sin, siquidem, proterquam, &c.*; some stand in the second place; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as, *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, atque, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpote, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea, at, at, nisi, &c.*

Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive, and Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*; because, when put after a long syllable, they make the accent incline to that syllable; as in the following verse,

Indoctusque pilæ, discive, trochive, quiescit. Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

Arbuteos fuetus, montanæque fraga legébant. Ovid.

SIGNIFICATIONS OF WORDS.

The signification of a Latin word is the notion or thought which it conveyed to the mind of a Roman, and to express this clearly in another language is often a work of no small difficulty, and constitutes one of the chief advantages derived from the study of the ancient classics. To translate accurately and elegantly from one language into another, calls into exercise the highest powers of the mind; and hence a classical foundation has ever been considered by every intelligent scholar as the only basis of a truly liberal and solid education.

Every word has a primitive and invariable sense, which it is most important to know. From this original signification the secondary and metaphorical are derived. This sense must be found by separating compound words; by tracing derivative words to their roots, and by resolving compound ideas or notions into their simple parts. Corporeal words, such as, *oculus, manus, &c.* are easy, and seldom have more than one meaning. Incorporeal words, such as *virtus, longitudo, nox, &c.* are more difficult, as well as more frequent with the ancients, and on these our greatest labour must be bestowed.

The danger into which every English scholar, from the lowest class in the Grammar-school to the senior in college, is perpetually

liable to run, is that of translating Latin words into those which resemble them in appearance and sound; as, *virtus*, 'virtue;' *crimen*, 'crime.' Against this fault they should be continually on their guard, and to aid them in this, we shall briefly point out, first, some erroneous interpretations, and second, attempt to facilitate the knowledge of the true meanings of words.

I. False significations not to be adopted.

Ambitio does not mean 'pride;' but rather, 'love of honour,' 'ambition,' 'vanity;' striving after honour and piquing one's self on certain outward things; liking to be praised, to display one's self, and be in office.

Aequor is, properly, 'a level,' or 'flat,' from *æquus*, 'level,' 'even;' thence, 'the sea,' because it is level.

Amœnus, 'pleasant,' 'agreeable to the senses,' particularly to the eyes; thence peculiarly applied to places and situations; as, *horti amœni*, *regio amœna*. *Homo amœnus*, or *fortuna amœna*, would be improper. It also means 'agreeable to the ears,' as, *verba amœna*.

Animal from *anima*, 'breath,' 'life,' denotes a living creature, and is therefore applied to *homo* and *bestia*.

Apparère, not 'to appear,' that is, to seem, but to appear, that is, 'to be manifest;' as, *mendacium apparet*, 'the falsehood is apparent;' *nantes apparent*, 'men are seen swimming.'

Arma are properly 'arms for defence,' or 'armour;' *tela*, 'weapons of offence,' as darts, swords, &c.

Avarus, (from *avidus* and *æris*), 'desirous of gold,' 'avaricious;' not covetous generally.

Calamitas is not every misfortune or trouble, but something accompanied with loss, and must often be translated, 'loss,' 'deprivation.'

Clemens is not, generally, 'merciful,' but 'soft,' 'mild,' 'gentle;' 'one who is not easily provoked.'

Convincere, not 'to convince,' or convict, generally, but of a bad thing, as of theft, error, &c. In a good sense we use *persuadere*.

Crimen, not 'transgression,' unless that be implied in the charge; but 'charge,' 'accusation.'

Divertère, not 'to stop at an inn,' but 'to separate,' when a number of people separate and go different ways. *Devertère* means 'to stop at an inn.'

Exsistere, or *existere*, means, 1. 'to stand forth,' 'to be in sight,' 'to appear;' 2. 'to be.'

Imo, not merely 'yes,' but ironically, something like our 'yea rather.'

Infans, (*non* and *fans* participle of *fari*, 'to speak,') not every child, but 'an infant;' one that 'cannot yet speak.'

Legem ferre, 1. 'to propose a law,' or 'introduce a bill;' 2. 'to make or pass a law.'

Opinio, not every opinion, but such as 'an ungrounded suspicion,' 'fancy;' *opinari*, 'to fancy,' 'to think.'

Pietas must be understood according to the subject; it denotes love to God, parents, children, relatives, and benefactors, which will be shown by the connexion.

Publicus, not 'public, before the people,' but, 1. 'public,' what happened in the name, by the command, or with respect to the state; as, *bellum gerere publicè*, 'to carry on war in the name of the state;' 2. 'universal,' 'common,' 'mean.'

Stultus, not merely 'a fool,' but 'thoughtless,' 'hasty,' 'simple.'

II. To facilitate the knowledge of the true meaning of words :

First, we should observe whence a word is derived, as, *animal*, from *anima*, 'life,' thence 'animal,' or whatever lives:—*æquor*, 'a level,' from *æquus*, 'level,' 'even':—*mollis*, from *mobilis*, (which is from *moveo*), 'moveable,' 'bending,' 'soft':—*momentum*, 'movement,' for *movimentum* from *moveo*; hence *res magni momenti*, 'a thing which has much weight in causing something, which was unsettled and in equilibrium, to be decided':—*prudens* for *providens*, 'seeing before hand.'

Second, the import of terminations should be understood.

1. *Quam*, 'any;' *quisquam*, 'any one;' *usquam*, 'any where.'

2. *Cunque*, 'ever,' 'soever;' *quicunque*, 'whosoever;' *ubicunque*, 'wheresoever.' *Que* has the same force in many words: as, *utique*, 'howsoever,' 'at all events,' 'certainly.'

3. *O* and *Uc* in adverbs of place, denote 'whither;' as, *eo*, *quo*, *huc*, *istuc*, *illuc*: *Inc*, 'whence,' as, *hinc*, *illinc*: *Id*, 'where,' as, *hic*, *illic*.

4. *Osus* denotes an 'abundance,' or 'fullness' of any thing; as, *piscosus*, 'full of fish;' *annosus*, 'full of years;' *vinosus*, *maculosus*, *verbosus*, &c. *Idus* also has the same import; as, *floridus*, 'flowery;' *herbidus*, 'grassy,' &c.

5. *Ibilis* denotes 'facility,' 'worth,' 'that something may be done,' or 'is worth doing;' as, *credibilis*, 'credible;' *tolerabilis*, *amabilis*, &c. To these belong *facilis*, *difficilis*, which seem to stand for *facibilis*, &c.

6. *Fer*, or *ferus*, from *fero*, denotes 'bearing,' as *pinifer*, 'pine bearing,' &c.

7. *Eus* and *atus* denote the material; but are thus distinguished: *eus* denotes the solid material, *atus* what it is adorned with; as, *aureus*, 'golden,' 'of gold;' *auratus*, 'gilded;' so, *argenteus*, *argentatus*; *ferreus*, *ferratus*, &c.

8. *Alis*, a 'resemblance,' or 'similarity;' as *regalis*, 'kingly,' 'like a king,' but *regius*, 'royal,' 'belonging to a king;' as, *divitiæ regales*, 'riches suited to a king;' *divitiæ regie*, 'riches belonging to a king;' so, *liberalis*, 'suited to a free, well-born man,' 'liberal,' 'genteel.'

9. In verbs, *urio* denotes 'an inclination' or 'desire;' as, *esurio*, 'to desire to eat,' 'to be hungry;' *parturio*, 'to desire to bring forth,' 'to be in labour.' *Scro* denotes 'increase,' or 'growing;' as, *calesco*, 'to grow warm;' *diesco*, 'to grow rich.' *To* denotes 'a repetition;' as, *dicto*, *dictito*, 'to say often.' See Frequentative and Inceptive Verbs, pages 192 and 193.

10. *Etam* and *dam* denote a place or situation; as, *dametum*, 'a place of bushes,' or 'full of bushes;' *vinetum*, 'a vineyard;' *museum*, 'an abode of the Muses,' 'a study,' or 'library;' *arium* denotes a place or habitation; as, *aviarium*, 'an aviary;' *sacrarium*, 'a place for sacred things,' 'a chapel.'

11. In verbal nouns, *or* denotes a male, *ix* a female agent, *io* and *us* (of the fourth declension) the action; as, *victor*, 'a conqueror;' *victrix*, 'a conqueress;' *actor*, 'a pleader;' *actio*, 'the suit;' *quisitor*, 'an inquirer;' *questus*, 'complaint.'

12. *Mentum* denotes what any thing is fit for; as, *condimentum*, 'something for seasoning,' 'seasoning;' *atramentum*, 'something for blacking,' 'blacking,' 'ink.'

Third. In words which have several meanings, we must try to get the proper and first meaning, from which the rest may be derived, and see if there be a connexion between the original and secondary sense which leads from one to the other.

Ambire, 1. 'to go round' any thing, or from one to another: 2. 'to solicit an office,' because at Rome the candidates 'went round' to beg for votes, or because going around for any thing shows a desire after it; hence, *ambitio* 1. 'the soliciting an office' by going round after it; 2. 'desire of honour,' 'ambition.'

Ango, 1. 'to make narrow,' 'to tie fast,' as the throat; 2. 'to cause anguish.'

Adfigo or *Affigo* (from *ad* and *figo*) 1. 'to dash a thing against' something, as the wall, the ground: 2. 'to drive to the ground,' 'to make unfortunate,' 'to afflict.'

Callidus, 'thick skinned,' 'having hard lumps' from much labour, which supposes practice and experience: 2. 'experienced,' 'skilful.'

Calamitas, 1. 'injury to the stalk,' (from *calamus*, 'a stalk'); 2. 'a great loss' or 'hurt,' or misfortune attended with loss; as when one loses his property.

Confutare and *refutare*, 1. 'to quench boiling water by pouring in cold;' 2. 'to damp, drive back, confute.'

Egregius, 1. 'chosen from the flock;' 2. 'excellent.'

Gratia 1. 'agreeableness;' 2. *gratia hominis*, 'the favour which one has with the people,' or 'which he has towards others;' 3. 'complaisance;' 4. 'thanks.'

Offenders, 1. inadvertently to tread or 'stumble against any thing;' 2. 'to find, meet with;' 3. 'to hurt;' 4. 'to commit a fault,' 'to offend;' 5. 'to be unfortunate.'

Persona, 1. 'a mask;' 2. 'person,' 'part,' or 'character,' whether real or assumed, for the ancient actors wore 'masks' which corresponded to their assumed character; 3. 'person,' the man himself; *mea persona*, 'my person,' 'I.'

Probus, 1. 'good,' 'genuine,' 'sincere,' when any thing is what it was taken for; as, *curum probum*; 2. 'good,' 'honourable,' 'upright,' as, *probus amicus*, 'a sincere friend.'

Scrupulus, 1. 'a small stone;' 2. any 'obstacle;' 3. 'hesitation,' 'uncertainty,' 'scruple.'

Sublevare, 1. 'to raise on high;' 2. 'to help,' 'to stand by;' 3. 'to lighten.'

SYNTAX,

OR

CONSTRUCTION OF WORDS IN SENTENCES.

SENTENCES.

A **SENTENCE** is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together ; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar, which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a two-fold relation to one another ; namely, that of *Concord* or *Agreement* ; and that of *Government* or *Influence*.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents ; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

Government, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.
3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.
4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood : or by a verbal adjective.
5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.
6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition ; or is placed before the infinitive.
7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.
8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.
9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

SIMPLE AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

* The two general divisions of Syntax in this Grammar are into SIMPLE SENTENCES and COMPOUND SENTENCES. The latter will be found under rule LVII—'The construction of Relatives.'

* A SIMPLE SENTENCE is that which has but one nominative and one verb; as, *præceptor docet*, 'the master teaches;' a COMPOUND SENTENCE is that which has more than one nominative and one verb; as, *præceptor, qui docet, laborat*, 'the master, who teaches, is sick;' here the relative pronoun *qui* introduces another verb, *docet*, into the sentence.

* In a SIMPLE SENTENCE there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute* or *Predicate*. The *Subject* is the word, (whether it denotes a thing or a person) of which something is said: the *Predicate* is what is said of the subject. *The father is learned*. Here 'the father' is the Subject of discourse, or the person spoken of; 'learned' the Predicate, or what we affirm concerning the subject. Sometimes the subject is accompanied by an adjective; as, *the fine book is lost*; here 'the fine book' is the subject, and 'lost' the predicate.

* In a COMPOUND SENTENCE there are either several subjects and one predicate, or several predicates and one subject, or both several predicates and several subjects; as, 'My father, mother, brother and sister are dead;'—here, the predicate *dead* belongs to the four subjects, *father, mother, brother and sister*, which taken together form a plural; the predicate therefore with the verb should be plural. The subject is often separated from its predicate; as, 'my father, who has been absent many weeks, has not yet written;' where the words, *my father has not yet written* form a sentence, between which another sentence, *who has been absent many weeks*, is interposed: In the interposed sentence, *who* is the subject, *absent* the predicate.

CONCORD.

The following words agree together in sentences. 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. Agreement of one Substantive with another.

RULE I. (1) Substantives signifying the same thing agree in case; as,

Cicero orator, Cicero the orator; *Cicerōnis oratōris,* Of Cicero the orator.
Urbs Athēnæ, The city Athens; *Urbis Athēnārum,* Of the city Athens.

* (2) This addition to a substantive, called *Apposition*, is properly a short mode of speaking for *qui, quæ, quod*, or *cum* with the verb *sum*; as, *Cicero*, Consul, *hoc fecit* 'Cicero the Consul did this,' the same as, *Cicero*, cum consul esset, *hoc fecit*.

* (3) It is not necessary that the nouns agree in gender, number or person; as, *Magnum pauperies opprobrium*, Hor. where *opprobrium*, which is neuter, agrees in case with *pauperies*, fem! But if it be possible they should agree in gender and number: thus, *docuit hoc me usus*, magister optimus, 'experience, which is the best master, taught me this:' if for *usus* we substitute *exercitatio*, fem. we should say, *magistra optima*.

* (4) When a plural appellative is used as descriptive of two or more proper names of different genders, it must be of the more worthy gender; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legati missi*, Liv. in which *reges* is equivalent to *regem et reginam*.

* (4½) Sometimes the latter substantive is put in the Genitive; as, *Fons Timavi*, for *Timavus*, Virg.

2. Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.

II. (5) Adjectives, including Adjective pronouns and Participles, agree with their Substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

<i>Bonus vir</i> , a good man;	<i>Boni viri</i> , good men.
<i>Femina casta</i> , a chaste woman;	<i>Feminae castæ</i> , chaste women.
<i>Dulce pomum</i> , a sweet apple;	<i>Dulcia poma</i> , sweet apples.

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

Obs. 1. (6) The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing. Virg.; *Tuum scire*, the same with *tua scientia*, thy knowledge. Pers. We sometimes, however, find the substantive understood in the feminine; as, *Non posteriores feram*, sup. *partes*. Ter.

Obs. 2. (7) An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as, *Certus amicus*, a sure friend; *Bona ferina*, good venison; *Summum bonum*, the chief good: *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incola turba vocant*, the inhabitants. Ovid. *Populum late regem*, Virg. for *regnantem*, 'ruling.'

Obs. 3. (8) These adjectives, *primus, medius, ultimus, extremus, infimus, imus, summus, supremus, reliquus, cætera*, usually signify *the first part, the middle part, &c.* of any thing; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

* (9) An adjective joined with two substantives of different genders, generally agrees with that one which is chiefly the subject of discourse, though sometimes with the nearest, although it may not be the principal one; as, *non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Cic. where *dicenda* agrees with *stultitia*, instead of *dicendus*, to agree with *error*. But if the principal substantive be the name of a man or woman, the adjective agrees with it; as, *Semiramis puer esse credita est*, Justin. *not creditus* to agree with *puer*.

Obs. 4. (10) Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissimus, res præstantissima, &c.*

3. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

III. (11) A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person; as,

<i>Ego lego</i> , I read.	<i>Nos legimus</i> , We read.
<i>Tu scribis</i> , Thou writest or you write.	<i>Vos scribitis</i> , Ye or you write.
<i>Præceptor docet</i> , The master teaches.	<i>Præceptores docent</i> , Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

Obs. 1. (12) *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos*, of the second person; *ille*, and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *Tu es patrônus, tu pater*. Ter. *Tu legis, ego scribo*.

Obs. 2. (13) An infinitive or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem*; the sacrifice not being attended with favourable omens, detained the dictator for a long time. Liv. 7, 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet, id est esse regem*. Sallust.

Obs. 3. (14) The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiebant*, or *fugere cæperunt*. *Invidere omnes mihi*, for *invidēbant*. This is called the *historical infinitive*, and is only used in animated narration.

Obs. 4. (15) A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of

the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitudo stat* or *stant*; the multitude stands, or stand.

A collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant cæsi: Pars obnixæ trudunt*, sc. *formicæ*. Virg. *Æn.* iv. 406. *Magna pars raptæ*, sc. *virgines*. Liv. 1. 9. Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus*, Virg. *Æn.* vii. 624.

* (16) The nominative fails to the third person of certain verbs, especially those which mean 'to say,' 'to tell,' &c.; as, *aiunt, dicunt, ferunt, narrant*, that is, *homines*. So also with the third person of *sum* when *qui* follows and represents the subject; as, *est qui dicat*, for *est aliquis qui dicat*, 'there is some one who says:' so, *sunt quos juvat*, Hor.

* (17) With certain verbs a nominative is always wanting; as passive verbs used impersonally; as, *parcitur mihi*, 'I am spared,' literally, 'it is spared to me.' So with the gerund; as, *mihi est eundum*, 'I must go.' So also in the expression *venit mihi in mentem illius diei*, where *illius diei* seems to stand for the nominative: but perhaps *negotium* or *memoria* is to be supplied.

* (18) Sometimes the Nominative which fails must be supplied from the preceding sentence; as, *et, in quem primum egressi sunt locum, Troja vocatur*, (Liv. 1. 1.) where the nom. *hic* from the preceding *locum* is understood with *vocatur*; or better, *et locus in quem egressi sunt Troja vocatur*. Sometimes from the following; as, *vastatur agri, quod inter urbem ac Fidenas est*, 'there was so much land laid waste as was between Rome &c.; (Liv. 1. 14.) where *id* governing *agri* is nom. to *vastatur*; and *quod* is used, as elsewhere, for *quantum*.

Accusative before the Infinitive.

IV. (19) The infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

Gaudeo te valere,

I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. (20) The particle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs, without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the particle is omitted; as, *Atunt regem adventare*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. (21) The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. (22) The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugere*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. (23) The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied, especially after participles; as, *Hostium exercitum casum fusumque cognōvi*, Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicitus susceptūrum*, scil. *me esse*, Ter.

Obs. 5. (24) The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, or *quin*; as, *Gaudeo te valere*, i. e. *quod valeas*, or *propter tuam bonam valetudinem*: *Jubeo vos bene sperare*, or *ut bene speretis*; *Prohibeo eum exire*, or *ne exeat*: *Non dubito eum fecisse*, or much better, *quin fecerit*. *Scio quod filius amet*, Plaut. for *filium amare*. *Miror, si potuit*, for *eum potuisse*. Cic. *Nemo dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnes virtute superārit*, for *populum Rōmānum superasse*. Nep. *Ex animi sententiā juro, ut ego rempublicam non deseram*, for *me non deserturum esse*. Liv. xxii. 53.

* (25) Care should be taken in using this construction not to render the meaning ambiguous, as in the famous answer of the oracle; *Aio te, Æacida, Romanos vincere posse*, in which it could not be ascertained from the mere words, which party was to prove victorious. The ambiguity might be prevented by changing the active into the passive voice.

The same Case after a Verb as before it.

V. (26) Any Verb may have the same Case after it as before it, *when both words refer to the same thing*; as,

*Ego sum discipulus,
Tu vocāris Joannes,
Illa incēdit regīna,
Scio illum habēri sapientem,
Scio vos esse discipulos,*

*I am a scholar.
You are named John.
She walks as a queen.
I know that he is esteemed wise.
I know that you are scholars.*

So *Redeo irātus, jaceo supplex*; *Evadent digni*, they will become worthy; *Rempublicam defendi adolescens*; *nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malim vidēri timīdus, quam parum prudens*. Cic. *Non licet mihi esse negligentī*. Cic. *Natura dedit omnibus esse beātis*. Claud. *Cupio me esse clementem*; *cupio non putāri mendācem*; *Vult esse medium*, sc. *se*, He wishes to be neuter. Cic. *Disce esse pater*; *Hoc est esse patrem*? sc. *eum*. Ter. *Id est, domīnum, non impetratōrem esse*. Sallust.

Obs. 1. (27) This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. (28) The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are:

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem*, and *existo*; *eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evādo, jaceo, fugio*, &c.

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appellor, vocor, nominor, nuncūpor*; to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constitutor, salutor, designor*, &c.

(39) These and other like verbs admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Intèret omnium esse bonos*, scil. *se*, it is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or accus. promiscuously; as, *Cupio dici doctus or doctum*, sc. *me dici*; *Cupio esse clemens, non putari mendax*; *vult esse medius*.

Obs. 3. (30) When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former; as *Dos est decem talenta*, Her dowry is ten talents. Ter. *Omnia pontus erunt*. Ovid. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amantium iræ amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love. Ter. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive which is most the subject of discourse; as, *Oppidum est appellatum Posidonia*. Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*. Cic.

Obs. 4. (31) When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*, I may be happy; or, *licet mihi esse beatum, me* being understood; thus, *licet mihi (me) esse beatum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *Licet esse beatum*. One may be happy, scil. *alicui*, or *homini*.

Obs. 5. (32) The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; as, *Retulit Ajax Jovis esse pronēpos*, for *se esse pronepōtem*. Ovid. Met. xii. 141. *Cum patris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *se vocari sapientem*, &c. Horat. Ep. 1. 16. 30. *Acceptum referto versibus esse nocens*. Ovid. *Tulumque putavit jam bonus esse socer*. Lucan.

GOVERNMENT.

I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. (33) One Substantive governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former.*)

* (34) This rule might perhaps be better expressed, thus:

The latter of two Substantives signifying different things, is put in the Genitive, when it expresses the *Possessor*, *Cause*, or *Source* of the former; as,

Amor Dei, The love of God.

Lex naturæ, The law of nature.

Domus Cæsaris, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

* (35) The Genitive has three senses. 1. It is used *actively* or denotes an action,—that one does any thing; as, *Victoria Cæsaris*, 'the victory of Cæsar.' that is, which Cæsar gains. 2. It is used *possessively*, denoting that the thing which is put in the Genitive has or possesses something; as, *liber patris*, 'the

father's book,' 'the book which belongs to the father.' 2. It is used *objectively*, that is, denotes the object, whether person or thing, to which the action is directed; as, *amor mei*, 'love for me.'

Obs. 1. (36) When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius heri* or *herilis*, a master's son; and among the poets, *Labor Hercules*, for *Herculis*; *Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

* (37) The Genitive also sometimes follows substantives to denote their use or service; as, *abaci vasa*, Cic. 'plate for the sideboard.' *Apparatus urbium expugnandarum*, Liv. 'Instruments for attacking cities.'

Obs. 2. (38) When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*, the love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him: So *caritas patris*, signifies either the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense; thus, *Timor Dei* always implies *Deus timetur*; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So, *caritas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soil. Liv. ii. 1.

Obs. 3. (39) Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hectōris Andromache*, scil. *uxor*; *Ventum est ad Vestæ*, scil. *adem* or *templum*; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*; three miles.

* (40) The Latins often put an adjective instead of a genitive; as, *laus aliena*, for *alienorum*, Cic. See (36)

* (41) Instead of a genitive, verbal substantives are sometimes followed by the case which the verb, from which they are derived, governs; as, *Quid tibi hanc curatio est rem?* Plaut. for *hujus rei*, because *curare* governs an accusative. So in Cic. *Quodsi justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus institutisque populorum*; because *obtemperare* governs a dative.

Obs. 4. (42) We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive, particularly among the poets; as, *cui corpus porrigitur*, whose body is extended. Virg. *Æn.* vi. 596.

Obs. 5. (43) Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *Amicitia*, *inimicitia*, *pax*, *cum aliquo*; *Amor in*, vel *erga*, *aliquem*; *Gaudium de re*; *Cura de aliquo*; *Mentio illius*, vel *de illo*; *Quies ab armis*; *Fumus ex incendiis*; *Predator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*. Sall. &c.

Obs. 6. (44) The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of*; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent to *Avernus*; *Prudentia juris*, skill in the law.

(45) SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

(46) So also adjective pronouns, when used as substantives, or having a noun understood; as, *Liber ejus*, *illius*, *hujus*, &c. the book of him, or his book, sc. *hominis*; the book of her, or her book, sc. *feminae*. *Libri eorum*, or *eorum*, their books; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noster*, not *nostri*; *sum jus*, not *sui*.

(47) When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrum, vestrum*; but we use their possessives when an active sense is expressed; as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved; *Amor meus*, My love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find, however, the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee. Ter. Phorm. v. 8. 27. *Labor mei*, My labour. Plaut.

(48) The possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; as, *Pectus tuum hominis simplicis*, Cic. Phil. ii. 43. *Noster duorum eventus*. Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*. Cic. *Mea scripta, timentis*, &c. Hor. *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*. Cic. *Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxime*. Id. *The reason of this is, because the adjective pronouns are equivalent to the genitive of the personal; as, *pectus tuum hominis* is the same as *pectus tui, hominis*, &c. where *hominis* would agree in case with *tui*.

(49) The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon the nominative; as, *Cato interfecit se*, *Miles defendit suam vitam*; *Dicit se scripturum esse*. We find, however, *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind; as, *Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus*. Cic. *Persuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis proficiscantur*, for *una secum*. Cæs. See page 87.

VII. (50) If the latter Substantive have an Adjective of praise or 'dispraise' joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, or *summâ prudentiâ*,
Puer probæ indolis, or *probâ indole*,

A man of great wisdom.
A boy of a good disposition.

* (51) This Genitive or Ablative is called the GENITIVE or ABLATIVE of QUALITY, and the rule would have been better expressed by saying 'an adjective of description' instead of *praise* or *dispraise*. This Genitive or Ablative is used to express—1. PROPERTY or CHARACTER; as, *puer bonæ indolis*; *adolescens summa virtute*. 2. FORM; as, *mulier formæ pulchræ*, or *egregia forma*. 3. WORTH, RANK; as, *homo parvi pretii*. 4. POWER; as, *homo sui juris*, 'a man at his own disposal,' 'one who is his own master.' 5. WEIGHT; as, *lapis centum librarum*. 6. TIME; as, *exilium decem annorum*, 'a banishment of ten years.' 7. LENGTH, SIZE, &c.; as, *testudo pedum sexaginta*.

Obs. 1. (52) The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood; as, *cum, de, ex, in*, &c. Thus, *Vir summâ prudentiâ* is the same with *vir cum summâ prudentiâ*.

Obs. 2. (53) In some phrases the genitive is only used; as, *Magni formicæ laboris*, the laborious ant; *Vir imi subsellii, homo minimi pretii*, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii*, a man of no experience in war, Sallust. *Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci*. Cic. *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative; as, *Es bono animo*, Be of good courage. *Mirâ sum alacritate ad litigandum*. Cic. *Capite aperto est*, His head is bare; *obvoluto, covered*. *Capite et supercilio semper est rasis*. Id. *Mulier magno natu*. Liv. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *Adolescens, eximiâ spe, summæ virtutis*. Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive. *Qui nunquam ægro corpore fuerunt*, Cic.

Obs. 3. (54) Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative: thus, we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio*; or *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum*, or *quod ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdöche*; as, *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus secundum* or *quod ad membra*, or *habens membra fracta*. Horat. *Os humerosque deo similis*. Virg.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

VIII. (55) An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ, Much money.

Quid rei est?

What is the matter?

Obs. 1. (56) This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers; as, *Plus eloquentiæ, minus sapientiæ, tantum fidei, id negotii*; *Quicquid erat patrum, reos diceres*. Liv. *Id loci*; *Ad hoc ætatis*. Sallust.

Obs. 2. (57) The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, &c.* To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam, &c.* *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

* (58) *Tantum* with the genitive always means 'so much,' 'so many;' but when it means 'so great,' it is always an adjective, and agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case. Thus, *tantus labor*, 'so great a labour'; *tantum labôris*, 'so much labour'; *tantum negotium*, 'so weighty a business'; *tantum negotii*, 'so much business,' or 'trouble': it is therefore incorrect to say that *tantum laboris* is put for *tantus labor*. So with *quantum*, 'how much'; as, *quantum negotium*, 'how great,' or 'how important a business'; *quantum negotii*, 'how much business,' or 'trouble.'

Obs. 3. (59) *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive; as, *nihil sinceri*, no sincerity; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e*; as, *Nequid hostile timerent*, not *hostilis*: we find, however, *quicquid civilis*. Liv. v. 3.

Obs. 4. (60) Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Angusta viarum, Opæca locorum, Telluris aperta, loca* being understood. So, *Amara curarum, acuta belli, sc. negotia*. Horat. An adjective, indeed, of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood; as, *Amicus Cæsaris, Patria Ulyssis, &c.*

Opus and Usus.

IX. (61) *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

Est opus pecuniâ, There is need of money; *Usus viribus*, Need of stren-

Obs. 1. (62) *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive; as, *Lectiōnis opus est*. Quinct. *Opēras usus est*. Liv. *Temporis opus est*. Liv.

Obs. 2. (63) *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est*. We need a general. Cic. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse*. Id. *Nobis exempla opus sunt*. Id.

* (64) Hence it is seen that *opus* is used in two ways; 1. PERSONALLY, that is, it has its subject with which it agrees in the Nominative, and is found in both numbers; as, *liber est mihi opus*; *libri sunt mihi opus*; *libri mihi opus fuerunt*, &c. 2. IMPERSONALLY, with *est* like other impersonal verbs, in which case it has its subject in the Ablative; as, *Auctoritate tua nobis opus est*. In both usages the person to whom something is necessary, is put in the Dative.

Obs. 3. (65) *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturato*, need of haste; *Opus consulto*, Need of deliberation; *Quid facto usus est?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius. Cic.

Obs. 4. (66) *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Siquid forte, sit, quod opus sit aciri*. Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, agrum ut te adsimiles*. Plaut. *Sive opus est imperitare equis*. Horat. It is often placed absolutely, i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est*; *si opus sit*, &c.

II. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives governing the Genitive.

X. (67) Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

Avidus gloriæ, Desirous of glory.

Ignarus fraudis, Ignorant of fraud.

Memor beneficiōrum, Mindful of favours.

(68) To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX; as, *capax*, *edax*, *ferax*, *tenax*, *pertinax*, &c. and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans*, *appetens*, *cupiens*, *insolens*, *sciens*; *consultus*, *doctus*, *expertus*, *insuetus*, *insolitus*, &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind; 1. Desire, as, *avārus*, *cupīdus*, *studiōsus*, &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance, and doubting; as, *callīdus*, *certus*, *certior*, *consciū*, *gnarus*, *peritus*, *prudens*, &c. *Ignārus*, *incertus*, *insciū*, *imprūdē*, *imperitū*, *immēmō*, *rudis*; *ambiguus*, *dubius*, *suspensū*, &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary; as, *anxiū*, *curiōsus*, *solicitū*, *providū*, *diligē*, *incuriōsus*, *securū*, *negligē*, &c. 4. Fear and confidence; as, *formidolōsus*, *pavidū*, *timidū*, *trepidū*; *impavidū*, *interritū*, *intrepidū*. 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *noxius*, *reus*, *suspectū*, *compertū*; *innoxius*, *innocē*, *insons*.

(69) To these add many adjectives of various significations; as, *ager animi*; *ardens*, *audax*, *aversus*, *diversus*, *egregius*, *erectus*, *falsus*, *felix*, *fessus*, *furens*, *ingens*, *intēger*, *latus*, *præstans animi*; *modicus voti*; *intēger vilæ*; *seri studiōrum*. Hor. But we say, *Æger pedibus*, *ardens in cupiditatibus*, *præstans doctrinā*, *modicus cultu*; *Latus negotio*, *de re*, or *propter rem*, &c. and never *ager pedum*, &c.

Obs. 1. (70) Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algōris*, able to bear cold; and *patiens algōrem*, actually bearing cold. So, *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem*; *doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar; *doctus grammaticam*, one who has learned it.

Obs. 2. (71) Many of these adjectives vary their construction; as, *avidus in pecuniis*. Cic. *Avidior ad rem*. Ter. *Jure consultus* and *peritus*, or *juris*. Cic. *Rudis literarum*, in *jure civili*. Cic. *Rudis arte*, *ad mala*. Ovid. *Doctus Latinæ*, *Latinis litteris*. Cic. *Assuetus labōre*, in *Omnia*. Liv. *Mense herili*. Virg. *Insuetus moribus Romanis*, in the dat. Liv. *Labōris*, *ad onera portandu*. Cæsar. *Desuetus bello et triumphis*, in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg. *Anxius sollicitus*, *securus*, *de re aliquâ*; *diligens*, in, *ad*, *de*. Cic. *Negligens in aliquem*, in or *de re*: *Reus de vi*, *criminibus*. Cic. *Certior factus de re*, rather than *rei*. Cic.

Obs. 3. (72) The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causâ*, in *re*, or in *negotio*, or some such word understood; as, *Cupidus laudis*, i. e. *causâ* or in *re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain, in their own signification, the force of a substantive; thus, *studiosus pecuniæ*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ*, having a fondness for money.

* (73) The following Adjectives are found with the Genitive ANIMI: *Abjectior*, Liv. *Æger*, Id. *Amens*, Virg. *Anxius*, Sall. *Augustior*, Apul. *Aversus*, Tac. *Cæcus*, Quintil. *Captus*, Tac. *Certus*, Liv. *Compōs*, Ter. *Confidens*, Sueton. *Confirmatus*, Apul. *Confusus*, Liv. *Credula spes*, Hor. *Ditior*, Stat. *Diversus*, Tac. and Ter. *Dubius*, Virg. *Egregius*, Id. *Erectus*, Sil. *Exiguus*, Claud. *Extremus*, Stat. *Expletus*, Apul. *Externatus*, Id. *Fulsus*, Ter. *Ferox*, Tac. *Festinus*, Apul. *Fidens*, Virg. *Firmatus*, Sall. *Furens*, Virg. *Illex*, Apul. *Impōs*, Plaut. *Infelix*, Virg. *Ingens*, Tac. *Insanus*, Apul. *Intēger*, Hor. *Lapsus*, Plaut. *Lassus*, Id. *Macte*, Mart. *Miser*, Plaut. *Mutatus*, Apul. *Præceps*, Virg. *Præstans*, Id. *Rêcreatus*, Apul. *Stupentes*, Liv. *Suspensus*, Apul. *Tantus*, Id. *Tenella*, Id. *Territus*, Liv. *Turbatus*, Sil. *Turbidus*, Tac. *Vagus*, Catull. *Validus*, Tac. *Vecors*, Apul. *Versus*, Tac. *Victus*, Virg. So *Alienus animæ*, Sil.

These are followed by the Genitive INGENII: *Æmulus*, Sil. *Audax*, Stat. *Fervidus*, Sil. *Latus*, Vell. *Versutus*, Plin.

These by MENTIS: *Dubius*, Ovid. *Intēger*, Hor. *Mutabile*, Sil. *Pares*, Id. *Potens*, Ovid. *Sanus*, Plaut.

These by IRÆ: *Manifestus*, Sall. *Pervicax*, Tac. *Potens*, Curt. *Pulcherimus*, Sil. *Virtissimus*, Id.

These by MILITIÆ: *Acer*, Tac. *Impiger*, Id. *Inglorius*, Id. *Lassus*, Hor. *Optimus*, Sil. *Strēnuus*, Tac.

These by BELLII: *Expertus*, Virg. *Fessus*, Stat. *Medijs*, Hor. *Promptus*, Tac. *Serus*, Sil. *Rêsides bellorum*, Stat.

These by **LABORIS**: *Anxius*, Sil. *Insuperatus*, Cæs. *Invictus*, Tac. *Latus*, Virg. *Fortunatus laborum*, Virg. *Laudandus laborum*, Sil. *Liber laborum*, Hor.

These by **RERUM**: *Fessus*, Virg. *Imperitus*, Ter. *Instabilis*, Senec. *Sicors*, Ter. *Trepidus*, Liv. et Sil. *Unicus*, Sil.

These by **FIDEI**: *Præclarus*, Tac. *Prævus*, Sil. *Staliter*, Id.

These by **ÆVI**: *Æquales*, Sil. *Floridior*, Id. *Matūrus*, Virg. *Maximus*, Sil. *Memor*, Virg. *Validus*, Aurel. Vict.

These by **TUI**: *Fidissima*, Virg. *Similis*, Plant.

These by **SOI**: *Mollior*, Apul. *Periculabundus*, Id. *Superior*, Tac.

These by **MORUM**: *Diversus*, Tac. *Exactus*, Ovid. *Fluxa*, Sil. *Gravis*, Claud. *Sperendus*, Tac.

So, *Admirandus frugalitatis*, Senec. *Æquus absentium*, Tac. *Alienus consilii*, Sall. *Dignitatis*, Cic. *Joci*, Ovid. *Pacis*, Lucr. *Ambiguus pudoris*, Tac. *Anxius furti*, Ovid. *Ardens Cædis*, Stat. *Argutus facinororum*, Plant. *Assuetus tumultus*, Liv. *Atrax odii*, Tac. *Attonitus serpentis*, Sil. *Avidus laudis*, Cic. *Benignus vini*, Hor. *Bibulus*, Fælerni, Id. *Blandus precum*, Stat. *Cæcus fatis*, Lucan. *Futuri*, Stat. *Callidus temporum*, Tac. *Catus legum*, Auson. *Celer nandi*, Sil. *Certus destinationis*, Tac. *Salutis*, Ovid. *Clamorus undæ*, Sil. *Clarissimus disciplinæ*, Vell. *Commune omnium*, Cic. *Compós voti*, Liv. *Contermnus jûgi*, Apul.: cf. Sil. v. 511. *Crëdulus adversi*, Sil. *Cumulatissimus acclerum*, Plaut. *Cupidior salutis*, Nep. *Cupidus rerum novarum*, Sall. *Damnandus facti*, Sil. *Deformis lëti*, Id. *Degener artis*, Ovid. *Despectus tædæ*, Sil. *Dëvius æqui*, Id. *Recti*, Id. *Disertus leporem*, ac *facetiarum*, Catull. *Dispar sortis*, Sil. *Divina futuri*, Hor. *Docilis modorum*, Id. *Doctus virgæ*, Sil. *Dubius fatis*, Sil. *Sententiæ*, Ovid. *Dulcissimus fandi*, Gell. *Durus oris*, Liv. *Durior oris*, Ovid. *Effusissimus munificentis*, Vell. *Enuntiativi corporum*, Senec. *Erectus linguæ*, Sil. *Fatis*, Stat. *Exsors culpæ*, Liv. *Secandi*, Hor. *Periculi*, Ter. *Exul patriæ*, Hor. *Mundi*, Ovid. *Dömüs*, Quintil. *Extorris regni*, Stat. *Exutus formæ*, Sil. *Facilis frugum*, Claud. *Fallax amicitis*, Tac. *Falsus cupiti*, Sil. *Fatigatus spei*, Apul. *Felix cærebri*, Hor. *Opèrum*, Sil. *Fessus viæ*, Stat. *Mæris et viarum*, Hor. *Salutis*, Sil. *Fidens armorum*, Lucan. *Firmus propòsiti*, Vell. *Flavus cômærum*, Sil. *Formidoliosior hostium*, Tac. *Fræquens sylvæ*, Tac. *Frustratus spei*, Gell. *Fugitivus regni*, Flor. *Gaudens alti*, Stat. *Gravida metalli*, Ovid. *Impavidus somni*, Sil. *Impræba connubii*, Stat. *Incautus futuri*, Hor. *Indecora formæ*, Tac. *Indocilis paciis*, Sil. *Inexplëbilis virtutis*, Liv. *Infirmus corpõris*, Apul. *Ingratus salutis*, Virg. *Innoxius consilii*, Q. Curt. *Insolens infamis*, Cic. *Audiendi*, Tac. *Insolitus servitii*, Sall. *Insons sanguinis*, Ovid. *Intèger vitæ*, Hor. *Urbis V. Flac. Ævi*, Virg. *Annorum*, Stat. *Interrupta lëti*, Ovid. *Cupiti*, Vell. *Intrëpidus ferri*, Claud. *Invictus opëris et labõris*, Tac. *Invitus laudis*, Cic. *Latus frugum*, Sall. *Lassus mæris et viarum militis*que, Hor. *Lentus cœpti*, Sil. *Lëvis opum*, Id. *Liberalis pecuniæ*, Sall. *Lugendus formæ*, Sil. *Mædus roris*, Apul. *Mantifestus criminis*, Tac. *Mædus paciis*, Hor. *Frâtris et sororis*, Ovid. *Mëlior fatis*, Sil. *Môdicus pecuniæ*, Tac. *Voti*, Pers. *Originis*, Tac. *Dignationis*, Id. *Vitium*, Vell. *Voluptatum*, Tac. *Munificus auri*, Claud. *Nimius impërii*, Liv. *Sermõnis*, Tac. *Nobilis fandi*, Auson. *Notus fugarum*, Sil. *Nudus arboris*, Ovid. *Occultus odii*, Tac. *Onusta remigum*, Hirt. *Otiõsi studiõrum*, Plin. *Pares mætis*, Sil. *Pavidus offensioum*, Tac. *Pauper æquæ*, Hor. *Perfida pacti*, Sil. *Perinfamæ disciplinæ*, Apul. *Përitus juris legumque*, Hor. *Perfînax docendi*, Id. *Piger periculi*, Sil. *Palens lyre*, Hor. *Ælatis*, Sil. *Voti*, Ovid. *Mæris et terræ tempestatumque*, Virg. *Præcipuus virtutis*, Apul. *Præcicia futuri*, Virg. *Præstans sapientis*, Tac. *Præcax otii*, Tac. *Pröfugus regni*, Id. *Pröperus occa-*

siōnis, Id. *Prosp̄ra fr̄gum*, Hor. *P̄rus sc̄l̄ria*, Id. *Serpentum*, Sil. *Rectus iudicii*, Senec. *R̄dis lit̄r̄rum*, Cic. *S̄liatus castis*, Ovid. *Saucius f̄am̄*, Apul. *Sc̄tus vad̄rum*, Hor. *Segnis occ̄siōnum*, Tac. *S̄ri st̄dīrum*, Hor. *S̄lers op̄rum*, Sil. *L̄r̄s*, Hor. *S̄l̄tus op̄rum*, Id. *Spr̄ta viḡria*, Sil. *St̄dīosiss̄mus mei*, Cic. *Summus s̄v̄rit̄tis*, Tac. *S̄perales dignit̄tis*, Cic. *Surdus v̄rit̄tis*, Col. *Tardus f̄ḡe*, V. Flac. *T̄nuis op̄um*, Sil. *Truncus p̄dam*, Virg. *V̄fer j̄ris*, Ovid. *V̄lidus or̄andi*, Tac. *V̄rium*, Id. *V̄aus v̄ri*, Virg. *V̄n̄randus s̄n̄ct̄e*, Sil. *V̄tus regnandi*, Tac. *Vigil armenti*, Sil. *Ūlis m̄dendi*, Ovid.

XI. (74) Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

Al̄quis philosoph̄rum,
Senior fratrum,
Doctiss̄mus Roman̄rum.
Quis nostrum,
Una mus̄rum,
Oct̄vus sapient̄um,

Some one of the philosophers.
The elder of the brothers.
The most learned of the Romans.
Which of us?
One of the muses.
The eighth of the wise men.

(75) Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them in English, *of* or *among*; as, *olius*, *nullus*, *solus*, &c. *quis* and *qui*, with their compounds: also Comparatives, Superlatives, and some numerals; as, *unus*, *duo*, *tres*; *primus*, *secundus*, &c. To these add *multi*, *pauci*, *plerique*, *medius*, *neuter*, *quotus*, *nounulla*.

* (76) If the substantive be a collective noun, the genitive singular is used; as, *totius Gr̄cīe doctiss̄mus*.

Obs. 1. (77) Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantives which they have after them in the genitive; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former; as, *Indus flum̄num max̄mus*. Cic. Rarely with the latter; as, *Delph̄inus animal̄um velociss̄mum*. Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex num̄ro*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number; as, *Nulla sor̄rum*, scil. *soror* or *ex num̄ro sor̄rum*.

Obs. 2. (78) Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as, *Unus de fratribus*; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter*; as, *Pulcherr̄mus ante om̄es*, for *om̄ium*. Virg. *Primus inter om̄es*. Id.

Obs. 3. (79) Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Vir fortiss̄mus nostr̄e civitat̄is*. Cic. *Max̄mus stirpis*. Liv. *Ult̄mos orbis Britann̄os*. Horat. Od. i. 35, 29.

Obs. 4. (80) Comparatives are used when we speak of two; Superlatives when we speak of more than two; as, *Major fratrum*, The elder of the brothers, meaning *two*; *Max̄mus fratrum*, the eldest of the brothers, meaning *more*

than two. In like manner, *uter, alter, neuter*, are applied with regard to two; *quis, unus, alius, nullus*, with regard to three or more; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you two; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you three; but these are sometimes taken promiscuously, the one for the other.

* (81) [The Dative, when compared with the Accusative (which is the immediate object) may be defined to be THE CASE OF THE REMOTE OBJECT. It answers to the question to whom? or for whom or what? to what end? to whose advantage or disadvantage? The active Verb with the Accusative expresses the amount of the action done to the object, which object is put in the Dative. Thus in the expression, *narras fabulam surdo*, 'you are telling a story to a deaf person,' the two terms *narras fabulam* (the active Verb with the Accusative) are required to express the amount of what is done, *surdo*, 'to the deaf person.'

* (82) But the Dative according to our English idiom must frequently be translated by FROM or OF, instead of TO or FOR. Thus, *Brutus percussit pectus Cæsari*, 'Brutus struck the breast of Cæsar;' here the two terms *percussit pectus* are requisite to express the action done to the object, which object the Latins elegantly put in the Dative, *Cæsari*, 'to Cæsar,' instead of the Genitive to be governed by *pectus*. Thus in Livy, I. 1. line 2d, the reading should be *Æneæ Antenorique*, according to all the manuscripts: but in the school editions and even in Drackenborch the reading is *Æneâ Antenoreque*, probably, because the ablative could more easily be construed after *abstinuisse* by the common rule of Syntax, "A preposition in Composition," &c. It is here stated by Livy that the Greeks *abstinuisse omne jus belli* 'withheld every right of war.' To whom did the Greeks do this? to two persons, Æneas and Antenor. The English idiom indeed states the persons FROM whom every right of war was withheld, but the Latin idiom, with no less elegance, states the persons TO whom this act of withholding was done.]

2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

XII. (83) Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative; as,

Utilis bello,
Perniciosus reipublicæ,
Similis patri,

Profitable for war.
Hurtful to the commonwealth.
Like to his father.

Or thus, Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.

To this rule belong :

1. (84) Adjectives of profit or disprofit ; as, *Benignus, bonus, commōdus, faustus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, salūber, utilis*.—*Calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommōdus, malus, noxius, perniciosus pestifer*.

2. Of pleasure or pain ; as, *Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratioſus, jucundus, latus, suavis*.—*Acerbus, amārus, insuāvis, injucundus, ingrātus, molestus, tristis*.

3. Of friendship or hatred ; as, *Addictus, æquus, amicus, benevōlus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidēlis, lenis, mitis, propitiuſ*.—*Adversus, amūlus, asper, crudēlis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infidus, inimicis, inimicus, iniquus, invidus, invidus, irrātus, odiōsus, suspectus, trux*.

4. Of clearness or obscurity ; as, *Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus*.—*Ambiguus, dubius, ignōtus, incertus, obacūrus*.

5. Of nearness ; as, *Finistimus, proprior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus*.

6. Of fitness or unfitness ; as, *Aptus, appositus, accommodātus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus*.—*Ineptus, inhabilis importūnus, inconveniens*.

7. Of ease or difficulty ; as, *Facilis levis, obuius, pervius*.—*Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculōsus, invius*. To these add such as signify propensity or readiness ; as, *Pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, parātus*.

8. Of equality, or inequality ; as, *Æqualis, æquævus, par, compar, suppar*.—*Inequalis, impar, dispar, discors*. Also of likeness or unlikeness ; as, *Similis, amūlus, geninus*.—*Dissimilis, absōnus, alienus, diversus, discolor*.

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON ; as, *Cognātus, concōlor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consōnus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, confinens, contiguous* ; as, *Mari aēr confinens est*. Cic.

To these add many other adjectives of various significations ; as, *obnoxius, subjectus, supplex, credulus, absurdus, decōrus, deformis, præsto, indecl. at hand, secundus, &c.*—particularly

* (85) Passive Participles, and Verbal Adjectives in *BILIS* govern the Dative ; as,

Amandus or *amabilis omnibus*,

To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terribilis malis* ; *Optabilis omnibus pax* ; *Adhibenda est nobis diligentia*. Cic. *Semel omnibus calcanda est via lethi*. Hor. *Bella matribus detestata*, ' Wars hated by mothers.' Hor.

(86) Verbals in *DUS* are often construed with the prep. *a* ; as, *Deus est venerandus et colendus a nobis*. Cic. Perfect Participles are usually so ; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis deflētā*, rather than *multis deflētā*. Cic. *A te invitātus, rogātus, prodītus, &c.* hardly ever *tibi*.

* (87) *Exosus Perōsus*, and *Pertæsus*, signifying actively, govern an Accusative ; as,

Exosus Trojānos, Virg. *Lucem perōsi*, Virg. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam*, Sueton.

Obs. 1. (88) The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied; as, *Similis patri*, Like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. (89) Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille est pater, dux, or filius mihi*, He is father, leader, or son to me; so, *Prasidium reis, decus amicis*, &c. Hor. *Exitum pecori*. Virg. *Virtutibus hostis*, Cic. *Auctor tibi sum*, 'I advise thee.'

Obs. 3. (90) The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive: *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, æqualis, contrarius, and adversus*; as, *Similis tibi, or tui; Superstes patri, or patris; Consciус facinori, or facinoris*. *Consciус* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*. We say, *Similes, dissimiles, pares, dispares, æquales, communes, inter se: Par and communis cum aliquo*. *Civitas secum ipsa discors; discordes ad alia*. Liv.

Obs. 4. (91) Adjectives signifying usefulness, or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

Utilis, inutilis, aptus, ineptus, natus, commodus, vehemens, accommodatus, idoneus, habilis, inhabilis, opportunus, conveniens, &c. *alicui rei, or ad aliquid*. Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *attentus quæsitis*, Hor. *Attentus ad rem*. Ter.

Obs. 5. (92) Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabilis, arrogans, asper, carus, difficilis, fidelis, invisus, iratus, offensus, suspectus*, ALICUI. II. Some with the preposition *IN* and the accusative; as, *Acerbus, animatus, beneficus, graciosus, injuriosus, liberalis, mendax, misericors, officiosus, pius, impius, prolixus, severus, sordidus, torvus, vehemens*, IN ALIQUEM. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus. and the preposition *IN*, *ERGA*, or *ADVERSUS*, going before; as, *Contumax, criminosus, durus, exitiabilis, gravis, hospitalis, implacabilis*, (and perhaps also *inexorabilis* and *intolerabilis*) *iniquus, sævus*, ALICUI or IN ALIQUEM. *Benevólus, benignus, molestus*, ALICUI or ERGA ALIQUEM. *Mitis, comis*; IN or ERGA ALIQUEM and ALICUI. *Pervicax ADVERSUS ALIQUEM*. *Crudelis*, IN ALIQUEM, seldom ALICUI. *Amicus, æmulus, infensus, infestus*, ALICUI, seldom IN ALIQUEM. *Gratus* ALICUI, or IN, ERGA, ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. We say *aliénus alicui* or *alicujus*; but oftener *ab aliquo*, and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

(93) *AUDIENS* is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king; not *regis*; *Dicto audiens fuit jussis magistratuum*. Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt*, not *dictis*. Cic.

Obs. 6. (94) Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing,

have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

Pronus, propensus, proclivis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. ad iram, or in iram.

Obs. 7. (95) *Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *Proprior montem*, scil. *ad*. Sall. *Proximus finem*. Liv.

Obs. 8. (96) *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*. Hor. *Jupiter omnibus idem*. Virg. *Eisdem illis censemus*. Cic. But in prose we commonly find, *idem, qui, et, ac, atque*, and also *ut, cum*; as, *Peripatetici, quondam idem erant qui Academici*. Cic. *Est animus erga te, idem ac fuit*. Ter. *Diānam et Lunam eandem esse putant*. Cic. *Idem faciunt, ut, &c.* *In eodem loco mecum*. Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eodem est cum Diāna*.

We likewise say, *alius ac, atque, or et*; and sometimes *similis* and *par*.

3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

XIII. (97) These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus, and fretus*; also *natus, satus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

<i>Dignus honore,</i>	Worthy of honour.	<i>Fretus viribus,</i>	Trusting to his
<i>Contentus parvo,</i>	Content with little.		strength.
<i>Præditus virtute,</i>	Endued with virtue.	<i>Ortus regibus,</i>	Descended of kings.
<i>Captus oculis,</i>	Blind.		

So generatus, creatus, prognatus, oriundus, procreatus regibus.

Obs. 1. (98) The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*. Sallust. *Editus de nymphâ*. Ovid. and *extorris*.

* Obs. 2. (99) *Dignus, indignus, contentus*, and *extorris* have sometimes the Genitive after them; as, *carmina digna deæ*. Ovid. *Indignus avorum*. Virg. *Augusti clavi contentus*. Paterc. *Extorris regni*, Stat.

* (100) *Macte*, the vocative of the adjective *mactus*, (that is, *magis auctus*, 'more increased,') and, by an Atticism, put for the nominative, also governs an Ablative. It was anciently used in the nominative: afterwards the vocative came into general use from its denoting a wish for a person's success, and having the force of a prayer that he might be encouraged to proceed in his virtuous course. Thus, *jubërem macte virtute esse*, Liv. 'I should wish thee success in thy valour.' It is also followed by a Genitive; as, *macte esto virtutis*, 'increase in merit,' 'go on and prosper.' When used in the plural it admits only the ablative; as, *Macti virtute milites Romani este*, Liv. It is also used without a case; as, *macte!* Cic. 'O excellent!'

4. *Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.*

XIV. (101) Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plenus iræ or *iræ*, Full of anger, *Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reason.

So *Non inopes temporis, sed prodigi sumus.* Sen. *Lentulus non verbis inops.* Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia.* Cic. *Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis.* Juv. *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor.* Ovid. *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus.* Plaut. *Fecunda virorum paupertas fugitur.* Lucan. *Omnium consiliorum ejus particeps.* Curt. *Homo ratione particeps.* Cic. *Nihil insidiis vacuum.* Id. *Vacuas cedis habete manus.* Ovid.

(102) Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only; as, *Benignus, exors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, praelargus.*

2. (103) With the ablative only; *Beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutulus, lentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus.*

3. (104) With the genitive more frequently; *Compos, consors, egænus, exhaeres, expertus, fertilis, indigus, parvus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis.*

4. (105) With the ablative more frequently; *Abundans, cassus, extorris, fatus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunus, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbis, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus, and captus.*

5. (106) With both promiscuously; *Copiosus, dives, fecundus, ferax, immūnis, inānis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber.*

6. (107) With a preposition; as, *Copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, a re aliqua*; for *quod ad rem aliquam attinet*, in or with respect to any thing. *Extorris ab solo patrio*, banished; *Orba ab optimatibus concio*. Liv. So *pauper, tenuis, fecundus, modicus, parvus, in re aliqua. Immūnis, inānis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus, a re aliqua. Potens ad rem, and in re.*

III. THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ 1. VERBS GOVERNING ONLY ONE CASE.

1. *Verbs which govern the Genitive.*

XV. (108) *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive;* as,

* *Sum* never signifies possession, property, or duty. The rule would be much better thus,

[*Est* takes a Genitive after it when the Latin word signifying *Possession, Property, Duty, Custom*, or the like, is understood between them.]

Est regis punire rebelles, 'It belongs to the king to punish rebels.' *Mittam est suo duci parere*, 'It is the duty of soldiers to obey their general.'

* (109) To this rule may be referred the following and similar expressions. *Suadere principi quod oporteat, multi laboris est.* (est.) Tac. *Grates persolvere dignas, Non opis est nostræ.* Virg. *Est hoc Gallicæ consuetudinis.* Cæs. *Moris antiqui fuit.* Plin. *Est moris*, 'it is usual or customary.' Sometimes the preceding word is to be repeated; as, *hæc mulier est* (mulier) *egregia forma.* Nep. *Hoc pecus est* (pecus) *Melibæi.* Virg. To the same rule may be referred a common elliptical form of writing, according to which the participle in *du* with its substantive is subjoined to the verb *sum*; as, *Quæ res evertenda reipublica solent esse.* Cic. *Regium imperium quod initio conservanda libertatis, et augenda reipublica fuerat.* Sall. Some supply the ellipsis by *instrumentum*, others by *causâ* ergo, &c.

* (110) These neuter nominatives *Meum, Tuum, Suum, Nostrum, Vestrum, Humanum, Romanum*, &c. are excepted; as, *tuum est*, 'it is thy duty.' *Romanum est*, 'it is the part of a Roman.' *Humanum est errare.*

Obs. 1. (111) These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis*. *Et facere et pati fortia, Romanum est.* Liv. ii. 12.

Obs. 2. (112) Here some substantives must be understood; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus*, &c. which are sometimes expressed; as, *Munus est principum*; *Tuum est hoc munus.* Cic. *Neuququam officium libèri esse hominis puto.* Ter. In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated; as, *Hic liber est* (liber) *fratris*. In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these: *Ea sunt modo gloriosa, neque patrandi belli, scilicet causâ et facta.* Sall. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis est, for ad æquandam libertatem pertinet.* Liv.

Obs. 3. (113) We say, *Hoc est tuum munus*, or *tui munèris*; So *mos est* or *fuit*, or *moris*, or *in more*. Cic.

XVI. (114) *Miserëor, miseresco* and *satägo* govern the genitive; as,

Miserëre civium tuorum,

Satägüt rerum suarum,

Pity your countrymen.

{ He has his hands full at home, or has
enough to do about his own affairs.

Obs. 1. (115) Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind; as, *Ango, decipior, desipio, discrucior, excrucio, fallo* and *fallor, fastidio, invideo, lætor, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor*; as, *Ne angas te animi*, Plaut. *Labörum decipitur.* Hor. *Discrucior animi.* Ter. *Pendet mihi animus, pendeo animi vel animo*; but we always say, *Pendemus animis*, not *animörum*, are in suspense. Cic. *Iustitiæ prius mirer.* Virg. In like manner, *Abstineo, desino, desisto, quiesco, regno*; likewise, *adipiscor, condico, credo, frustror, furo, laudo, libéro, levo, participo, prohibeo*; as, *Abstinento irarum*; *Desine querelarum*; *Regnavit populörum.* Hor. *Desistère pugnae.* Virg. *Quarum rerum condixit.* Liv.

(116) But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed; thus, *Angor, desipio, discrucior, fallor, anīmo. Hoc anīmum meum excruciat. Fastidio, miror, vereor, aliquem, or aliquid. Lætor aliquid re.* Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or with *quod, ut, ne*, and the subjunctive.

(117) In like manner we usually say, *Desino aliquid*, and *ab aliquo*, to give over; *Desisto incepto, de negotio, ab illâ mente; Quiesco a labôre; Regnâre in equitibus, oppidis*, sc. in. Cic. *Per urbes.* Virg. *Adipisci id; Frustrâri in re; Furrere de aliquo.* Cic.

Oba. 2. (118) The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs; thus, *Misereor fratris*, scil. *causâ*; *Angor anīmi*, scil. *dolore* or *anxiâtate*.

2. Verbs governing the Dative.

XVII. (119) Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English; * as,

<i>Finis vânit imperio,</i>	An end has come to the empire. Liv.
<i>Anīmus rediit hostibus,</i>	Courage returns to the enemy. Id.
<i>Tibi seris, tibi metis,</i>	You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself. Plaut.
<i>Non omnibus dormio,</i>	I do not sleep for all, that is, to please all.

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus.* Cic. *Multa malè eveniunt bonis.* Id. *Sol lucet etiam scelerâtis.* Sen. *Hæret lateri lethâlis arundo.* Virg.

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English by *to* or *for*; nor are these particles always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

1. (120) *Sum* and its compounds govern the dative (except *possum*); as,

<i>Præfuit exercitui,</i>	He commanded the army.
<i>Adfuit precibus,</i>	He was present at prayers.

* (121) *EST* taken for *Habeo*, 'to have,' requires the Dative of the possessor and a nominative of the thing possessed; as,

<i>Est mihi liber,</i>	A book is to me, <i>that is</i> , I have a book.
<i>Sunt mihi libri,</i>	Books are to me, i. e. I have books.
<i>Dico libros esse mihi,</i>	I say that I have books.

* This rule might be better expressed thus:

"The Dative follows many verbs in answer to the question, *to or for whom, or what? whereunto? for whose enjoyment, advantage, injury? &c., to please whom? for whom? &c.*"

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum*; *habeo libros*. In like manner *DEEST* instead of *careo*; as, *Liber deest mihi*, I want a book; *Libri desunt mihi*; *Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

* (122) To this rule may be added *suppetit*, *suppeditat*, used in a neuter sense, and *foret*, and the verbs of a contrary signification, *deest*, *deforet*, and *defit*, used for *careo*, or *non habeo*; as, *Pauper enim non est cui rerum suppetit usus*, Hor. So, *Defuit ars vobis*, Ovid. *Lac mihi non defit*, Virg.

* (123) The dative is often understood; as, *Sit spes fallendi, miscebis sacra profanis*, Hor. that is, *sit spes tibi*.

II. (124) Verbs compounded with *SATIS*, *BENE*, and *MALE*, govern the dative; as,

Satisfacio, satiado, benefacio, benedico, benevolo, malefacio, maledico, tibi, &c.

III. (125) Many verbs compounded with these eleven prepositions, *AD*, *ANTE*, *CON*, *IN*, *INTER*, *OB*, *POST*, *PRÆ*, *PRO*, *SUB*, and *SUPER*, govern the dative; as,

1. *Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnato, adequito, adhæreo, adsto, adstipulo, advolvor, affulgeo, allabor, allaboro, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo.*

2. *Antecello, anteeo, antesto, anteverto.*

3. *Colludo, concino, consono, convivo.*

4. *Incumbo, indormio, indubito, inhio, ingemisco, inhæreo, insideo, insideor, insto insisto, insudo, insulto, invigilo, illacrymo, illudo, immineo, immorior, immoror impendeo.*

5. *Intervenio, intermitto, intercedo, intercido, interjaceo.*

6. *Obræpo, obductor, obrecto, obstræpo, obmurmuro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obsisto, obvenio.*

7. *Postfero, posthabeo, postpono, postpulo, postscribo*; with an accusative.

8. *Præcedo, præcurro, præeo, præsideo, præluceo, præniteo, præsto, prævaleo, præverto.*

9. *Propono, provideo, prospicio.*

10. *Succedo, succumbo, sufficio, suffragor, subcreasco, suboleo, subjacio, subræpo.*

11. *Supervenio, supercurro, supersto.* But most verbs compounded with *SUPER* govern the accusative.

IV. (126) Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

1. To profit or hurt; as,

Proficio, prosum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, consulo, forprospicio. Likewise, *Noceo, officio, incommodo, displiceo, insidior.*

2. To favour or assist, and the contrary; as,

Faveo, gratulor, gratifactor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulo, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assendor, subparasitor. Likewise, *Auxilior, adminicū-*

ler, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, opitior. Likewise, *Derogo, deträho, invideo, amisor.*

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

Impero, precipio, mando; modöror, for modum adhibeo. Likewise, *Pareo, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morem gero, morigöror, obsecundo.* Likewise, *Famisor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor.* Likewise, *Repugno, oboto, reductor, renisor, resisto, refrägor, adversor.*

4. To threaten and to be angry; as,

Minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succenseo.

5. To trust; as, *Fido, confido, credo, diffido.*

To these add *Nubo, excollo, hæreo, supplico, cedo, despöro, opöror, præstör, prævaricor; recipio, to promise; renuncio; respondeo, to answer or satisfy; temdöro, studeo; vaco, to apply; convicior.*

Exc. (127) *Jubeo, juvo, lædo, and offendo, govern the accusative.*

Obs. 1. (128) Verbs governing the dative only, are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obs. 2. (129) Most verbs governing the dative only have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative; as, *Levo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, vexo, crucio, aversor, &c. aliquem, not alicui.*

* Obs. 3. (130) Very many verbs which govern the dative are variously construed, still preserving the same, or nearly the same significations; as,

Abdicäre: abdicare MAGISTRATUM, 'to abdicate the magistracy;' *abdicare se CONSULATU, Liv. 'to depose one's self from the consulship.'*

Acquiescäre, REI, or RE, or IN RE, 'to approve of any thing,' 'to be satisfied with any thing.'

Adnascäre, 'to be accustomed,' 'to accustom one's self to any thing;' *ALICUI, Liv. 1. 19.—AD ALIQUID, Cæs.—aliqua re, Liv. 31, 35.*

Adjacäre, 'to lie next to,' 'to adjoin.' *Tusculi ager, ROMANO adjacet, Liv. 2. 49. adjacet mare, Nep. Timoth.*

Adspiräre, 'to favour.' *Adspirat primo fortuna LABORI, Virg. 2. 385. 'fortune favours the first exertion;'* *ad eum, Cels.*

Adhæräre, 'to adhere to any thing;' *alicui, or aliquem, or ad aliquem.*

Adfäre, 'to breathe upon;' *rei or rem.*

Adferre vim alicui, 'to do violence to any one.'

Adsideo, 'to sit by something,' with a Dative, Cic. Planc. 11. with an Accusative, Virg. Æn. 11. 304.

Advolāre, 'to fly up to,' *ei*, or *ad eum*.

Adscribere, 'to admit,' 'to enrol as a citizen,' *civitati*, or *in civitatem*, Cic. Arch. 4. or *in civitate*, Ibid.

Advolvi genibus, or *genua*, or *ad genua*, 'to fall at one's knees.'

Adversari, 'To be against,' 'to oppose,' is always followed by a Dative. With an Accusative it occurs in Tacitus, but the best editors substitute *aversari* in all such instances.

Adspargere alicui aliquid, 'to sprinkle any thing on one.'

Adnāre navibus, or *naves*, or *ad naves*, 'to swim to the ships.'

Adulor, 'to flatter,' 'to caress.' *Adulāri plebi*, Liv. 3. 69.—*adulari omnes*, Cic. *adulari Neronem*, Tac. Ann.

Allatrāre alicui, or *aliquem*, 'to bark at any one.' The Accusative is more usual.

Antecedere, 'to excel,' *antecedere belluis*, Cic. Off. *antecedere eum*, Nep. Alc. 9.

Antecellere alicui or *aliquem*, 'to excel any one.'

Antepollere, 'to excel,' *alicui*, or *aliquem*.

Anteire, 'to go before,' 'to excel.' *Virtus omnibus rebus anteit*, Plaut. *Anteire ceteros*, Cic.

Antestāre or *antistāre*, 'to stand before,' 'to be more eminent,' 'to excel,' *alicui* or *aliquem*.

Antevenire, 'to come before,' *antevenire exercitum*, Sall. 'to excel,' *omnibus rebus antevenire*, Plaut.

Antevertere, 'to come before,' *miror, ubi, huius anteverterim*, Terent. 'I wonder how I have come before him.' *Veneno damnationem antevertit*, 'he anticipated his condemnation by poison.'

Apparere consuli, 'to attend,' *ad solium Jovis. Res apparet mihi*.

Appropinquare, Britannia, or portam, or *ad portam*.

Circumfundi alicui, 'to be put around any thing,' *circumfusa lateri meo turba*, 'the multitude which surrounded my side,' for *turba fusa circum latus meum*. So, *circumjecta multitudine hominum totis mœnibus*, 'when a multitude of men entirely surrounded the walls,' for *multitudine hominum jacta circum tota mœnia*.

Circumdare aliquid alicui rei, 'to put one thing round another,' *circumdare aliquid re*, 'to surround one thing with another.'

Congruere, 'to agree,' *alicui*, or *cum re aliqua*, or *inter se*.

Confidere rei or *re*, 'to trust to any thing,' 'to confide in.' Also with *de* when it means about; as, *de salute urbis confidere*, Cæs. 'to have confidence about the safety of the city.'

Curare, 'to take care of,' 'to care for,' is commonly followed by an Accusative; as, *curo hanc rem*. Yet it is also joined to a Dative; as, *Quia tuo cibo curas*, Plaut.

Deficere, 'to fail,' commonly with an Accusative; as, *tempus te deficeret*, Cic. 'time would fail thee;' sometimes also the Dative; as, *tela nostris deficerent*, Cæs. B. G. 3. 5. 'our weapons failed us.'

Desperare, 'to despair of any thing,' 'to have no more hope.' *Sibi desperans*, Cæs. 'despairing on his own account.' Also with an Accusative; as, *ut non*.

REM desperasse videatur, Cic. We find also, *desperare de aliqua re*, Cic. The reason why *despero* governs an Accusative, seems to be, that *Spero* also governs one.

Domināri, 'to rule over;' *cunctis oris*, Virg. in *Cetera animalia*, Ovid.

Excellere aliis, 'to excel others,' or *inter alios*, 'among others,' or *super alios*, 'beyond others.'

Fidēre alicui rei, or *aliqua re*, or in *aliqua re*.

Habitāre in loco, 'to dwell in a place;' *locum*, 'to inhabit a place.'

Ignoscere mihi, or *culpæ meæ*, or *mihi culpam*, 'to pardon me,' or 'pardon my fault.'

Impendēre alicui 'to hang over any one;' or *aliquem*, or *inaliquem*.

Impertire, 'to impart any thing to any one;' *laudem alicui impertiri*. *Impertire aliquem osculo*.

Incescit timor XI or *EUM*, 'fear seizes him.'

Illudere, 'to make sport of.' *Illudere auctoritati*, Cic. *Illudere præcepta*, Ibid. *In nos illudere*, Terent.

Insilire, 'to spring upon,' with a Dative, Ovid; an Accusative, Hor.; and also with *in* and an Accusative, Cæsar.

Insultare, 'to leap upon,' hence 'to insult;' *insultare solo*, Virg. 'to stamp on the ground.' *Insultare aliquem*, Sall.

Incumbere, 'to fall upon;' *toro*; *gladium*, or in *gladium*.

Incidere, 'to engrave,' *rei*, or in *rem*, or in *re*.

Indulgere alicui, or *id ei*.

Inhiare, 'to gape after,' 'to desire much;' *inhiare auro*. *Inhiare bona ejus*.

Inniti rei, or *re*, or in *re*. *Inniti in aliquem*, 'to depend on any one.'

Latet res mihi, or *me*, 'the thing is unknown to me.'

Mederi ei. *Mederi cupiditates*.

Medicari, 'to heal,' used both with the Dative and Accusative; the same as *Mederi* above.

Moderari, 'to moderate,' 'to govern,' 'to rule,' 'to regulate.' *Moderari fortunæ suæ*, Liv. *gaudium*, Tacit.

Nocere, 'to hurt,' *ei*, rarely *eum*.

Nubere, literally, 'to veil' one's self, as the bride did at the marriage ceremony; hence 'to marry,' always applied to the woman. *Nubere viro*. *Nupta est cum illo*, seems properly to mean, 'she is with him as a married woman.'

Occumbere morti and *mortem*, 'to die.' We also find, Liv. 1. 7. *occumbere morte*, 'to sink in death,' where the Ablative is governed by some preposition understood.

Obrepere, 'to creep upon,' *ei* or *eum*; also in *animos*; *ad honores*.

Obtrepere auribus, or *aures*.

Obtrectare ei, or *laudibus ejus*, 'to detract from him,' or 'his deserts.'

Obumbrare, 'to overshadow,' with the Dative or Accusative.

Præcedere, 'to go before,' 'to precede;' *præcedere agmen*. 'To excel;' *ut vestra fortunæ meis præcedunt*.

Præcurrere, 'to run before,' 'to excel,' with a Dative or Accusative.

Præstare alicui or aliquem, 'to excel any one.'

Præstolari, 'to wait for any one;' *alicui* or *aliquem*. It is also found with the Genitive, *cohortium*, Sisenn. ap. Non.

Pasisci, alicui, or *cum aliquo*. *Pasisci vitam ab eo*, Sall.

Procumbere, 'to fall upon,' *terre*; *genibus ejus*; *ad genua*.

Temperare, 'to moderate,' 'to tame;' also, 'to govern,' 'to guide;' *temperare linguæ*, Liv. 'to subdue his tongue.' So, *temperare lacrymis*, 'to moderate his grief;' also, *temperare iras*, Virg. 'to moderate anger.'

* Obs. 4. (131) Many verbs when followed by different cases are used with different significations; as,

Æmulari aliquem, 'to imitate any one with emulation,' 'to rival.' *Studia ALICUJUS æmulari*, Liv. 1. 18. 'to be the scholar of any one.' But *æmulari ALICUI*, 'to envy any one,' perhaps 'an envious rivalry,' better expresses the idea. In a word, with the Accusative it seems to be used in a good sense, with the Dative in a bad one.

Accedo tibi, 'I accede or assent to you;' but *hoc tibi accedit ad illud*, 'this comes to you in addition to that.' *Accedere AD ALIQUEM*, 'to approach to any one.'

Auscultare alicui, 'to listen to any one;' also, 'to obey any one.' *Auscultare ALIQUEM*, 'to hear any one;' also, 'to obey.'

Cavere alicui, 'to take care of any one's safety;' *Cavere sibi AB ALIQUO*, 'to take care of one's self against any one.' *Cavere ALIQUEM*, 'to beware of any one;' *Cavere ALIQUID*, 'to guard against any thing.'

Consulere tibi, 'to take care for thee,' (not to give counsel;) *Consulere ALIQUEM*, 'to consult any one,' 'to take any one's advice.' *Consulere crudeliter, IN ALIQUEM*, 'to proceed cruelly against any one,' Liv. 3. 36. *Consulo BONI*, 'I am satisfied,' or 'pleased therewith.'

Cupio tibi, 'I am devoted to thee;' *Cupio ALIQUID*, 'I am desirous after something.'

Deficit mihi and me, 'it fails me;' *Deficere AB ALIQUO*, 'to revolt from any one;' *Deficere AB AMICITIA*, 'to fall off from;' also, *Deficere AD ALIQUEM*, Liv. 22. 61, 'to go over to any one;' also, *deficere ALIQUEM*, 'to desert any one.'

Dare ALICUI literas, 'to give a letter to any one,' that is, 'to carry to another;' *Dare AD ALIQUEM literas*, 'to write to any one.'

Facere aliquid, 'to do any thing;' *quid HUIUS HOMINI facias?* Cic. 'what will you do with this man?'

Horreo tibi, 'I am frightened for thee,' on thy account; *Horreo ALIQUID*, 'I am frightened at any thing.'

Imponere onus ALICUI, 'to lay a burden on any one;' *Imponere ALICUI*, 'to impose upon any one,' 'to cheat.'

Incumbere rei, 'to lean upon any thing;' *ad aliquem*, 'to bend one's self down to any thing,' 'to exert great labour on any thing;' *Incumbere ad rempublicam*, 'to devote one's attention to the state.'

Interest murus, 'there is a wall between;' *hoc maxime interest inter*, &c. 'this is the chief difference between,' &c., also with the Dative in this sense. *Interest patris*, 'it is the concern of the father.' *Interesse rei*, 'to be present at a thing.'

Manet tibi bellum, 'war remains for thee;' that is, 'thou hast not yet peace,' *Liv. l. 53. Manet me mors*, 'death awaits me.'

Merere sibi aliquid, 'to merit,' or 'earn something for one's self;' *Merere equo*, 'to serve on horseback;' *Merere* or *mereri de*, 'to deserve of another;' *bene* or *male*, 'well,' or 'ill.'

Metuo tibi, 'I fear for thee,' on thy account; *Metuo te*, 'I fear thee.'

Peto mihi, 'I seek for myself;' *Peto aliquem*, 'I aim at somebody;' *Petere aliquem gladio*, 'to attack any one with a sword;' *Petere locum*, 'to seek a place,' 'to go to.'

Præstare alicui or *aliquem*, 'to excel;' *præstare aliquid*, 'to be answerable for something.' *Errori damnum præstari oportere*, 'the loss must be made good to the buyer.' Also, *præstare alicui officia*, 'to render good offices to any one;' *Præstare se virum fortem*, 'to prove one's self a brave man.' *Præstat*, 'it is better.'

Prospicio alicui, 'to provide for any one;' *Prospicere aliquid*, 'to foresee any thing.'

Quærere sibi aliquid, 'to seek something for himself;' *quærere aliquid*, 'to inquire about any thing;' also, *de aliquo*. Sometimes, *quærere de aliquo homine*, or *de aliqua re*, means, 'to institute an inquiry by torture about any person' or 'thing.'

Recipio tibi, 'I give you certain assurance,' 'I pledge myself to you;' *recipio in montem*, 'I retire to the mountain.' *Recipio res amissas*, 'I recover my lost goods;' *recipere periculum in se*, 'to take the risk on himself.'

Renuntiare rei 'to renounce any thing,' 'to resign,' 'to give up;' *renuntiare vitiis*, 'to renounce one's faults;' *Renuntiare aliquem consulem*, 'to proclaim any one as a consul.'

Respondere alicui, 'to answer any one;' *rei*, 'to correspond to any thing;' *exitus non respondet spei*, 'the event does not correspond to expectation.'

Solvo tibi pecuniam, 'I pay money to thee;' *solvo te*, 'I free thee;' *solvere nares*, 'to set sail.'

Timeo tibi, 'I fear for you;' *te*, 'I fear thee.'

Vacare, properly, 'to be at leisure;' also, 'to be without something;' *vacare a re*, or *re*, 'to be free from a thing.' But *vacare rei*, 'to turn one's whole attention to a thing,' 'to apply to a thing,' properly, 'to be free from all other affairs for that one;' *vacare literis*, 'to be devoted to letters.'

Valere rei, 'to be serviceable.' This construction is rare; the more usual is with the ablative; *valere eloquentia*, 'to be effective by eloquence,' 'to be strong in eloquence.' *Valere a pecunia*, *Plaut.* 'to be well on the side of money,' is said jestingly.

* (132) To this rule are referred many verbs which, among the poets chiefly, are construed with a Dative, after the manner of the Greeks, but which in prose are commonly found with the

Ablative and a Preposition, according to Latin construction ; as Verbs of—

1. **CONTENDING** ; as, *contendo, certo, bello, luctor, pugno*, ALICUI for *cum aliquo*. *Solus tibi certet, Amyntas, Virg.* We also find *Contendere contra* or *adversus aliquem*, Cic. *Certare inter se*, Cic. *Pugnare contra* or *adversus*, Quinct. *inter se*, Curt. *in aliquem*, Liv.

2. **DIFFERING** ; as, *distare, dissensire, discrepare, dissidere, differre* REI ALICUI, for *a re aliqua*. We also find *distant, dissentiunt, discrepant, dissident, differunt, inter se*. *Distare melè, Ovid.* *Dissentire, dissidere cum aliquo*.

3. **COMING TOGETHER** ; as, *coo, concurro, concumbo, misceo*. *Placidis còtant inmitia, Hor.* *Concurrere hosti, Ovid.* *Concubuisse dea, Propert.* *Mista Deo mulier, Virg.* instead of *cum placidis, cum hoste, &c.* We also find *Coire, concurrere, inter se, Virg.* and Liv. *Miscere vinum aquæ, or cum aquâ, or aquâ.*

4. **KEEPING, or DRIVING AWAY** ; as, *Arcebis gravido pecori, Virg.* *Solatitium pecori defendite, Virg.* But these belong to verbs of taking away, which govern two cases, by Rule 25.

5. **PASSIVE VERBS** ; as, *Non intelligor ulli, Ovid.* for *ab ullo*. *Neque cernitur ulli, Virg.*

Obs. 5. (133) Verbs signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing, are construed with the preposition *ad* ; as,

Eo, vado, curro, propèro, festino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c. ad locum, rem, or hominem. Sometimes, however, in the poets, they are construed with the dative ; as, *It clamor cælo, for ad cælum. Virg.*

* (134) The Datives *Mihi, Tibi, Sibi, Nobis, Vobis*, are very often added to verbs in a redundant manner, particularly in confidential speeches, letters, &c. This is the case in Greek, in English, and probably in all languages. E. g. *Fur MIHI es, Plaut,* ‘to me, (that is, in my opinion) thou art a thief.’ *An ille MIHI liber, cui mulier imperat,* ‘is he to me a freeman,’ that is, ‘can I think him a freeman whom a woman commands.’ These pronouns, though generally considered redundant, have usually a certain reference to the circumstances, or at least denote a participation in them by the person referred to in the Dative.

3. Verbs governing the Accusative.

XVIII. (135) A verb signifying actively governs the accusative ; as,

Ama Deum, Love God

Reverère parentes, Reverence your parents.

* Obs. 1. (136) Neuter Verbs also govern the Accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own, or when the noun is of the same origin as the verb ; as,

Vivere vitam, Ire iter, or viam; Pugnare pugnam, Curere cursum; Ludere ludum, Sequi sectam. Yet generally an adjective, an adjective pronoun, or participle, is added to this substantive; as, *pugnare pugnam acerrimam.* So in English we say, 'he died the death of a hero;' 'I have fought the good fight;' 'Many live a happy life.' Many of these expressions are usual with the best writers; as, *Juravi verissimum jurjurandum.* 'I swore the truest oath.' Some suppose that these accusatives are governed by some preposition understood, but there is no evidence of this, and the expressions must be considered as belonging to the idioms of the language.

* (137) Sometimes a Preposition may be easily understood; as, *propter, per, or ad.* E. g. *Doleo casum tuum*, that is, *propter*; so, *horre aliquid, sc. propter* or *ob*; so also *ardere aliquem*, 'to be inflamed with love for,' 'to love passionately,' is probably for *propter aliquem*: *Formosum pastor Corydon ardebat Alcin*; so, *desperere aliquam*, 'to love one desperately,' 'to die in love for one.'—*Stygias juravimus undas, sc. per Stygias*, Ovid. *Decurrere vitam, sc. per.* So, *pasci sylvas*. Virg. 'to be pastured through woods;' i. e. 'they feed on.' *Ire exsequias, sc. ad* 'to go to a funeral.'

* (138) But sometimes Prepositions cannot be readily understood. The simplest examples are those where *id, quid*, and similar pronouns are joined to a verb; as, *hoc dubito*, 'I doubt this,' for *de hac re*. Perhaps in such cases *ad*, 'as to,' is the most proper preposition to supply; for *quoad*, mentioned by some, is not a preposition. Virg. Georg. 3. 421. *sibila colla tumentem*, (for the ablative *sibilo collo*), properly, 'as to its hissing neck,' *ad* or *quod attinet ad* understood. So *peccare aliquid*, Cic. Particularly to these cases belong those verbs which signify 'to taste of,' 'to smell of;' as, *redolere vinum*, 'to smell of wine.' *Nihil oleant*, Cic. 'they smell of nothing.' *Gorgonius olet hircum*, Hor. So, *olere crocum*, Cic. To these seems to belong the formula *magnam partem*, 'a great part,' *maximam partem*, 'the greatest part;' as, *libros meos MAGNAM PARTEM amisi*, 'I have lost a great part of my books.' After *Clamo, Crepo, Queror, Festino*, the Accusative is remarkable, since *aliquid clamare, &c.* seem to stand for *aliquid dicere clamando, &c.* Under this head we may place the singular expression, *Bacchanalia vivunt*, for *vivunt modo Bacchanalium*, or *vivendo Bacchanalia exprimunt*.

(139) Sometimes, instead of the accusative, neuter verbs have an ablative; as, *Ire itinere, dolere dolore, vicem ejus; gaudere gaudio; mori or obire morte; vivere vita; ardet virgine.* Horat. *Ludere aleam, or -â; manere, pluerè, rurare, stillare, sudare, aliquid or aliquo.* *Erubescere jura.* Virg. *origine.* Tacit. *equo vehi.* Curt.

Obs. 2. (140) Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense; as,

Abhorre famam, to dread infamy. Liv. a litibus: ab uxore ducenda. *to be averse from.* Id. a meis moribus abhorret, *is inconsistent with.* Cic.

Abolere monumenta viri, to abolish. Virg. illis cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria abolēvrat, *was not effaced from, they had not forgotten.* Liv.

Adolere penates, to burn, to sacrifice to. Virg. Ætas adolēvit; adolēvit ad matrem. Plaut.

Declinare ictum, to avoid; loco; egmen aliquo, to remove.

Degenerare animos, to weaken; patri, to degenerate from; a virtute majorem.

Durare adolescentes labore, to harden? Res durat ad breve tempus, *endures; In ædibusurare nequeo, stay or remain.* Plaut.

Inclinare culpam in aliquem, to lay; Hos ut sequar, inclinat animus, inclines; acies inclinat, or inclinatur, gives away.

Laborare arma, to forge; morbo, a do-

lōre, e reñibus, to be ill; de re ali- quā, to be concerned.
Morāri iter, to stop; in urbe, to stay; Hoc nihil moror, I do not mind.
Properāre pecuniam hērēdi. Hor. in orbem; ad unam sedem. Ov.
Quadrāre acervum, to square. Hor. ali- quid ad normā; alicui, in aliquem, ad multa, to fit.
Suppeditāre copiam dicendi, to furnish; Sumptus illi, or illi sumptibus. Ter. suppeditat æratio, is afforded; Manu- biæ in fundamenta vix suppeditarunt, were sufficient. Liv.

Obs. 3. (141) These accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, &c.* are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, *Id lacrimat, Id succen- set. Ter. Quid rides? quid clamas? Terent.*

Obs. 4. (142) The accusative is often understood; *Tum prora avertit, sc. se. Virg. Flumina præcipitant, sc. se. Id. Quicumque intendrat, sc. se, turned or directed himself. Sall. Obiit, sc. mortem. Ter. Cum faciam vitulā, sc. sacra. Virg.* Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decōrum; for dulcem sermōnem, decōrum risum. Hor.*

XIX. (143) *Recordor, meminī, reminiscor, and obliviscor,* govern the accusative or genitive; as,

Recordor lectiōnis, or lectiōnem,
Obliviscor injuriæ or injuriam,

I remember the lesson.
I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. (144) These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence; as, *Memini vidēre virgīnem. Ter. Oblitus est, quid paulo ante posuisset. Cic.*

Obs. 2. (145) *Memini*, when it signifies to *make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de*; as, *Memini alicujus, or de ali- quo.* So, *recordor*, when it signifies to *recollect*; as, *Velim scire ecquid, de te re- cordere. Cic.*

* (146) The phrase *Venit mihi in mentem*, denoting remembrance, is variously construed; as, *Venit mihi in mentem hæc res, hujus rei, de hæc re. Mihi solet venire in mentem illius temporis. Cic. In mentem venit de speculo.*

4. Verbs governing the Ablative.

XX. (147) Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat divitiis,
Caret omni culpā,

He abounds in riches,
He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are *Abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, floreo, suppe- dito, scateo, &c.*; of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destitutor, &c.*

* Obs. 1. (148) *Egeo* and *Indigeo* frequently govern the Genitive; as, *egeo consilii, Cic. eget æris, 'he needs money.' Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris, Cic. Careo* also is used with a Genitive; as, *carendum tui, Terent.* Also, *scateo* and *abundo*; as, *terra scatet ferarum, Lucr. Abundans* with a Genitive in

Virg. Ecl. 2. 20. We also find *careo, egeo, indigeo, scateo*, with pronouns of the neuter gender; as, *id, quod, &c. nec quidquam eges*, Plaut. So, *id tunc scatet animus*, Plaut. for *ea re*.

Obs. 2. (149) The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed: as, *Vacat a culpâ*, He is free from fault. Liv.

XXI. (150) *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the ablative; as,

Utitur fraude, He uses deceit.

Abutitur libris, He abuses books.

* (151) To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victito, consta; labôro*, 'to be ill;' *pascor, epulor, nitor, innitor, glorior, lætor, delector, dignor, exulto, sto, &c.*; as, *Gaudere bono*, Cic. *Fortes creantur fortibus*, Hor. *Fluminibus salices nascuntur*, Virg. *Fidere prudentiâ*, Cic. *Piscibus vivere existimantur*, Cæs. *Ficis victitamus*, Plaut. *Mente vix constat*, Cic. *Laborare podagra*, Mart. *Cæde pascitur*, Ovid. *Filio nistur*, Cic. *Gloriari nominibus*, Cic. *Lætor tuâ dignitate*, Cic. *Delectâri re*, Cic. *Me dignor honore*, Virg. *Stare promissis*, Cic. 'to abide by one's promises.' Some, led away by our idiom, according to which we say, "To stand to an agreement," have supposed that it is the Dative which follows *Sto*: but this is not so, as might be shown by numerous examples.

Obs. 1. (152) *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *Potiri urbis*. Sall. And we always say, *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command, never *rebus*; *imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. (153) *Potior, fungor, vescor, epulor*, and *pascor*, sometimes have an accusative; as, *Potiri urbem*. Cic. *Officia fungi*. Ter. *Munera fungi*. Tac. *Pascuntur silvas*. Virg. And in ancient writers *utor, abutor*, and *fruor*; as, *Uti consilium*. Plaut. *Opëram abutitur*. Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative; as, *Depascitur artus*, Virg.

§ 2. VERBS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

1. Verbs governing two Datives.

XXII. (154) *Sum* used instead of *affëro* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other a thing;* as,

Est mihi voluptati,

It is, or brings, a pleasure to me.

* This rule would be better expressed thus:

The verb *Est*, when it may be construed 'to redound to,' 'to bring,' 'to be conducive,' 'to serve for,' governs two Datives, &c.

(155) Two datives are also put after *habeo*, *do*, *verto*, *relinquo*, *venio*, *tribuo*, *fore*, *duco*, and some others; as,

Ducitur honori tibi, It is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio*, I am blamed for that. So, *Misit mihi muneri*; *Dedit mihi dono*; *Habet sibi laudi*; *Venire, occurrere auxilio alicui*. Liv.

Obs. 1. (156) Instead of the dative we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as, *Est exitum pecori* for *exitio*; *Dare aliquid alicui donum*, or *dono*; *Dare filiam ei nuptam*, or *nuptui*. When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crinini ei*, sc. *id*.

Obs. 2. (157) The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, praesidio, usui*, &c. scil. *mihi, alicui, hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere pignori*, sc. *alicui*, to pledge. *Canere receptui*, sc. *suis militibus*, to sound a retreat; *Habere curam quaestui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despiciatui*, &c. sc. *sibi*.

Obs. 3. (158) To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander*; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

2. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

XXIII. (159) Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

Arguit me furti,
Meipsum inertiae condemno,
Illum homicidii absolvunt,
Monet me officii,

He accuses me of theft.
I condemn myself of laziness.
They acquit him of manslaughter.
He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *Accuso*, *ago*, *appello*, *arcesso*, *inquiro*, *capto*, *increpo*, *arguo*, *desero*, *insimulo*, *postulo*, *alligo*, *astringo*, *urgeo*, *incuso*, *interrogo*, *compello*. Of condemning, *damno*, *convinco*, *prehendo*, *judico*, *plector*, *condemno*, *infamo*, *noto*. Of acquitting, *absolvo*, *solvo*, *libero*, *purgo*. Of admonishing, *moneo*, *admoneo*, *commonefacio*.

Obs. 1. (160) Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de*; as, *Monere aliquem officii*, or *de officio*; *Accusare aliquem furti*, or *de furto*. *De vi condemnati sunt*. Cic.

* (161) The crime or punishment is sometimes put in the Ablative without a preposition being expressed, after *absolvo*, *libero*, *damno*, *condemno*, &c.; as, *Consulem regni suspitione absolverunt*. Liv. *Damnabis tu votis*, Virg. *Crimen quo argui posset*, Nep. *Teneri poena* Cic. We also find *Damnari voti*, which signifies, 'to have gained one's wish'; properly, 'to be condemned to the discharge of

the vow which he had made for the prosperous issue of his undertaking,' which is a sign that he had gained his wish. Such a person is said to be *reus voti*. Virg. *Æn.* 5. 237.

Obs. 2. (162) *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, *Damnâre, postulâre, absolvêre, eum criminis, or capitis*; and *crimine, or capite*; also *Absolve me peccâto*. Liv. And we always say, *Plectrê, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obs. 3. (163) Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person, and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, tradûco, vitupêro, calumnior, criminor, excûso, &c. avaritiâ alicujus*, and not *aliquem avaritiâ*. We sometimes also find *accûso, incûso, &c.* construed in this manner; as, *Accusâre inertiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes inertie*. Cic. *Culpam arguo*. Liv. We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuse one of theft. Cic.

Obs. 4. (164) Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa, &c.* as, *Moneo, accûso, te illud*. We seldom find, however, *Errôrem te moneo*, but *errôris* or *de errôre*; except in old writers, as Plautus.

XXIV. (165) Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihili*; as,

Æstimo te magni,

I value you much.

(166) Verbs of valuing are, *Æstimo, existimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo*. They govern several other genitives; as, *tanti, quanti, pluris, majôris, minôris, minimi, plurîmi, maximî, nauci, pili, assis, nihili, teruncii, hujus, flocci, pensi*.

Obs. 1. (167) *Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstimo te magno, permagno, parvo*, scil. *pretio*: and also *nihilo*. We likewise say, *Pro nihilo habeo, puto, duco*.

Obs. 2. (168) *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consûlo*; as, *Hoc consûlo boni, æqui bonique facio*, I take this in good part.

Obs. 3. (169) The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as *Arguere aliquem furti*, scil. *de crimîne furti*: *Æstimo rem magni*, scil. *pretii*, or *pro re magni pretii*; *Consûlo boni*, i. e. *statuo* or *censo esse, factum*, or *munus boni viri, or anîmi*; *Monere aliquem officii*, i. e. *officii, causâ, or de re* or *negotio officii*.

3. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Dative.

XXV. (170) Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

*Comparo Virgīlium Homēre,
Suum cuique tributto,
Narras fabulā surdo,
Eripui me morti,*

I compare Virgil to Homer.
Give every one his own.
You tell a story to a deaf man.
He rescued me from death.

(171) Or,—ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (*when, together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted*;) as,

Legam lectionem tibi, I will read the lesson to you. *Emi librum mihi*, He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis arātra boves*. Virg. *Paupertas saepe suadet mala hominibus*, advises men to do bad things. Plaut. *Imperare pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquibus*, to order them to furnish. Cæs.

Obs. 1. (172) Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparare unam rem cum aliā*, and *ad aliā*, or *comparare res inter se*: *Eripuit me morti*, morte, a or *ex morte*: *Mittere epistolam alicui*, or *ad aliquem*: *Intendere telum alicui*, or *in aliquem*: *Incidere aeri*, in *aer*, or in *aere*; and so in many others.

Obs. 2. (173) Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,

Circumdare mœnia oppido, or *oppidum, mœnibus*, to surround a city with walls.

Intercludere comœntum alicui, or *aliquem comœntu*, to intercept one's provisions.

Donare, prohibere rem alicui, or *aliquem re*, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

Maculare hostiam Deo, or *Deum hostiā*, to sacrifice.

Imperare salutem alicui, or *aliquem salutē*, to salute one.

Interdixit Galliam Romānis, or *Romānos Galliā*, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

Induere, exuere vestem sibi, or *se veste*, to put on, to put off one's clothes.

Levare dolorem alicui; *dolorem alicujus*; *aliquem dolore*, to ease one's distress.

Minari aliquid alicui, or sometimes *alicui aliquo*, Cic. to threaten one with any thing; *Cæsari gladio*. Sall.

Gratulor tibi hanc rem, hac re, in, pro, and *de hac re*, I congratulate you on this. *Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulatur*. Liv.

Restituere alicui sanitatem, or *aliquem sanitati*, to restore to health.

Aspergere labem alicui, or *aliquem labe*, to put an affront on one; *aram sanguine*. *Lilare Deum sacris*, and *sacra Deo*, to sacrifice.

Excusare se alicui, and *apud aliquem, de re*; *valetudinem ei*.

Exprobrare vitium ei, or *in eo*, to upbraid.

Occupare pecuniam alicui, and *apud aliquem*, i. e. *pecuniam fœnori locare*, to place at interest. Cic.

Opponere se morti, and *ad mortem*. *Renunciare id ei*, and *ad eum*, to tell.

Obs. 3. (174) Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as,

Porto, fero, lego, -as, præcipito, tello, traho, duco, verto, incito, suscito; also, *hortor*, and *invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, conformo, lacesto*; thus, *Ad laudem milites hortâtur*; *Ad prætorem hominem trahit*. Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, *Inferre Deos Latio*, for in *Latium*. Virg. *Invitare aliquem hospitio*, or in *hospitium*. Cic.

Obs. 4. (175) The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubère alicui*, scil. *as*; *Cedère alicui*, scil. *locum*; *Detrahère alicui*, scil. *laudem*; *Ignoscère alicui*, scil. *culpam*. And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum*, He gave me a book, for to me.

4. Verbs governing two Accusatives.

XXVI. (176) Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person and the other of a thing; as,

Poscimus te pacem,
Docuit me grammaticam,

We beg peace of thee.
He taught me grammar.

1. (177) Verbs of asking, which govern two accusatives, are *Rogo, oro, exoro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagito, &c.* Of teaching, *Doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio*.

Obs. 1. (178) *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celâvit me hanc rem*, He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, *celâvit hanc rem mihi*, or *celâvit me de hac re*.

Obs. 2. (179) Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition; as, *Rogâre rem ab aliquo*: *Docère aliquem de re*, to inform; but we do not say, *docère aliquem de grammatica*, but *grammaticam*, to teach. And we always say with a preposition, *Peto, exigo a* or *abs te*; *Percontor, scilor, sciſcilor, ex* or *a te* or *is* without the preposition; *Interrôgo, consulto te de re*; *Ut facias te obsecro*; *Exorat pacem divum*, for *divos*. Virg. *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo aliquem artibus*, in the *abl.* without a prep. *Imbuo eum artibus*, in or *ab artibus*. Also, *instruo ad rem*, or in *re, ignorantiam alicujus*. *Erudire aliquem artes, de* or in *re, ad rem*. *Formare ad studium, mentem, studiis, studia ejus*.

Obs. 3. (180) The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundem* understood.

5. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

XXVII. (181) Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

Onêrat naves auro,

He loads the ships with gold.

(182) Verbs of loading are, *Onëro, cumulo, premo, opprîmo, obruo, repleo*. Of unloading, *levo, exonëro, &c.* Of binding, *astringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio,*

irretio, illaqueo, &c. Of loosing, *solvo, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedio, &c.* Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo.* Of clothing, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, corôno, and calceo.* Of unclothing, *exuo, discingo, &c.*

Obs. 1. (183) The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvère aliquem ex catēnis.* Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complet naves,* sc. *viris,* mans the ship. Virg.

* Obs. 2. (184) *Impleo, compleo, and expleo,* sometimes take the genitive; as, *Adolescentem suæ temeritatis implet.* Liv. *Erroris illos et dementia complebo.* Plaut. *Animum explēsse juvabit ultricis flammæ.* Virg. And among the more ancient writers, also *satur* and *obsaturo*; as, *Hæ res vitæ me saturant,* Plaut. *Istius obsaturabere,* Terent. Several vary their construction; as, *induit, exuit se vestibus, or vestes sibi.*

* (185) *Muto* governs the Accusative of the thing given in exchange, and the Ablative of that which is taken in exchange; as, *Muto librum pecuniâ.* Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Mutare bellum pro pace,* Sall.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. (186) When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case; as,

<i>Accūsor furti,</i>	I am accused of theft.
<i>Virgilius comparātur Homēro,</i>	Virgil is compared to Homer.
<i>Docetor grammaticam,</i>	I am taught grammar.
<i>Navis onerātur auro,</i>	The ship is loaded with gold.

So, *Scio homines accusatum iri furti*;—*Eos ereptum iri morti,* morte, a or ex morte;—*pueros doctum iri grammaticam*;—*rem celatum iri mihi,* or me; *me celatum iri de re, &c.*

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habētur ludibrio iis.*

* (187) When a verb in the Active voice governs an accusative with any other case, it must be carefully observed that, whatever word is in the Accusative after the Active verb, that word, and no other, must be the Nominative to it in the Passive voice, and the other case remains unchanged. Thus, 'I give you a book,' *Librum tibi do*; passively, *Liber tibi datur.* 'He told me this,' *Hoc mihi dixit*; passively, 'I was told this,' *Hoc mihi dictum est.* 'I present you with a book,' *Dono tibi librum*; passively, *Liber tibi donatur.* This rule is simple, perspicuous, and founded on the best classical authorities—that, whatever is put in the Accusative case, after the Active verb, becomes the Nominative to it, in the Passive voice, while the other case is retained under the government of the verb, by this twenty-eighth rule. Thus, 'I persuade you of this,' *Persuadeo hoc tibi.* Here the thing is ex-

pressed in the Accusative, and the *person* in the Dative. The former therefore must be the Nominative to the verb in the Passive voice; as, *hoc tibi persuadetur*, 'you are persuaded of this,' literally, 'this is persuaded to you.'

* (189) But it does not follow that we cannot say, *Ego dicor*, *Ille dicitur*, or *Ille dictus est*. If the person be *He* to *whom* any thing is said, it must always be expressed in the Dative case, as in the preceding examples. But if the person be *He* or *whom* any thing is said, it may then be made nominative to the verb. Thus, 'He is said to be a wise man,' *Ille dicitur esse vir sapiens*. Here *Ille* is the subject spoken of, the person of *whom* the assertion is made, not the person to *whom* the thing is told. In like manner, 'I believe you,' *Credo tibi*, that is, 'I give credit to what you say,' in the passive voice, *tibi creditur*, not *tu crederis*. But the latter expression is correct if used to signify, not that credit is given to the words of the person, but that something is believed of him, as the subject of discourse; as, *Tu crederis esse vir bonus*, 'you are believed to be a good man.'

Obs. 1. (189) Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a*; as,

Tu laudāris a me, which is equivalent to *Ego laudo te*. *Virtus diligitur a nobis*; *Nos diligimus virtutem*. *Gaudeo meum factum probāri a te*, or *te probāre meum factum*: And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition; as, *Mare a sole collūcet*. Cic. *Phalāris non a paucis interiit*. Id. So, *Cadere ab hoste*; *Cessare a praeliis*; *Mori ab enae*; *Pati furari aliquid ab aliquo*, &c. Also, *Venire ab hostibus*, to be sold; *Vapulāre ab aliquo*, *Exulare ab urbe*. Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere*, &c. *ab aliquo*.

The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Deseror conjūge*. Ovid. *Desertus suis* sc. *a*. Tacit. *Tabūla distinguitur undā qui navigat*. sc. *ab undā*, is kept from the water by a plank. Juvenal.

The preposition *PER* is also used in the same sense with *A*; as, *Per me defensa est respublica*, or *a me*; *Per me restitutus*; *Per me* or *a me factum est*. Cic. But *PER* commonly marks the instrument, and *A* the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agitur per creditores, a rege*, sc. *a rege vel a legato ejus*. Cic. Fam. i. 1.

Obs. 2. (190) Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; as,

Neque cernitur ulli, for *ab ullo*. Virg. *Vix audior ulli*. Ovid. *Scrībēris Vario*, for *a Vario*. Hor. *Honesta bonis viris quæruntur, for a viris*. Cic. *VIDEOR*, to seem, always governs the dative; as, *Vidēris mihi*, You seem to me: but we commonly say, *Vidēris a me*, You are seen by me; although not always; as, *Nulla tuarum audita mihi, neque visu sororum*, for *a me*. Virg.

Obs. 3. (191) *Induor, amīcor, cingor, accingor*, also *exuor*, and *discingor*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as *Induitur vestem, or veste*.

Obs. 4. (192) Neuter verbs are for the most part used impersonally in the passive voice; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna, pugnata est*. Cic. *Bellum militabitur*. Horat. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as, *Statur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venit, &c. a vobis, ab illis, &c.* We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me, or ab aliquo*: I or any person may live well. *Provisum est nobis optime a Deo*; *Reclamatum est ab omnibus*, all cried out against it. Cic.

They also govern the same cases as when used personally; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicum misereatur*. Cic. Except the accusative: for in these phrases, *Itur Athenas, pugnatum est biduum, dormitur totam noctem*, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems*; *Noctes vigilantur amarae*; *Oceānus raris ab orbe nostro navibus aditur*. Tacit.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

XXIX. (193) An Impersonal Verb governs the dative; as,

Expedit reipublicæ,

It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

Favetur mihi, I am favoured, and not *Ego faveor*. So, *Nocetur mihi, imperatur mihi, &c.* We find, however, *Hæc ego procurare imperor, Ego cur invidetur, for imperatur, invidetur mihi*. Hor.

Obs. 1. (194) These verbs, *Potest, caput, incipit, desinit, debet, and solet*, are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

Non potest credi tibi, You cannot be believed; *Mihi non potest noceri*, I cannot be hurt; *Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute*. Cic. *Per virtutem potest iri ad astra. Aliorum laudi et gloriæ invideri solet*. The praise and glory of others are accustomed to be envied. Id. *Neque a fortissimis infirmissimo genti resisti posse*. Sallust.

Obs. 2. (195) Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res, or de hac re, or hujus rei, soil. memoria*; This thing came into my mind. *Est curæ mihi hæc res, or de hac re. Doleo or dolet mihi, id factum esse*.

Obs. 3. (196) The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *It rains, it shines*; &c. And in the Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Nobis non licet peccare*, the same with *peccatum*; *Omnibus bonis expedit rempublicam esse salvam*, i. e. *Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis*. Cic. *Accidit, evanuit, configit, ut ibi essemus*. These nominatives, *hoc, illud, id, idem, quod, &c.*, are sometimes joined to impersonal verbs; as, *idem mihi licet*. Cic. *Edder licet*. Catull.

Obs. 4. (197) The dative is often understood; as, *Faciat quod libet, sc. sibi.* Ter. *Stat casus renovare omnes, sc. mihi,* I am resolved. Virg.

Exc. I. (198) *REFERT* and *INTEREST* govern the genitive; as,

Refert patris, It concerns my father. *Intérest omnium,* It is the interest of all.

† (199) But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra,* are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

Non mea refert,

It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua, sua, &c.* to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus intérest,* and *quorum intérest;* or *cujus intérest,* from *cujus, -a, -um.*

Obs. 2. (200) *Refert* and *intérest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil, &c.* also with common nouns; and with these genitives, *Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris;* as, *Hoc parvi refert; Illud mea magni intérest.* Cic. *Usque adeo magni refert studium.* Lucret. *Incessus in gravidâ refert.* Plin.

(201) They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maxime, vehementer, minime, &c.* as, *Faciam, quod maxime republicæ interesse judicabo.* Cic.

(202) Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accus. with the prep. *ad;* as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert. Persæ quid rerum gerant?* Of what importance is it! &c. Plaut. *Magni ad honorem nostrum intérest.* Cic.; rarely the dative; as, *Dic quid referat intra naturæ fines viventi, &c.* Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, *Magnopere intérest opprimi Dolabellam,* it is of great importance. Cic. *Permultum intérest, qualis primus aditus sit.* Id. *Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis referat.* Liv. *Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas.* Juv.

Obs. 3. (203) The genitive after *refert* and *intérest,* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua, &c.* likewise agree; as, *Intérest Cicerónis, i. e. est inter negotia Cicerónis. Refert patris, i. e. refert se hæc res ad negotia patris.* So, *intérest mea, est inter negotia mea.*

Exc. II. (204) These five, *MISERET, PCENITET, PUDET, TÆDET,* and *PIGET,* govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

Miseret me tui, I pity you.

Tædet me vitæ, I am weary of life.

Pœnitet me peccati, I repent of my sin. *Pudet me culpæ,* I am ashamed of my fault.

Obs. 1. (205) The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Miseret me tui,* that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me.*

Obs. 2. (206) An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Poenitet me peccasse, or quod peccaverim*. The accusative is frequently understood; as, *Scelerum si bene poenitet, scil. nos*. Horat.

Obs. 3. (207) *Misereat, poenitet, &c.* are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod, &c.* as, *Ipse sui misereat*. Lucr. *Nonne hæc te pudet*. Ter. *Nihil, quod poenitere possit, facias, for cujus te poenitere possit*. Cic.

We sometimes find *misereat* joined with two accusatives; as, *Menedæmi vicem misereat me, scil. secundum or quod ad*. Ter.

Obs. 4. (208) The preterites of *misereat, pudet, lædet, and piget*, when used in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, *miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum*. Ter. We likewise find, *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*. Ter. *Misereatur te fratrum; Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest*. Cic.

Exc. III. (209) *DECET, DELECTAT, JUVAT, and OPOR-
TET*, govern the accusative of a person with the infinitive; as,

*Delectat me studere,
Non decet te risari,*

*It delights me to study.
It does not become you to scold.*

Obs. 1. (210) These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, *parvum parva decent*. Hor. *Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiamsi liceat*. Cic. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant*. Ter.

Obs. 2. (211) *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet*. Ter.

Obs. 3. (212) *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as,

Sibi quisque consulat oportet. Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse or fuisse* being understood; as, *Communicatum oportuit; mansum oportuit; Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*. The young man should have been humoured. Ter.

Obs. 4. (213) *Fallit, fugit, præterit, lætet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nullâ esse ejusmodi caput, non te fallit; De Dionysio fugit me ad te antea scribere*. Cic.

NOTE. (214) *Attinet, pertinet, and spectat*, are construed with *ad*; *Ad rem publicam pertinet, me conservari*. Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet, belongs*. Ter. *Res ad arma spectat, looks, points*. Cic.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

XXX. (215) One verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

Cupio discere,

I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. (216) The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Horatius est dignus legi*. Quintil. And it sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus equum fumantia solvere colla*. Virg.

Obs. 2. (217) The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood ; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam*, scil. *deceat*, or *par est*. Virg. *Vidēre est*, one may see. *Dicere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*. Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied ; as, *Socrātem fābibus docuit*, scil. *canere*. Cic. So, *Discre, acire, fābibus*.

Obs. 3. (218) The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients, *Nomen verbi*, the name or noun of the verb ; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive ; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own : and it likewise supplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases ; as, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocināri, fraudāre, urpe est*. Cic. *Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores*. Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantāre*, for *cantandi* or *cantūs*. Virg. 3. In the dative, *Parātus servīre*, for *servitūti*. Sall. 4. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallere*, for *artem fallendi*. Horat. *Quod faciam superest, præter amāre, nihil*. Ovid. 5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum, ut non sentientibus effluis ! for vita nostra*. 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amāri*, for *amōre*, or *qui amātur*. Virg.

Obs. 4. (219) Instead of the infinitive a different construction is often used after verbs of doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping ; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity ; as, *Dubitāt ita facere*, or more frequently, *an, num, or utrum ita factūrus sit ; Dubitāvit an faceret necne ; Non dubito quin fecerit. Vis me facere, or ut faciam. Metuit tangi, or ne tangatur. Spero te venturum esse, or fore ut venias. Nunquam putāvi fore ut ad te supplex venirem. Cic. Existimābant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur. Cæsar.*

* (220) *Dubito* and *dubium est*, are sometimes followed by the Infinitive, but oftener by the Subjunctive, with *an, num, utrum*, and (if *non* goes before) *quin* ; as, *non dubium est quin uxorem nolit filius*, Terent. It is to be observed that such phrases as *Dubito an, Haud scio an, Nescio an*, although from their very nature they imply some doubt, are, notwithstanding, generally used in a sense almost affirmative ; as, *Dubito an hunc primum omnium ponam*, Nep. 'for aught I know he may be placed first,' or 'I am inclined to place him first.'

* (221) Verbs of fearing, such as, *timeo, metuo, vereor, pæveo*, are used affirmatively with *ne*, but negatively with *ut, or ne non* ; thus, *Timet ne deseras se*, Ter. 'she is afraid that you may forsake her.' *Paves ne ducas uxorem*, Ter. denotes, 'you are afraid to marry.' *Paves ut ducas*, Ter. 'you are afraid lest you should not marry her.'

Obs. 5. (222) *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive ; as, I am sent to complain, *Mittor questum, or ut querar, &c.* Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum* ; Time to read, *Tempus legendi* ; Fit to swim, *Aptus natando* ; Easy to say, *Facile dictu* ; I am to write, *Scripturus sum* ; A house to let, or more properly, to be let, *Domus locanda* ; He was left to guard the city, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

XXXI. (223) Participles, Gerunds, and Supines govern the case of their own verbs ; as,

Amans virtutem, Loving virtue.

Carens fraude, Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. (224) Passive Participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

Suspectus mihi, Suspected by me; *Suspectiores regibus*. Sall. *Invisus mihi*, hated by me, or hateful to me; *In dies invisor*. Suet. *Occulta et maribus non invisæ solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra*, unseen. Cic.

(225) *EXOSUS*, *PEROSUS*, and often also *PERTÆSUS*, govern the accusative; as, *Tedas exosa jugales*. Ovid. *Plebs consilium nomen haud secus quàm regum perosa erat*. Liv. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam; semet ipse*, displeased with. Suet. *vilam*, weary of. Justin. *levitatis*. Cic.

(226) Verbals in *BUNDUS* govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ*. Just. *Vitabundus castra hostium*. Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus*. Cic. *Insidiæ consili*. Sall. *Domum reditiõnis spe sublata*. Cæs. *Spectatio ludos*. Plaut.

* Obs. 2. (227) *Do, reddo, volo, curo, facio, habeo, comperio*, with the Accusative of a perfect participle, are often used by way of circumlocution, instead of the verb of the participle; as, *Compertum habeo*, for *comperti*, 'I have found'; *Effectum dabo*, for *efficiam*. *Me mittum face*, Ter. for *mitte*. In certain instances there is an evident difference between the simple tense of the verb, and the periphrasis corresponding to the manner in which it is usually interpreted in English. Thus if we say, *Gladius quem abdiderat*, or *Gladius quem abdutum habebat*, the translation of either is, 'The sword which she had concealed.' The latter is the phraseology of Livy, describing the suicide of Lucretia, and implies the actual possession of the dagger at the time; the former does not.

* (228) Sometimes the Gerund is used with *ad*; as, *Tradere ei gentes diripendas*, or *ad diripiendum*, Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum*, or *ad utendum*; *Misit mihi librum legendum*, or *ad legendum*.

Obs. 3. (229) These verbs, *curo, habeo, mando, loco, condūco, do, tribuo, mitto*, &c., are elegantly construed with the participle in *dus*, instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curavi*, for *fieri*, or *ut fieret*; *Columnas ædificandas locavi*. Cic.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

XXXII. (230) Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; as,

<i>Studendum est mihi,</i>	I must study.	<i>Scio studendum esse mihi,</i>	I know
<i>Tempus studendi,</i>	Time of study.		that I must study.
<i>Aptus studendo,</i>	Fit for studying.		

But more particularly:

I. (231) The gerund in *DUM*, of the Nominative case, with the verb *est* governs the dative; as,

Legendum est mihi, I must read. *Moriendum est omnibus,* All must die.
So, *Scio legendum esse mihi; moriendum esse omnibus*, &c.

Obs. 1. (232) This gerund always imports obligation or necessity; and may be resolved into *oportet, necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut*; as, *Omnibus est moriendum*, or *Omnibus necesse est mori*, or *ut moriantur*; or *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. *Consulendum est tibi a me*, I must consult for your good; for *Oportet ut consilium tibi*. Cic.

Obs. 2. (233) The dative is often understood; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*, sc. *tibi*. Juv. *Hic vincendum, aut moriendum, milites, est*, sc. *vobis*. Liv. *Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel*, sc. *tibi* or *alicui*. P. Syr.

II. (234) The gerund in *DI* is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,

Tempus legendi, Time of reading. *Cupidus discendi*, Desirous of learning.

Obs. (235) This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural; as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi* for *agros*. Cic. *Copia spectandi comædiarum*, for *comædias*. Ter. But chiefly with pronouns; as, *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causa*. Cæs. *Vestri adhortandi causa*. Liv. *Ejus videndi cupidus*, sc. *famulus*. Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

III. (236) The gerund in *DO* of the Dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

Charta utilis scribendo, Paper useful for writing.

Obs. 1. (237) Sometimes the adjective is understood; as, *Non est solvendo*, scil. *par* or *habilis*, He is not able to pay. Cic.

Obs. 2. (238) This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs; as, *Adesse scribendo*. Cic. *Apliat habendo ensem*, for wearing. Virg. *Is finis censendo factus est*. Liv.

IV. (239) The gerund in *DUM* of the Accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as,

Promptus ad audiendum, Ready to hear.
Attentus inter docendum, Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. (240) This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as *Ante domandum*. Virg. *Ob absolvendum*. Cic. *Circa movendum*. Quintil. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

V. (241) The gerund in *DO* of the Ablative case is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as,

Pena a peccando absterret, Punishment frightens from sinning.

(242) Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

*Memoria excolendo augētur,
Difessus sum ambulando,*

The memory is improved by exercising it.
I am wearied with walking.

Obs. (243) The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive.—Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere*: only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tisidium vocarētur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipsi imperētur*, to receive orders. Sall. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius*; sic enim antiqui loquebantur. Cic. i. e. *ut tibi imperētur*. *Urit videndo*, i. e. *dum vidētur*. Virg.

Gerunds turned into Participles in dus.

XXXVI.* (244) Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number and case; as,

By the Gerund.

By the Participle or Gerundive.

<i>Petendum est mihi pacem, Tempus petendi pacem, Ad petendum pacem, A petendo pacem,</i>	} or more frequently {	<i>Pax est petenda mihi. Tempus petendæ pacis. Ad petendam pacem. A petendâ pace.</i>
---	------------------------	---

(245) Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Genitive. *Inſta sunt conſilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandōrum, nominis Romāni extinguendi*. Cic.

Dat. *Perpetiendō labori idoneus*. Colum. *Capessendæ reipublicæ habilis*. Tac. *Area firma templis ac porticibus ſuſtinentiſ*. Liv. *Onēri ferendo eſt, ſc. aptus or habilis*. Ovid. *Natus miſeriis ferendis*. Ter. *Litteris dandiſ vigilare*. Cic. *Locum oppido condendo capere*. Liv.

Acc and Abl. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnandâ Capuâ duces Romānos abſtrahere*. Liv. *Oratiōnem Latinam legendiſ noſtriſ efficiſ pleniorē*. Cic.

Obs. 2. (246) The gerunds of verbs, which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except thoſe of *medeor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, and *potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiundæ urbiſ*; but we always ſay, *Cupidus ſubveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*.

* The Gerunds in *DUM*, *DI*, and *DO*, conſtitute Rules xxxiii. xxxiv. and xxxv.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. The Supine in *um*.

XXXVII. (247) The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulatum,

He hath gone to walk.

So, *Ducere cohortes praedatum*. Liv. *Nunc venis irrisum domitium? Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitror, te id admonitum venio*. Plaut.

Obs. 1. (248) The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat, ut se perdat*, He is bent on his own destruction. Ter. This supine with *iri*, taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credēbas illam sine tuā opēdā iri deductum domum?* Which may be thus resolved; *An credēbas iri* (a te or ab aliquo) *deductum* (i. e., ad deducendum) *illam domum*. Ter. The supine here may be considered as a verbal substantive governing the accusative, like the gerund.

Obs. 2. (249) The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum*; *Cantatum provocemus*. Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam*; *Divisum copias hiematum*. Nep.

Obs. 3. (250) The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit oratum opem*; or, 1. *Venit opem orandi causā, or opis orandae*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*. or *ad orandam opem*. 3. *Venit opi orandae*. 4. *Venit opem oraturus*. 5. *Venit qui, or ut opem oret*. 6. *Venit opem orare*. But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. The Supine in *u*.

XXXVIII. (251) The supine in *u* is put after adjectives implying *Ease, Difficulty, Propensity, Quality, Fitness, Form, &c.*

Facile dictu,

Easy to tell, or to be told.

So, *Nihil dictu foedum, visūque, hæc limina tangat, intra quæ puer est*. Juv. *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus*; *Fus or nefas est dictu*; *Opus est scitu*. Cic.

Obs. 1. (252) The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc obsonātu redeo*, from getting provisions. Plaut. *Primus cubitu surgat* (villicus,) from bed, *postrēmus cubitum eat*. Cato.

Obs. 2. (253) This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu, cognosci*, or *ad cognoscendum*; *Res facilis ad credendum*. Cic.

* Obs. 3. (254) According to the opinion of many grammarians, the Supines are nothing else but verbal nouns of the Fourth declension, used only in the Ac-

cusative and Ablative cases, and are governed in these cases by prepositions understood, the Supine in *um* by the preposition *ad* and the Supine in *u* by the preposition *in*. But this opinion will hardly bear examination; for why should the Supine in *um* govern the case of its own verb unless it be really a part of it?

* (255) Although in the grammars and dictionaries the Supines of most verbs are given by analogy, yet they are seldom found in the classics: instead of them are used the Gerunds; Participles in *du*s and *ru*s; and *ut*, with the Subjunctive mode.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

I. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

XXXIX. (256.) Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs; as,

<i>Benè scribit,</i>	He writes well.	<i>Fortiter pugnans,</i>	Fighting bravely.
<i>Servus egregiè fidèlis,</i>	A slave remarks	<i>Satis benè,</i>	Well enough.
ably faithful.			

Obs. 1. (257) Adverbs sometimes likewise qualify substantives; as,

Homē-us planè orātor: plane noster, verè Metellus. Cic. So, *Hodie mane, cras mane, heri mane; hodie vespèri, &c. tam mane, tam vespère.*

Obs. 2. (258) The adverb, for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it qualifies or affects.

Obs. 3. (259) Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative; as,

Nec non sensērunt, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. *et sensērunt*, and they did perceive; *Non potēram non examināri metu.* Cic. So, *non sum nescius*, i. e. *scia*. Cic. Or. 1, 11. *haud nihil est*, i. e. *est aliquid*. Ter. Eun. 4, 2, 13. *nonnulli*, i. e. *aliqui*; *nonnunquam*, i. e. *aliquando*; *non nemo* i. e. *quidam*; *nemo non*, i. e. *quilibet*, &c. Examples, however, of the contrary of this occur in good authors, both Latin and English. Thus, in imitation of the Greeks, two negatives sometimes make a stronger negation: *Neque ego haud committam, ut, si quid peccātum siet, (te) fecisse dicas de meā sententiā*, I will not cause, that, &c. Plaut. Bacch. 4, 9, 114. *Jura, te non nocitūrum homīni hāc de re nemīni, for nulli homīni.* Id. Mil. 5, 1, 18, cf. Epid. 4, 1, 6. & 5, 1, 57. *Nolle successum, non Patribus, non consulis.* They did not wish success either to the Patricians, or the Consuls. Liv. 2, 45. So, *nihil iste nec ausus, nec potuit.* Virg. Æ. 9, 428, add. Virg. E. 4, 53, & 5, 53. Ter. Eun. 5, 9, 47. Heaut. 1, 1, 11. *Nullius rei neque præs, neque maniceps factus est.* Nep. 25, 6.

(260) But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined. 1. *Apprimè, admodum, vehementer, maxime, perquam, valdè, oppiddò, &c.* and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive; as, *Utrique nostrum gratum admodum feceris*, You will do what is very agreeable to both of us. Cic. *perquam puerile*, very childish; *oppiddò pauci*, very few; *perfacile est*, &c. In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum*; as, *In rebus apertissimis, nimium longi sumus; pa-*

rum firmus, multum bonus. Cic. Adverbs in *um* are sometimes also joined to comparatives; as, *Forma viri aliquantulum amplior humanâ.* Liv.

(361) *QUAM* is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses; as, *Quam difficile est!* How difficult it is! *Quam crudelis, or Ut crudelis est!* How cruel he is! *Flens quam familiariter,* very familiarly. Ter. So, *quam severe,* very severely. Cic. *Quam latè,* very widely. Cæ. *Tam multa quam,* &c. as many things as, &c. *Quam maximas potest copias armat,* as great as possible. Sall. *Quam maximas gratias agit, quam primum, quam sapientissimè.* Cic. *Quam quisque pessimè fecit, tam maximè tutus est.* Sall.

(362) *FACILE*, for *haud dubie*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to superlatives or words of a similar meaning; as, *Facilè doctissimus, facilè princeps, or præcipuus.* LONGE, to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive; as, *Longè eloquentissimus Plato.* Cic. *Pedibus longè melior Lycus.* Virg.

2. (263) *CUM*, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter; *DUM*, whilst, or how long, with the indicative; as, *Dum hæc aguntur; Aegrò, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur.* Cic. *Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos.* Ovid. *DUM* and *DONEC*, for *usquidum*, until, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive; as, *Opperior, dum ista cognosco.* Cic. *Haud desinam donec perfectro.* Ter. So *QUOAD*, for *quamdium*, quantum, *quatenus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Catilina fuit in urbe; Quoad tibi æquum videbitur; quoad possem and liceret; quoad progredi potuerit amentia.* Cic. But *QUOAD*, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Thessalonicos esse statueram, quoad aliquid ad me scriberes.* Cic. but not always; *Non faciam finem rogandi, quoad nunciatum erit te fecisse.* Cic. The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere, or fieri*, is elegantly added to *quoad*; as, *quoad ejus facere poteris; Quoad ejus fieri possit.* Cic. *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid*, or some such word understood. *Quoad corpus, quoad animam*, for *secundum*, or *quod attinet ad corpus or animam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. (264) *POSTQUAM* or *POSTEAQUAM*, after, is usually joined with the indic. *ANTEQUAM*, *PRIUSQUAM*, before: *SIMUL*, *SIMULAC*, *SIMUL ATQUE*, *SIMUL UT*, as soon as; *UBI*, when, sometimes with the indic and sometimes with the subj; as, *Antequam dico or dicam.* Cic. *Simulac persensit.* Virg. *Simul ut vidèro Curiònem.* Cic. *Hæc ubi dicta dedit.* Liv. *Ubi semel quis perjuraverit, ei credi postea non oportet.* Cic. So *NÆ*, truly, as, *Næ ego homo sum infelix.* Ter. *Næ tu, si id fecisses, melius famæ consulisses.* Cic. But *NÆ*, not, with the imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, *Ne jura.* Plaut. *Ne post conferras culpam in me.* Ter. *Ne tot annòrum felicitatem in unius horæ dedèris discrimen.* Liv.

4. (265) *QUASI*, *CEU* *TANQUAM*, *PERINDE*, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the indicative; *Fuit olim, quasi ego sum, senex.* Plaut. *Adversus rupto ceu quondam turbine venti configunt.* Virg. *Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur.* But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laborètur.* Cic.

5. (266) *UTINAM*, *O SI*, *UT*, for *utinam*, I wish, take the subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea res ei voluptati sit.* Cic. *O mihi præteritos refèrat si Jupiter annos.* Virg. *Ut illum dii deaque perdant.* Ter.

6. (267) *UT*, when, or after, takes the indicative; as, *Ut discessit, venit.* &c. ¶ Also, for *quàm*, or *quomodo*, how! as, *Ut valet! Ut falsus animi est! Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!* Plaut. ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse.* Plaut. ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes.* Cic.

7. (268) *QUIN*, for *CUR NON*, takes the indic. as, *Quin continētis vocem indicem stultitiæ vestræ?* Cic. ¶ For *IMO*, nay, or but, the indic. or imperat. as, *Quin est paratum argentum; quin tu hoc audi.* Ter. ¶ For *UT NON*, *QUI*, *QUÆ*, *QUOD NON*, or

quo minus, the subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam facilis res, quin difficilis fiet, quam in-
vitus facias.* Ter. *Nemo est, quin malit; Facere non possum, quin ad te mittam,*
I cannot help sending; *Nihil abest, quin sim miserimus.* Cic.

THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

XL. (269) Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

Pridiè ejus dièi,
Ubique gentium,
Satis est verborum,

The day before that day.
Every where.
There is enough of words.

1. (270) Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, *Interea, postea, inde, tunc;* as, *Interea loci*, in the meantime; *postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi*, and *quo*, with their compounds, *ubique, ubicunque, ubivis, ubiubi*, &c. Also, *Eo, huc, hucne, unde, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibidem;* as, *Ubi, quo, quovis*, &c. also *usquam, nusquam, unde terrarum, or gentium; longe gentium; ibidem loci, eò audaciæ, vecordiæ, miseriarum*, &c. to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abundè, affatim, largiter, nimis, satis, parum, minimè;* as, *Abundè gloriæ, affatim divitiarum, largiter auri, satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum est illi or habet*, He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minimè gentium*, by no means.

* (271) Some add *Ergo* and *Instar*; but these are properly indeclinable nouns. *Ergo*, (the Greek *Εργον*) means 'an account of,' 'for the sake of,' and is similar to *gratià*; as, *ejus victoriæ ergo*, Nep. an account of that victory; *honoris ergo*, Cic. It may be considered in the ablative case by Rule 49. *Instar*, 'similitude,' 'likeness,' 'worth,' 'shape,' may be considered in the accusative, and governed by *ad* understood; as, *amo eum instar patris*, 'I love him like a father;' that is, *ad instar*, 'according to the likeness.' *Instar montis equum edificant*, 'they make a horse as great as a mountain,' that is, *ad instar*, 'according to the size,' &c.

* (272) Many adverbs of place, as, *ubi, ubinam, ubivis, quo, quovis, aliquo, usquam, nusquam*, &c. are followed by the genitives *Gentium, Terrarum, Loci, Locorum*, which are not in general superfluous, but express an emphasis, as in English we say, 'where in the world is he?' for 'where is he?' &c., of which the former is more emphatical, and implies more astonishment; as, *ubi terrarum sumus*, 'where in the world are we?' *Nihil est virtute amabilius, quam qui adeptus fuerit, ubicunque erit gentium, a nobis diligenter*, Cic. Nat. Deor. 'Nothing is more lovely than virtue, and for him who practices it, in whatever part of the world he may be, do we feel the strongest affection.' *Quo amentia*, Liv. 'to what extent,' or 'degree of madness.'

Obs. 1. (273) These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentia gloriæque abundè adeptus*, the same with *abundantiam gloriæ*; or *res, locus, or negotium*, and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interea loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci*; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. (274) We usually say, *pridiè, postridiè, ejus dièi, seldom diem*; but *pridiè, postridiè Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, ludus Apollinæres, natâlem ejus, absolutionem ejus*, &c., rarely *Kalendarum*, &c.

Obs. 3. (275) *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as,

En hostis, or hostem; Ecce mistrum hominem. Cic. Sometimes a dative:

added; as, *Ecce tibi Strato*. Ter. *Ecce duas* (scil. aras,) *tibi, Daphni*. Virg. *En tibi*. Liv. In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce*; as, *Hem tibi Davum*, Ter. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

XLI. (276) Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

Omnium optimè loqũtur,
Convenienter naturæ,
Venit obviam ei,
Proximè castris, or castra,

He speaks the best of all.
 Agreeably to nature.
 He came to meet him.
 Next the camp.

* (277) Thus also, by Rule XI. *Omnium optimè, Saepissimè omnium, diutissimè omnium*, although the superlative of the two last, whence the adverbs come, are not used. By Rule XII. *congruenter naturæ convenienterque vivere*. Cic. *Huic obviam civitas processerat*. Cic.

II. THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

* **XLII. (278)** The Prepositions *ad, adversus, adversum, ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, penes, per, pone, post, præter, prope, propter, secundum, secus, supra, trans, ultra, usque, versus*, govern the Accusative.

2. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

* **XLIII. (279)** The prepositions *a, ab, abs, absque, clam, coram, cum, de, e, ex, palam, præ, pro, sine, tenus*, govern the Ablative.

(280) To prepositions governing the ablative is commonly added *PROCUL*: as,

Procul domo, far from home; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed; as, *Procul a patriâ*, Virg. *Procul ab ostentatione*. Quint. *Culpa est procul a me*. Ter.

3. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACC. AND ABL.

XLIV. (281) The prepositions *in, sub, super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative, *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN, when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative.

Obs. 1. (282) When prepositions do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are *Ante, circa, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, palam, pone, post, propter, secus, subter, super, supra, ultra*. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, *Longo post tempore venit*, sc. *post id tempus*. *Adversus, juxta, propter, secus, secundum*, and *clam*, are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl.; as, *Intus cellam*, for *intra*. Liv. *Intus templo divum*, sc. *in*. Virg. *Simul his*, sc. *cum*. Hor.

Obs. 2. A and π are only put before consonants; $\alpha\pi$ and $\epsilon\chi$, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

A patre, e regione; ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte; abs before q and t ; as, *abs te, abs quivis homine*. Ter. Some phrases are used only with e ; as, *e longinquo, e regione, e vestigio, e re mea est*, &c. Some only with ex ; as, *Ex compacto, ex tempore, magna ex parte*, &c.

Obs. 3. (283) Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenire locus*, scil. *ad*; *It portis*, sc. *ex*. Virg. *Nunc id prodeo*, scil. *ob* or *propter*. Ter. *Maria aspèra juro*, scil. *per*. Virg. *Ut se loco movere non possent*, scil. *e* or *de*. Cæs. *Vina promens dolia*, scil. *ex*. Hor. *Quid illo facias?* *Quid me fiet*, sc. *de*. Ter. And so in English, *Show me the book; Get me some paper*, that is, *to me, for me*. We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordiæ*, sc. *eodem*. Sall. *Round St. Paul's*, namely, *church*; *Campum Stellatæ divisit extra sortem ad viginti millibus, civium*, i. e. *civium millibus ad viginti millia*. Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emittere servum*, scil. *manu*. Plaut. *Evomere virus*, scil. *ore*. Cic. *Educere copias*, scil. *castris*. Cæs.

XLV. (284) A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

*Adëamus scholam,
Eseämus scholâ,*

*Let us go to the school.
Let us go out of the school.*

Obs. 1. (285) The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adire ad scholam; Exire ex scholâ; Adgrèdi aliquid*, or *ad aliquid; Ingrèdi orationem*, or *in orationem; Inducere animum*, and *in animum; Evadere undis* and *ex undis; Decedere de suo jure, decedere viâ* or *de viâ; Expellere, ejicere, exterminare, extrudere, exturbare urbe*, and *ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affari, allôqui, allatrare aliquem*, not *ad aliquem*. So, *Alluere urbem; accollere flumen; circumvenire aliquem; præterire injuriam; abdicare se magistratû*, (also, *abdicare magistratûm*;) *transducere exercitum fluvium*, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem, adhortari ad aliquid, incidere in morbum, advocare a studiis, avertere ab incepto*, &c.

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abire, demigrare loco*; and *a, de, ex loco; abstrahere aliquem, a, de, or e conspectu; Desistere sententiâ, a or de sententiâ; Excidere manibus, de or e manibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. (286) Some verbs compounded with e or ex govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

Egrēdi urbe, or *urbem*, sc. *extra*; *egrēdi extra vallum*. Nep. *Evadēre insidiis* or *insidias*. *Patrios excedēre muros*. Lucan. *Sceleratā excedēre terrā*. Virg. *Elābi ex manibus*; *elābi pugnā aut vincula*. Tac.

Obs. 3. (287) This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Allōquor patrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.

III. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

XLVI. (288) The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

O vir bonus or *bone*! *O* good man! *Heu me miserum*! Ah wretched me!

So, *O vir fortis atque amicus*! Ter. *Heu vanitas humana*! Plin. *Heu miserande puer*! Virg. *O praelarum custodem ovium* (ut aiunt) *lupum*! Cic.

XLVII. (289) *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

Hei mihi! Ah me.

Væ vobis! Wo to you!

Obs. 1. (290) *Heus* and *ohé* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*. Ter. *Ohé libelle*! Martial. *Proh* or *pro*, *ah*, *vah*, *hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Proh hominum fidem*! Ter. *Proh Sancte Jupiter*! Cic. *Hem astutias*! Ter.

Obs. 2. (291) Interjections cannot, properly, have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connexion with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case, therefore, is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely; thus, *Heu me miserum*! stands for *Heu! quā me miserum sentio*! *Hei mihi*! for *Hei! malum est mihi*! *Proh dolor*! for *Proh! quantus est dolor*! and so in other examples.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price* of a thing. 2. The *Cause*, *Manner* and *Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure* and *Distance*. 5. *Time*.

1. PRICE.

XLVIII. (292) The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Emi librum duobus assibus,
Constitit talento,

I bought a book for two shillings.
It cost a talent.

So, *Asse carum est*; *vile viginti minis*; *auro venale*, &c. *Nocet empti dolore voluptas*. Hor. *Spem pretio non emam*. Ter. *Plurimi auro veneunt honores*. Ovid.

† (293) These genitives, *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, are excepted; as,

Quanti constitit, How much cost it? *Asse et pluris*, a shilling and more.

Obs. 1. (294) When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *parvo pretio, impenso pretio vendere*. Cic.

Obs. 2. (295) *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo*, are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constitit*, scil. *pretio*. Cic. *Hec quanto regnis nox stetit una tuis?* Ovid. *Fast.* ii. 812. We also say, *Emi carè, carius, carissimè; bene, melius, optimè; malè, pejus, vilius, vilissimè; valdè, carè, æstimas: Emit domum prope dimidio carius, quàm æstimabat*. Cic.

Obs. 3. (296) The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret*. Liv.

2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

XLIX. (297) The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metu,
Fecit suo more,
Scribo calamo,

I am pale for fear.
He did it after his own way.
I write with a pen.

So, *Ardet dolore; palescere culpa; æstuare dubitatione; gestire voluptate* or *secundis rebus: Confectus morbo; affectus beneficiis, gravissimo supplicio; insignis pietate; deterior licentia: Pietate filius, consiliis pater, amore frater; hence, Rex Dei gratia: Paritur pax bello*. Nep. *Procedere lento gradu; Acceptus regio apparatu: Nullo sono convertitur annus*. Juv. *Jam veniet tacto curva senecta pede*. Ovid. *Percutere securi, defendere saxis, configere sagittis, &c.*

Obs. 1. (298) The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, *De more matrum locuta est*. Virg. *Magno cum metu; Hac de causa; Præ more, formidine, &c.* But hardly ever before the instrument; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio*, not *cum gladio*; unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab*; as, *Trajectus ab ense*. Ovid.

Obs. 2. (299) When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the preposition *cum* usually added; as, *Obsedit curiam cum gladiis: Ingressus est cum gladio*. Cic.

Obs. 3. (300) Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum*. Liv. *Floruit acuminè ingenii*. Cic. *Pollet opibus, valet armis, viget memoriâ, famâ nobilis, &c. Ager pedibus*. When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, *Templum de marmore, seldom marmoris; Poculum ex auro factum*. Cic.

3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars.—

1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to*

whick. 3. The place *whence* or *from which*. 4. The place *by*, or *through which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place in the ablative.

1. The place WHERE.

L. (301) When the place *where*, or in *which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

*Vixit Romæ,
Mortuus est Londini,*

He lived at Rome.
He died at London.

¶ (302) But if the name of a town be of the third declension or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

*Habitat Carthagine,
Studuit Parisiis,*

He dwells at Carthage.
He studied at Paris.

Obs. 1. (303) When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighbourhood or near it, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam*, At or near Troy.

Obs. 2. (304) The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition in understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply in *urbe* or in *oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed: thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebri*: but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or in *Romæ celebri urbe*; or in *Româ celebri urbe*, or sometimes, *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine*, with the preposition. We likewise find *Habitat Carthagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi*? Thus, *At ego aio hoc fieri in Græciâ, et Carthagini*. Plaut. Cas. Prol. 71. *Futre Sicyoni jamdiu Dionysia*, the feasts of Bacchus were some time ago celebrated at Sicyon. Id. Cist. 1, 3, 8, cf. Ps. 4, 2, 38. *Neglectum Anzuri præsidium*. Liv. 5, 8. *Convento Antonio Tiburi*, having met with Anthony at Tibur. Cic. Att. 16, 3. *Nulla Lacedæmoni tam est nobilis vidua, quæ non ad scenam eat mercède conducta*. Nep. Præf. *Tiburi genitus*. Suet. Cal. 8. add. Id. Claud. 34. Sometimes, though more rarely, names of towns in the first and second declension are found in the ablative; as, *Rex Tyro decedit*, for *Tyri*. Justin. 18, 4. *Eodem die, quæ in Italiâ pugnatum est, et Corintho, et Athenis, et Lacedæmone nunciata est victoria*. Id. 20, 3, f. Add. Vitruv. 3, 2, 7. Præf. 8, 3.

2. The Place WHITHER.

LI. (305) When the place *whither*, or *to which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

*Venit Romam,
Profectus est Athēnas,*

He came to Rome.
He went to Athens.

Obs. 1. (306) We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthaginī nuncios mittam.* Horat.

Obs. 2. (307) Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nunciātum*, The report was carried to Rome. Liv. *Hæc nunciant domum Albani.* Id. *Messānam littēras dedit.* Cic.

3. The Place WHENCE.

LII. (308) When the place *whence*, or *from which*, or the place *by* or *through which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

*Discessit Corintho,
Laodicēā iter faciēbat,*

He departed from Corinth.
He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit.* Nep.

Domus and *Rus*.

LIII. (309) *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

*Manet domi,
Domi reverſitur,
Domo arceſſitus ſum,
Vivit rure, or more frequently ruri,
Rediit rure,
Abiit rus,*

He stays at home.
He returns home.
I am called from home.
He lives in the country.
He is returned from the country.
He is gone to the country.

Obs. 1. (310) *Humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

Domi et militiæ, or *belli*, At home and abroad. *Jacet humi*, He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. (311) When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, *In domo paternā*, not *domi paternæ*: So *Ad domum vaternam*: *Ex domo paternā*. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, regius*, and *aliēnus*; as, *Domi meæ vixit.* Cic. Tusc. 5, 39, 4. *Apud eum sic fui, tanquam domi meæ.* Cic. Fam. 13, 69. *Nonne mavis sine pericūlo domi tuæ esse, quā cum pericūlo aliēnæ* ib. 4, 7. *Me domo meā expulistis.* Cn. Pompeium domum suam compulſistis. Cis. Pis. 7. *Alius, alium domos suas invitant.* Sall. Jug. 66. add. Liv. 2, 7. *Aurum atque argentum, et alia, quæ prima ducuntur, domum regiam comportant.* Sall. Jug. 76.—*RUS* and *rure* in the singular, joined with an adj. are found without a preposition; as, *appropinquante vespere, equum conscendit, et rus urbānum contendit*, sc. ad. Justin. 31, 2; *quartumque apud lapidem suburbāno rure substitērat.* Tac. An. 15, 60.—but never *rura* in the plural; as, *ubi dilapsi domos, et in rura vestra erūtis.* Liv. 39, 16.

Obs. 3. (312) When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo, or in domo Cæsaris.*

LIV. (313) To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added ; as,

When the question is made by,

Ubi ? *Natus in Italiâ, in Latio, in urbe, &c.*

Quo ? *Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in or ad urbem, &c.*

Unde ? *Rediit ex Italiâ, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.*

Qua ? *Transit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem, &c.*

Obs. 1. (314) A preposition is often added to names of towns ; as, *In Româ, for Romæ ; ad Romam, ex Româ, &c.*

(315) *Peto* always governs the accusative as an active verb, without a preposition ; as, *Petivit Egyptum, He went to Egypt.*

Obs. 2. (316) Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition, like names of towns ; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est. Cæs. Cretæ jussit considere Apollon. Virg. Non Lybiæ, for in Lybiâ, non antè Tyro, for Tyri. Id. Æn. iv. 36. Venit Sardiniam. Cic. Romæ, Numidique facinoræ ejus memorat, for et in Numidiâ. Sall.*

4. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

LV. (317) Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative ; as,

Murus est decem pedes altus,

*Urbs distat triginta millia, or triginta mil-
libus passuum,*

Iter, or itinere unius diei,

The wall is ten feet high.

The city is thirty miles distant.

One day's journey.

Obs. 1. (318) The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension ; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus,* and *altus* : *Palet, porrigitur, eminet, &c.* The names of measure are, *pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, digitus,* an inch ; *palmus,* a span, 'an hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance ; as, *Eo, curro, absum, disto, &c.* The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. (319) When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number ; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti,* and sometimes *denum pedum,* for *denorum,* in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. (320) When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative ; or the accusative with the preposition *ad* ; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe consedit, or ad sex millia passuum. Cæs. Ad quintum milliarium, or milliare, consedit. Cic. Ad quintum lapidem. Nep.*

Obs. 4. (321) The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative ; as,

Hoc lignum excēdit illud digllo. Toto vertice supra est, Virg. Britannia longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliaribus sup̄rat.

5. TIME.

LVI. (322) Time *when* is put in the ablative ;
as,

Venit horā tertiā,

He came at three o'clock.

¶ (323) Time *how long* is put in the accusative or ablative, but
often in the accusative ; as,

*Mansit paucos dies,
Sex mensibus absuit,*

He staid a few days.
He was away six months.

Obs. 1. (324) When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative ; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obs. 2. (325) All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition ; as, *In præsentiā*, or in *præsenti*, scil. *tempore* ; in or *ad præsens* ; *Per decem annos* ; *Sursum de nocte* ; *ad horam destinālam* ; *Intra annum* ; *Per idem tempus*, *ad Kalendas soluturus ait*. Suet. The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc, illud, id, isthuc, etatis, temporis, horæ*, &c. for *hac etate, hoc tempore, &c.* And *ante* or some other word ; as, *Annos natus unum & viginti*, sc. *ante*. *Siculi quotannis tributa conferrunt*, sc. *tot annis, quot or quotquot sunt*. Cic. *Prope diem*, sc. *ad*, soon ; *Oppidum paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum est, expugnatum*, sc. *post eos dies*. Cæs. *Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accēpi tuas literas*, for *die tertio ante*. Cic. *Qui dies futurus esset in ante diem octāvum Kalendas Novembris*. Id. *Exante diem quintum Kal. Octob.* Liv. *Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt*, sc. *quàm per*. Cic. We find *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque*, sc. *Atticus* ; for *septemdecim annos natus*, seventeen years old. Nep.

Obs. 3. (326) The adverb *ABHINC*, which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition ; as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium*, It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante* ; as, *Paucos post annos* ; but here *ea* or *id* may be understood.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects and one attribute, or several attributes and one subject, or both several subjects and several

attributes; that is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment, or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must, therefore, be in every sentence or period, as many propositions as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

Happy is the man who loveth religion, and practiseth virtue.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. (327) The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

Singular.		Plural.
<i>Vir qui,</i>	The man who.	<i>Viri qui.</i>
<i>Femina quæ,</i>	The woman who.	<i>Feminae quæ.</i>
<i>Negotium quod,</i>	The thing which.	<i>Negotia quæ.</i>
<i>Ego qui scribo,</i>	I who write.	<i>Nos qui scribimus.</i>
<i>Tu qui scribis,</i>	Thou who writest.	<i>Vos qui scribitis.</i>
<i>Vir qui scribit,</i>	The man who writes.	<i>Viri qui scribunt.</i>
<i>Mulier quæ scribit,</i>	The woman who writes.	<i>Mulières quæ scribunt.</i>
<i>Animal quod currit,</i>	The animal which runs.	<i>Animalia quæ currunt.</i>
<i>Vir quem vidi,</i>	The man whom I saw.	<i>Viri quos vidi.</i>
<i>Mulier quam vidi,</i>	The woman whom I saw.	<i>Mulières quas vidi.</i>
<i>Animal quod vidi,</i>	The animal which I saw.	<i>Animalia quæ vidi.</i>
<i>Vir cui paret,</i>	The man whom he obeys.	<i>Viri quibus paret.</i>
<i>Vir cui est similis,</i>	The man to whom he is like.	<i>Viri quibus est similis.</i>
<i>Vir a quo,</i>	The man by whom.	<i>Viri a quibus.</i>
<i>Mulier ad quam,</i>	The woman to whom.	<i>Mulières ad quas.</i>
<i>Vir cujus opus est,</i>	The man whose work it is.	<i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>
<i>Vir quem misereor,</i>	} The man whom I pity.	
<i>cujus misereor, or miseresco,</i>		
<i>cujus me miseret,</i>		
<i>cujus or cuja interest, &c.</i>		whose interest it is, &c.

(328) If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

(329) But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, usually govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

Obs. 1. (330) The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective

placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as,

Vir qui (vir) legit; vir quem (virum) amo: Sometimes the latter; as, *Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat.* Cic. *Eunūchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbus dedit.* Ter. sc. *Eunūchus.* Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnino duo itinēra, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.* Cæs. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quos genus hoc minime iuvat, for sunt homines, quos homines, &c.* Hor.

Obs. 2. (331) When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

Vultus quem dixere chaos. Ovid. *Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur.* Sall. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem.* Cic. *Cogito id quod res est.* Ter. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the nearer gender; as, *Pompeius se afflixit, quod mihi est summo doloꝛi,* scil. *Pompeium se affligere.* Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word implied; as, *Scelus qui, for scelustus.* Ter. *Abundantia eārum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant,* scil. *neotia.* Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliquā parte amicitiae puto, facit ut te moneam,* scil. *negotium.* Ter. *In omni Africā, qui agēbant; for in omnibus Afria.* Sallust. Jug. 89. *Non diffidentia futuri, quæ imperavisset for quod.* lb. 100.

Obs. 3. (332) When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio, scarcely facit.* In English it sometimes agrees with either; as, *I am the man, who make, or maketh.* But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence; thus it is proper to say, "I am the man who takes care of your interest," but if I add, "at the expense of my own," it would be improper. It ought either to be, "his own," or "who take." In like manner, we may say, "I thank you who gave, who did love," &c. But it is improper to say, "I thank thee, who gave, who did love;" it should be "who gavest, who didst love." In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you, thy* or *your*, proniscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obs. 4. (333) The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as,

Omnēs laudāre fortūnas meas, qui habērem gnatum tali ingenio præditum. Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur;* i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem, &c.* Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure hominis necandi, quæ nulla sunt;* scil. *tempōra.* Cic.

Obs. 5. (334) The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit: Tyrii tenuēre colōni,* scil. *quam or eam.* Virg. Or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case; as, *Bocchus*

cum pedibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuissent, Romanos invadunt: for quique in priore pugna non adfuissent. Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed; as, *The letter I wrote, for the letter which I wrote; The man I love, to wit, whom.* But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. (335) The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum consulisti, for quæ uconsulisti agere, or quorum aliquid agere consulisti.* Cic. *Restitue in quem me accepisti locum, for in locum, in quo.* Ter. And. iv. 1. 58. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. (336) The adjective pronouns, *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, and idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui*; as, *Libro ejus*, His or her book; *—Vita eorum*, Their life, when applied to men; *Vita earum*, Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. (337) The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantus, quotus, &c.* are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sororum.* Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them; as, *Tanta est multitudo, quantam urbs capere potest*: and are often applied to different substantives; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas.* Cic.

Obs. 9. (338) The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons; as, *Our father, which art in heaven*; and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which*. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which*, or *the thing which*; as, *That is what he wanted*; that is, *the thing which he wanted*.

Obs. 10. (339) The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita esset*. When that was so; not, *which when it was so*, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse?* Who do they say that I am? not *whom*. *Quem dicunt adventare*, Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 11. (340) As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legēris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read; *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear, what you (*actually or in fact*) have read.

(341) To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

Qui vocare? Geta, sc. vocor. Quid queris? Librum, sc. quaero. Quotā horā venisti? Sextā. Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber? Meus, not mei. Quanti emptus est? Decem assibus. Damnatusne es furti? Imo alio crimine.* Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns;

as, *Quid agitur? Statur, sc., a me, a nobis. Quis fecit? Nescio: Aium Patrum fecisse. Quomodo vales? Bene, malè. Scripsistine? Scripsi. ita, etiam, immo, &c. An vidisti? Non vidi, non, minime, &c. Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi? Factum. Et cæ est indutus? Factum.* Ter. Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.

* THE RELATIVE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

To ascertain when the Relative pronoun should be joined to the Indicative and when to the Subjunctive mode, is one of the greatest difficulties which the Latin language presents to the student of the classics. The following Rules will be found, it is believed, to embrace every thing important upon the subject.

* Rule 1. (342) When the Relative clause expresses no sentiment of the writer's, but refers that sentiment, directly or indirectly, to the persons of whom he is speaking, the Relative must be joined with the Subjunctive mode. Thus: *Quoniam gemini essent, nec ætatis verecundia discrimen facere posset, ut Dii quorum tutelæ ea loca essent, auguriis legerent, qui nomen novæ urbi daret, Liv. 1. 6.* The relative clause expresses a sentiment of the founders of the city, and is much the same as if the historian had said, 'That the gods, under whose protection *they conceived*, those places were,' &c. The following passage will still further illustrate this distinction. "Thus born and thus elected king, he has favoured the meanest sort of mankind, whence he himself is sprung; and the burdens, which were formerly common, he has laid on the principal citizens." These, supposed to be the very words of Tarquin, addressed to the Senators, would be thus rendered, "*Ita natus, ita creatus rex, fautor infimi generis hominum, ex quo EST ipse, omnia onera, quæ communia quondam FUERUNT, in primores civitatis inclinavit.*" But as the historian (Liv. 1. 47.) has not introduced Tarquin as addressing the senate in his own words, but has merely detailed the sentiments which he expressed, the passage reads thus,—the verbs being in the subjunctive mode—*Ita natum, ita creatum regem, fautorem infimi generis hominum, ex quo ipse SIT, onera, quæ communia quondam FUERINT, inclinasse in primores civitatis,* He said, "that being thus born," &c.

* Rule 2. (343) The Relative pronoun is joined to the Subjunctive mode, when the relative clause expresses *the reason*, or *cause* of the action, state, or event, and may generally be rendered in English by the preposition *In*, and the imperfect participle. Thus, 'Hannibal did wrong in wintering at Capua,' that is, 'because he wintered,' *Male fecit, Hannibal, qui Capuæ HIEMARIT.* If we should say, *Male fecit, qui hiemavit,* we impute error to the person who wintered, but do not express the error as consisting in his wintering.

* Rule 3. (344) When the Relative pronoun follows an interrogative clause, in which the interrogative is equivalent to an affirmation or negation, the relative is joined with the Subjunctive mode. Thus, *Quis*

est enim, cui non perspicua sint illa? Cic. 'Who is there to whom these things are not clear? So also after a negation which expresses an affirmation; as, *nemo est, qui haud intelligat*, 'there is no man who does not understand.' But when a sentence implies a question put for information, the Relative takes the Indicative mode; as, *Quis est qui Æsculapium salutat*, Plaut. *Quis est qui salutet* would signify 'who is there that salutes,' implying 'nobody salutes.' Again, if we say, *Nemo est qui ita existimat*, it strictly means, 'he who thinks so is nobody,' that is, 'a person of no consequence;' here *nemo est* is the predicate, and the relative clause, *qui ita existimat*, the subject. If we say, *nemo est qui ita existimet*, it means, 'there is no one who thinks so,' where *nemo* is the subject, and the other clause the predicate.

* Rule 4. (345) The Relative is joined to the Subjunctive mode, when, in order to impart greater emphasis, a periphrasis with the verb *Sum* is employed instead of simply the nominative with the principal verb. Thus, instead of saying, *Nonnulli dicunt*, we say, *Sunt qui dicant*, Cic. 'there are persons who say.' This phraseology is employed to excite the particular attention of the reader, as the word *there* is frequently employed in English. *Fuerint qui censerent*, 'there have been persons who thought.'

* Rule 5. (346) When *Is qui*, *Ille qui*, *Hic qui*, are used for 'such,' 'that,' or in other words, when *Qui* is used for *Ut ego*, *Ut tu*, *Ut ille*, it is joined with the Subjunctive mode. *Atque illæ dissentiones erant hujus modi, Quirites, quæ . . . PERTINERENT*. Cic. 'The dissensions were such that,' or 'of that kind that,' &c.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. (347) The conjunctions, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple similar cases and modes; as,

*Honora patrem et matrem,
Nec legil nec scribit,*

Honour father and mother.
He neither reads nor writes.

Obs. 1. (348) To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise, *quàm*, *nisi*, *præterquam*, *an*; and also adverbs of likeness; as, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, *ut*, &c. as,

Nullum præmium a vobis postulo, præterquam hujus dii memoriam. Cic. *Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur*. Id.

Obs. 2. (349) These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence, if the

construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together ; as,

Intérest mea et reipublicæ ; Constitit asse et pluris ; Sive es Romæ, sive in Epîro ; Decius cum se devoveret, et in mediam aciem irruëbat. Cic. *Vir magni ingenii summæque industriâ ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis.* Sall. *Tecum habita, et nôris, quàm sit tibi curta supellex.* Pers.

Obs. 3. (350) When *et, aut, vel, sive, or nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise* ; *aut* or *vel*, by *either* ; the first *sive*, by *whether* ; and the first *nec*, by *neither* ; as,

Et legit, et scribit ; so, *tum legit, tum scribit ;* or *cum legit, tum scribit*, He both reads and writes ; *Sive legit, sive scribit*, Whether he reads or writes ; *Jacres quâ vera, quâ falsa ;* *Increpâre quâ consûles ipsos, quâ exercitum*, To upbraid both the consuls and the army. Liv.

LIX. (351) Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (*as, et, ac, atque, &c.*) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural ; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti, Peter and John, who are learned.

Obs. 1. (352) If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third ; as, *Si tu et Tullia valëtis, ego et Cicëro valëmus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well. Cic. In English, the person speaking usually puts himself last ; thus, *You and I read ; Cicero and I are well* ; but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first ; thus, *Ego et tu legimus*.

Obs. 2. (353) If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter ; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui* ; but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied ; as, *Athenârûm et Cratippi, ad quos, &c. Propter summam doctôris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c.* Cic. Where *Athênæ* and *urbs* are put for the learned men of Athens. So in substantives ; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legâti missi*, i. e. the king and queen. Liv.

Obs. 3. (354) If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender ; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt.* Sall.

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life ; because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantives to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now, the *Genus* or class, which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substantives or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this, the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obs. 4. (355) The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest ; this is by the figure called *Zeugma*.

Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit. Cic. *Sociis et rege recepto.* Virg. *Et ego in culpâ sum, et tu,* Both I am in the fault, and you ; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpâ,* Both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carmina, desunt ;* or *nihil hic deest nisi carmina.* *Omnia, quibus turbâri solita erat civitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum ; Duo millia et quadringenti cæsi.* Liv. This construction is most usual when the different substantives resemble one another in sense ; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est.* Understanding, reason, and prudence, is in old men. *Quibus ipse meique ante Larem proprium vescor, for vescimur.* Horat.

Obs. 5. (356) The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et* ; as,

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt. Virg. The conjunction is frequently understood ; as, *dum ætas, metus, magister prohibebant.* Ter. *Frons, oculi, vultus sæpe mentiuntur.* Cic.

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

LX. (357) The conjunctions *ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam,* and *dummodo,* are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode ; as,

Lego ut discam,
Utinam sapires,

I read that I may learn.
I wish you were wise.

Obs. 1. (358) All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives, as, *Quantus, qualis, quotus, quotuplex, uter ;* Pronouns, as, *quis & cujus ;* Adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdiudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quomobrem, dum, utrum, quomodo, quâ, ut, quâ, quantopere ;* or Conjunctions, as, *ne, an, anne, annon ;* Thus, *Quis est ?* Who is it ? *Nescio quis sit,* I do not know who it is. *An venturus est ?* *Nescio, dubito, an venturus sit.* *Vides ut alta stet nive candidum Soracte ?* Hor. But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative ; as, *Scio quid ego.* Plaut. *Haud scio, an amat.* Ter. *Vide avaritia quid facit.* Id. *Vides quàm turpe est.* Cic.

† (359) In like manner the relative *QUI* in a continued discourse ; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit.* *Quis est, qui utilia fugiat ?* Cic. Or when joined with *QUIPPE* or *UTPOTE ;* *Neque Antonius procul aberrat, utpote qui sequeretur,*

acc. Sall. But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the indicative. So, *est qui, sunt qui, est quando* or *ubi*, &c. are joined with the indicative or subjunctive.

NOTE. *Haud scio an recte distrim* is the same with *dico, affirmo*. Cic.

Obs. 2. (360) When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive; but when a more absolute or determinate sense is expressed, with the indicative mode; as, *If he is to do it; Although he was rich*, &c.

Obs. 3. (361) *ETSI, TAMETSI* and *TAMENETSI, QUANQUAM*, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative; but elsewhere they also take the subjunctive; *ETIAMSI* and *QUAMVIS* commonly have the subjunctive, and *UT*, although, always has it; as, *Ut quæras, non reperies*. Cic. *QUONIAM, QUANDO, QUANDOQUIDEM*, are usually construed with the indicative: *SI, SIN, NE, NISI, SIQUIDEM, QUOD*, and *QUIA*, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. *Dum*, for *dummodo*, provided, has always the subjunctive; as, *Odèrint dum metuant*. Cic. And *QUIPPE*, for *nam*, always the indicative; as, *Quippe velor fatis*.

Obs. 4. (362) Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former: thus, when *etsi, tametsi, or quamvis*, although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet or nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam,—quam; Adeo* or *ita,—ut*: In English, *As,—as, or so*; as, *Etsi sit liberalis tamen non est profusus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *prius* or *antè,—quàm*. In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 5. (363) The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo, nolo, malo, rogo, precor, censeo, suadeo, licet, oportet, necesse est*, and the like; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine, fac, or facito*; as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem; Nolo mentiâre; Fac cogites*. Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave*; as, *Cave facias*. Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood; thus, *Dis octâvo, quam creâtus erat*. Liv. 4, 47, scil. *post*. And so in English, *See you do it; I beg you would come to me*, scil. *that*.

Obs. 6. (364) *Ut* and *quod* are thus distinguished: *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future; *quod* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done; as, *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn; *Gaudeo quod legi*, I am glad that or because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adeo, ita, sic, tam, talis, tantus, tot*, &c.

Obs. 7. (365) After the verbs *timeo, vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense; as,

Timeo ne faciat, I fear he will do it; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not do it. *Id paves ne ducas tu illam, tu autem ut ducas*. Ter. *Ut sis vitâlis, metuo*. Hor.

Timeo ut frater vivat, will not live;—*ne frater moriatur*, will die. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

LXI. (366) The comparative degree governs the ablative, (when *Quam* is omitted); as,

Dulcior melle, sweeter than honey. *Præstantior auro*, better than gold.

Obs. 1. (367) The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative; as, *Magis dilecta luce*. Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior præ cæteris*. We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as, *immanior ante omnes*. Virg.

Obs. 2. (368) The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quàm*, and then, instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

Dulcior quàm mel, scil. *est*. *Amo te magis quàm illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quàm amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quàm ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quàm ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quàm illo*, sc. *ab*.

Obs. 3. (369) The conjunction *quàm* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus*; as,

Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti, scil. *quàm*. Cæs. *Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi*, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows. Ter. *Castra ab urbe haud plus quinque millia passuum locant*, sc. *quàm*. Liv.

(370) *Quàm* is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as,

Triumphus clarior quàm gratior. Liv. Or the prep. *pro* is added; as, *Prælium atrocius, quàm pro numero pugnantium editur*. Liv.

(371) The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opiniõne*, *spe*, *æquo*, *justo*, *dicto*; as,

Credibili opiniõne major. Cic. *Credibili fortior*. Ovid. Fast. iii. 618. *Gravius æquo*. Sall. *Dicto citius*. Virg. *Majõra credibili tulimus*. Liv. They are often understood; as, *Liberius vivebat*, sc. *justo*, too freely. Nepos. 2, 1.

(372) *Nihil* is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli*; as,

Nihil vidi quidquam lætius, for *neminem*. Ter. *Crasso nihil perfectius*. Cic. *Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum*. So, *quid nobis laboriosius*, for *quis*, &c. Cic. We say, *inferior patre nullà re*, or *quàm pater*. The comparative is sometimes repeated, or joined with an adverb; as, *Magis magisque, plus plusque, minus minusque, carior cariorque*; *Quotidie plus, indies magis, semper candidior candidiorque*, &c.:

Obs. 4. (373) The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quàm ego*, He is as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit*. *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc*. Ter.

Obs. 5. (374) The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (or *more shortly*, the difference of measure is put in the ablative;) as,

Est decem digitis altior quàm frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, or by ten inches. *Altero tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo major*, He is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. *Sesquipède minor*, a foot and a half less; *Altero tanto, aut sesquimāior*, as big again, or a half bigger. Cic. *Ter tanto peior est*; *Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quàm prius*. Plaut. *Quinques tanto amplius, quàm quantum licitum sit, civitatibus imperāvī*, five times more. Cic. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio, &c.* thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*, The better, the happier. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit*. Ovid. Fast. ii. 766. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus*. Sall. *Multoquē id maritimum fuit*. Liv.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. (375) A Substantive and a Participle are put in the Ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

<i>Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebrae,</i>	{	<i>The sun rising, or while the sun riseth, darkness flies away.</i>
<i>Opère peracto, ludemus,</i>		<i>Our work being finished, or when our work is finished, we will play.</i>

So, *Dominante libidine, temperantia nullus est locus*; *Nihil amicitia præstabilis est, excepta virtute*; *Oppressâ libertatē patriæ, nihil est quod speremus amplius*; *Nobilium vilâ victique mutâto, mores mutâri civitatē puto*. Cic. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam iniuriâ, et dictatore arcem Romanam respectante, ac ab auguribus, simul aves ritè admittent, ex composito tolleretur signum*. Liv. *Bellicæ, depositis clypeo paulisper et hastâ, Mars ades*. Ovid. Fast. iii. 1.

Obs. 1. (376) This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place; the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milites, hostibus victis, redierunt*. The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sen-

tence with which it is joined ; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being conquered.* 2. *When or after the enemy is or was conquered.* 3. *By conquering the enemy.* 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.*

* (377) Though an independent substantive, joined to a participle, be generally put in the ablative in Latin, it is sometimes with peculiar elegance and precision, put under the government of the verb in the succeeding clause. Thus, 'Having taken Regulus prisoner they send him to Carthage.' *Regulum captum Carthaginem miserunt.* Here *Regulum* is governed by *miserunt*. There are not wanting examples, however, to justify another phraseology, namely, *Regulo capto, eum Carthaginem miserunt.* But the latter form of expression is much less precise, for it does not so clearly signify, that the person taken was the person sent ; as the pronoun *eum* might refer to some other person.

Obs. 2. (378) The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute ; as, *Cicero locutus hæc consedit*, never, *his locutis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs ; as, *Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt* ; or *Romani, libertate adepti, floruerunt*. But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore rarely find them used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. (379) The participle *existente* or *existentibus* is frequently understood ; as, *Cæsare duce*, scil. *existente*. *His consulibus*, scil. *existentibus*. *Invitâ Minervâ*, sc. *existente*, against the grain ; *Crassâ Minervâ*, without learning. Hor. *Magistrâ ac duce naturâ* ; *visis fratribus* ; *te hortatore* ; *Cæsare impulsore*, &c. Sometimes the substantive must be supplied ; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petissent*, i. e. *cum nondum compertum esset*. Liv. *Tum demum palam facto*, sc. *negotio*. Id. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cetera lætus*. Hor. *Parto quod avēbas*. Id. In such examples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive ; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell. Ovid.

Obs. 4. (380) We sometimes find a substantive plural joined with a participle singular ; as, *Nobis presente*. Plaut. *Absente nobis*. Ter. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb ; as, *me duce, ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*. Ovid. Amor. ii. 12. 12. *Lætos fecit se consule fastos*. Lucan. v. 384. *Populo spectante fieri credam, quicquid me conscio faciam*. Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. (381) The ablative called *absolute* is governed by some preposition understood ; as, *a, ab, cum, sub, or in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed ; as, *Cum diis juvantibus*. Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely ; as, *Perniciôsâ libidine paulisper usus, infirmitas naturæ accusatur*. Sall. Jug. 1.

Obs. 6. (382) The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum, dum*, or *quando Superbus regnābat*. *Opère peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum*, or *Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. (383) When a substantive is joined with a participle, in English, independent of the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A figure is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The Figures of Syntax may be reduced to four kinds, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, *Enallage*, and *Hyperbaton*.

1. ELLIPSIS.

* (384) *ELLIPSIS* is the omission of some word or words necessary to complete the regular Syntax. When the word to be supplied is not to be found in any part of the sentence, the *Ellipsis* is termed *strict*. It affects all the parts of speech; thus,

* (385) 1. The Noun; as, *Aiunt*, supply *homines*. 2. The Adjective; as, *Non est oneri ferendo*, supply *aptus*. 3. The Pronoun; as, *Studendum est*, supply *mihi*. 4. The Verb; as, *Quid multa*, supply *dicam*. 5. The Participle; as, *Saturno rege*, supply *ente* or *existente*. 6. The Adverb; as, *Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti*, *Cæs.* supply *quàm*. 7. The Interjection; as, *Me miserum*, supply *O* or *heu*. 8. The Conjunction; as will be seen under *Asyndeton*.

* (386) The *Ellipsis* is termed *lax* or *loose* when the word omitted may be supplied from some part of the sentence; as, *Virtus* (cogebat) *et honestas*, (cogebat) *et pudor cum consulibus esse cogebat*. *Cic.* Under *strict* *Ellipsis* are contained the figures, *Apposition*, *Synecdoche* and *Asyndeton*. Under *loose* *Ellipsis*, the figures *Zeugma*, *Syllipsis* and *Prolipsis*.

* (387) *APPOSITION* is, when, in putting two substantives together in the same case, *existens*, or the obsolete *ens*, or some other part of the verb *Sum* with a relative, is understood: as, *Urbs Roma*, i. e. *urbs existens* or *ens*, or *quæ est Roma*.

* (388) *SYNECDOCHE* is, when, instead of an Ablative of the part, or of the adjunct, an Accusative is used, the Greek *κατά*, *secundum*, or *quod attinet ad*, being understood: as, *Expleri* (quod attinet ad, or secundum) *mentem æquit*. *Virg.*

* (388) **ASYNDETON** is the omission of a conjunction: as, *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit*, Cic. scil. *et*.

* (390) **ZEUGMA** is, when an Adjective or Verb referring to different substantives, is expressed to the last only, with which it agrees, being understood to the rest: as, *Et genus, et virtus, nisi cum re, vilior algâ est*. Hor.

* (391) **SYLLEPSIS** is, when the adjective or verb, joined to different substantives, agrees with the more worthy. In *gender* the Masculine is the more worthy: as, *Ut templi tetigère gradus, procumbit uterque pronus, humi*, Ovid. i. e. *Deucalion et Pyrrha*. In *person* the First is the more worthy: as, *Sustulimus manus et ego et Balbus*, Cic.

* (392) **PROLEPSIS** is, when the parts, differing in number or in person from the whole, are placed after it, the verb or the adjective not being repeated; as, *Boni quoniam convenimus ambo, tu calamos inflare leves, ego dicere versus*, Virg. i. e. *tu convenisti bonus calamos inflare, ego conveni*, &c.

2. PLEONASM.

* (393) **PLEONASM** adds unnecessary words; as, *Video oculis*, 'I see with my eyes;' *Sic ore locuta est*, Virg. 'Thus she spoke with her mouth.' Under Pleonasm are comprehended, *Pareleon*, *Polysyndeton*, *Hendiadys*, and *Periphrasis*.

* (394) **PAELEON** is the addition of an unnecessary syllable or particle, to Pronouns, Verbs, and Adverbs, chiefly, perhaps, for the sake of emphasis: as, *egomet, agedum, fortassean*.

* (395) **POLYSYNDETON**, is a redundancy of conjunctions: as, *Und, Eurisque Notusque ruunt, creberque procellis*, Virg.

* (396) **HENDIADYS** expresses one thing as if it were two: as, *Pateris libamus et auro*, Virg. for *aureis pateris*.

* (397) **PERIPHRAISIS** is, when several words are used to express one thing: as, *Urbs Trojæ*, for *Troja*. *Teneri fætus ovium*, for *agni*.

* (398) *Quod si* often occurs at the beginning of a period for *Si*. In such cases, however, *quod* seems to refer to what precedes, to confirm the connexion and to promote perspicuity: it cannot, therefore be strictly redundant. It is an accusative with *propter* or *ad* or *quod attinet ad* understood, and may often be translated 'thence,' 'because.'

3. ENALLAGE.

* (399) **ENALLAGE**, in a general sense, is the change of words, or of their accidents, one for another. There are various kinds of it:

viz. *Antimeria*, *Enallage* strictly so called, *Heterosis*, and *Antiptosis*. To *Enallage* may likewise be referred *Synësis*, *Anacoluthon*, *Hellenismus*, and *Archaismus*.

* (400) *ANTIMERIA* puts one part of speech for another: as, the noun for the pronoun; *Si quid in Flacco viri est*, Hor. for *in me*, as Horace is speaking of himself.

* (401) *ENALLAGE*, strictly so named, is when one word is substituted for another, the part of speech not being changed; as Noun for Noun, Verb for Verb, &c.: thus, the Noun substantive for the Noun adjective; *Exercitus victor*, for *victoriosus*.

* (402) *HETEROSIS* uses one Accident, especially of a noun, pronoun, or verb, for another: as, *nos*, *nobis*, *noster*, for *ego*, *mihi*, *meus*.

* (403) *ANTIPTOSIS* uses one case for another: as the Nominative for the Accusative: *Uxor invicti Jovis esse nescis*, Hor. for *te esse uxorem*.

* (404) *SYNESIS* is when the construction refers to the sense, rather than to the precise nature of a word: as, *Clamor populi, mirantium quid rei est*, Liv. for *mirantis*.

* (405) *ANACOLUTHON* is when the Consequents do not agree with the Antecedents: as, *Nan nos omnes lucro est*, Ter. in which the author began as if he intended to say *lucro habemus*, and ended as if he had said *nobis omnibus*. As the sentence is, there is no verb to which *nos omnes* is a nominative.

* (406) *HELLENISMUS*, or *GRÆCISMUS*, is in imitation of Greek construction; thus, *abstine irarum*. Hor. for *ab ira*.

* (407) *ARCHAISM* is when an obsolete construction is used. Many examples of this figure will be found in the first book of Livy: e. g. the formulas of the heralds in declaring war.

4. HYPERBATON.

(408) *HYPERBATON* is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words, which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are *Anastrôphe*, *Hystêron protêron*, *Hypalläge*, *Synchësis*, *Tmesis*, and *Parenthësis*.

1. (409) *ANASTROPHE* is an inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first; as, *Italiam contra; His accensa super; Spemque metumque inter dubii*; for *contra Italiam, super his, inter spem, &c.* Virg. *Terram sol facit are, for are-facit.* Lucret.

2. (410) **HYSTERON PROTERON** is the placing in the former part of the sentence that which, according to the sense, should be in the latter; as, *Valet atque vivit*, for *vivit atque valet*. Ter.

3. (411) **HYPALLAGE** is an exchanging of cases; as, *Dare classi-bus austros*, for *dare classes austris*. Virg.

4. (412) **SYNCHESIS** is a confused and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras*; for *Quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras*. Virg. This occurs particularly in violent passion; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castum-que cruorem*. Ovid. Fast. ii. 841.

5. (413) **TMSIS** is the division of a compound word, and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts; as, *Septem subjecta triōni gens*, for *Septentriōni*. Virg. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere*, for *quæcunque*. Ter.

6. (414) **PARENTHESIS** is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction; as, *Tityre, dum redeo, (brevis est via,) pasce capellas*. Virg.

III. (415) ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words, which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each instance the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes, indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd*. Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you*. But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given is to imitate the **CLASSICS**.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorial*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another, according to the natural order of Syntax.

Artificial or *Oratorical* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order, therefore, to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis*, or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; *next* the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence; supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis preceptisque lætabere. Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences; I. *igitur, mi, (fili) Cicero, (tu) vale*: 2. *et (tu) persuade tibi (ipse) te esse quidem (filium) carissimum mihi*: 3. *sed (tu) persuade tibi ipsi te) fore (filium) cariorem (mihi in) multo (negotio)*: 4. *si (tu) lætabere talibus monumentis*: 5. *et (si tu lætabere talibus) preceptis*.

1. Fare (you) well then my (son) Cicero: 2. and assure (you) yourself that you are indeed (a son) very dear to me: 3. but (assure you yourself that you) shall be (a son) much dearer (to me): 4. if you shall take delight in such writings: 5. and (if you shall take delight in such) instructions.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis*, as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence, *Vale igitur*, &c. thus,

Vale, scil. *tu*; Fare (thou) well: second person singular of the imperative mode, active voice, from the neuter verb, *valeo, valere, valui, valiturus*, to be in health, of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the third rule of syntax.

igitur, then, therefore; a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

Mi, voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus, -a, -um*, my; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicero*, by Rule 2. *Cicero*, voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicero, -onis*, a proper noun of the third declension.

Et, and; a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuāde* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 59. We turn *que* into *et*, because *que* never stands by itself.

Persuāde, scil. *tu*, persuade thou; second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persua-deo*, -*dēre*, -*si*, -*sum*, to persuade; compounded of the preposition *per*, and *suadeo*, -*si*, -*sus*, to advise; used impersonally in the passive; thus, *Persuādēter mihi*, I am persuaded; seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say, however, in the third person, *Hoc persuādētur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

Tibi, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou; governed by *persuāde*, according to Rule 17. *Te*, accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 4.

Esse, present of infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, to be.

Quidem, indeed; an adverb, joined with *carissimum* or *esse*.

Carissimum, accusative sing. masc. from *carrissimus*, -*a*, -*um*, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus*, -*a*, -*um*, dear; Comparative degree, *carior*, *carius*, dearer, more dear; agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 2. and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

Mihi, to me; dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I; governed by *carissimum*, by Rule 12.

Sed, but; an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

Fore, the same with *esse futurum*, to be, or to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *forem*, -*res*, -*ret*, &c. governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, *te fore*, Rule 4. or thus, *esse sed fore*. See Rule 59.

Multo, scil. *negotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus*, -*a*, -*um*, much, put in the ablative, according to Observation 5. Rule 61. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

Cariorem, accus. sing. masc. from *carior*, -*us*, the comparative of *carus*, as before: agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 2. or Rule 5.

Si, if; a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mode, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 60. Obs. 2.

Lætabere, thou shalt rejoice; second person singular of the future of the indicative, from the deponent verb *lætor*, *lætatus*, *lætari*, to rejoice. Future, *læt-abor*, -*aberis* or *abere*, -*abitur*, &c.

Talibus, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis*, *tale*, such; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum*, -*ti*, neut. a monument or writing; of the second declension; derived from *monco*, -*ere*, -*ui*, -*itum*, to admonish; here put in the ablative according to Rule 49. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

Præceptis, a substantive noun in the ablative plural, from the nominative *præceptum*, -*ti*, neut. a precept, an instruction; derived from *præcipio*, -*cipere*, -*cēpi*, -*ceptum*, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *cipio*, *cipere*, *cēpi*, *captum*, to take. The *æ* of the simple is changed into *i* short; thus, *præcipio*, *præcipis*, &c.

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English, and, in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflection of nouns and verbs in the form of questions, such as these. of Cicero? *Cicerōnis*. With Cicero? *Cicerōne*. A dear son? *Carus filius*. Of a dear son? *Cari filii*. O my dear son? *Mi or meus care fili*. Of dearer sons? *Cariōrum filiōrum*, &c.

Of thee? or of you? *Tui*. With thee or you? *Te*. Of you? *Vestrām or vestri*. With you? *Vobis*.

They shall persuade? *Persuadēbunt*. I can persuade? *Persuadeam*, or much more frequently *possum persuadere*. They are persuaded? *Persuadentur* or *persuadum est illis*; according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasurus*. He will be persuaded? *Persuadebitur*, or *persuasum erit illi*. He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuaderi illi*. I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuaderi illi*. That he will be persuaded. *Ei persuasum iri*.

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

IV. (416) DIFFERENT KINDS OF STYLE.

The kinds of Style (*genera dicendi*) are commonly reckoned three; the low, (*humile, submissum, tenue*;) the middle, (*medium, temperatum, ornatum, floridum*;) and the sublime, (*sublime, grande*.)

But besides these, there are various other characters of style; as, the *diffuse* and *concise*; the *feeble* and *nervous*; the *simple* and *affected*, &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects, and to different kinds of composition; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular Assemblies; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner*; as the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, &c.

But what deserves particular attention is, the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style (*virtus orationis*) is perspicuity; or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new-coined words, and to errors in Syntax: 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions: 3. *Precision*, in opposition to superfluity of words, or a *loose style*.

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity*: 2. *Unity* and *Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected*, *intricate* and *feeble* sentence: 3. *Harmony*, or a musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia orationis*) are distinguished by various names:

1. (417) A **BARBARISM** is the using of a foreign or strange word: as, *croftus*, for *agellus*; *rigorōsus*, for *rigidus* or *sevērus*; *alterāre*, for *mutāre*, &c. Or, a transgression of the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody; as, *charus*, for *carus*; *stavi*, for *steti*; *tibicen*, for *tibicen*.

2. (418) A **SOLECISM** is a transgression of the rules of Syntax; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri*: *We was walking*, for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. (419) An **IDIOTISM** is the using of a manner of expression peculiar to one language in another; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribere*, for *ego sum scripturus*; It is I, *Est ego* for *Ego sum*: Or a *Latinism* in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me, for *than I*; *Quem dicunt me esse?* Whom do they say that I am? for *who*, &c.

4. (420) **TAUTOLOGY** is a useless repetition of the same words, or of the same sense in different words.

5. (421) **BOMBAST** is the using of high sounding words without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. (422) **AMPHIBOLÖGY** is when, by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses: as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æactide, Romanos vincere posse*. But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

V. FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figuræ* or *schemata*) are of two kinds: figures of words (*figuræ verborum*), and figures of thought (*figuræ sententiarum*). The former are properly called *Tropes*; and if the word be changed, the figure is lost.

1. TROPES, OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

(423) A *Trope* (*conversio*) is an elegant turning of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metaphor*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdöche*, and *Irony*.

1. (424) **METAPHOR** (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance; as, a *hard* heart: a *soft* temper: he *bridles* his anger: a *joyful* crop: *ridet* ager, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another on account of the close resemblance between them; as when, instead of *youth*, we say, *the morning or spring-time of life*; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an **ALLEGORY**. An example of this we have in Horace, book I. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

An **ALLEGORY** is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of *Æsop*. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many *Proverbs* (*Proverbia* or *Adagia*;) thus, *In sylva ligna ferre*. Horat.

Metaphors are improper when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, the figure is called *Catachrêsis* (*abusio*;) as, a leaf of *paper*, of *gold*, &c.; *the empire* flourished; *parricida*, for any murderer. *Vir gregis ipse caper*. Virg. *Altum ædificant caput*. Juv. *Hunc vobis deridendum propino*, for *trado*. Ter. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*. Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is said to be done by *Syllepsis*, (*comprehensio*;) as, *Galathea thymo mihi dulcior Hybla*. Virg. *Ego Sardois videar tibi amarior herbis*. Id.

2. (425) **METONYMY** (*mutatio nominis*) is the putting off one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes: but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars:—

1. When the cause is put for the effect: or the author for his works: as *Bom labôres*, for *corn*; *Mars*, for *war*; *Ceres*, for *grain* or *bread*; *Bacchus*, for *wine*. Virg. *Cicero*, *Virgil* and *Horace*, for their *works*.

2. When the effect is put for the cause: as, *Pallida mors*, *pale death*, because it makes *pale*: *atra cura*, &c.

3. The container for what is contained, and sometimes the con-

trary : as, *Hausit patëram*, for *vinum*. Virg. *He loves his bottle, for his drink.*

4. The sign for the thing signified : as, *The crown*, for *royal authority* ; *palma* or *laurus*, for *victory* ; *Cedant arma togæ*, that is, as Cicero himself explains it, *bellum concédât paci*.

5. An abstract for the concrete : as, *Scelus*, for *scelestus*. Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax*. Cic. *Vires*, for *strong men*. Hor.

6. The parts of the body for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them : thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address* ; as, *habet cor* ; *vir cordatus*, a man of sense. Plaut. But with us the *heart* is put for courage or affection, and the *head* for wisdom : thus, *a stout heart*, *a warm heart*.

When we put what follows to express what goes before, or the contrary, this form of expression is called *Metalepsis*, (*transmutatio*;) thus, *desiderâri*, to be desired or regretted, for *to be dead, lost, or absent* : So, *Fuimus Troes & ingens gloria Dardaniæ*, i. e. are no more. Virg. *Æn.* ii. 325.

3. (426) *SYNECOCHE* (*comprehensio* or *conceptio*) is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense : as,

1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part, and the contrary : thus, *Mortâles*, for *homînes* ; *summa arbor*, for *summa pars arbôris* ; *tectum*, the roof, for the whole house. Virg.

2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary : thus, *Hostis, miles, pedes, eques*, for *hostes, &c.*

3. When the materials are put for the things made of them : as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money ; *æra*, for vases of brass, trumpets, arms, &c. ; *ferrum*, for a sword.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, the figure is called *Antonomasia* (*pronominatio*;) as the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle* ; the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero* ; the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil* ; the *Wise man*, for *Solomon*.

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrâsis* ; as, *Pelôpis parens*, for *Tantâlus* ; *Anÿti reus*, for *Socrâtes* ; *Trojâni belli scriptor*, for *Homêrus* ; *Chirônâis alumnus*, for *Achilles* ; *Potor Rhodâni*, for *Gallus*. Hor. sometimes with the noun added ; as, *Fatâlis et incestus judex, famôsus hospes*, for *Paris*. Hor.

4. (427) *IRONY* is when one means the contrary of what is said : as, when we say of a bad poet, *He is a Virgil* ; or of a profligate person, *Tertius e cælo cecidit Cato*.

When any thing is said by way of bitter raillery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a **SARCASM**; as, *Satia te sanguine, Cyre. Justin. Hesperiam metire jaceas. Virg.*

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called **LITOTES**: as, *He is no fool, for he is a man of sense; Non humilis mulier, for nobilis or superba.*

When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, this contrariety is called **ANTIPHRAISIS**: as, *auri sacra fames, for execrabilis. Virg. Pontus Euxini falso nomine dictus, i. e. hospitalis. Ovid.*

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, the figure is called **EUPHEMISMUS**; as, *Vitâ functus, for mortuus; conclamare suos, to give up for lost. Liv. Valeant, for abeant; mactare or ferire, for occidere; Fecērunt id servi Milōnis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset, i. e. Clodium interfecerunt. Cic.* This figure is often the same with the *Periphrasis*.

The **PERIPHRASIS**, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another: or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions: or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When, after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, the figure is called a *Paraphrase*.

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, this imitation is called *Onomatopœia*, (*nominis fictio*;) as, the *whistling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buzz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the above mentioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know, in general, that the expression is figurative.

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These, therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent: and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiore notâ Falerni*, with a glass of *old Falernian wine*: *Ad umbilicum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion. Horat. These, and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

2. (428) REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of words*. Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names, according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called ANAPHORA; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium palatii, nihil urbis vigilie, &c.* Cic. *Te dulcis conjux, te solo in littore secum, Te veniente die, te decedente canebat.* Virg.

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called EPISTROPHE, or *Conversio*; as, *Pænos Populus Romæ justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, libertatē vicit.* Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called SYMPLOCE, or *Complexio*; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus. Quis, &c. Rullus.* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called EPANALEPSIS; as, *Vidimus victoriam tuam præliorum exitu terminatum; gladium vaginâ vacuum in urbe non vidimus.* Cic. pro Marcello.

The reverse of the former is called ANADIPLOSIS, or *Reduplicatio*; as, *Hic tamen vivit: vivit! imo in senatum venit.* Cic.

When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called EPANODOS, or *Regressio*; as, *Crudelis tu quoque mater; Crudelis mater magis an puer improbus ille? Improbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater.* Virg.

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence is called EPIZEUXIS; as, *Excitâte, excitâte eum ab inferis.* Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus, &c.* Id. *Me, me, adsum qui feci, in me convertite ferrum.* Virg. *Bella, horrida bella.* Id. *Ibimus, ibimus.* Hor.

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called CLIMAX, or *Gradatio*; as, *Africâno virtutem industria, virtus gloriam, gloria æmûlos comparavit.* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called POLYPTOTON; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plenæ sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas.* Cic. *Littora littoribus contraria, fluctibus undas impetecor, arma armis.* Virg.

To this is usually referred what is called SYNONYMYA, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam.* Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spondeo.* Id. And also EXPOSITIO, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called ANTANACLASIS; as, *Amâri jucundum est, si curêtur ne quid insit amâri.* Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the PARONOMASIA, or *Agnominatio*, when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium; Consul pravo animo and parvo: de oratore arator factus.* Cic. *Amantes sunt amantes.* Ter. This is also called a PUN.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called HOMOTOTON, i. e. *similiter cadens*, as, *Pollet aucto-*

ridite, circumfuit opibus, abundat amicis. Cic. If the words have only a similar termination, it is called *HOMOIOTELEUTON*, i. e. *similiter desinens*; as, *Non ejusdem est facere fortiter, and vivere turpiter.* Cic.

3. (429) FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes.—The principal are the *Hyperbôle*, *Prosopopœia*, *Apostrôphe*, *Simile*, *Antithêsis*, &c.

1. *HYPERBÔLE* is the magnifying of a thing above the truth; as, when Virgil, speaking of *Polyphêmus*, says, *Ipse arduus, atque pulsat sidera.* So, *Contracta pisces æquora sentiunt.* Hor. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinôsis*. The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast*.

2. *PROSOPOPŒIA*, or *Personification*, is a figure by which we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum. Catilina, sic agit,* &c. Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secures.* Hor. *Arbore nunc aquas culpante.* Id.

3. *APOSTRÔPHE*, or *Address*, is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore often joined with it: as, *Trojæque nunc stares, Priamique arx alta maneres.* Virg.

4. *SIMILE*, or *Comparison*, is a figure by which one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another: as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion.*

5. *ANTITHESIS*, or *Opposition*, is a figure by which things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the most striking light; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious.* *Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato,* &c. Sall. Cat. 54.

6. *INTERROGATION*, (Græc. *Erotêsis*,) is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form: as, *Quousque tandem,* &c. Cic. *Creditis avectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quæ me æquora possunt accipere.* Id. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subjectio*; as, *Quid ergo? audacissimus ego ex omnibus? minime.* Cic. Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation*, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. *EXCLAMATION* (*Eophonêsis*) is a sudden expression of some passion or emotion; as, *O nomen dulce libertatis,* &c. Cic. *O tempora, O mores!* Id. *O patria! O Divum domus Ilium!* &c. Virg.

8. **DESCRIPTION**, or *Imagery*, (*Hypotypōsis*) is the painting of any thing in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision*; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem vidēre*, &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. *Vidēre magnos jam videor duces, Non indecōro pulvĕre sordidos*. Hor. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. Virg. xi. 637, &c.

9. **EMPHASIS** is a particular stress of voice laid on some word in a sentence; as, Hannibal *peto pacem*. Liv. *Proh! Jupiter ibit hic!* i. e. *Æneas*. Virg.

10. **EPANORTHOSIS**, or *Correction*, is the recalling or correcting by the speaker of what he last said; as, *Filium habui, ah! quid dixi habēre me? imō habui*. Ter.

11. **PARALEPSIS**, or *Omission*, is the pretending to omit, or pass by, what one at the same time declares.

12. **APARITHMESIS**, or *Enumeration*, is the branching out into several parts of what might be expressed in fewer words.

13. **SYNATHROISMUS**, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together; as,

Facies in castra tulissem,
Implēssemque foros flammis, nutumque, patremque
Cum genere extinxēm, memet super ipsa dedissem. Virg.

14. **INCREMENTUM**, or *CLIMAX* in sense, is the rising of one member above another to the highest; as, *Facinus est vincire civem Romānum, scelus verberāre, parricidium necāre*. Cic.

When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called **AUXESIS**, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the Simile and the Climax.

15. **TRANSITION** (*Metabasis*) is an abrupt introduction of a speech; or the passing of a writer suddenly from one subject to another; as, Hor. Od. ii. 13. 13. In strong passion, a *change of person* is sometimes used; as, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 365, &c. xi. 406, &c.

16. **SUSPENSIO**, or *Sustentatio*, is the keeping of the mind of the hearer long in suspense; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. **CONCESSIO** is the yielding of one thing to obtain another; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilēgus, &c. at est bonus imperātor*. Cic. in Verrem, v. 1.

PROLEPSIS, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is the starting and answering of an objection.

ANACCOINŌSES, or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges of hearers; which is also called *Diaporēsis* or *Ad-dubitatio*.

LICENTIA, or the pretending to assume more *freedom* than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering; as, *Vide quam non reformidem*, &c. Cic. pro Ligario.

APROPOPIEIA, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete; as, *Quos ego — sed præstat motos componere fluctus*. Virg.

18. **SENTENTIA** (*Gnome*) a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms; as, *Otium sine litēis mors est*. Seneca. *Adēd in tenēris assuescere multum est*. Virg. *Probitas laudatur et alget; Misera est magni custodia census; Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus*. Juv.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper for the learner to know the parts into which a regular, formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium*, or *Proœmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers: 2. The *Narration* or *Explication*: 3. The argumentative part, which includes *Confirmation* or proof, and *Confutation*, or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn are called *Loci*, 'topics;' and are either intrinsic or extrinsic; common or peculiar. 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*.

PROSODY.

1. *Prosody* is that part of grammar which teaches the proper *accent* and *quantity* of syllables, the right *pronunciation* of words, and the structure of verses.

2. *Accent* is a peculiar stress of the voice on some syllable in a word, to distinguish it from the others.

3. The *quantity* of a syllable is the space of time used in pronouncing it.

4. Syllables, with respect to their *quantity*, are either *long*, *short*, or *common*.

5. A *long* syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a *short* one; as, *tēndērē*.

6. A syllable that is sometimes long, and sometimes short, is *common*; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

7. A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

8. In polysyllables, or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*; and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*, or *Antepenult*.

9. When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*; that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lāgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lāgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition the difference is obvious; thus, *perlāgo*, *perlēgi*; *relāgo*, *-lēre*; *relāgo*, *-āre*, &c.

RULES FOR THE QUANTITY.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

I. (10) A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *Mēus, alius*: so *nīhil*; *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *crēate, bēhave*.

Exc. 1. (11) *I* is long in *fīo, fīēbam*, &c. unless when followed by *e* and *r*; as, *fīēri, fīērem*; thus,

Omnia jam fient, fīēri quæ posse negābam. *Ovid.*

Exc. 2. (12) *E*, having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long: as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *āer, dīus, ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi, terrāi*, &c. in *Pompēi, Cāi*, and such like words; but we sometimes find *Pompei* in two syllables. *Hōr. Od. ii. 7. 5.*

Exc. 3. (13) The first syllable in *ohe* and *Diāna* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illius, unius, ulius, nuliūs*, &c. to be read long in prose. *Alius*, in the genit. is always long, as being contracted for *aliūs*; *alterius*, short.

(14) In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is short; as, *Danāe, Idēa, Sophīa, Symphonīa, Simōis, Hēādes, Phāon, Deucalion, Pygmalion, Thebāis*, &c.

Often it is long; as, *Lycāon, Machāon, Didymāon; Amphion, Arion, Ixion, Pandion; Nāis, Lāis, Achāia; Brisēis, Cadmēis; Latōus and Latōis, Myrtōus, Nerēius, Priamēius; Achelōius, Minōius; Archelāus, Menelāus, Amphiarāus; Enēas, Penēus, Epēus, Acrisionōus, Adamantōus, Phæbēus, Gigantōus; Darius, Basilus, Eugenius, Bacchius; Cassiopēa, Cæsarēa, Chæronēa, Cytherēa, Galatēa, Laodicēa, Medēa, Panthēa, Penelopēa; Clō, Enyō, Elegia, Iphigenia, Alexandria, Thalia, Antiochia, idolatria, litanīa, politiā, &c. Læertes, Dēiphōbus, Dēianira, Trōes, herōes*, &c.

Sometimes it is common; as, *Chorea, platea, Malea, Nereides, canopeum, Orion, Geryon, Eos, eūs*, &c. So in Foreign words, *Michael, Israel, Raphael, Abraham*, &c.

(15) The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short; as, *Orphēa, Salmonēa, Capharēa*, &c. but sometimes long; as, *Idomenēa, Ilionēa*. *Virg.* Instead of *Elegia*, *Cytherēa*, we find *Elegēa, Cythērēa*. *Ovid.* But the quantity of Greek words cannot properly be understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English, a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened; as, *science, idēa*.

* II. (16) A vowel before two consonants, or before the double consonants *j, x, z*, is long (*by position, as it is called*;) as, *arma, fallo, axis, gāza, mājor*; the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bijugus, quadrijugus*, &c.

* In reality, in such cases *j* is a vowel, and with the preceding vowel constitutes a diphthong, as, *māioribus*. In the same manner arises the quantity of such words as *ējus, pējus*, which, according to Priscian, the ancients write *ēus, pēus*.

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

Perte citi flammæ, date telâ, scandite muros. Virg.

* (17) A vowel naturally short, when followed by *sc*, *sr*, *sq*, *st*, (with or without the addition of a third consonant, as *SCRIPTA*.) may either remain short, or be made long at the poet's option.

† (18) A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; as the middle syllable in *volucris*, *tenebræ*; thus,

Et primò similis volūcri, mox vera volūcri. Ovid.
Nox tenēbras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras. Id.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro*, *pharetra*, *podagra*, *chiragra*, *celebris*, *latebræ*, &c.

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. 1. The vowel must be naturally short; 2. the mute must go before the liquid; and, 3. be in the same syllable with it. Thus *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris*, *acris*, is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salūbris*, *ambulacrum*, is always long; because they are derived from *salus*, *salūtis*, and *ambulatum*. So *a* in *arte*, *abluo*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. (19) A contracted syllable is long; as,

Nil, for *nihil*; *mī*, for *mihi*; *cōgo*, for *coāgo*; *altus*, for *alius*; *tibicen*, for *tibicen*; *tī*, for *tūt*; *sōdes*, for *si audes*; *nōlo*, for *non volo*; *bīgæ*, for *bijūgæ*; *scīlicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

IV. (20) A diphthong is always long; as,

Aurum, *Cæsar*, *Eubæa*, &c. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *præire*, *præustus*; thus,

Nec totâ tamen ille prior præeunte carinâ. Virg. *Æ.* 5, 186.
Stipitiſbus duris agitur sudibusque præustis. *Ib.* 7, 524.

But it is sometimes lengthened; as,

—cūm vacuus domīno præiret Arion. *Theb.* 6, 519.

* (21) A Diphthong is once short in a line of Virgil, out of composition: thus, *Insulæ* Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. This seems to be in imitation of Greek Hexameter.

SPECIAL RULES.

I. FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.

V. (22) Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vēni*, *vidi*, *vici*.

Except *bibi*, *scidi* from *scindo*, *ſidi* from *ſindo*, *tūki*, *dēdi*, and *stēti*, which are shortened.

VL (23) Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable ; as, *Visum*, *cāsum*, *mōtum*.

Except *sātum*, from *sēro* ; *cītum*, from *cico* ; *lītum*, from *lino* ; *stītum*, from *sino* ; *stātum*, from *sisto* ; *itum*, from *eo* ; *dātum*, from *do* ; *rātum*, from the compounds of *ruo* ; *quītum*, from *queo* ; *rātus*, from *reor*.

Preterites which double the first Syllable.

VII. (24) Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short ; as,

Cēcidi, *tētigi*, *pēpūli*, *pēpēri*, *didīci*, *tūtūdi* ; except *cēcīdi*, from *cædo* ; *pēpēdi*, from *pēdo* : and when two consonants intervene ; as, *ſēſelli*, *lētēdi*, *pēpendi*, *mōmordi*, &c.

Other verbs of two syllables in the preterite and supine retain the quantity of the present ; except *pōsi*, *pōitum*, from *pōno* ; *pōui*, from *possum* ; *sōlūtum* and *vōlūtum*, from *solvo* and *volvo*.

INCREASE OF NOUNS.

(25) A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative ; as, *rex*, *rēgis* ; *sermo*, *sermōnis* ; *interpres*, *interpretis*. Here *re*, *mo*, *pre*, is each called the *increase* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a *crement*.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one ; as, *iter*, *itinēris* ; *anceps*, *ancipitis*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular ; as, *gener*, *genēri* ; *genērōrum* ; *regibus*, *sermōnibus*, &c.

Except nouns of the *first*, *fourth*, and *fifth* declensions, which do not increase in the singular number, unless when one vowel comes before another ; as, *fructus*, *fructūi* ; *res*, *rēi* ; and falls under Rule I. These nouns are considered as increasing in the plural, and come under Rule IX.

(26) Nouns of the second declension which increase, shorten the crement ; as, *tener*, *tenēri* ; *vir*, *vīri* ; *duumvir*, *-vīri* ; *satur*, *satūri* ; except *Iber*, a Spaniard, *Ibēri* ; and its compound *Celtibēri*.

CREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

VIII. (27) Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long ; *e*, *i*, and *æ* short : as,

Pietātis, honoris; mulieris, lapidis, murmuris.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive of the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

(28) Nouns in A shorten *ātis*, in the genitive; as, *dogma, -ātis; poema, -ātis.*

O.

(29) O shortens *inis*, but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis*; as, *Cardo, -inis; Virgo, -inis; Anio, -ēnis; Cicero, -ōnis.*

(30) Gentile or patril nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macēdo, -ōnis; Saxo, -ōnis.* So, *Lingōnes, Senōnes, Teutōnes, or -ōni, Vangtōnes, Vascōnes.* Some are long; as, *Suessiōnes, Vettōnes.* *Brittōnes* is common; it is shortened by Juvenal, 15, 124, and lengthened by Martial, 11, 21, 9.

I. C. D. L.

(31) I shortens *itis*; as, *Hydromēli, -itis.* *Ec* lengthens *ecis*; as, *Halec, -ēcis.*

(32) Nouns in D shorten the crement; as, *David, -idis; Bogud, -ūdis.* Ecclesiastical poets often lengthen *Davidis.*

(33) Masculines in AL shorten *alis*; as, *Sal, -ālis; Hannibal, -ālis; Haedrūbal, -ālis;* but neuters lengthen it; as, *animal, -ālis.*

(34) *Solis* from *sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michael, -ālis.* Other nouns in L shorten the crement; as, *Vigil, -ilis; consul, -ūlis.*

N.

(35) Nouns in ON vary the crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon, -ōnis; Chiron, -ōnis.* Some shorten it; as, *Memnon, -ōnis; Actæon, -ōnis.*

(36) EN shortens *inis*; as, *flumen, -inis; tibicen, -inis.* Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *ānis*; as, *Titan, -ānis:* EN *ēnis*; as, *Siren, -ēnis:* IN *īnis*; as, *Delphin, -īnis:* YN *īnis*; as, *Phorcyn, -īnis.*

R.

1. (37) Neuters in AR lengthen *aris*; as, *calcar, -āris.* Except the following; *bacchar, -āris; jubar, -āris; hepar, -ātis; nectar, -āris:* Also the adjective *par pāris*, and its compounds, *impar, -āris; dispar, -āris, &c.*

2. (38) The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive; *Nar, Nāris*, the name of a river; *fur, fūris; ver, vērīs:* Also *Recimer, -ēris; Byzer, -ēris*, proper names; and *Ser, Sērīs; Iber, -ēris*, names of people or states.

3. (39) Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris*; as, *crater, -ēris; character, -ēris.* Except *æther, -ēris.*

4. (40) OR lengthens *oris*; as, *amor, -ōris.* Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor, -ōris; æquor, -ōris:* Greek nouns in *tor*; as, *Hector, -ōris; Actor, -ōris; rhetor, -ōris.* Also, *arbor, -ōris*, and *memor, -ōris.*

5. (41) Other nouns in R shorten the genitive; AR *āris*, masc.; as, *Cæsar, -āris; Hamilcar, -āris; lar, lāris.* ER *ēris* of any gender; as, *æēr, æēris; mulier, -ēris; cadāver, -ēris; iŭer*, anciently *iŭtner, iŭtnerīs; verbēris*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *ūris*; as, *vultur, -ūris; murmur, -ūris.* YR *īris*; as, *Martyr, -īris.*

AS.

1. (42) Nouns in AS, which have *atis*, lengthen the crement; as, *pietas, -ātis; Macēnas, -ātis.* Except *anas, -ātis.*

2. (43) Other nouns in AS shorten the ccrement; as Greek nouns having the genitive in *adis*, *atis*, and *anis*; thus *Pallas*, *-adis*; *artocreas*, *-etis*; *Melas*, *-anis*, the name of a river. So *uas*, *vidis*; *uas*, *māria*. But *uas*, *vāsis* is long.

ES.

(44) ES shortens the ccrement; as, *miles*, *-itis*; *Ceres*, *-ēris*; *pes*, *pēdis*.

(45) Except *locuples*, *-itis*; *quies*, *-ētis*; *mansuet*, *-ētis*; *hæres*, *-adis*; *merces*, *-ēdis*: also Greek nouns; as, *lobes*, *-ētis*; *Thales*, *-ētis*.

IS.

(46) Nouns in IS shorten the ccrement; as, *lapis*, *-idis*; *sanguis*, *-inis*; *Phyllis*, *-idis*; *cinis*, *cinēris*.

(47) Except *Glis*, *glōris*; and Latin nouns which have *itis*; as, *lis*, *litis*; *dis*, *dēdis*; *Quiris*, *-itis*; *Samnis*, *-itis*. But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charitis*.

(48) The following also lengthen the ccrement; *Crenis*, *-adis*, *Paophis*, *-adis*, *Nesis*, *-idis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also *in*; as, *Selāmis* or *-in*, *Selaminis*.

OS.

(49) Nouns in OS lengthen the ccrements; as, *nepos*, *-ōtis*; *flor*, *flōris*.

Except *Bos*, *bōvis*; *compos*, *-ōtis*; and *impos*, *-ōtis*.

US.

(50) US shortens the ccrement; as, *tempus*, *-ūris*; *vellus*, *-ūris*; *tripus*, *-ūdis*.

(51) Except nouns which have *adis*, *ūris*, and *ātis*; as, *incus*, *-ūdis*; *jus*, *jūris*; *salus*, *-ūtis*. But *Ligus* has *Ligūris*; the obsolete *pecus*, *pecūdis*; and *intercus*, *-ūtis*.

(51½) The neuter of the comparative has *ōris*; as, *melius*, *-ōris*.

YS.

(52) YS shortens *ydīs* or *ydōs*; as, *chlamys*, *-ydīs* or *ydōs*; and lengthens *ynīs*; as, *Trachys*, *-ynīs*.

BS. PS. MS.

(53) Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *calebs*, *-ibis*; *inops*, *-ōpis*; *hiems*, *hiēmīs auceps*, *aucēpis*; *Dolops*, *-ōpis*; also *anceps*, *incipitis*; *biceps*, *bicipitū*, and similar compounds of *caput*.

Except *Cyclops*, *-ōpis*; *seps*, *sēpis*; *gryps*, *grȳphās*; *Cercops*, *-ōpis*; *plebs*, *plēbis*; *hydrups*, *-ōpis*.

T.

(54) T shortens the ccrement; as, *caput*, *-itis*: so, *sinciput*, *-itis*.

X.

1. (55) Nouns in X, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the ccrement; as, *confuz*, *-ūgis*; *remex*, *-īgis*; *Allobrox*, *-ōgis*; *Phryx*, *Phrȳgis*. But *lex*, *lēgis*, and *rex*, *rēgis*, are long; and likewise *frūgis*.

2. (56) EX shortens *icis*; *vertex*, *-icis*: Except *vibes* or *vibiz*, *-icis*.

3. (57) Other nouns in X lengthen the ccrement; as, *pax*, *pācis*; *radix*, *-ācis*; *vox*, *vōcis*; *lux*, *lūcis*; *Pollux*, *-ūcis*, &c.

(58) Except *facis*, *nēcis*, *vēcis*, *prēcis*, *calicis*, *cūctis*, *pēcis*, *forācis*, *nōis*, *Capadūcis*, *dūcis*, *nūcis*, *crūcis*, *trūcis*, *onȳchis*, *Erȳcis*, *mastyx*, *-ȳchis*, the resin of the *lentiscus*, or *mastich tree*; and many others, the quantity of which can only be ascertained by authority.

4. (59) Some nouns vary the increment; as, *Syphax*, -*ācis*, or -*ās*; *Sandys*, -*icis*, or -*īcis*; *Bebryx*, -*ŷcis*, or -*ŷis*.

Increase of the Plural Number.

IX. (60) Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long; but shorten *I* and *U*; as,

musārum, rērum, dominōrum; rēgibus, portūbus; except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bōvibus*.

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas, amāmus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the *increase* or *increment*: for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas, amābāmini*; in which case it is said to have a *first, second, or third increase*.

X. (61) In the increase of verbs, *a, e, and o*, are long; *i* and *u* short; as,

Amāre, docēre, amātōte; legimus, sūmus, volūmus.

EXCEPTIONS.

* (62) *Do* and its compounds of the first conjugation have a short *i* in their first increment; as, *dāmus, dābunt*, but not in the second, as, *dādāmus*, where the second *a* is long.

* (63) *Bēris* and *bēre* are every where short; as, *amabēris*; excepting where the *b* belongs to the termination of the present; *scribēris* and *scribēre*, of the future passive being long by the first rule.

* (64) *E* before *ram, rim, ro*, and the persons formed from them, is short. By *Systole* the poets sometimes shorten *e* before *runt*.

* (65) These have *i* long: *simus, velimus, nolimus*, with the other persons coming from them and their compounds.

* (66) *I* before *vi* in preterites is always long; as, *pefivi*.

(67) The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority*; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

Remarks on the Quantity of the Penult and Antepenult of Words.

1. (68) Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamides, Atlantides, &c.* Unless they come from nouns in *eus*: as, *Pelides, Tydides, &c.*

2. (69) Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS, EIS, ITIS, OIS, ONE*, and *ONE* commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achais, Ptolemais, Ch...*

Ensis, Memphis, Latōis, Icarīotis, Nerine, Acrisiōne. Except *Thebais*, and *Phocis*: and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. (70) Adjectives in *ACUS, ICUS, IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiācus, acadēmicus, lepidus, legitimus*: also, superlatives; as, *fortissimus, &c.* Except *merācus, opācus, amicus, apricus, pudicus, mendicus, anticus, posticus, fidus, infidus*, (but *perfidus*, of *per* and *fides*, is short,) *binus, quadrimus, patrimus, matrimus, opimus*: and two superlatives, *imus, primus*.

4. (71) Adjectives in *ALIS, ANUS, ARUS, IVUS, ORUS, OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis, urbānus, avārus, astivus, decōrus, arenōsus*. Except *barbārus, opipārus*, and *ovipārus*.

5. (72) Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult; as, *agilis, facilis, &c.* But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anilis, civilis, herilis, &c.* To these add, *exilis, subtilis*; and names of months, *Aprilis, Quincilis, Sextilis*: Except *humilis, partilis*; and also *similis*. But all adjectives in *atilis* are short; as, *versatilis, volatilis, umbratilis, plicatilis, fluviatilis, saxatilis, &c.*

6. (73) Adjectives in *INUS*, derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c., also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracīnus, crocīnus, cedrīnus, fagīnus, oleagīnus; adamantīnus, crystallīnus, crastīnus, pristīnus, perendīnus, carīnus, annotīnus, &c.*

(74) Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as, *agnīnus, canīnus, leporīnus, vinus, trīnus, quīnus, austrīnus, clandestīnus, Lalinus, marīnus, supīnus, vesperīnus, &c.*

7. (75) Diminutives in *OLUS, OLA, OLUM*; and *ULUS, ULA, ULUM*, always shorten the penult; as, *urceolus, fliōla, muscōlum; lectulus, ratiunculā, corculum, &c.*

* (76) Latin denominatives in *aceus, aneus, arius, aticus, orius*; also verbals in *abilis* and words in *atilis* lengthen the Antepenult; as, *testāceus, amābalis, pluviatilis*.

* (77) Adjectives in *icius*, derived from nouns, shorten the *i* of the antepenult; as, *gentilicius*; except *novicius*. But those which come from supines or participles, lengthen the *i*.

8. (78) Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidatim, virītim, tribūtīm*. Except *affatim, perpētīm*, and *statīm*.

9. (79) Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which in the second and third person is the penult; as, *esurio, esuris, esurit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligurio, liguris; scaturio, scaturis, &c.*

* (80) Frequentative Verbs, formed from the supine of the first conjugation, by changing *atu* into *ito*, have the *i* short.

PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

(81) *The following proper names lengthen the penult*: Abdēra, Abūdus, Adōnia, Æsopus, Æiōlus, Ahāla, Alaricus, Alcides, Amylæ, Andronicus, Anūbis, Archimēdes, Ariarāthes, Ariobarzānes, Aristides, Aristobulus, Aristogiton, Arpinum, Artabānus; Brachmānes, Busiris, Buthrōtus; Cethēgus, Chalcēdon, Cleobulus, Cyrāne, Cythēra, Curētes; Darici, Demonīcus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioscūri; Ebūdes, Eriphyle, Eubulus, Euclides, Euphrātes, Eumēdes, Euripus, Euxinus; Gargānus, Gētulus, Granicus; Heliogabulus, Henricus, Heraclides, Heraclitus, Hippōnax, Hispanus; Irēne; Lacýdas, Latōna, Leucāta, Lugdūnum, Lycōras; Mandāne, Mausōlus, Maximinus, Meleāger, Messāla, Messāna, Milētus; Nasica, Nicānor, Nicētas; Pachýnus, Pandōra, Pelōris & -us, Pharsālus, Phœnice, Polites, Polyclētus, Polynices, Priāpus; Sardanapālus, Sarpēdon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonice, Suffētes; Tigrānes, Thessalonica; Verōna, Veronica.

(82) *The following are short:* Amāthus, Amphipōlis, Anabāsia, Anticŷra, Antigōnus & -ne, Antiōchus, Antiōchus, Antiōpa, Antīpas, Antīpāter, Antīphānes, Antīphātes, Antīphīla, Antīphon, Anŷtus, Apūlus, Areopāgus, Arimānum, Armēnus, Athēsis, Attālus, Attīca; Bitūrix, Bructēri; Calāber, Callicrātes, Callistrātus, Candāco, Cantāber, Carneādes, Cherīlus, Chrysostōmus, Cleombrotus, Cleomēnes, Corŷcos, Constantinopōlis, Cratērus, Cratŷlus, Cremāra, Crustumēri, Cybēle, Cyclādes, Cyzēcus; Dalmāta, Damōcles, Dardānus, Dejōces, Deiotārus, Democrītus, Demīpho, Didŷmus, Diogēnes, Drepānum, Dumnōrix; Empedōcles, Ephēsus, Evērgētes, Eumēnes, Eurymēdon, Euripŷlus; Fucīnus; Geryōnes, Gyārus; Hecŷra, Heliopōlis, Hermiōne, Herodōtus, Hesiodus, Hesiōne, Hippocrātes, Hippotāmos, Hypāta Hypānis; Icārus, Icētas, Illŷris, Iphŷtus, Iamārus, Ithāca; Laodīce, Laomēdon, Lampaēcus, Lamŷrus, Lapīthæ, Lucretīlia, Libānus, Lipāre or -a, Lysimāchus, Longimānus; Marāthon, Mēnālus, Marmārica, Massagēta, Matrōna, Megāra, Melītus & -ta, Metropōlis, Mutīna, Mycōnus; Neōcles, Nerītos, Norīcum; Omphāle; Patāra, Pegāsus, Pharnāces, Pasi-trātus, Polydāmus, Polyzēna, Porēna or Porēna, Praxitēles, Puteōli, Pylādes, Pythagōras; Sarmāta, Sarsīna, Semēle, Semirāmis, Sequāni & -a, Sisŷphus, Sicōris, Socrātes, Sodōma, Sotādes, Spartācus, Sporādes, Strongŷle, Symphālus, Sybāris; Taygētes, Telegōnus, Telemāchus, Tenēdos, Tarrāco, Theophānes, Theophilus, Tomŷris; Urbīcus; Venēti, Vologēsus, Volūsus; Xenocrātes; Zoīlus, Zopŷrus.

(83) The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batŷvi*. Lucan. *Batŷvi*. Juv. and Mart. *Fortuītus*. Hor. *Fortuītus*. Martial. Some make *fortuītus* of three syllables, but it may be shortened like *gratuītus*. Stat. *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *præstolor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

XI. (84) *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musā, templā, Tydeā, lampādā*.

Exc. (85) The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musā Ænēā*: and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*; as, *O Ænēā, O Pallā*.

(86) *A* in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, *Amā, frustrā, prætereā, ergā, intrā*.

Exc. (87) *Itā, quīd, ejā, posteā, putā*, (adv.) are short; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contra, ultra*, and the compounds of *ginta*; as, *trigintā*, &c. *Contra* and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

E.

XII. (89) *E* in the end of a word is short; as, *Natē, sedilē, ipsē, currē, possē, nempē, antē*.

Exc. 1. (89) Monosyllables are long; as, *mē, tē, sē*; except these enclitic conjunctions, *quē, vē, nē*; and these syllabical adjections, *pīē, cē, tē*; as, *suaptē, hujuscē, tutē*; but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. (90) Nouns of the first and fifth declensions are long; as, *Calliôpē, Anchisē, fidē*. So *rē* and *diē*, with their compounds, *quarē, hodiē, pridīē, postridiē, quotidiē*: Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Cetē, melē, Tempē*; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, *Docē, manē*; but *cave, vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. (91) Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, *placidē, pulchrē, valdē*, contracted for *validē*: To these add *fermē, ferē*, and *ohē*; also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as, *doctissimē, fortissimē*: But *benē* and *malē, infernē, supernē*, are short. Also the adverbs *herē*, and *Herculē*.

I.

XIII. (92) *I* final is long; as, *Domini, patri, docēri*.

Exc. 1. (93) Greek vocatives are short; as, *Alexi, Amarylli*.

Exc. 2. (94) The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase, is common; as, *Pallādi, Minotidi*: short.

(95) *Mihi, tibi, sibi*, are also common: So likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi*; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which is seldom the case. *Sicuti, sicubi, necubi*, are always short.

* (96) Datives and Ablatives plural of Greek nouns in *si* are short; as, *heroasi, Troasi*.

O.

XIV. (97) *O* final is common; as, *Virgo, amo, quando*.

Exc. 1. (98) Monosyllables in *O* are long; as, *ō, dō, stō, prō*. The dative and ablative singular of the second declensions are long; as, *librō, dominō*: Also Greek nouns, as *Didō, Sapphō*, and *Athō* the genitive of *Athos*; and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, falsō, paulō*. To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō*; likewise *illō, idcirco, citrō, retrō, ultrō*.

Exc. 2. (99) The following words are short: *Egō, sciō, putō, cedō*, a defective verb, *homō, citō, illico, immō, duō, ambō, modō*, with its compounds, *quomōdō, dummodō, postmodō*: but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. (100) The gerund in *DO* in Virgil is long; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

U and Y.

XV. (101) *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; as, *Vultū, Molī*.

B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. (102) *B, D, L, R*, and *T*, in the end of a word, are short; as, *āb, apūd, semel, precor, caput*.

(103) The following words are long; *sāl, sōl, nīl, pār* and its compounds, *impār, dispār, &c.*; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fur*; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Ibēr*; likewise *āēr, ethēr*; to which add Hebrew names: as, *Jōb, Daniēl*; but *David, Bogud, &c.* are common.

(104) *M* final anciently made the foregoing vowel short; as, *Miltūm octo*. Ennius. But, by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *miliū octo*; except in compound words; as, *circūmdgo, circūmeo*.

C, N.

XVII. (105) *C* and *N*, in the end of a word, are long: as, *de, sic, illuc*; *splēn, ēn, nōn, &c.*

So Greek nouns in *n*; as, *Titān, Sirēn, Salāmin*; *Æniān, Anchisēn, Circēn*; *Lacedæmōn, &c.*

(106) The following words are short: *nēc* and *donēc*; *Forstūn, in, forsān, tamēn, ān, vidēn*; likewise nouns in *en* which have *tnis* in the genitive: as, *carmēn, crimēn*; also the nom. and accus. sing. of Greek nouns in *on*, when written with a small *o* (*ο μικρόν*), as, *Ilīōn, Pylōn, Erotiōn*; and the accusative, if the termination of the nominative be short: as, *Maiān, Æginān, Orpheōn, Alexin, Ibīn, chelyn*; so the dative plural in *sin*; as, *Arcāsīn, Troāsīn*.

(107) The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. (108) *AS, ES, and OS*, in the end of a word, are long: as, *Mās, quies, bonōs*.

(109) The following words are short: *anās, ēs*, from *sum*, and *penēs*; *ōs*, having *ossis* in the genitive, *compōs*, and *impōs*; also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations: as, *Arcās* and *Arcādās, herōās, Phrygēs, Arcādōs, Tenēdōs, Mēlōs, &c.* and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increasing short: as, *Alēs, hebēs, obsēs*. But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

XIX. (110) *IS, US, and YS*, in the end of a word, are short: as, *Turris, legīs, legimūs, annūs, Capys*.

Exc. 1. (111) Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennis, libris, nobis, omnis*, for *omnes*, *fructūs, manūs*; also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, *portūs*. But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is short: as, *florībūs, fructībūs, rebūs*.

Exc. 2. (112) Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in

itis, iatis, or entis; as, *lis, Sannia, Salamis, Simois*: To these add the adverbs *gratis* and *foris*; the noun *glis*, and *vis*, whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *itis*; as, *audis, abis, possis*. *Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is lengthened by Ovid, *Fast.* 1, 17, but it is always shortened by Horace, *Od.* 4, 7, 20. *Sat.* 1, 4, 41. 2, 3, 220. 2, 6, 39. *Art.* 47.

Exc. 3. (113) Monosyllables in *us* are long: as, *grus, sus*: also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, untis*, or *ōdis*: as, *tellus, incus, virtus, Amāthūs, tripūs*. To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension ending in *o*; as, *Clītus, Sapphūs, Mantūs*; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative: as, *Panthūs*:—so *Iēsūs*.

Exc. 4. (114) *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative: as, *Phorcys* or *Phorcyn*, and *Trachys* or *Trachyn*.

¶ (115) The last syllable of every verse is common;

Or, as some think, necessarily long, on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

I. DERIVATIVES.

XX. (116) Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

Amicus, <i>from</i>	āmo.	Decōro, <i>from</i>	decus, -ōria.
Auctōnor,	auctio, -ōnia.	Exūlo,	exul, -ūlia.
Auctōro,	auctor, -ōria.	Pāvīdus,	pāveo.
Auditor,	audītum.	Quirito,	Quiris, -itia.
Auspīcor,	auspex, -īcia.	Radīctus,	radix, -īcia.
Caupōnor,	caupo, -ōnia.	Sospīto,	sospes, -ītia.
Compētitor,	compēlitum.	Nātūra,	nātus.
Cornīcor,	cornix, -īcia.	Māternus,	māter.
Custōdio,	custos, -ōdia.	Lēgēbam, &c.	lēgo.
Decōrus,	decor, -ōria.	Lēgēram, &c.	lēgi.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Long from short.

Dēni, <i>from</i>	dēcem.	Suspīcio, <i>from</i>	suspīcor.	Mōbīlis, <i>from</i>	mōveo.
Fūmes,	fōveo.	Sēdes,	sēdeo.	Hūmor,	hūmus.
Hūmānus,	hōmo.	Sēcīus,	sēcus.	Jūmentum,	jūvo.
Regūla,	rēgo.	Pēnūria,	pēnus.	Vox, vōcia,	vōco, &c.

2. Short from long.

Arēna and ārista, <i>from</i>	āreo.	Lūcerna, <i>from</i>	lūceo.
Nōta and nōto,	nōtus.	Dux, ūcia,	dūco.
Vādum,	vādo.	Stābīlia,	stābam.
Fīdes,	fīdo.	Dītio,	dis, dītis.
Sōpor,	sōpio.	Quāsilus,	quālus, &c.

II. COMPOUNDS.

XXI. (117) Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

Dēduco, of *dē* and *dūco*. So *prōfēro*, *antēfēro*, *consōlor*, *dēnōto*, *dēpecūlor*, *deprāvo*, *despēro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *ēnōdo*, *ērūdio*, *exsūdo*, *exāro*, *expāveo*, *incāro*, *inhūmo*, *investigo*, *pragrāvo*, *prānāto*, *rēgēlo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concāvus*, *pragravis*, *dēsōlo*, *suffōco* and *suffōco*; *diffīdūt* from *diffīndo*, and *diffīdūt* from *diffīdo*; *indīco*, *-āre*, and *indīco*, *-ēre*; *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*; *effōdūt* in the present, and *effōdūt* in the perfect; so, *exēdūt* and *exēdūt*; *devēnit* and *devēnit*; *devēnimus* and *devēnimus*; *reperīmus* and *reperīmus*; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

(118) The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as,

Incīdo from *in* and *cādo*; *incīdo* from *in* and *cādo*; *suffōco* from *sub* and *faux*, *faucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *admitto*, *percūllo*, *deoscūlor*, *prohibeo*.

Exc. (119.) *Agnitum*, *cognitum*, *dējēro*, *pējēro*, *innūba*, *pronūba*, *maledictus*, *veridictus*, *nihilum*, *semiōpītus*; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dīco*, *hūm*, and *ōpio*; *ambitus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long; but the substantives *ambitus* and *ambitio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

* (120) Prepositions have generally the same quantity in composition as out of it: thus *amitto* and *dēduco* have the first syllable long because *a* and *de* are long. *Aboleo* and *pērīmo* have the first short, because *ab* and *per* are short.

Obs. 1. (121) The preposition *PRO* in Greek words, for *ante*, before, is short; as,

Prōphēta, *prōlēgus*: *PRO* in Latin words is long; as, *prādo*, *prōmitto*, &c. but it is short in the following words: *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōneptis*, *prōfestus*, *prōfārī*, *prōfleor*, *prōfānus*, *prōfecto*, *prōcella*, *prōtervus*, and *prōpāgo*, a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock, or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful; *propāgo*, to propagate; *propīno*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procūro*, and *Proserpina*.

Obs. 2. (122) The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as,

Sēpāre, *divello*; except *dīrīmo*, *dīsertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rēmīto*, *rēfēro*; except in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Obs. 3. (123) *I* and *O*, in the end of the former compounding word, are usually shortened; as,

Capricornus, *omnipōtens*, *agricōla*, *signīfīca*, *bīformis*, *alīger*, *Trīvia*, *Tubīcen*, *vaticīnor*, *archīlectus*, *bīmēter*, *trīmēter*, &c. *duōdēcīm*, *hōdie*, *sacrōsanctus*, *Archīphīlax*, *Argōnauta*, *bībliōthēca*, *philōsōphus*, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *tantīdem*, *eīdem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately; as, *ludīmagīster*, *lucrīfacīo*, *īquīs*, &c.—or when a contraction is made by *Crisis* or *Syncōpe*; as, *trīgā*, for *trījugā*; *īlicet*, for *īre licet*, &c.—So in the compounds of *dies*, as, *bīdūm*, *trīdūm*, *merīdies*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*; but the second syllable is sometimes shortened in *quotīdie* and *quotīdīānus*. *Idem* in the masc. is long, (in the neuter short;) also *ubīque*, *ībīdem*. But in *ubīvis* and *ubīcūque*, the *i* is doubtful.

(124) *O* is lengthened in the compounds of *intro*, *retro*, *contro*, and *quando*; as,

Intrōdūco, *intrōmittō*, *retrocēdō*, *retrogrādus*, *contrōversus*, *contrōversia*, *quandōque*; but *quandōquidē* has the second syllable short. *O* is also long in *aliōquin*, *interōquin*, *utrōque*: So likewise in Greek words, written with a large *o*, or *o* *met*-; as, *grōmetra*, *Minōtaurus*, *lagōpus*.

Obs. 4. (125) *A* in the former compounding part of a word is long; as, *quāre*, *quāpropter*, *quācunque*; So, *trādo*, *trādūco*, *trāno*, for *transno*, &c. *Eādem* is short, except in the abl. sing. *ēdēm*.

(126) *E* is short; as, *nēfastus*, *nēfandus*, *nēfarius*, *nēque*, *nēqueo*; *trēdecim*, *trēcenti*, *ēquidē*, *sēlibra*, *valēdico*, *madefacio*, *tepfacio*, *patefacio*, &c. *hujuscēmōdi*, *ejuscēmōdi*—Except *sēdecim*, *sēmōdius*, *nēquis*, *nēquam*, *nēquitia*, *nēquando*, *nēmo*, *crēdo*, *mēmēt*, *mēcum*, *lēcum*, *sēcum*; *venēficus*, *vidēlicet*.

(127) *U* also is short; as, *dūcenti*, *dūpondium*; *quadrupes*, *centūplum*, *Trojūgena*, *cornūptus*; but *jūdico* is long. *Y* likewise in Greek words is short; as, *Poljdōrus*, *Poljdāmas*, *Poljphēmus*, *Dorjphōrus*.

VERSE.

(128) A Verse is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always turn back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, both to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, and to regulate its pronunciation.

FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsūra*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. Feet of two Syllables.

Spondeus, consists of two long; as, *ōmnēs*,
Pyrrhichius, two short; as, *dēūs*.
Iambus, a short and a long; as, *āmāns*.
Trochæus or *Choræus*, a long and a short; as, *sērvūs*.

2. Feet of three Syllables.

Dactylus, a long and two short; as, *scribēre*.
Anapæstus, two short and a long; as, *pīstās*.
Amphimæcer, a long, a short, and a long; as, *chāritās*.
Tribrachys, three short; as, *dōminūs*.

The following are not so much used :

Molossus,	<i>dilectant.</i>	Antispastus,	<i>Alexand'r.</i>
Amphibrachys,	<i>honoré.</i>	Ionicus minor,	<i>propterabant.</i>
Bacchius,	<i>doloris.</i>	Ionicus major,	<i>calcantibus.</i>
Antibacchius,	<i>pallentur.</i>	Pæon primus,	<i>temporibus.</i>
3. Feet of four Syllables.		Pæon secundus,	<i>pallentia.</i>
Proceleusmaticus,	<i>hominibus.</i>	Pæon tertius,	<i>animatus.</i>
Dispondeus,	<i>oratoris.</i>	Pæon quartus,	<i>celeritas.</i>
Dijambus,	<i>amanitas.</i>	Epitritus primus,	<i>volsptatis.</i>
Choriambus,	<i>pontificis.</i>	Epitritus secundus,	<i>panitentia.</i>
Dichoreus,	<i>Cantilena.</i>	Epitritus tertius,	<i>discordias.</i>
		Epitritus quartus,	<i>fortunatus.</i>

SCANNING.

(129) The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectus* or *Acatalecticus*, an Acatalectic verse : if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalecticus* : if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalecticus*, or *Hypermeter*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depositio* or *Clausula*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

No. 1. HEXAMETER.

(130) The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee ; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees : as,

1	2	3	4	5	6
— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —
Lūdērē	quæ vél-	lēm cālā-	mō pār-	mīst ā-	grēsī. Virg.
Infān-	dūm Re-	gīnā jū-	bēs rēnō-	vārē dō-	lōrēm. Id.

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

(131) Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic* ; as,

Cārā Dē-	ūm sōbō-	lēs mā-	gnūm Jōvīs	incrē-	mēntum. Virg.
----------	----------	---------	------------	--------	---------------

This verse is used when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

(132) Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before
p d 2

it ; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel ; as,

Omniā | Mērcūrī- | ō sīmī- | lis vō- | cēmquē cō- | lōrēmque.
Et flavos crines—

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately : as,

Ludere, quæ vellem, calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*
Pinguis et ingratus premeretur caseus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees : as,

Tityre, tu patula recubans sub tegmine fagi. *Virg.*

It is esteemed a great beauty in a hexameter verse, when, by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense : as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*
Illi inter sese magnā vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*
Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum. *Id.*
Accipiant inimicum, imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention, in scanning hexameter verse, is the **CÆSURA**.

(133) *Cæsura* is when, after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot ; as,

At rē-ginā grā-vī jā-m-dudum, &c.

The *cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimēris*. when on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimēris* : when it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hephthemimēris* : and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Enneemimēris*.

All these different species of the *cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse : as,

Illō lā-tūs nīvō-ūm mōl-lī fūl-tūs hŷā-cīnthō. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *cæsura* is the *penthēmim* ; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice, in reading a hexameter verse thus composed : whence they call it the *cæsural pause* : as,

Tityre, dum rede-O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long : as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of a hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *cæsura*. Without this, a line consist-

ing of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose: as,

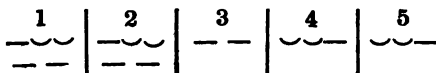
Rōmē moniā tērrūt impīgēr, Hännibāl Armia. *Ennius.*

The ancient Romans, in pronouncing verse, paid a particular attention to its melody. They observed not only the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse, as has been before observed.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

No. 2. PENTAMETER.

(134) The Pentamēter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees: the third, always a spondee: and the fourth and fifth, an anapaestus: as,



Nātū- | rē sēquī- | tūr sē- | mīnā quē- | quē sūe. *Propert.*
Cārmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pūs īn ōm- | nē mēis. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves: the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a cæsūra: the latter, always of two dactyles and another cæsūra: thus,

Nātū- | rē sēquī- | tūr | sēmīnā | quēquē sū- | æ.
Cārmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpūs īn | ōmnē mē- | īa.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

No. 3. TETRAMETER A POSTERIORE.

* (135) The *Tetrameter a Posteriore* consists of the last four feet of an Hexameter: as,

Cērtūs ē- | nīm prō- | mīst A- | pōllō. *Hor.*

No. 4. TRIMETER CATALECTIC.

* (136) The *Trimeter Catalectic* consists of two dactyles and a semi-foot or *catalectic* syllable: as,

Arbōrī- | būsquē cō- | mā. *Hor.*

No. 5. DACTYLIC DIMETER OR ADONIC.

* (137) The Adonic verse consists of two feet, the first a dactyle, the other a spondee: as,

Vişerē | mōntēs. *Hor.*

The *Adonic* is usually joined to the *Sapphic* or *Trochaic Pentameter* [No. 11.] In odes, one Adonic is annexed to three Sapphics to form the stanza.

IAMBIC.

No. 6. IAMBIC TRIMETER.

Iambic verses take their name from the Iambus, which, in pure Iambics, was the only foot admitted. They are divided into two kinds. The one consists of *four* feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimeter* (a word meaning 'two measures;') the other consists of *six* feet, and is called *Trimeter* ('six measures.') The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in Iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the *Dimeter quaternarius*, and the *Trimeter, senarius*.

* (138) The *Trimeter Iambic* consists of three measures, or six feet, properly all Iambic; the *cæsura* commonly falling on the fifth semi-foot: as,

Phāsē- | lūs īl- | lē quēm | vīdē- | tīs hōs- | pītēs. *Catullus.*

But the pure Iambic was rarely used, and the Spondee was allowed to take the place of the Iambus in the first, third and fifth stations, for the purpose of giving to the verse a greater degree of weight and dignity. A further liberty was taken in the first, third and fifth places, that of dividing one long syllable into two short ones. The scale of the mixed *Trimeter Iambic* is as follows:—

1	2	3	4	5	6
—	—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—	—

No. 7. IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.

* (139) The *Catalectic Trimeter* is the common Trimeter [No. 6] wanting the final syllable; that is, it consists of five feet, properly all Iambi, followed by a Catalectic syllable; as,

Vōcā- | tūs āt- | quē nōn | vō cā- | tūs aū- | dĩt. *Hor.*

Like the common Trimeter it admits a Spondee in the first and third places, but not in the fifth, which would render the verse too heavy and prosaic.

No. 8. IAMBIC DIMETER.

* (140) The Dimeter Iambic consists of two measures, or four feet, properly all Iambi; as,

Pērūn- | xīt hūc | ūā- | oēm. Hor.

But it admits the same variations in the odd feet as the Trimeter.

No. 9. IAMBIC DIMETER HYPERMETER.

* (141) The *Dimeter Hypermeter*, called also *Archilochian*, is the Iambic Dimeter [No. 8] with an additional syllable at the end; as,

Rēdā- | gīt ād | vērūā | tīmō- | rēā. Hor.

Horace makes frequent use of this metre in conjunction with the Alcaic [No. 19] having *always* the third foot a spondee.

No. 10. IAMBIC DIMETER ACEPHALUS.

* (142) The *Acephalous Dimeter* is the Dimeter Iambic [No. 9] wanting the first syllable; as,

Nūn | ēbūr | nēque ān- | rēm. Hor.

No. 11. SAPPHIC.

* (143) The Sapphic verse (so called from the poetess Sappho, who invented it) consists of five feet, namely a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyle and two more Trochees; as,

Dēfū- | īt sāx- | īs āgī- | tātūs | hūmōr. Hor.

Of three such verses with the addition of one Adonic [No. 5] Sappho composed her stanza, in which practice she was followed by Catullus, Horace and others.

CHORIAMBIC.

No. 12. CHORIAMBIC PENTAMETER.

* (144) The Choriambic Pentameter consists of a Spondee, three Choriambi, and an Iambus; as,

Tū nē | quāesīrīs | scīrē nēfās | quēm mīhī quēm | tībī. Hor.

No. 13. CHORIAMBIC TETRAMETER.

* (145) This species of verse consists of three Choriambi, and a Bacchius (i. e. an Iambus and a long syllable); as,

Jānē pātēr, | Jānē tūēns, | dīvē bīcōps | bīfōrmis. Sep. Ser.

Horace made an alteration, but certainly not an improvement, in this form of verse, by substituting a Spondee, instead of the Iambus in the first measure; as,

Tē dē-ōs ō- | rō, Sýbārin | cūr prōpērēs | āmāndō,

which must be considered as a *lame* Choriambic Tetrameter.

No. 14. ASCLEPIADIC TETRAMETER.

* (146) The *Asclepiadic Tetrameter* (so called from the poet *Asclepiades*) consists of a Spondee, two Choriambi, and an Iambus; as,

Mēcē- | nās āiāvis | ēdītē rē- | gībus. Hor.

As the *cæsuræ* takes place at the end of the first Choriambus, this metre may be scanned as a Dactylic Pentameter, wanting the last syllable; thus,

Māc cē- | nās āiā- | vīs | ēdītē | rēgībūs.

No. 15. CHORIAMBIC TRIMETER, or GLYCONIC.

* (147) The Glyconic verse (so called from the poet *Glyco*) consists of a Spondee, a Choriambus, and an Iambus; as,

Sic tē | divā pōtēns | Cýpri. Hor.

* (148) The first foot was sometimes an Iambus or a Trochee. Horace, however, who was very fond of the Glyconic, and has often employed it, invariably adheres to the Spondee, except in one solitary instance; viz.

Ignīs | Iliacas | domos. Od. 1, 13, 36.

* (149) This species of verse, when it has a Spondee in the first place, might be scanned as a *Dactylic Trimeter*; thus,

Mīlēs | tē dūcē | gēssōrīt. Hor.

Grātō | Pýrrhā sūb | āntrō. Hor.

No. 16. CHORIAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC or PHERECRATIC.

* (150) The Pherecratic verse (so called from the poet Pherecrates,) is the Glyconic [No. 15] deprived of its final syllable. It consists of a Spondee, a Choriambus, and a Catalectic syllable; as,

Grātō | Pýrrhā sūb ān- | trō. Hor.

Or it might be divided into a Spondee, a Dactyle and Spondee. See [*149]

No. 17. CHORIAMBIC DIMETER.

* (151) The Choriambic Dimeter consists of a Choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

Lýdřā díō | pēr ōmnēs. Hor.

IONIC.

Ionic verses are of two kinds, the *Ionicus Major*, and the *Ionicus Minor*, so denominated from the feet of which they are respectively composed.

No. 18. IONIC A MINORE.

* (152) The *Ionic a Minore* is entirely composed of that foot or measure called the *Ionic a minore*, which consists of two short [a Pyrrhic] and two long [a Spondee,] as, *Dōcūssēt*. It is not confined to any particular number of feet or measures, but may be extended to any length, provided only that, with due attention to *Synapheia* [163] the final syllable of the Spondee in each measure, be either naturally long, or made long by the concurrence of consonants, and that each sentence or period terminate with a complete measure, having the Spondee for its close. Horace's Ode 12, Book 3, may be divided into lines of four Ionics each; as,

Mīserārum ēst | nēque āmōrī | dāre lūdum, | nēque dūlcī.

No. 19. GREATER ALCAIC.

* (153) The *Greater Alcaic* consists of an Iambic measure (that is, two feet properly both Iambi) and a long Catalectic syllable, followed by a Choriambus and an Iambus; as,

Vīdēs | ūt āl- | tā | stēt nīvē cān- | dīdum. Hor.

But the first foot of the Iambic portion is, of course, alterable to a Spondee.

* (154) The Alcaic is sometimes scanned so as to make two Dactyles of the latter colon; thus,

Vīdēs | ūt āl- | tā | stēt nīvē | cāndīdum.

No. 20. DACTYLICO-TROCHAIC HEPTAMETER OR ARCHILOCHIAN.

* (155) The *Archilochian Heptameter* consists of two members; the first contains four feet from the beginning of the Hexameter—the fourth being always a Dactyle—the latter portion consists of three Trochees; thus,

Sōlvītūr | ācrīs hī- | ēms grā- | tā vīcē | vērys | et Fā. | vōnī. Hor.

No. 21. DACTYLICO-TROCHAIC TETRAMETER, OR LESSER ALCAIC.

* (156) The *Lesser Alcaic* consists of two Dactyles followed by two Trochees; as,

Lāvīā | pērsōnū- | ērē | sāxā. Hor.

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words, to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Dieræsis*, *Systole*, and *Diastole*.

1. (157) **SYNALÆPHA** is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. *Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

Conticū- | ēr' ōm- | nēs in- | tēnti- | qu' ōrā tē- | nēbant.

The *Synalæpha* is sometimes neglected: and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *hei*; as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. *Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insule Ionio in magno, quas dira Cæleno. *Virg.*

Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. *Id.*

Victor apud rapidum Simœnta sub Ilio alto. *Id.*

Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Œsam. *Id.*

Glauco et Panopæ, et Inoo Melicertæ. *Id.*

2. (158) **ECTHLIPSIS** is the cutting off of *m*, with the vowel before it, in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curos hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane! *Pers.*

thus,

O cū- | rās hōmī- | n', ō quān- | t' est in | rēbūs in- | anē.

Sometimes the *Synalæpha* and *Ecthlipsis* are found at the end of the verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque

Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*

Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum

Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit: r' Ardua*.

3. (159) **SYNÆRESIS** is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis*; as, *Phæthon* for *Phaëthon*. So *ēi* in *Thesei*, *Orphei*, *deinde*, *Pompei*: *uī* in *huic*, *cui*: *ōi* in *proinde*: *ēd* in *aured*: thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesei. *Ovid.*

Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi—*Virg.*

Filius huic contrā, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*

Aurēā percussam virgā, versumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antēhac, eadē, alvearia, deest, deērit, vehēmens, anteit, eōdem, alveo, graveolentis, omnia, semianimis, semihōmo, fluviorum, totius, promontorium, &c.* as,

Unā eādēque viā sanguis animusque sequuntur. *Virg.*
 Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*
 Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. *Hor.*
 Divitis uber agri, Trojæque opulenta deest. *Virg.*
 Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. *Hor.*
 Te semper anteī dira necessitas. *Alcic. Hor. Od. 1, 35, 17.*
 Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*
 Cum reffuit campis, et jam se condidit alveo. *Virg.*
 Inde ubi venēre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*
 Bis patriæ cecidēre manus: quin protinus omnia. *Id.*
 Cedit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*
 Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. *Id.*
 Fluviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. *Id.*
 Magnanimosque duces totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*
 Iade legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minerva. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as, in *genva, tenvis, arjēlat, tenvia, abjēte, pitvita, parjetibus, Nasidjēnus*; for *genua, tenuis, &c.* as,

Propterea quia corpus aquæ naturaque tenvis. *Lucr.*
 Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*
 Arjetat in portas et duros objice postes. *Id.*
 Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenvis Seres. *Id.*
 Edificant, sectaque intexunt abjete costas. *Id.*
 Præcipue sanus, nisi cum pitvita molesta est. *Hor.*
 Parjetibusque premunt arctis, et quatuor addunt. *Virg.*
 Ut Nasidjeni juvit te cena beati? *Hor.*

4. (160) **DIERESIS** divides one syllable into two; as, *aulai*, for *aulæ*: *Troia*, for *Trojæ*: *Persēus*, for *Perseus*: *milius*, for *milvus*: *soliit*, for *solvit*: *voluit*, for *volvit*: *aquæ*, *suetus*, *suasit*, *Suevos*, *re-langiit*, *reliquas*, for *aquæ*, *suetus*, &c.; as,

Aulai in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*
 Stamina non ulli dissolvienda Deo. *Pentam. Tibullus.*
 Debuerant fusos evoluisse suos. *Id. Ovid.*
 Quæ calidum faciunt aquæ tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*
 Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque suetæ. *Hor.*
 Atque alios alii inrident, Veneremque suadent. *Lucr.*
 Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Suevos. *Lucan.*
 Imposito fratri moribunda relangiit ore. *Ovid.*
 Reliquas tamen esse vias in mente patentes. *Lucr.*

5. (161) **SYSTOLE** makes a long syllable short; as, the penult in *tulērunt*; thus,

Matri longa decem tulērunt fastidia menses. *Virg. E. 4. 61.*

6. (162) *DIASTOLE* makes a short syllable long; as, the last syllable of *amor* in the following verse:

Consident, si tantus amor, et mœnia condant. Virg. *Æ.* 11, 323.

To the above may be added the following, which, though chiefly used by the poets, often occur in prose; and are called

FIGURES OF DICTION.

* (163) *SYNAPHEIA* is the connexion or linking of verses together, so as to make them run on in continuation, as if the matter were not divided into separate verses. This figure obtains chiefly in the *Ionic*, a *minore* measure.

1. (164) *Prosthesis** prefixes a letter or syllable; as, *gnavus* for *navus*. In Latin there are but few examples of this, but in Greek they abound; as, *ἰωνι* for *ωνι*, *ἰσηα* for *σηα*.

2. (165) *Epenhæsis*† inserts something in the middle; as, *rettūlit* for *retūlit*, *μαχησαμηνος* for *μαχισαμηνος*.

3. (166) *Paragoge*‡ adds to the end; as, *dicier* for *dici*, *τῶντων* for *τῶτων*.

4. (167) *Aphærēsis*§ takes away from the beginning; as, *conia* for *ciconia*. Of this, also, examples are rare in Latin, but frequent in Greek; as, *ν* for *νη*. Il. 1. 219.

5. (168) *Syncöpe*|| takes out something from the middle; as, *pec-casse* for *peccavisse*, *ἄβαν* for *ἄβαναν*.

6. (169) *Apocöpe*¶ takes from the end; as, *pecūli* for *peculii*, *δω* for *δωμα*. Il. 1. 428.

7. (170) *Metathēsis*** transposes letters; as, *pistris* for *pristis*, *ἀδαρον* for *ἀδαρον*, 2. a. of *διγνα*.

8. (171) *Antithēsis*†† changes one letter for another; as, *faciundum* for *faciendum*, *ολλί* for *ιλλί*, *ξν* for *ον*.

* Προσθεσις, *adjectio*; προσθημι, *addo*, to prefix.

† Ἐπιθεσις, *insertio*; ἐπιτιθημι, *inséro in medium*, to insert.

‡ Παραγωγή, *productio*; παραγαγν, *prodūco*, to lengthen out.

§ Ἀφαίρεσις, *ablatio*; ἀφαίρω, *aufero*, to take away.

|| Συγκοπή, from συγκοπτω, *concido*, to cut off.

¶ Αποκοπή, *amputatio*; αποκοπτω, *amputo*, to cut off.

** Μεταθεσις, *transpositio*; the change of places.

†† From ἀντι instead of, and τιθεμι, to place.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem* (*Poëma* or *Carmen*.)

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. (172) A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an *EPITHALAMUM*; on a mournful subject, an *ELEGY* or *LAMENTATION*; in praise of the Supreme Being, a *HYMN*; in praise of any person or thing, a *PANEGYRIC* or *ENCOMIUM*; on the vices of any one, a *SATIRE* or *INVECTIVE*; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an *EPITAPH*, &c.

2. (173) A short poem, adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an *ODE*, whence such compositions are called *Lyric poems*; a poem in the form of a letter is called an *EPISTLE*; a short, witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an *EPIGRAM*; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit, in the end of an epigram, is called its *Point*. A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an *EMBLEM*. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an *ÆNIGMA* or *RIDDLE*.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters, express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an *ACROSTIC*; as the following on our Saviour:

I nter cuncta micans I gniti sidera cæl I,
E xpellit tenebras E toto Phæbus ut orb E;
S ic cæcas removet JESVS caliginis umbra S,
V ivificansque simul V ero præcordia mot V,
S olem justitiæ S ese probat esse beati S.

3. (174) From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks of himself, is of three kinds, *Historical*, *Didactic*, or *Instructive*, (as the *Satire* or *Epistle*,) and *Descriptive*.

(175) Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are *COMEDY*, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and *TRAGEDY*, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue; to which may be added *Pastoral Poems*, or *BUCOLICS*, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the *Eclogues* of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the *EPIC* or *HEROIC* poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great, illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

(176) In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his *Satires* and *Epistles*,

Ovid in his *Metamorphoses*, Lucan, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use the Hexameter verse : Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the Odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

(177) A poem, which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, *Monocōlon* sc. *poēma* or *carmen*; or *Monocōlos*, sc. *ode*; that which has two kinds, *Dicōlon*; and that which has three kinds of verse, *Tricōlon*.

(178) If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called *Dicōlon Distrōphon*;* as when a single Pentameter is alternately placed after an *HEXAMETER*; which is named *Elegiac verse*, (*carmen Elegiacum*.) because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegēia, solve capillos;
Ah! nimis ex vero, nunc tibi nomen erit. *Ovid.*

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the *Metamorphoses*; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

(179) When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicōlon Tristrōphon*; when after four lines, *Dicōlon Tetrastrōphon*; as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti; caret invidendâ
Sobrius aulâ. *Horat.*

(180) When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricōlon Tristrōphon*; but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricōlon Tetrastrōphon*; as, when after two greater dactylic Alcaic verses are subjoined an Archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic Alcaic, which is named *Carmen Horatiānum*, or Horatian verse, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;
Cœtusque vulgares, et udam
Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

* A *Strophe* or *Stanza* includes as many lines as are necessary to show all the different kinds of measure in an ode. It is called *Strophe*, which in Greek literally means a *turning*, because at the end of it, you turn back to the same kind of verse with which you began.

THE VARIOUS COMBINATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT METRES USED BY HORACE.

The different species of metre used by Horace, in his Lyric compositions, are *twenty*; and the various forms in which he has employed these metres, either separate or in conjunction, are *nineteen*.

A TRICOLON TETRASTROPHON.

I. (181) Two greater Alcaics, [No. 19,] one Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter, [No. 9,] and one Lesser Alcaic, [No. 21,] as,

O mātře pŭlchrā fillā pŭlchrŭr,
Quēm crimīnōis cūmqŭē vŏlēs mōdum
Pōnēs Iāmbis, sive flāmmā,
Sive mārī libēt adriānō. Lib. 1. 16.

This appears to be his favourite form, as we find it in *thirty-seven* of his odes. Thence it is often called the *Horatian Stanza*.

A DICOLON TETRASTROPHON.

II. (182) The combination next in favour with Horace, was the following—three Sapphics, [No. 11] and one Adonic, [No. 5,] in which form he composed *twenty-six* odes: e. g.

Jā mētis tērris nŭvīs atquē dīræ
Grandīnis misit pātēr, ēt, rūbēnte
Dēxtērā sacrās jācūlātus ārces,
Tērrūit urbem. Lib. 1. 2.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

III. (183) One Glyconic, [No. 15,] and one Asclepiadic, [No. 14,] which combination occurs in *twelve* odes: thus,

Sic tē Dīvā pōtēns Cŷpri,
Sic frātērēs Hēlēnæ, lūcidā aidēra. Lib. 1. 3.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

IV. (184) One Iambic Trimeter, [No. 6,] and one Iambic Dimeter, [No. 8,] in which form we see *ten* of his Epodes.

ibis Lībūrnīs intēr altā nāvŭm,
āmicē prōpŭgnācŭla. Epod. 2.

A DICOLON TETRASTROPHON.

V. (185) Three Asclepiadics, [No. 14,] and one Glyconic, [No. 15,] in *nine* odes: e. g.

Scribēris Vāriō fortis, ēt hostium
 Victōr, Moēsōnī cārminis ālti
 Quān rēm cūmqūē fērōx nāvibūs aut ēquis
 Milia, tē ducē, gesserit. Lib. 1. 6.

A TRICOLON TETRASTROPHON.

VI. (186) Two Asclepiadics, [No. 14,] one Pherecratic, [No. 16,] and one Glyconic, [No. 15,] *seven* odes.

Diānām, tēnērāe dicītē, virgīnes:
 Intōnsūm, pūeri, dicītē Cynthium,
 Lātōnāmqūē sup̄rēmō
 Dilēctām pēnītūs Jōvi. Lib. 1. 21.

A CARMEN MONOCOLON.

VII. (187) The Asclepiadic, [No. 14,] *three* odes: thus,
 Māecēnās kīvīs ēdītē rēgībūs. Lib. 1. 1.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

VIII. (188) One Dactylic Hexameter, [No. 1,] and one Dactylic Tetrameter *a posteriore*, [No. 3,] *three* odes: thus,

Laūdābunt ālti clārām Rhōdōn, aut Mitylēnem,
 Aut Ephēsūm, bimārisvē Cōrīnθi. Lib. 1. 7.

A MONOCOLON.

IX. (189) The Choriambic Pentameter, [No. 12,] used alone in *three* odes: thus,

Tū nē quāesieris, scirē nēfās, quēm mīhi quēm tibi. Lib. 1. 11.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

X. (190) One Hexameter, [No. 1,] and one Iambic Dimeter, [No. 8,] *two* odes: as,

Nōx ērāt, ēt cāelō fulgēbāt lūnā sērēno
 Intēr mīnōrā sidēra. Epod. 15.

A MONOCOLON.

XI. (191) The Iambic Trimeter, [No. 6,] unmixed with any other species of verse, *two* epodes: thus,

Quīd obsērātis aurībūs fūndis prēces? Epod. 18.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

XII. (192) One Choriambic Dimeter, [No. 17,] and one Choriambic Tetrameter, [No. 13,] *one* ode:

Lýďá, díe, pěr ōmnes
Tě Dě ōs ōrō, Sýbárin cūr přepěřeš āmāndo. Lib. 1. 8.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

XIII. (193) One Hexameter, [No. 1,] and one Iambic Trimeter, [No. 6.] *one epode.*

Altērā jān tērtūr bēllis cīvillībūs atas
Sūis ēt ipšā Rōmā virībūs ruit. Epod. 16.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

XIV. (194) One Hexameter, [No. 1,] and one Dactylic Trimeter, Catalectic, [No. 4,] *one ode.*

**Diff'ugere nives : redēunt jam graminā cāmpis,
Arbōribusquē cōmæ. Lib. 4. 7.**

A TRICOLON TRISTROPHON.

XV. (195) One Hexameter, [No. 1,] one Iambic Dimeter, [No. 8,] and one Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic, [No. 4,] *one* epode.

Horrīdā tēpēstās cēlūm cōntraxīt, ēt īmbres
Nīvēs quē dēdūcūnt Jōvem :
Nūnc mārē, nūnc sīlūae. Epod. 13.

A TRICOLON TRISTROPHON.

XVI. (196) One Iambic Trimeter [No. 6,] one Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic [No. 4,] and one Iambic Dimeter [No. 8,] only *once* used.

**Pētti nīhīl mē, sīcūt āntēā, jūvat
Scribērē vēsīcūlos,
Amōrē pērcūlsūm grāvi. Epod. 11.**

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

XVII. (197) One Archilochian Heptameter [No. 20,] and one Iambic Trimeter Catalectic [No. 7,] a single example.

**Sōlvītūr ācrīs hīēms grātā vīcē vērīs, ēt Fāvōni,
Trāhūntquē siccās māchīnāe cārīnas. Lib. 1. 4.**

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

XVIII. (198) One Iambic Dimeter Acephalus [No. 10,] and one Iambic Trimeter Catalectic [No. 7,] *one* ode.

**Nōn ēbūr, nēque aūrēum
Mēā rēnidēt īn dōmō lācūnar. Lib. 2. 18.**

A MONOCOLON.

XIX. (199) The Ionic *a minore* [No. 18,] in *one* instance only.

Miserarum est neque amoris dare ludum, neque dulci. Lib. 3. 12.

INDEX TO THE ODES OF HORACE,

EXISTING THE FIRST WORDS OF EACH, WITH REFERENCES TO THE PRECEDING NUMBERS, ACCORDING TO WHICH THEY ARE SCANNED.

<i>Æli vetusto</i>	No. 1	<i>Jam veris comites</i>	5	<i>Parentis olim</i>	4
<i>Æquam memento</i>	1	<i>Justam et tenacem</i>	1	<i>Pastor quum trah.</i>	5
<i>Albi ne doleas</i>	5	<i>Laudabunt alii</i>	8	<i>Pernices odi puer</i>	2
<i>Altera jam teritur</i>	13	<i>Lupis et agnis</i>	4	<i>Petti nihil me</i>	16
<i>Angustam amici</i>	1	<i>Lydia dic per omnes</i>	12	<i>Phœbe, silvarumque</i>	2
<i>At O deorum</i>	4	<i>Mæcenas atavis</i>	7	<i>Phœbus volentem</i>	1
<i>Audivere Lyce</i>	6	<i>Malâ soluta</i>	4	<i>Pindarum quisquis</i>	2
<i>Bacchum in remotis</i>	1	<i>Martiis coelebs</i>	2	<i>Poscimur siquid</i>	2
<i>Beatus ille</i>	4	<i>Mater sæva Cupidinum</i>	3	<i>Quæ cura patrum</i>	1
<i>Cælo supinas</i>	1	<i>Mercuri facunde</i>	2	<i>Qualem ministrum</i>	1
<i>Cælo tonantem</i>	1	<i>Mercuri nam te</i>	2	<i>Quando repêtum</i>	4
<i>Cum tu Lydia</i>	3	<i>Miserarum est</i>	19	<i>Quantum distet ab In.</i>	3
<i>Cur me querelis</i>	1	<i>Molis inertia</i>	10	<i>Quem tu Melpomene</i>	3
<i>Delicta majorum</i>	1	<i>Montium custos</i>	2	<i>Quem virum aut her.</i>	2
<i>Decende cælo</i>	1	<i>Motum ex Metello</i>	1	<i>Quid bellicosus</i>	1
<i>Dianam tenere</i>	6	<i>Musis amicus</i>	1	<i>Quid dedicatum</i>	1
<i>Diffugere nives</i>	14	<i>Natis in usum</i>	1	<i>Quid fles Asterie</i>	6
<i>Dive quem proles</i>	2	<i>Ne forte credas</i>	1	<i>Quid immerentes</i>	4
<i>Divis orte bonis</i>	5	<i>Ne sit ancillæ</i>	2	<i>Quid obseratis</i>	11
<i>Donarem pateras</i>	7	<i>Nolis longa ferre</i>	5	<i>Quid tibi vis</i>	8
<i>Donec gratus eram</i>	3	<i>Nondum subacta</i>	1	<i>Quis desiderio,</i>	5
<i>Eheu fugaces</i>	1	<i>Non ebur neque aur.</i>	18	<i>Quis multa gracilis</i>	6
<i>Est mihi nonum</i>	2	<i>Non semper imbres</i>	1	<i>Quo me Bacche</i>	3
<i>Et thure et fidibus</i>	3	<i>Non usitata</i>	1	<i>Quo, quo scelesti ru.</i>	4
<i>Exegi monumentum</i>	7	<i>Non vides quanto</i>	2	<i>Rectius vives</i>	2
<i>Extremum Tanaim</i>	5	<i>Nox erat</i>	10	<i>Rogare longo</i>	4
<i>Faune nympharum</i>	2	<i>Nullam Vare sacra</i>	9	<i>Scribêris Vario</i>	5
<i>Festo quid potius die</i>	3	<i>Nullus argento</i>	2	<i>Septimi Gades</i>	2
<i>Herculis ritu</i>	2	<i>Nunc est bibendum</i>	1	<i>Sic te Diva potens</i>	3
<i>Horrida tempestas</i>	15	<i>O crudelis adhunc</i>	9	<i>Solvitur acris hiems</i>	17
<i>Ibis Liburnis</i>	4	<i>O Diva gratum</i>	1	<i>Te maris et terræ</i>	8
<i>Icci beatis</i>	1	<i>O fons Blandusis</i>	6	<i>Tu ne quesieris</i>	9
<i>Ille et nefasto</i>	1	<i>O matre pulchrâ</i>	1	<i>Tyrrhena regum</i>	1
<i>Impios parre</i>	2	<i>O nata mecum</i>	1	<i>Ulla si juris</i>	2
<i>Inclusam Danken</i>	5	<i>O navis referent</i>	6	<i>Uxor pauperis Ibyci</i>	3
<i>Intactis opulentior</i>	3	<i>O sæpe mecum</i>	1	<i>Velox amenum</i>	1
<i>Integer vite</i>	2	<i>O Venus regina</i>	2	<i>Vides ut alta</i>	1
<i>Intermissa Venus diu</i>	3	<i>Odi profanum</i>	1	<i>Vile potabis</i>	2
<i>Jam jam efficaci</i>	11	<i>Otium Divos</i>	2	<i>Vitas hinnuleo</i>	6
<i>Jam pauca aratro</i>	1	<i>Parcius junctas</i>	2	<i>Vixi choreis</i>	1
<i>Jam satis terris</i>	2	<i>Parcus Deorum</i>	1		

APPENDIX.

Of Punctuation; Capitals; Abbreviations; Division of the Roman Months; Tables of Roman Coins, Weights, and Measures.

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma*, (,) *Semicolon*, (;) *Colon*, (:) *Period*, Punctum, or full stop, (.)

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half member, is a less constructive part, of subdivision, of a sentence or member. The *Comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence, in this way of considering it; for the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod*, or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the Colon, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon; the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon double of the comma.

There are other points, which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?), the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!), and the *Parenthesis* (.). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon, a colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other *marks* made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are the *Apostrophe* ('); *Asterisk* (*); *Hyphen* (-); *Obelisk* (†); *Double Obelisk* (‡); *Parallel Lines* (||); *Paragraph* (¶); *Section* (§); *Quotation* (""); *Crotchets* []; *Brace* ({); *Ellipsis* (... or —); *Caret* (^); which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals, or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decius*, or *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quintus*, or *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti*; S. C. *Senātus Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Rōmānus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senātus, Populusque Rōmānus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salūtem plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books A. D. marks *Anno Domini*, A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicinus Doctor*,* LL. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cætera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opiter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextus*; Cos. *Consul*; Com. *Consules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Imp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner, in English, Esq. *Esquire*; Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuscript*; MSS. *Manuscripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*, that is; e. g. *exempli gratiā*, for example; v. g. *verbi gratiā*.

Division of the Roman Months.

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by † *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*: the fifth day was called the *Nones*: and the thirteenth day was called the *Ides*: except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the *nones* fell upon the seventh day, and the *ides* on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis* or *Januarii*, or, by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias*, or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante*: or *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the *ides*, which were marked *Idibus Decembris*, or *Decembris*: the day before the *ides*, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante*: the day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the *nones*, or the fifth day of the

* Two capitals in this way denote the plural number; as, L. D. *Legis Doctor*: LL. D. *Legum Doctor*.

† *Kalends*, or *Calends*, is derived from *Calo*, -are, to call. In the infancy of Rome, a priest summoned the people together in the Capitol, on the first day of the month, or of the new moon, and called over the days that intervened between that and the *Nones*. In later times the *Fasti*, or Calendar, used to be put up in public places.

The *Nones* [*Nonæ*] are so called, because they are nine days from the *Ides*. *Ides*, [*Idus*] from the obsolete verb *Iduare*, to divide, because they divide the month nearly equally.

month, which was marked *Nonis Decembribus*, or *Decembris* : the day before the nones, *Pridie Non. Dec. &c.* and thus through all the months of the year.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMQUE, NOVEMQUE tricenos ;
Unum plus reliqui ; FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti ;
At si bissextus fuerit, superadditur unus.
Tu primam mensis lucem dic esse kalendas.
Sex MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,
Quatuor at reliqui ; dabit idus quilibet octo.
Omnes post idus luces dic esse kalendas,
Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April, June, September, and November*, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month ; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January, August, and December*, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March, May, July, and October*, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of *February*, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

In *Leap year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii*, or *Martias* : and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

TABLE.

	MAR. JUL.	Mai. OCT.	JAN. AUG. DEC.	APR. JUN. SEP. NOV.	FEBRUARIUS.
1	Kalendæ.		Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.
2	6 ^o Nonas.		4 ^o Nonas.	4 ^o Nonas.	4 ^o Nonas.
3	5 Nonas.		3 Nonas.	3 Nonas.	3 Nonas.
4	4 Nonas.		Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	3 Nonas.		Nonæ.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Pridie Nonas.		8 ^o Idus.	8 ^o Idus.	8 ^o Idus.
7	Nonæ.		7 Idus.	7 Idus.	7 Idus.
8	8 ^o Idus.		6 Idus.	6 Idus.	6 Idus.
9	7 Idus.		5 Idus.	5 Idus.	5 Idus.
10	6 Idus.		4 Idus.	4 Idus.	4 Idus.
11	5 Idus.		3 Idus.	3 Idus.	3 Idus.
12	4 Idus.		Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	3 Idus.		Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie Idus.		19 ^o Kalendas.	18 ^o Kalendas.	16 ^o Kalendas.
15	Idus.		18 Kal.	17 Kal.	15 Kal.
16	17 ^o Kalendas.		17 Kal.	16 Kal.	14 Kal.
17	16 Kal.		16 Kal.	15 Kal.	13 Kal.
18	15 Kal.		15 Kal.	14 Kal.	12 Kal.
19	14 Kal.		14 Kal.	13 Kal.	11 Kal.
20	13 Kal.		13 Kal.	12 Kal.	10 Kal.
21	12 Kal.		12 Kal.	11 Kal.	9 Kal.
22	11 Kal.		11 Kal.	10 Kal.	8 Kal.
23	10 Kal.		10 Kal.	9 Kal.	7 Kal.
24	9 Kal.		9 Kal.	8 Kal.	5 Kal.
25	8 Kal.		8 Kal.	7 Kal.	5 Kal.
26	7 Kal.		7 Kal.	6 Kal.	4 Kal.
27	6 Kal.		6 Kal.	5 Kal.	3 Kal.
28	5 Kal.		5 Kal.	4 Kal.	Pridie Kalendas.
29	4 Kal.		4 Kal.	3 Kal.	
30	3 Kal.		3 Kal.	Pridie Kalendas.	
31	Pridie Kalendas.		Pridie Kalendas.		

The Romans, counting in the day on which they dated, called the *second* day before the Kalends, Nones or Ides, *tertio*, and so on. And, as the Kalends are not the last day of the current month, but the first day of the month following; we must take this additional day into consideration in accommodating our calendar to their dates; according to the following method:

RULE. Add *one* to the number of the Nones and Ides, and *two* to the number of days in the month for the Kalends; then subtract the number of the day; e. g. to find the Roman date of the 21st July; to 31, add 2=33; from this take 21, the day of the month, and the remainder, 12, is the Roman date, 12mo. Kal. Aug.

ROMAN COINS REDUCED TO FEDERAL MONEY.

BRASS.

		\$	cts.	
*1½	A Quadrans,† or teruncius, is equal to	0	00,35	of a cent.
1½	A Triens - - - - -	-	- ,47	"
2	A Semissis, or semi-æs - - - - -	-	- ,71	"
	An As, or æs - - - - -	-	- 1,43	"

SILVER.

2	A Teruncius is equal to - - - - -	-	- ,35	of a cent.
2	A Sembella - - - - -	-	- ,71	"
2½	A Libella - - - - -	-	- 1,43	"
2	A Sestertius, or Nummus, marked L. L. S.			
	or IIS, commonly written HS. - - - - -	-	- 3,57	"
2	A Quinarius, or Victoriatus, marked V. - - - - -	-	- 7,17	"
	A Denarius, marked X. - - - - -	-	- 14,35	"

GOLD.

An Aureus, or aureus nummus - - - - - \$3 58,79 of a cent.
The gold is reckoned at £4 sterling, (\$17 77½) and the silver at 5 shillings, (\$1 11½) an ounce.

* These numbers show how many of each denomination it takes to make one of the next following, nearly.

† *Quadrans* signifies a *quarter* of the as; *triens*, a *third*: *teruncius*, *three uncia* of brass, (12 of which made an as,) or a silver coin of that value; *libella*, a diminutive of *libra*, being equivalent to the as, which originally weighed a *pound*: *sembella semi-libella*: *sestertius*, *semis tertius*, or *three asses less a half* (after the Greek idiom *μικρὸν τρίτον*, for *δύο μικρὰ*); *quinarius*, *five asses*, called also *victoriatus*, from the image of *Victory*, its usual device; *denarius*, *ten asses*.

GREEK COINS MENTIONED BY ROMAN AUTHORS.

6	An Obólus is equal to	-	-	-	2,39 of a cent.
4	A Drachma	-	-	-	14,35 "
25	A Tetradrachma or -um	-	-	-	57,40 "
				according to Livy,	43,05 "
60	A Mina	-	-	\$14	35,18 "
	A Talentum	-	-	\$861	11½ "

The Romans usually computed sums of money by *sestertii*, or *sestertia*. *Sestertium* is the name of a sum, not of a coin. When a numeral adjective is joined with *sestertii*, it means just so many sesterces; thus, *decem sestertii* = ten sesterces: but when it is joined with *sestertia*, it means so many thousand *sestertii*; thus, *decem sestertia* = 10,000 sesterces.

If a numeral adjective of another case is joined with the genitive plural, it denotes so many thousand; as, *decem sestertiūm*, 10,000 *sestertii*. If a numeral adverb is joined, it denotes so many hundred thousand; as, *decies sestertiūm*, ten hundred thousand *sestertii*. If the numeral adverb stands by itself, the signification is the same.

ROMAN LONG MEASURES REDUCED TO ENGLISH.

		Eng.	Paces.	Ft.	In.	Dec.
4	1 Hordei granum, or barley corn, is equal to	0	0	0	181	$\frac{5}{8}$
1½	1 Digītus transversus, or finger's breadth	0	0	0	725	$\frac{1}{4}$
3	1 Uncia, thumb's breadth, or inch	-	0	0	0	967
4	1 Palmus minor, or hand's breadth	-	0	0	2	901
1½	1 Pes, or foot	-	0	0	11	604
1½	1 Palmipes, a foot and hand's breath	-	0	1	2	505
1½	1 Cubitus	-	0	1	5	406
2	1 Gradus	-	0	2	5	010
125	1 Passus, or pace	-	0	4	10	020
8	1 Stadium, or furlong	-	120	4	4	5
	1 Milliære, mille passus or passuum	-	967	0	0	0

ANCIENT ROMAN LAND MEASURE.

100	Square Roman feet equal	-	-	1	Scrupūlum of land.
4	Scrupūla	-	-	1	Sextūlus.
1½	Sextūlus	-	-	1	Actus.
6	Sextūli, or 5 Actus	-	-	1	Uncia of land.
6	Unciæ	-	-	1	Square Actus.
2	Square Actus	-	-	1	Jugērum.
3	Jugēra	-	-	1	Heredium.
100	Heredia	-	-	1	Centuria.

ROMAN MEASURES OF CAPACITY FOR LIQUIDS, REDUCED TO ENGLISH WINE MEASURE.

				Gal.	Pts.	Sol.	In.	Dec.
4	1 Ligŭla is equal to	-	-	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	0		,117 $\frac{5}{8}$
1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 Cyāthus	-	-	0	$\frac{1}{4}$	0		,469 $\frac{1}{2}$
2	1 Acetabŭlum	-	-	0	$\frac{1}{8}$	0		,704 $\frac{1}{2}$
2	1 Quartarius	-	-	0	$\frac{1}{4}$	1		,409
2	1 Hemina	-	-	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	2		,818
6	1 Sextarius	-	-	0	1	5		,636
4	1 Congius	-	-	0	7	4		,942
2	1 Urna	-	-	3	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	5		,33
20	1 Amphōra	-	-	7	1	10		,66
	1 Culeus	-	-	143	3	11		,095

The *quadrantal* is the same with the *amphōra*; *congiarius*, *dolium*, and *cadus* mean no certain measure, but a *cask* or *keg*.

The Romans divided the *sextarius*, as well as the *libra*, into twelve equal parts, called *cyāthi*; and therefore they called their *calices* either *sextantes*, *quadrantes*, or *trientes*; according to the number of *cyāthi* they contained.

The *cyāthus* corresponded, in use and size, nearly to our wine glass.

ROMAN DRY MEASURE REDUCED TO ENGLISH CORN MEASURE.

				Pk.	Gal.	Pt.	Sol.	In.	Dec.
4	1 Ligŭla is equal to	-	-	0	0	0 $\frac{1}{4}$	0		,01
1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 Cyāthus	-	-	0	0	0 $\frac{1}{8}$	0		,04
4	1 Acetabŭlum	-	-	0	0	0 $\frac{1}{2}$	0		,06
2	1 Hemina	-	-	0	0	0 $\frac{1}{2}$	0		,24
8	1 Sextarius	-	-	0	0	1	0		,48
2	1 Semi-modius	-	-	0	1	0	3		,84
	1 Modius	-	-	1	0	0	7		,68

GRECIAN AND ROMAN WEIGHTS REDUCED TO ENGLISH TROY WEIGHT.

				lb.	oz.	dwt.	grs.
4	1 Lens is equal to	-	-	0	0	0	0 $\frac{3}{11}$ $\frac{5}{8}$
3	1 Silkua	-	-	0	0	0	3 $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{8}$
2	1 Obōlus	-	-	0	0	0	9 $\frac{3}{8}$
3	1 Scriptŭlum	-	-	0	0	0	18 $\frac{3}{4}$
1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 Drachma	-	-	0	0	2	6 $\frac{9}{14}$
1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 Sextŭla	-	-	0	0	3	0 $\frac{6}{7}$

				lb.	oz.	dwt.	gr.
1½	1 Sicilicus or -um	-	-	0	0	4	13½
3	1 Duella	-	-	0	0	6	1½
12	1 Uncia	-	-	0	0	18	5½
	1 Libra	-	-	0	10	18	13½

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON ROMAN MONEY.

In the preceding tables of money the authority of Dr. Adam, as given in his "Roman Antiquities," has been followed. And perhaps no one could in general be followed with more safety. But on some few points he differs from writers of great respectability. Forcellinus and Eckhel agree in resolving HS, not into LLS, but into IIS; that is, two asses and a half; giving the letters or lines II their usual numerical power. This solution seems much more satisfactory than the former, and is supported by strong probabilities. We find, for example, on ancient coins, HVIR, for DVUMVIR; and an X, standing for ten, has sometimes a mark drawn across it thus, $\frac{V}{\Lambda}$ as it is frequently found on the denarius, where it evidently stands for ten asses.

The following account of the Roman mode of reckoning by sesterces is taken from a treatise on the subject by Mr. Raper, in the Philosophical Transactions, vol. LXI.

"The Romans reckoned by Asses before they coined silver, after which they kept their accounts in Sesterces. The word *Sestertius* is an adjective, and signifies two and a half of any substantive to which it refers. In money matters its substantive is either *As*, or *pondus*: and *Sestertius As* is two Asses and a half; *Sestertium pondus*, two *pondëra* and a half [of silver,] or 250 *Denarii*.

"When the *Denarius* passed for ten Asses, the Sesterce of 2½ Asses was a quarter of it; and the Romans continued to keep their accounts in these Sesterces long after the *Denarius* passed for sixteen Asses: till, growing rich, they found it more convenient to reckon by quarters of the *Denarius*, which they called *Nummi*, and used the words *Nummus* and *Sestertius*, indifferently, as synonymous terms, and sometimes both together, as, *Sestertius nummus*: in which case, the word *Sestertius*, having lost its original signification, was used as a substantive; for *Sestertius nummus* was not two *Nummi* and a half, but a single *Nummus* of four Asses.

"They called any sum under 2000 Sesterces so many *Sestertii*, in the masculine gender; 2000 Sesterces they called *duo* or *duo Sestertia*, in the neuter; so many quarters making 500 *Denarii*, which was twice the *Sestertium*: and they said *dena vicëna*, &c. *Sestertia*, till the sum amounted to a thousand *Sestertia*, which was a million of Sesterces. But, to avoid ambiguity, they did not use the neuter *Sestertium* in the singular number, when the whole sum amounted to no more than 1000 Sesterces, or one *Sestertium*.

"They called a million of Sesterces *Decies nummum*, or *Decies Sestertium*, for *Decies centëna millia nummorum*, or *Sestertiörum* (in the masculine gender,) omitting *centëna millia*, for the sake of brevity; they likewise called the same sum *Decies Sestertium* (in the neuter gender,) for *Decies centies Sestertium*, omitting *Centies* for the reason above mentioned; or simply *Decies*, omitting *centëna millia Sestertium*, or *centies Sestertium*: and with the numeral adverbs *Decies*, *Vicies*, *Centies*, *Millies*, and the like, either *centëna millia*, or *centies*, was always understood."

The learned, while they agree as to the substance of the foregoing rules, and arrive at the same results in applying them to sums of money mentioned in the classics, yet differ widely with respect to the grammatical construction of the word *sestertius*. Forcellinus* contends, that *sestertium* is always the contracted genitive plural of the masculine *sestertius*: that the use of *sestertia* in the neuter, is confined to the poets, who form the word by a metaplasm, for the sake of the metre; and that, where it is found in printed editions of prose writers, it has been arbitrarily substituted for the sign HS in the original manuscript, which sign stands in every such instance for *sestertium*, the genitive plural of *sestertius*.

Eckhelt considers the numeral adverbs *decies*, &c. as taking the nature of neuter substantives, as in the expressions *hoc decies*, *decies plenum*, &c. which occur in ancient authors; and since *sestertius* is in its nature an adjective (e. g. *sestertius pes*, *sestertius nummus*), he regards *decies sestertium*, *decies plenum*, &c. as phrases of similar construction. Hence we find the adjective *sestertius* varied through almost all the cases, as in the following examples: *Decem arbuscularum umbram tricies sestertii summā compenses*. Val. Max. *Bis et vicies millies sestertium donationibus Nero effuderat*. Tac. *Sexagies sestertio margaritam mercatus es*. Sueton.

* Totius Latinitatis Lexicon.

† Doctrina Numorum Veterum, vol. v. p. 25.

THE END.

